Godeffroy of Bologna.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. LXIV.

1893.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
Godofroy of Bolyayne,

or

The Siege and Conqueste of Jerusalem,

by

WILLIAM, ARCHBISHOP OF TYRE.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY

William Caxton,

AND PRINTED BY HIM IN 1481.

EDITED FROM THE COPY IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM, WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY, AND INDEXES,

by

MARY NOYES COLVIN, Ph.D.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
Paternoster House, Charing Cross Road.
1893.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index of Names</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index of Places</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION.

I. Caxton's text, and his original, William of Tyre, A.D. 1163—1183, p. vii.
II. Editions, Manuscripts, and Translations of William of Tyre, p. xi.
III. William of Tyre, p. xx.
IV. William of Tyre's literary works, p. xxv.
V. Godfrey of Bouillon, p. xxix.

I.

Godeffroy of Bolyone, or the Siege and Conqueste of Jerusalem, was printed by William Caxton, as he himself informs us, in the Abbey of Westminster, the work being finished on the 20th of November, 1481.

There are ten copies still extant of this edition: British Museum (1), Cambridge (2), Imperial Library, Vienna (1), Hunterian College, Glasgow (1), Baptist College, Bristol (1), and (4) in private libraries. The present edition was printed from the copy in the British Museum, which is described by Blades (Biography and Typography of Wm. Caxton, London, 1879), as follows:

"The book is a small in-folio, containing 144 leaves, of which two are blank. Excepting the first two gatherings, the signatures are entirely in Arabic numerals.

"Collation;—A is A 3\(^{\text{a}}\) with A\(^{1}\) blank, b a 2\(^{\text{a}}\) b\(^{1}\) being blank; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16 are all 4\(^{\text{a}}\), 17 is a 3\(^{\text{a}}\).

"Typographic peculiarities;—There is no title page. A full page has forty lines, which are of even length, and measure 4\(1/4\) inches without folios or catchwords. Space is left at the commencement of chapters for the insertion of three to seven-line initials.—The volume commences with a blank leaf, after which follows the prologue or preface, the text beginning on A\(^{2}\), with a space for a four-line initial, thus, 'The hye, courageous faytes and valyant actes of noble, illustrious, and vertuous personnes, etc.', and ending halfway down the recto of the 6th folio, of sig. 17., the verso being blank."
Mr. Blades also states that the book is translated from the French, adding, "the author of the book appears to be unknown." Happily, this last conjecture of Mr. Blades is a mistake, as the author of our text, far from being unknown, is no less a personage than William, Archbishop of Tyre from 1175 to 1184, and Caxton's *Godefroy of Bologna* is a translation of the first hundred pages or so of a History of the First Crusade, and the French establishments in the Holy Land, written by William, in the second half of the 12th century.

It is a book which not only was a standard authority through all the Middle Ages, but one which even up to the present time is regarded as reliable in most particulars, and forms the base of all modern histories of this period. The book was written first in Latin, but was soon put into French, from which Caxton translated it into English. His translation is almost a literal one. He turns many of his French constructions into English, without any attempt at Anglicizing them, even transferring a French word bodily when he does not readily find its English equivalent. On the whole, he understands his French, although there are incorrect renderings here and there, owing more to hasty reading, it seems, than to actual ignorance.

The editor of this text, in preparing it for publication, read the English first with a French Manuscript of the 15th century edition, from which without doubt it was translated. Curiously enough, MS. 68 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, with which it was collated, belonged originally to Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruy-thuyse. Blades says of him:

"Among the nobles at the court of Phillip the Good (Duke of Burgundy, in 1119), many emulated the literary taste of their sovereign, but none showed greater judgment and liberality in the formation of his library than Louis de Bruges.

"This nobleman, who had risen by his talents to the highest position, received at his château of Oost-camp, near Bruges, in 1470, Edward IV. of England, when he sought refuge from the Lancastrians, in Flanders, and was afterwards rewarded by the King with the title of Earl of Winchester. His library was scarcely inferior to that of his sovereign, and nearly the whole of its manuscripts were the production of Flemish artists, at Bruges or Ghent. The large size of the volumes, the beauty of the vellum, the elegance of the writing, the artistic merit of the illuminations and ornaments, and the luxury displayed in the bandings are evidences of the interest

taken by the Seigneur de la Gruythenyse in the formation of his library.

"At his death it passed to his son Jean, and was soon after added to the collection, already existing, at the château of Blois, belonging to the kings of France. Great pains were taken to obliterate the armorial bearings, devices, and monograms which showed the former owner of the manuscripts; but these attempts were only partly successful, as about one hundred volumes, now among the most precious treasures of the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, still attest that they once belonged to this celebrated collection."

As Caxton lived for many years in Bruges, as the representative of the English nation, and was on friendly terms with many of the Flemish nobility, there is little doubt that he was well acquainted with the library of Louis de Bruges, and probably had himself spent many an hour over this very volume, which is a magnificent specimen of Flemish handicraft—a large in-folio, with writing like copper-plate, and adorned with many beautiful artistically-executed miniatures in grisaille. But, although as far as execution and binding are concerned, a book worthy of our highest praise, the text itself, which, as may be seen by the headings of the different chapters, is the same as the copy from which Caxton translated, is a very poor one, and the result is that many of Caxton's sentences are faulty, obscure, or thoroughly unintelligible, owing to the faultiness and obscurity of his original. In many cases, the editor of the present text, in order to get at the original meaning, has been obliged to have recourse to vol. ii. of the Recueil des Croisades, published by the Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres, in Paris, which contains not only the corrected French text of William's history, but also the Latin original, to which an appeal has been made in doubtful cases.

Some obscurities still remaining have been cleared up by Paulin Paris's recent edition of William of Tyre.

For aid in this preface, and in the Index of Places and Names, at the close of the book, the editor is also much indebted to the following authorities:


Paulin Paris: La Chanson d'Antioche.

Paulin Paris: Guillaume de Tyr. et Ses Continuateurs.


Dansey: The English Crusaders.
Introduction. I. Authorities consulted.

Von Hasselt: Les Croisés Belges.
Von Reiffenberg, in vols. iv. and v. of Les Chroniques Belges: Le Chevalier au Cygne and Godefroid de Bouillon.

Baron de Hody: Description des Tombeaux de Godefroid de Bouillon. Bruxelles, 1855.

Pigeonneau: Le Cycle de la Croisade et de la Famille de Bouillon.


Brénet: Manuel du Libraire.


Migne: Patrologie Latine: Tomus 20 / " Græce " 86.

" Dictionnaire de Géographie Sacrée et Ecclésiastique, vols. 28—30 of the Cyclopedie Théologique.

Freeman: The Historical Geography of Europe.


Tasso: Jerusalem Delivered.


Aulé-Dumesnil: Dictionnaire des Croisades in vol. xviii. of Migne's Nouvelle Encyclopédie Théologique.


McClintoch and Strong: Cyclopedia of Biblical Theology and Ecclesiastical Literature.


Ticknor: History of Spanish Literature.


Rogier: La Noblesse Française aux Croisades.

Recueil des Croisades. Tomes i. and ii., published by the Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres. Paris, 1844.
II. EDITIONS, MSS., AND TRANSLATIONS OF WM. OF TYRE.


II. DIFFERENT EDITIONS, MANUSCRIPTS, AND TRANSLATIONS OF WILLIAM OF TYRE.

The original history was written, as has been already mentioned, in Latin. It was composed in Palestine, between the years 1163 and 1183, and consisted of twenty-two completed books, divided into chapters, and of one chapter of a twenty-third book. The work was evidently either left unfinished, or mutilated after William's death, as he tells us expressly in his preface that he has divided his work into twenty-three books, each of which is in turn divided into chapters. "Distinximus autem volumem universam in libros xxiii, eorumque singulos certis designavit capitulis, quo lectori facilius quicquid de articulis historiae sibi viderit necessarium occurrat." The theory that portions of the history were destroyed after William's death, is a very plausible one, when we reflect that these closing chapters, if closing chapters there were, must have contained the record of events which did not present his political opponents in a very favourable light, so that they would have had every reason for suppressing them.

The book commences with a brief general account of the situation of affairs before and at the time of the first crusade. Then follows a detailed account of that great movement, particular stress being laid on the part taken therein by the French and Flemish chivalry, and especially by Godfrey of Bouillon. The ninth book treats of the taking of Jerusalem by the Crusaders, and of the choice of Godfrey as king, closing with his sudden and unfortunate death. The other thirteen books contain the history of Palestine under French rule, down to the time of William's own death, which is supposed to have taken place in 1184.

His preface, written after he had nearly completed his work, tells us of its aim and scope:—
"Narrationis seriem ordinavimus exordium, sumentes ab exitu virorum fortium, et Deo amabilem principum qui, a regnis occidenta-
libus, vocante Domino egressi, terram promotionis et pene universam
Syriane in manu forti sibi vendicaverunt, et inde usque ad regnum
domini Baliani quarti, qui in ordine regum computato domino duce
Godefrido qui primus regnum obtinuit, locum habuit septimum, per
anos LXXXIV, cum multa diligentia protraximus historiam."

This history had, in the course of time, several different continu-
ators. The first of these was one Ernoul, member of a noble family
of Giblet, a town of Palestine, on the coast north of Beirut. Ernoul,
who must have been a well-grown youth at the time of William's
death, served as a young squire under Balian d'Ybelin, who had been
made Lord Lieutenant of the kingdom of Jerusalem, after the capture
of king Guy of Lusignan in 1187. Young Ernoul followed his master
through all the vicissitudes of this critical period, and assisted in the
defence of Jerusalem when besieged by Saladin, a few months later.
Years after,—after he had become one of the most able and learned
jurists in the High Court of Cyprus,—Ernoul of Giblet wrote, in the
French language, an account of the events in which he had taken
part, his intention being to give the world a truthful narration of
the conquest of Jerusalem, and of the irreparable loss of the Holy
Cross.

Ernoul's story stops with the year 1228. Here, however, an
unknown pen takes it up, and, after some condensation of the pre-
vious matter, brings it down to about 1231. This last writer narrates
especially the events of the Crusade of Frederic II. of Germany,
ending with the capture of St. Jean d'Acre.

At about this same time, in France, one Bernard, called the
treasurer, Bernardus Thesaurius, supposed to have belonged to the
monastery of St. Pierre in Corbie, wrote a history of affairs in the
East, ending also with the year 1231. Corbie is a little town in
France, east of Amiens. Here existed formerly a magnificent abbey
of Benedictines of great wealth and antiquity, said to have been
founded by Queen Bathilde in 662. The history of this abbey has
been written by a Benedictine of Picardy, but nothing has been
learnt of Bernard, except the fact that the office of treasurer has
existed there since the 13th century.

Already, before the continuation of the unknown author was
finished, or Bernard's account was written, the Latin original of
William of Tyre was known in France, where it received, without a
doubt, the title with which it has come down to us, viz., Historia
Bernard's Continuation of William of Tyre.  xiii

Roman in Partibus Transmarinis Gestarum; and certainly by 1225, if not before, it was translated into French.

Now we have, as we see, three or four different historians, all handling the same subject, but at different epochs. What more natural than that they should be arranged chronologically; and by the omission of prefaces, and by judicious condensation, be made into one compact whole. This is exactly what was done by some one, perhaps by Bernard himself, who, after he had written his account of affairs in the Orient, as an independent composition, may have conceived the idea of combining it with William's and Ernoul's histories. Be this as it may, the compilation closes with Bernard's work, which ends thus: Explicit liber; ceste conte de la terre d'Oltremer, jist faire li tresoriers Bernars de St. Pierre de Corbie en la curnation. Mello C.C. XXXII.

Naturally, for centuries, and even down to the modern critical examination of the book, Bernard was regarded as the real author of the whole work. His compilation was the history, par-excellence, of the Crusades and the Holy Land through all the Middle Ages. Strangely enough, although the compiler left Bernard's name at the close of the book, he forgot to give it any title at the beginning; and as a result of this forgetfulness, each editor, or even copyist, felt himself privileged to bestow upon the book what seemed to him a suitable appellation, so no one text probably in the whole history of literature has had so many different names. The most common and curious of all them is that of the Roman d'Eracles, a title given by some rubricator, because the first line begins, "Les anciennes ystoires dient que Eracles en fut montd bon Chrestien, et gouverneur de l'empire de Romme," William having introduced his history by recalling the fact of the conquest of Jerusalem by the Persians, and their deliverance by the Emperor Heraclius, in 629. Other more appropriate titles are: Le Livre des Passages d'Outre Mer; Le Livre de l'Acquisition et de la Perte de la Terre Sainte; Les Chroniques d'Outre Mer; Livres des Voyages à la Terre Sainte; Histoires du Passage de Godefroy de Bouillon, or simply, Le Livre du Conquête.

Ernoul and Bernard form what M. Mas-Latrie,—who first disentangled the intricate relations of the different editions of William of Tyre to each other,—calls the "first epoch" of his continuators.

A few years later than Bernard, in 1248, St. Louis of France "put on the cross," and departed for the Holy Land; the attention
of the Christian world was again drawn towards the East, and new deeds of valour called for a new chronicler. Another continuation was composed in the French language, taking the narrative up where Bernard left it, and bringing it down to the year 1261. This continuation has been published in the French Academy edition of the continuators of William of Tyre, under the title, _Continuation d'après le Manuscrit de Rethelin._

Soon after this appeared what may be called the third series of continuators. This third series is not a direct continuation of the second series. It does not take up the narrative where that left it, in 1261, but attaches itself to Ernoul and Bernard, that is, to the first class of continuators, and closes with the year 1275. This third continuation, according to the best judges, is the work of two hands, and was written entirely in the East. The first half is supposed to have been the composition of a knight of Cyprus or Syria, and contains the history of the kingdoms of Cyprus and Jerusalem, united during the minority of King Henry III. of Lusignan; the latter half, which narrates the events transpiring between 1248 and 1275, seems to have been written by a monk, as it is more scholarly in style and character.

The fourth and last group of continuators are only copies of the second series (that closing in 1261), to which has been added an account of the taking of St. Jean d'Acque, and of events subsequent to 1288, so that, in this edition, there is a gap in the history, from 1261 to 1288.

Most of these different series exist only in manuscript, there being several copies of each known. M. Riant, in _Les Archives de l'Orient Latin_, gives the following summary of the manuscripts of William of Tyre and his continuators, suppressing very justly M. Mas-Latrie's last class, which (as he observes) differs from the others only by the addition of matter that is really foreign to the rest of the work.

I. Class. Translation of _William of Tyre_; eleven MSS., two of which are now lost.

II. Class. In three subdivisions, and containing thirteen MSS.:  
   a. Ernoul to 1228, five MSS.; b. _Estoires d'Oultre Mer, et de la Naissance Saladin_, three MSS.; c. _Bernard le Tresorier_ to 1231, five MSS.

III. Class. _William of Tyre_ translated, and continued down to 1231, twenty-two MSS.
II. Spanish Translation of William of Tyre. xv

IV. Class (Rothelin). William of Tyre translated and continued down to 1261. (This is the Academy edition.) Sixteen MSS.

V. Class. William of Tyre translated and continued down to 1275. This has been published by the Academy, and by Dom Martène and Guizot, eleven MSS.

An excellent description of many of these manuscripts is given in vol. ii. of the Recueil des Croisades, published by the French Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres.

Taking into consideration the extreme popularity of William of Tyre's history in France, as attested by the large number of manuscripts still existing, it is strange that more translations into other languages have not been found. Of those known, but one seems to have been in any sense a popular book, namely, that into Spanish, which is known under the title of La Gran Conquista de Ultra Mar. This is a vast compilation, of which M. Gaston Paris has commenced to give us the first satisfactory analysis in the Romania, No. 68, Oct. 1888. La Gran Conquista takes as its basis the history of William of Tyre, inserting at appropriate intervals other French compositions treating of the Crusades or of Godfrey of Bouillon, such as La Chanson d'Antioch, La Chanson de Jerusalem, Le Chevallier au Cygne, the poem of Les Chétifs, also the romans of Berthe, of Mainet, of Flore and Blanchfleur. It is an immense work, filling a volume of 659 pages of two columns each, of a quarto edition. The date of this compilation is uncertain. The prologue of the first printed edition, that of 1503, states that it was made at the suggestion and under the auspices of Alphonso X. of Castile, who reigned from 1252 to 1284. The epilogue of a manuscript of the 15th century attributes it to Alphonso XI., who died in 1350, while the epilogue of the oldest manuscript known, that of the 14th century, gives the merit of the undertaking to the son of Alphonso X., Sancho IV., who died in 1295. M. Paris remarks that this latter date is probably the correct one,—the first being too remote, and the second too recent, to be accepted. Both of the epilogues mentioned state that the kings of whom they speak caused the book to be translated from the French into Castillian.

There is no doubt that the Spanish translator possessed a copy of William of Tyre with the third series of continuators, namely, that bringing it down to 1275, as La Gran Conquista follows that edition closely, with additions (according to M. Paris) from a source still...
unknown. M. Paris also conjectures that the French MS. at the
disposal of the arranger of the book may have been a defective one,
as the translation breaks off abruptly in the middle of a sentence,
leaving the narration at the beginning of the year 1271. Ticknor,
in a note on _La Gran Conquista_, in his _History of Spanish Lit-
erature_, says that its closing chapters (those giving an account of
Conrad of Hohenstaufen, and the assassination of Henry, grand-
son of Henry III. of England, at Viterbo) were added by the
Spanish arranger; but a comparison with the original shows that
these details were all literally and exactly translated from the
French.

Of _La Gran Conquista_ three manuscripts are known: two in the
National Library at Madrid, and one in the Royal Library. The
first printed edition was that of Hans Giessen, Salamanca 1503, in
folio. A later edition is that of Madrid 1858, in 8vo.

We have one _English_ translation, that made by William Caxton,
printed for the first time in 1481, and reprinted in the present
volume.

Caxton made his translation from the same edition as _La Gran
Conquista_, viz. that ending with the year 1275.

Riant in his enumeration of the versions of Eracles, mentions a
second English translation contained in manuscript, Reg. 18. B. 26,
of the British Museum, and entitled _The History of the Holy War_.
This manuscript is a paper one, in folio, containing 256 leaves, and
written about the middle of the 16th century, apparently late in the
reign of Henry VIII., instead of in the 15th century, as Riant gives
it, on the authority of the old Royal Catalogue, by Casley, which is
wrong.

This _History of the Holy War_ is a compilation containing:
I. An account of Robert, Duke of Normandy, of his visit to the
Holy Land, and of his son William, afterwards the Conqueror of
England. II. A narration of the events of the First Crusade, taken,
according to the author, from the book of the _Conquest of Jerusalem_,
and from the book of the _Nine Worthies_ in French. III. An
account of the adventures of Richard, Cœur de Lion, in the Third
Crusade. IV. A narration of the prowess of Prince Edward, son
of Henry III., and of the events of the Ninth Crusade. V. A
"Treatie," translated from the French of a certain Frère Hayton,
treating of the different countries of the East, and of their great
rulers and heroes. The book ends with directions for making the
II. English and German Translations of Wm. of Tyre. xvii

journey to the Holy Land, and rules for the behaviour of pilgrims en route.

Part II. of this compilation is supposed by Riant to be a direct translation of the compiler from one of the numerous French editions of William of Tyre. On investigation, however, it proves to be only a condensation of Caxton's translation.

The first chapters consist of a genealogy and biography of Godfrey of Bouillon, taken without doubt, as its author says, from the "IX boke of the IX worthies in french." After this introduction, the history of the First Crusade is taken up, at the departure of Gautier Sans Avoir for the Holy Land, and continued down to the death of Godfrey. The close of this book, at the same point where Caxton ends his translation, together with the fact that all of Caxton's mistakes in translation and in proper names are found in it, is pretty conclusive proof that our unknown arranger did not trouble himself to go back to the French for his materials, but availed himself of Caxton's translation. The matter is very materially abridged, the condensations being made with great ability and discretion by omitting the long rhetorical speeches, and giving their substance in brief. Many minor and unimportant details are also judiciously omitted; the wording is in general exactly that of Caxton.

The fifth part of this compilation, that translated from Frère Haiton, was published in 1526 by Pynson, but the first, third, and fourth seem never to have been printed.

As to the translations into German, it is not easy to decide from the brief descriptions given, whether those mentioned by bibliographers are really translations of William of Tyre, or of the poems of Godfrey of Bouillon, and the Chevalier au Cygne, which were extremely popular in the 13th and 14th centuries, and were rendered into a prose form, which caused them to resemble not a little the genuine history, and to be often confounded with it.

Brunet, in his Manuel du Libraire, under the heading "Godefroy de Bouillon," and M. Reiffenberg (Int. to Le Chevalier au Cygne) mention several German and Flemish translations of the romance of Godefroy de Bouillon. The oldest of these Brunet describes as follows:

"It was printed at Augsburg in 1482, with this title 'Hienach folgt, ein warhaft und bewerte historie wie die turche un andra geschlecht der ungleubigen die cristeltichen Kirche,' etc.; on the back of the last leaf is printed 'Disc warhaftige history hat gedrucht
Hanns Bämler zu Augspurg, und volendet au Mäntag vor Jeorg. Anno Te JM Lxxij jare ze' (1482)."

The book is a Gothic in-folio. It contains 47 half-page wood-cuts. This book is mentioned by Zapf, *History of Printing in Augsburg*, I., p. 65, No. 21, under the title of *Historie von der Kreuz Fahrt*. It was reprinted at Augsburg in 1502 by Lucas Zeissenschmeier under the following title: *Herzog Godfried wie er wider die Türgen und haylen gestritten.*

No reliable analysis of the contents of these books seems ever to have been made; but the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, according to M. Brunet, possesses a Flemish translation of this same work printed at Harlem in 1486, and reprinted in Antwerp in 1510 and 1511. This Flemish copy, however, on the authority of M. Pigeonneau (*Le Cycle de la Croisade et de la Famille de Bouillon*), who has examined it, is not at all a copy of either the poem of *Le Chevalier au Cygne* or of *Godofroid de Bouillon*, or of both combined, but is a translation of *William of Tyre*; so the conclusion is that the Augsburg German editions must also be translations of William's history. Pigeonneau gives the following description of the Flemish book: "It is a small in-quarto, without title, date and name of editor, printed in Gothic characters and ornamented (like the Augsburg edition of 1482) with 47 wood cuts. It commences with these words, 'Hier begint prologue van der Scoene historien Hertoghe Godewort van Boloue.'"

In Italy the first translation into the popular language that I have been able to find, with the limited means of research at my disposal, is that by Lorenza di Firenze, which bears the date of 1347, and the following title, "Il Libro del Passagio di Terra Sancta, et e traslato di francesecho in fiorentino, per Lorenzo di Firenze cittadino." This manuscript is to be found in the Laurentian Library in Florence, is written on vellum, is in folio, and is translated from the second class of William of Tyre's editions. Its designation is Phet. LXI, No. 44. In 1562, at Venice, an Italian translation was printed by Giuseppe Horologgi, entitled, "Historia della guerra sacra de Gerusalemme della terra promissione, et de tutti la Soria ricuperata da christianzi da Guglielmo arcevesco di Tiro, tradotta da Guiseppe Horologgi, Venetia 1562." Guizot in *La Collection des Mémoires sur l'Histoire de France*, vol. xvi, p. 14, mentions a third Italian translation made by one Thomas Baglioni, in 1610, and also published in Venice.
The most curious thing about the history of our book is its re-translation into Latin, at an early date, showing that the French translation must have been considered the original composition, and that the Latin original was comparatively unknown. In 1725, Muratorl published a collection of Italian historians, entitled Rerum Italicarum Scriptores. Among these historians he included Francisco Pipino, a monk of Bologna, who lived in the first half of the 14th century, and wrote in Latin a history of the First Crusade and the events which transpired in the Holy Land between the years 1095 and 1230. His book is introduced by the following statement: "Here commences the history of the Conquest of the Holy Land, which the author has translated from French into Latin." He closes thus: "All these things, about the life and deeds of King John, are taken from the history of Bernard the Treasurer." Pipino translated, as can easily be seen, from a manuscript of the third class, that containing the continuation of Ernoul and Bernard, which he, like everybody else, regarded as the work of Bernard alone.

Riant, in his list of the versions of Eracles, also cites two other Latin re-translations, both-anonymous: one in the University Library at Leyden (Voss 110). This is a paper folio of the 16th century, and is supposed to be a copy of an old MS. written in Italy. The second is at Utrecht, No. 285 of the City Library, a manuscript of the 15th century, although this latter piece of information seems to be regarded as doubtful by M. Riant.

We have also very good evidence that a Latin re-translation was made in England as early as the first half of the 13th century. Ralph, prior at this time of the monastery of Coggeshall in Essex, wrote a history of the Holy Land, which he calls Chronicon Terrae Sancte, describing especially the siege of Jerusalem by Saladin, at which he himself had been present. In order to excuse the lack of details in regard to many previous events in the history of the European establishments in Palestine, Ralph refers his readers to a Latin history treating of these events, and lately translated from the French by the prior of the Holy Trinity in London, a book which could hardly fail to be one of the earlier editions of William of Tyre.

Since the invention of printing, there have been many excellent editions of William of Tyre, both in Latin and French. It was published for the first time in Latin in 1549, in Bâle, in folio, by Phillibert Poyssenot of Dôle. Henri Pantéleon issued a new edition
in the same city in 1564, adding a continuation, also in Latin, written by one John Herold, a learned German of the 16th century, and a native of Hochstädt, in Suabia. Herold narrates the history of the Holy Land from 1185, bringing it down as late as the year 1527. The earliest French edition printed was that published in Paris in 1575, in folio, under the title "Histoire de la guerre Sainte Dite proprement La Franciade orientale, faite latine par Guillaume archevesque de Tyr, et traduit en Français par Gabr. du Préau." In 1611 Bongars published a collection of Latin writers on the Crusades, under the title Gesta Dei per Francos, 2 vol. in folio, in which he included William of Tyre. Between 1724 and 1733, Dom Martène and Dom Durand, benedictines of St. Maur, men of great learning and research, published a second collection of Latin authors on the Crusades, entitled Amplissima Collectio, in 9 vols., folio. The fifth volume of this collection contains the Latin version of William of Tyre.

Other more modern editions of importance are those of Migne, Patrologie Latine Cursus, vol. 201, and Guizot, vols. 16—18 of the Collection des Mémoires sur l'Histoire de France, Paris 1823—25. The Académie des Inscriptions et Belles Lettres commenced in the first half of this century a collection of texts relating to the Crusades, entitled Recueil des Croisades: vols. I and II, which appeared in 1844, contain not only the Latin, but the corresponding French text of William of Tyre. The latest edition in the French language, and without a doubt the most accurate and scholarly that has yet appeared, is that of Paulin Paris, Paris 1879, which contains, however, simply the history as written by William, without any of the various continuations.

III. WILLIAM OF TYRE.

Of William of Tyre, second archbishop of the name, but little is known, except what can be gathered from his own writings. He was born about 1130, without a doubt in Palestine, which, in the prologue to his history, he calls his beloved birth-place, Natalis soli magis tristi dulcedine. He was probably of French descent, as shown by his familiarity with French ways and customs, people and events, although Paulin Paris hazards the supposition that he was an Italian, as he speaks of being called to Rome on one occasion, not only by public business, but also by private affairs.
As to his rank, authorities differ; Prutz (Neues Archiv der Geschicht, etc., vol. viii. p. 93), stating that he was from a middle-class family. Prutz bases his conclusion on a Cartulary of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, of the year 1175, in which the name of a certain Radolphus, brother of the archbishop, William of Tyre, occurs, as belonging to a family not of noble rank. On the other hand, Pastoureut (Hist. Litt. de la France, vol. xiv., p. 588) affirms, on the authority of one Etienne of Lusignan, author of a history of Cyprus, that William of Tyre was related to some of the leading nobles of the kingdom of Jerusalem. However this may be, it is certain that he was brought up in or near Jerusalem, with which he was thoroughly acquainted. Every part of the city is known to him intimately, not only as it was in his day, but as it had been in the past. In mentioning Jerusalem, he always calls it “regio nostra,” and when speaking of anything in connection with that city or its inhabitants, he says “we,” “ours,” to distinguish it from the Principality of Antioch or the Counties of Tripolis and Edessa. On this subject we have also the authority of the unknown continuator of William, who tells us (Book XXIII., chap. 10): “The archbishop of Tyre was called William, and was born in Jerusalem.”

As to the exact date of his birth it is difficult to decide, although both French and German savants have spent much time in investigating this point. We can only judge approximately by incidental remarks that William makes about fresh events in his life. He certainly studied, as a young man, for a time at least, in Europe. He says of himself that he was studying “trans mare” at the time of the divorce of Amalric, king of Jerusalem, from Agnes of Courtenay, daughter of Joscelin II., Count of Edessa in 1162 (Book XIX., chap. 4):

“Quaesivimus sane nos postea diligentur, tamquam circa talia curiosi quo consanguinitas gradu se contingent, qui non de scholis redieramus, sed trans mare, circa liberalium artium adhuc detinebantur studia, quando Hierosolymis haec facta sunt.”

Just where he was studying is only to be conjectured. Pastoureut imagines in Paris, while other authorities remark that he seems very well acquainted with Rome; and the supposition has even been advanced that his studies may have been prosecuted at Constantinople, which theory would account for his thorough knowledge of the Greek language, and also for his acquaintance with Byzantine politics and dignitaries. Wherever he received his education, it was
most certainly unusually thorough and extensive, embracing a range of studies which only a man brought into constant contact with both the Occidental and Oriental civilization and literature would pursue at this epoch.

That he was an excellent Latinist is shown, not only by his fine style, which compares favourably with any other composition that the Middle Ages produced, but by his extended acquaintance with classical Latin literature, citations and references being found in his history from nearly all the best-known Latin authors, such as Ovid, Virgil, Horace, Lucan, Juvenal, Statius, Terence, Cicero, Livy, and Sallust. Of his proficiency in the Greek language there is no doubt. He says himself that he spoke it (Book XIII., chaps. 1 and 2), and the fact that he was sent on more than one diplomatic mission to Constantinople confirms his own statement. He also spoke and read Arabic with ease. In speaking of his History of the Arab Princes, he tells us that he followed mainly Arabian authorities. His explanation of Arabic terms also shows his familiarity with the language.

A young priest of his learning and abilities did not have to wait long for preferment, and in 1163, which must have been immediately after his return from his Western studies, we find him figuring as a Canon of the church in Tyre. Although not living in Jerusalem, William evidently soon became a special favourite with the king, Amalric I., at whose request he was made an archdeacon on the 1st of September, 1167. The little kingdom of Jerusalem was at this time agitated by the plan that Amalric had conceived of subjugating Egypt. For many years a civil war had been waged in that country headed by two rival viziers. As each party was threatened with defeat, it had applied in turn to the Turks or to the Latins for aid, so that Amalric had had an excellent opportunity for obtaining a thorough knowledge both of the wealth and of the weakness of his neighbours. Induced partly by cupidity, and partly by fear of the Turks,—who under the brave Noureddin were becoming more powerful every day,—Amalric decided that the time had come for a serious invasion of Egypt, and, to this end, he sent an embassy to Constantinople to ask for assistance from the Emperor Manuel, whose niece he had lately married. William, the newly-made archdeacon, accompanied this embassy, which was composed of Greeks and Latins. He remained in Constantinople, presumably on business for the king, until October 1168, when he returned to Tyre and to his church duties. His relations to his archbishop seem, however, not
to have been very agreeable, and in a few months, early in 1169, we find him starting for Rome, partly, as he expressly states, on private business, and partly to get out of the way of his unfriendly superior. Towards the close of this same year he returned to Palestine, but not to Tyre, as Amalric offered him the tutorship of his nine-year-old son, afterwards known as Baldwin IV, or Baldwin the Leper. From this time on, William lived in Jerusalem, and seems to have grown daily in favour with the king, already well-disposed towards him.

That William was a kind and able instructor is not to be doubted by any one who reads the accounts that he gives of his royal charge. The most interesting is that of Book XXI., chap. 1:

"The child made great progress in his studies, and more and more gave us reason to centre our hopes upon him. He had a fine figure, and was more skilful in riding and controlling a horse than any of his ancestors had been. He had a good memory, and was fond of conversing. He was economical, and remembered a kindness done to him as well as an injury. He resembled his father, not only in face but in form, and in his walk, and the sound of his voice. His mind was quick, but his tongue was slow. Like his father, also, he was fond of hearing interesting stories told, and was always ready to follow good advice."

The boy seems in return to have conceived a deep attachment for the wise and learned prelate.

In 1173 Amalric died, and Baldwin succeeded to the throne, at the age of 13. The future did not promise tranquillity or happiness to the young king, who was even then afflicted with an incurable and loathsome malady. The political situation of Jerusalem, always one of danger, was at this time more precarious than ever. Weakened by the fruitless attempts of Amalric to conquer Egypt, it was now torn by internal dissensions, as the more powerful barons contended among themselves for the supremacy, foreseeing the speedy death of the sick boy. Amidst this confusion the fortunes of William thrice steadily. He was immediately appointed Chancellor of the Kingdom, as he tells us, Book XXI., chap. 5, "ut esset qui regiarum epistolae curam habent." Very soon after, in 1174, Bishop Radulphus of Bethlehem died, and William was installed in the vacant bishopric. At about the same time he must have been made archdeacon of the church in Nazareth, as the records show him in possession of this dignity in December 1174. The very next year, his old enemy, Frederic Archbishop of Tyre, died, and William was named as his successor. For the next three years we find William occupied with his double
duties as Chancellor and as Archbishop, keeping an attentive eye on the political condition of his land,—which we know from his own words was a constant and ever-increasing source of anxiety to him,—and at the same time defending firmly the rights of his pupil against all encroachments. In September 1178 he went with the dignitaries of the Holy Land to Rome, to the third Council held in St. John Lateran. There he was deputed to draw up a report of the Council, of the number of persons present, of its proceedings, and its decisions. He remained in Rome until September 1179, when he started for home, stopping on the way several months at the court of Manuel, Emperor of Constantinople, on political business, and arriving in Tyre the 6th of July, 1180. On his return, William found his native land in greater need than ever of wise counsels and energetic action, and from this time on he occupied himself much more with statesmanship than with ecclesiastical matters. The rapidly increasing power of Saladin was a source of the greatest apprehension to the feeble little Latin kingdom, and none saw more clearly than William, the dangers that threatened them, or strove more untiringly to prepare for the struggle which was inevitably to come. Although his home was ostensibly in Tyre, he spent all of his time in Jerusalem with the young king.

Late in the year 1182 came the news of Saladin's approach at the head of a powerful army. After ravaging Galilee, Saladin commenced the siege of Beirut. Baldwin, accompanied by William, hastened to Tyre, where a fleet was fitted out to be sent to the rescue of the threatened city. The two, pupil and master, celebrated Christmas at Tyre, and then returned in January 1183 to Jerusalem.

This is the last positive record by himself that we have of William of Tyre. The last chapter of his history mentions the incidents of the spring and summer of this year, without any specific information as to his own movements. Of the date of his death, nothing certain is known. Ernoul, in his continuation, gives the following account of it.—In 1180, Amalric, patriarch of Jerusalem, died. The question of his successor was one of great importance, as the position of spiritual director of the Holy City, and that of guardian of the Holy Sepulchre, was regarded by the whole Christian world as one of the most honourable that the Church had in its gift. Sybilla, mother of the infant Baldwin V., favoured Heraclius of Cesarea, a man of fine personal appearance: "Beau clerc était," says Ernoul. "et pour sa beauté l'ama la mère le roi." His habits, however,
were dissolute, and William opposed him energetically, not only on the ground of his personal unfitness for this lofty position, but also because of a prophecy that the Holy Cross which had been brought back to Jerusalem under a Heraclius, should be taken away again under a Heraclius.

Heraclius, notwithstanding, received the patriarchate. William, convinced of the evils that would result from this unworthy choice at such a critical time, decided to appeal to Rome, and hastened hither to prevent if possible its confirmation. Here he died suddenly, killed, it was supposed, by poison administered by a physician sent after him for that purpose by Heraclius.

As the quaint old French of the 13th century has it, "Quand Eracle sut qu'il alla à Rome, dist a un sien fisicien qu'il alast après, et qu'il l'empoisonast; et cil si fist; si fu mort."

IV. WILLIAM OF TYRE'S LITERARY WORKS.

The literary productions of William of Tyre, of which we have to-day any knowledge, are three in number.

I. The already mentioned Report of the Third Lateran Council, held in Rome in 1179. In his 21st Book, chap. 26, William refers to this Report thus: "If any one would like to know the statutes of this Council, the names, the number, and the titles of the bishops who were present, let him read the account that we wrote of it, at the request of the holy fathers who were there present, which we have caused to be deposited in the archives of the holy church at Tyre, among other books that we have placed there."

II. A History of the Arabian Princes, from the time of Mahomet up to the year 1184. This book which was entitled De Gestis Orientalium Principum, or De Orientalibus Principibus et eorum Actibus, is now unfortunately lost, but in the prologue to his History of the First Crusade, William speaks of having written it, and says that he was urged to undertake it by King Amalric, who procured for him the Arabian books that he used as authorities, especially the history of Seith, patriarch of Alexandria, which he followed mainly.

"Cujus etiam rogatu ipso Arabica exempleria menestrande alium historiam, a tempore seductoris Mahumeth usque in hunc annum, qui est nobis ad incarnatione Domini M.C.L.XXXXIV, per Annos quingentos septuaginta decurrentem conscripsimus, autorem maxime seuti virum venerabilem Seith, filium Patrici, Alexandrinum patriarchum."
IV. William of Tyre's Literary Works.

He also mentions this same work in several other places, namely, Book I. chap. 3, Book XIX. chapters 15 and 21.

This "venerabilem Seith" is, according to the best authorities, Said Ibn Batrik, born in Egypt in 879. He was a celebrated physician, and was for many years Patriarch of Alexandria. His book was written in Arabic, and contained a history of the world, from the time of Adam up to the year 326 of the Hegira, that is, up to 937 A.D. The Arabic word Said or Seith, meaning "the fortunate one," was transformed into Eutychius, in Greek; and the same history was published in a Latin and Arabic edition, at Oxford, in the 17th century, by one Pococke, under the title S. Eutychii Patriarchi Alexandrini Annales Lat. et Arab., ed. Pococke, Oxon. 1658.

III. William’s third work was his History of the First Crusade and of the Establishments founded in the East by the Crusaders, or, as the title runs—Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis Gestarum. This is really the great work of his life, and the work on which his literary fame rests. Soon after his return from his Eastern studies, in 1163, he conceived the plan of writing a truthful and unbiased history of Latin affairs in the East. King Amadric encouraged him also in this literary undertaking, and volunteered to assist him in every way possible. The first eleven books were finished, the internal evidence shows us, before the summer of 1173; book fourteen, after William was made Archbishop; and the first chapter of the unfinished twenty-third book must have been written in the last year of his life. According to these data, the book occupied him for twenty years.

When we consider William of Tyre’s merits as a historian critically, and compare him with other writers of the same period, it is not difficult to see that he far surpasses them all, and that his work is, in fact, the first history, in the modern sense of the word, and the best, that the Middle Ages have to show us. The list of authors who have treated of the same subject is a long one, but none are at all worthy to be compared with William, either in learning, ability, style, or arrangement of materials. We have, first, the narratives of those men who were themselves eye-witnesses of the events they record— diffuse, ill-arranged chronicles, generally written from a partisan standpoint, to celebrate the prowess and doughty deeds either of one great noble or hero, or of one nation or section of a nation. Under this head may be ranked Raymond of Agiles, who accompanied
the Count of Toulouse on the First Crusade. Naturally, his liege lord and the hot-headed superstitious Provençals have the leading places in his account of things. Then comes an anonymous writer, attached probably to Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum, whose adventures and prowess he narrates at length. Foucher of Chartres is the next in order, with his chronicle, which he calls Gesta Peregrinantium Francorum. Foucher started for the Holy Land in the suite of Robert of Normandy and Steven of Blois, but soon left them for Baldwin, the brother of Godfrey of Boulogne, whom he followed to Edessa, so that his narrative recounts the deeds and conquests of the North Frenchmen and Flemish.

In many instances these accounts disagree totally, and the aim of their authors seems to be, not so much to give a fair, dispassionate, accurate statement of what happened, as to make everything as marvellous and wonderful as possible. As to the historians who were not eye-witnesses—of whom Albert of Aix (Albertus Aquensis) is a fair sample—they seem to have copied all the others, without even noticing the incongruities in the narrations that they were combining, or without having the least idea of regarding their sources with any critical attention.

William's idea of the manner in which a history should be written was very different from this. In the first place, the scope of his work was much greater, including not only an account of the First Crusade, but of almost a century of French rule in the Orient. Instead of plunging in medias res, he went systematically to work, and gave, in the first place, a clear, well-arranged description of the state of things in the East, previous to the First Crusade, with a logical analysis of the causes leading up to that great movement. As to his sources, William states in his Preface, that Books I. to XV. are based on oral communications of old people, on letters and other reliable documents. He also states further, that he has used no previous authorities: "In hoc véro nullam aut Graecam, aut Arabicam habentes prodeceun scripturam, solis traditionibus instructi, exceptis paucis quæ ipsi oculata fide conspeximus narrationis seriem ordinavimus."

Notwithstanding this elaborate disclaimer, it is certain that William was acquainted with all previous histories of the Crusades. Von Sybel, the learned German historian of the First Crusade, has amused himself by comparing William's history with those of Albert of Aix, Foucher of Chartres, Raymond of Agiles, and Tudebodus, and has clearly demonstrated that William followed sometimes one,
sometimes another of these authorities for the first half, at least, of his work. But this much must be said for him, that he followed with discrimination, always selecting the author who, in his judgment, would be most likely to have gotten the correct account of an event, and always suppressing whatever, to his mind, savoured of exaggeration, or appealed too strongly to the credulity or superstition of his time—in a word, he weighed carefully his authorities, and strove to be painstaking, critical, and impartial.

When it came to the later period of his history—to that of his own time—he was equally exacting in respect of the testimony of eye-witnesses, always, if possible, getting more than one account of an event or a transaction. His historical and geographical data are especially accurate and good. He also seems to have some idea of the philosophy of history, and tries to bring out clearly the relations of cause and effect in his narration of events. His style is excellent. Although using the Latin of the Middle Ages, it was founded on the best Latin models, with which, as we have already seen, he was thoroughly familiar. His matter is well arranged, and his sentences clear. His great fault is a certain striving after rhetorical effect. He is fond of stately, well-sounding sentences, and fine phrases, which he employs with effect in his descriptions of battles and sieges. The merits of a style of this kind are seen but dimly through the medium of 15th-century English, especially when we consider, that, often owing to mistranslation, or to paleographic errors, the long sentences which were so sonorous in Latin, have suffered a reductio ad absurdum, and have lost not only their pristine literary grace, but even their original meanings. Still, notwithstanding these drawbacks, no one can read Caxton's Godofroye of Bologne, translation of a translation as it is, without feeling the vigour, sincerity, and culture of its far-away author, whose character the learned Thomas Fuller long ago so admirably summed up, in the Preface to his Holy War:

"He was a pious man, and an excellent scholar, skilled in all the learned Oriental tongues, besides the Dutch and French, his native tongue—a moderate and faithful writer; treasurer he was of all the money contributed to the Holy War, chancellor of his kingdom, employed in several embassies in the West; present at the Lateran Council, the acts whereof he did record; cardinal he might have been, but he refused it; in a word, unhappy only that he lived in that age, though that age was happy that he lived in it."
V. GODFREY OF BOUILLON.

Godfrey of Bouillon is to us of the 19th century a very shadowy personage, known chiefly as one of the leading characters in Tasso's *Jerusalem Delivered*, and it would certainly not occur to us, were we called upon to name the world's greatest heroes, to place him high up in the list.

As the dispassionate modern judge reads the histories of the First Crusade, it seems to him that there are half a dozen other princes at least who deserve as much consideration and admiration as Godfrey: the clever scheming Bohemond, the chivalrous Tancred, the impetuous Count of Toulouse, and even Godfrey's own brother, the sensible and energetic Baldwin, all, according to the records, seem to have done as good service; all seem to have played as important a part, and to have distinguished themselves as much as Godfrey of Bouillon. But it is very evident that William of Tyre does not think so, nor does Caxton, nor any of the preceding or subsequent historians of the Crusades.

Young, chivalrous, and sincerely religious, Godfrey of Bouillon seems from the very beginning of the First Crusade to have aroused the popular admiration, and to have been singled out from among his peers to become the subject of tradition, legend and poetry. In fact, by common consent he was regarded as the central figure of the Crusades; and there is no doubt that Caxton only voices the general opinion of his time when he "stalls" him in "thyrde stalle of the moost worthy of Cristen men," and ranks him as the world's greatest hero since Arthur and Charlemagne. Of course, as is the case with all great men who live in an uneducated and uncivilized age, a series of traditions and legends soon grew up around his name. Even less than a hundred years after his death, at the time that William of Tyre wrote his history, these traditions and legends were widely spread. Over some of them the discriminating William shakes his head, in particular, wisely refusing to credit the story of the swan, which strangely enough, after having been brought from the East by Oriental story-tellers, had attached itself to the family of Bouillon. Of this very legend, William says, "*Praeterimus deique studiose livet id verum fuisse plurimorum, astruat narratio cygni fabulam, unde vulgo dicitur, somentiram eis fuisse originem, eo quod a vero videatur dejicere talis assertio."
Other traditions, equally false but more probable and natural, he accepts, and bravely incorporates in the interesting little sketch which he gives us of the life of Godfrey, in the ninth book of his history, when narrating the circumstances of the choice of the first king of Jerusalem. Indeed, late investigations have shown that much of the biography of Godfrey of Bouillon which has been regarded as authentic, is either without any foundation in fact, or has been obtained from unreliable sources. In the few pages following, I give a brief account of what is really known of the life of Godfrey of Bouillon. This account, although containing information regarding our hero's early life—from outside sources—yet on the whole follows William of Tyre, and fulfils the double purpose of giving a brief biography of Godfrey of Bouillon, and, at the same time, a short résumé of Caxton's book, from the point where Godfrey puts on the cross, to start for the Holy Land.

Godfrey of Bouillon—or "Boloyne," as Caxton incorrectly calls him—was the second son of Eustache, count of Boulogne-sur-Mer, and Ida, sister of the hump-backed Godfrey, duke of Lower Lorraine. William, following the authority of William of Malmesbury, makes Godfrey the eldest son of his parents, but Ordericus Vitalis and other contemporary historians state that he was the second son. In the life of his mother Ida (Acta Sanctorum, ad XIII April, p. 141), we find also that Godfrey is given as her second son. He was of most distinguished birth and lineage, as both his father and his mother traced their descent back to Charlemagne. Eustache and Ida had two other sons; one older, named after his father, Eustache, succeeded to the estates and title of Count of Boulogne; another, younger, named Baldwin, became king of Jerusalem after Godfrey's death. William of Tyre assigns to Ida a fourth son, named William, who remains at home with his mother, while his three brothers are fighting in the Holy Land, but no reliable authority for the truth of this statement has ever been found. Ida had no daughter, although tradition designates a sister of Godfrey of Bouillon as the unfortunate and ill-used wife of Henry IV, of Germany.

The year of Godfrey's birth is not positively known, but its most probable date is 1060. His birth-place is equally uncertain, some authorities stating that he was born in Baisy, Brabant, thus making him a German subject both by birth and adoption. Most of the later historians and biographers have, however, decided in favour of Boulogne-sur-Mer, in France, his father's ancestral home. Here the
three boys were very carefully reared by their pious and intelligent mother, whose teachings seem to have had a life-long influence over them all.

Godfrey, who at an early age was adopted by his childless uncle Godfrey, duke of Lower Lorraine, spent much of his childhood in Brabant, and at the age of seventeen succeeded to the March of Antwerp and all his uncle's allodial possessions. Among these was the family castle of Bouillon, from which he took his title, which curiously enough Caxton has altered into "Boloyne," confounding it evidently with that of his father and brother in France. The early manhood of Godfrey, up to the call for the First Crusade, as narrated by enthusiastic biographers, and repeated to a certain extent by William of Tyre, represents him already as a brilliant, irresistible hero. According to these traditions, Godfrey appears at the court of the Emperor of Germany, surrounded by glittering retainers. Henry, impressed by the stately manner and beautiful person of the youthful hero, inquires "Who is this noble-looking knight?" and kisses him when he learns his name, twice on the chin and cheek. Then follows a series of knightly deeds. Godfrey succours the poor orphan, protects the friendless, and fights a duel for part of his heritage unjustly claimed by a relative. He is chosen from all the German nobles to carry the banner of his emperor against Rudolph of Suabia, and kills this same Rudolph on the field of battle. Then comes the famous journey to Rome, where Henry besieges the Pope, and Godfrey, after wonderful deeds of valour, is the first to enter the city. Here, tradition says, heated by battle, he drank too freely of wine, and was in consequence seized with a fever, which lasted until he put on the cross for the First Crusade, when he immediately became well. William of Malmesbury, who relates the story, states that Godfrey had no return of his malady during all the exposures of the First Crusade, until Jerusalem was taken, and a Christian government thoroughly established; then, his mission on earth being fulfilled, God permitted his fever to seize him again so violently, that in a few days he died of it. All of these stories except the last are plausible, and probable enough, but we do not find authorities to confirm them. Godfrey's life up to the time of the First Crusade—as nearly as can be gathered from documents and authentic records—was that of an ordinary young knight of good family. He was courageous and upright, and occupied himself chiefly in protecting his possessions from powerful and greedy neighbours, and in attend-
ing to his own affairs. His chief care seems to have been to advance to the best of his ability his own worldly interests; and there seems to have been very little manifestation of religious enthusiasm, or indeed of those heroic qualities which were soon to develop him into a world-renowned hero, and obtain for him honours which the world esteemed as among the greatest that could be conferred upon mortal man. This much is really known of him. He had a quarrel with Count Theodore of Flammes, whom he took prisoner, and kept in durance vile for the rest of his life. When only seventeen, he was besieged in the Castle of Bouillon, just after his uncle's death, by Albert count of Namur, and by the Bishop of Verdun. Against this combined attack Godfrey defended his fortress with skill and energy. The lords of Bouillon up to 1076 were also counts of Verdun, but after this time, Bishop Theoderic wished to have the title and the property bestowed upon Albert of Namur. Godfrey naturally opposed this intention, and not only protected himself and thwarted their purpose, but laid waste the diocese of the Bishop, and harassed him and his ally in every possible way. That Godfrey did go to Rome, to aid the Emperor against the Pope, seems definitely established, and as a reward for his services, in 1089, Henry bestowed upon him the duchy of Lower Lorraine, which had been refused him after the death of his uncle.

When the call for the First Crusade came in 1095, from Urban II, at the council of Clermont, Godfrey decided at once to go, and set about his preparations with such energy that he was the first of the great princes ready to start, although his retinue was one of the largest, for under his standard were ranged 10,000 horsemen and 80,000 infantry. At this time, it is certain that he had no idea of devoting his life to the conquest of Jerusalem, and no intention of expatriating himself for ever. He sold his castles of Stenay and Monzon to the Bishop of Verdun, with whom he seems to have been on good terms again; he also mortgaged the Seignory of Bouillon to the Bishop of Liege, but on the express condition that he himself, or three of his nearest heirs especially named, might buy the property back within fourteen years. The price fixed was 1300 silver marks, and three gold marks. This price is given by Gilles d'Arval. Ordericus Vitalis says that he received 7000 marks of silver for them, while Albert d'Aix makes it only 1500. The bishop had a great deal of difficulty in raising this large sum of money, and even went so far as to despoil the shrine of St. Lambert, the altar, the
pulpit, and the sacerdotal vestments, of their gold and precious stones, besides taking everything valuable that he could lay his hands on in the convents and monasteries of his diocese.

The fact that Godfrey made a series of unusually rich donations to different churches and religious houses between the years 1090 and 1096 is well authenticated. In 1090 the records show that he restored to the Abbey of Gorze, in the diocese of Metz, the church of St. Dagobert at Stenay. In 1096 he gave many large gifts to this same church in concert with his brother Baldwin. In 1094, in concert with his mother and brothers, he presented the church of Baisy to the monastery of St. Pierre at Bouillon. He also founded at Antwerp the chapter of St. Michel, transferred later to the church of Notre Dame. In 1096 he assigned five manors to the monastery of Afflighem, situated near Genappe; and the same year the family, as a whole, gave the church of Genappe, with all its revenues, to the same monastery. Godfrey also gave the castle of Falkenstein to the church of Notre Dame at Verdun, and presented the chapter of St. Jervais, at Maestricht, with an estate that he possessed on the Meuse.

Godfrey's worldly and religious affairs thus being all put in order, as we see, he finished his preparations and started for the Holy Land in August 1096, with his brothers Eustache and Baldwin. As for the oft-repeated statement that Godfrey was the officially appointed leader of the First Crusade, there is no truth in it. The Papal Legate, Bishop Adhemar of Puy, was the only person to whom any authority had in any sense been officially delegated; but there was no one particular leader of this great movement in the strict sense of the word; each great prince prepared his own outfit, and gathered his army, and set out, when and how it best pleased him. If Godfrey has always been considered the central figure of the First Crusade, it is owing not to his political position, but to his moral influence and personal character, probably because it was instinctively felt that he, more than any other of the great princes, was in sympathy with the tendencies and motives that called it into being.

Godfrey's journey to Constantinople, which city Adhemar had chosen as the rendezvous of all the princes, was not an easy one. He found all the countries through which he had to pass excited and unfriendly, owing to the outrages which had been perpetrated upon their inhabitants by the undisciplined bands of common people that had preceded him. Following the Danube, he arrived peacefully
enough at the boundaries of Hungary. Here however he encountered great difficulties, so that it took him the whole month of September to traverse that country. The first part of November he crossed Bulgaria, and finally reached Nissa, where he received friendly messages from the Greek emperor Alexis, which he accepted in good faith. When he came to Phillipopolis, however, he learned that Hugh of Vermandois, brother of the king of France, who had preceded him to Constantinople by another route, instead of being treated by the Greeks with the consideration due to his lofty rank, was held a prisoner by the Emperor. Indignant at this treatment, Godfrey—who had scrupulously refrained from molesting the inhabitants of the countries through which he passed—immediately gave his men licence to pillage the land. This summary proceeding soon brought the Emperor to his senses, and he begged Hugh's pardon for his imprisonment, and agreed to set him free as soon as the French army should arrive in front of Constantinople. Not being able to obtain his ends by force, the crafty Alexis then changed his tactics, and by flattery and gifts soon persuaded Hugh, who was a vain young prince, to take the oath of allegiance to him—hoping to induce all the other barons and princes to follow this example. Godfrey was the next to arrive; but on being summoned to swear fealty and obedience to the Emperor, he utterly refused to do so, exclaiming reproachfully to Hugh, who came to him a second time to persuade him to take this step, "What! you, a king's son, have become a slave also!" But as the winter wore on, and Alexis showed himself so unfriendly, Godfrey began to fear that, unless this concession were made, they might be long delayed in their undertaking, or indeed be hindered altogether from going on to Jerusalem. Albert of Aix, who gives a fuller report of these negotiations than William of Tyre, states that finally Godfrey consented to become Alexis' liege man, rather than bring about an open rupture with him, saying that he had not left home to overturn Christian kingdoms, but to get the Emperor's help in carrying Christian weapons against Jerusalem. This matter being settled the barons and princes decided to leave Constantinople, and to continue on their holy journey. The first city of importance beyond Constantinople on Mussulman territory was Nicaea, the capital of Bithynia, then under the rule of Solyman's son David, surnamed Kilidge-Arslan, or the Sword of the Spirit. This town, although strongly fortified, the Crusaders resolved to besiege. Godfrey fought valiantly, and performed wonderful deeds
of valour, but he was not successful as the director of this siege. Nothing was really accomplished before Nicaea until Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum, arrived. He infused new life and energy into everything, and soon forced Kilidge-Arslan to surrender.

In accordance with the oath that they had sworn at Constantinople, the Crusaders handed the city over to Alexis, on the 27th of June, 1097. Having rested themselves thoroughly, they set off again for Syria by way of Phrygia, Cilicia, and the passes of the Taurus. Very unwisely the army divided, the main body, under Godfrey, Raymond of Toulouse, Adhemar, and Hugh of Vermandois, crossing the plain of Dorylaeum, while a smaller force, commanded by the Duke of Normandy, Bohemond, and Tancred, turned off to the left. Kilidge-Arslan, after his flight from Nicaea, nothing daunted by his defeat, had collected an army of about 200,000 men, and had returned, hoping to retrieve his misfortunes. As soon as he learned of the division of the army of his opponents, he determined to attack the smaller body. A terrible slaughter ensued. The Saracens were on the point of gaining a complete victory, when the main army came up to the rescue, preceded by Godfrey and fifty knights, who had been too impatient to wait for their slower-moving companions. In a moment the situation was changed. The Saracens were thoroughly routed, and fled in every direction, leaving their tents and a rich booty to the victors.

The Crusaders continued their route after their victory, through an arid and desolate country, suffering incredible tortures from hunger, thirst, and heat; and it was not until they arrived in Armenia that relief was obtained. Here Baldwin left the main body of the army in order to besiege Edessa, which seemed to him too tempting a piece of booty to be left behind, while Godfrey and the other princes marched towards Antioch in Syria, which great and powerful city they realized must be taken before they could go on to Jerusalem.

Bagi Sijan, a Seljoucide prince, was at this time Emir of Antioch. For several years the whole Mahommedan world had been convulsed by internal religious dissensions. The two parties, whose heads resided respectively in Egypt and Bagdad, were struggling for the mastery in Palestine. Bagi Sijan,—or Baghistan, as he is called in French and English Chronicles,—who sympathized with the Fatimides or Egyptian faction, was absent from Antioch as the Crusaders approached, having gone with the princes of Aleppo and Jerusalem.
against Emessa, which was occupied by the opposite faction. On hearing the news of the Christians' arrival, he speedily returned to Antioch, and realizing his danger, sent for aid in all directions, including even those foes against whom but the day before he had been arrayed in arms.

The Crusaders, after some debate, decided to attempt the siege of Antioch immediately, and took up their position around its walls, notwithstanding the fact that they had not enough men to invest them entirely. This was a siege in which, strange to say, the besiegers suffered infinitely more than the besieged. Antioch was well provisioned, while the country round about had been so thoroughly pillaged and laid waste, that it was with extreme difficulty that the Christians could obtain the necessities of life. Added to this was the discomfort of a rainy season, so long continued that their very tents rotted over their heads. As a natural consequence of this state of things, a frightful epidemic broke out, which reduced their numbers with startling rapidity, and enfeebled and discouraged those who were left alive. It was not until spring returned, and better weather came, that anything like energy showed itself among the besiegers.

In all this trouble Godfrey bore himself like a Christian hero, suffering patiently with the others, and signalizing himself by deeds of valour and courage. One of his exhibitions of strength and bravery is reported in more than one of the old chronicles. A fleet of Genoese and Pisans having anchored in the port of St. Simon, the Crusaders, in all haste and joy, sent a body of men to receive the provisions and news that they brought, and to escort back to Antioch the sailors and carpenters who were to assist them in constructing besieging engines. As the little body of men returned, it was attacked and routed by a party of Saracens, who were lying in wait for them. Godfrey, hearing of the engagement, hastened to the spot with a large detachment of men. Bagi Sijan, who was standing on one of the towers of Antioch, rejoicing over the defeat of the Christians, seeing his own men, in turn, in danger, sent a party out from the town to their assistance. The mêlée became general, and the fighting desperate on both sides. The Christian princes smote prodigious blows, and performed wonderful deeds of valour. Robert of Normandy split the head of one of his opponents to the shoulder with a single stroke, but Godfrey surpassed even that. A huge Saracen engaged with him, and shivered his shield with the first blow.
Godfrey, rising in his stirrups, calmly cut his adversary in two across the middle with one stroke, so that the upper half of the man fell to the ground, leaving the lower half still sitting on the horse.

Thus for months the Crusaders invested Antioch, and at the end of this time would have been no nearer accomplishing their purpose than at the beginning, had not one Emir Feirus, as William of Tyre calls him, a renegade Armenian of wealth and influence in Antioch, turned traitor, and delivered the city into their hands, on condition that Bohemond of Tarentum should be its prince and ruler. Once inside the walls, the Christians, infuriated by the long resistance, and exasperated by their own sufferings, slaughtered the greater part of the inhabitants, young and old indiscriminately, as many as six thousand perishing in a single night. But Godfrey and the other princes had but a short time to exult over their success. It will be remembered that Bagi-Sijan at the commencement of the siege sent to all the great Mahommedan princes for aid. To his appeal they did not turn a deaf ear; and only three days after the Christians entered Antioch, on the 6th of June, Kerboga, prince of Mosul, presented himself before its gates, with an army estimated variously at from 300,000 to 600,000 men, and the besiegers became in turn the besieged. On the horrors of that siege it is difficult to dwell. It is enough to say, that after being shut up three weeks in a city stripped of provisions and stores of every kind, the Crusaders, rendered desperate by famine and misery, marched out against Kerboga and his army—headed by Godfrey and Tancred, and their fellow peers—decided to die by the sword rather than by disease and hunger. Inspired by their necessities, and uplifted by their religious faith, the weak and enfeebled men fought as only desperate men can fight, and were rewarded by complete victory. They remained masters of the field, while the vast army of Kerboga was scattered to the four winds of heaven. This battle was the end of any effective opposition to the onward march of the Crusaders; but the hardships that they had endured seemed for the time to have quenched the ardour of the leaders of the army, for it was not until late in the following winter, after the repeated solicitations of the common people, that the princes and great barons could be persuaded to leave their private expeditions against adjacent cities, and start on their way towards Jerusalem. Godfrey, Eustache, and Robert of Flanders did not get under way until spring.
Their route lay along the sea now, through such a beautiful and fertile country, that notwithstanding the murmurs of the common people, who were impatient to reach their journey's end, the leaders could not resist the temptation to stop and lay siege to some of the wealthy towns near by. Godfrey besieged Gibel, while Raymond of Toulouse attacked Archas. In this way some time was consumed, so that it was not until the end of May that the forces were all united again, this time, however, with a firm determination to let nothing hinder them from proceeding directly to Jerusalem.

Sickness and war had made terrible havoc among their number, so that of the hundreds of thousands who had started on this undertaking, scarce fifty thousand were now left. The excitement was tremendous as they approached the Holy City. The last night, many of the men, unable to restrain their impatience, marched the whole night through, and at daybreak, June 10th, 1099, saw the walls and towers of Jerusalem rise up before them. Never before or since, in the history of the world, probably, has a scene of such intense emotion, on so large a scale, been seen, or have such transports of joy and reverence been witnessed. Strong, stalwart men, who had endured untold suffering and privations to behold this sight, sobbed aloud; some cast themselves upon their knees in prayer; others kissed the earth on which they stood, in an ecstasy of rejoicing.

The very next day energetic preparations were made for the assault of the city. To each of the princes was assigned a portion of the walls, to invest. Godfrey, with his brother Eustache and his cousin Baldwin du Bourg, occupied the north-west side, between the gate of Damascus and the gate of Jaffa, which included the spot most precious to them all, the inclosure of Mount Calvary. The Saracens—well provisioned, and thoroughly prepared for a long siege—had not only stripped the country around of everything eatable, but had filled up all the wells and cisterns for a long distance, so that in a few days the besiegers suffered both from hunger and thirst. Nothing daunted, they continued their siege with all the fire of religious enthusiasts; and recognizing the fact that their unaided strength could not accomplish their purpose, they set themselves systematically and patiently about building the necessary engines for making a decisive attack. For weeks they laboured untiringly, until at length everything that the military science of the time could devise, with the limited means and material at their disposal, was
V. The Life of Godfrey of Bouillon. King of Jerusalem. xxxix

ready. On Thursday, July the 14th, the assault was commenced. For two days the conflict was terrible; both sides fought with the energy of desperation, until late on Friday afternoon, when the two brothers Lethold and Engelbert of Tournai, followed by Godfrey of Bouillon, set foot upon the walls of Jerusalem. In an incredibly short space of time Godfrey and his men were down in the city, and the gates were thrown open. The Crusaders massacred their enemies without mercy, and blood ran in torrents to their knees in the street.

But Godfrey, with his deep religious sentiment, felt that prayer rather than bloodshed befitted their first hours in Jerusalem, and set the example to the others by withdrawing from the carnage, and going barefooted, clad simply in a clean linen garment, to the sepulchre of our Lord, to return thanks that He had thus allowed them to accomplish their pilgrimage and fulfil their vows. Godfrey was followed by all; weapons and bloody garments were laid aside, and barefooted, with heads reverently uncovered, all marched to the Church of the Resurrection, weeping tears of joy, praying and singing songs of penitence and rejoicing.

The victory now obtained was complete, but there was no time to sit idly, or even to rest after their long labours. The city was cleared of its dead; and after that, the first care of the Crusaders was to organize a Christian government, and above all to choose a fitting ruler, a man capable of leading them in war, and of controlling and guiding them in peace. After due deliberation and careful inquiry into the character and ability of each of the great barons, on July 23rd they elected Godfrey of Bouillon king of Jerusalem, and would have proceeded immediately to crown him, had not that pious and reverential prince unconditionally refused the honour. Their leader and duke he was willing to be, "but God forbid," said he, "that I should be crowned with a crown of gold, where my Saviour bore a crown of thorns." At least, this is the report of the deliberations and their result, as given by William of Tyre, who followed Albert of Aix. According to Raymond of Agiles, the crown was first offered to Raymond of Toulouse, who refused it in the words here attributed to Godfrey. Other authorities state that the crown was also offered to Robert of Normandy, who in turn refused it, and that then the choice fell upon Godfrey of Bouillon. Whether this be true or not, it is certain that the choice once made, all were unanimously pleased and contented with it; the common people, especially, regarded it as
the result of an inspiration from heaven. Little opportunity was offered for festivities in honour of the new king, as an Egyptian army, 300,000 strong, under the Emir Afdal, was advancing against them. So confident of victory were the Moslems, that they were even bringing with them, it was reported, ropes or chains with which to bind their prisoners. At the moment that Godfrey took command of the little army of the Crusaders, the enemy were already traversing Gaza, the ancient land of the Philistines. He sent immediately for Tancred and Eustache, who were away in Naplouse, and prepared to go out against the foe, as he saw that to allow themselves to be besieged in Jerusalem would only repeat the horrors of Antioch. At first, Robert of Normandy and Raymond of Toulouse refused to join the outgoing troops, but soon, seeing the imminent danger that threatened them, yielded, and united with the others. The two armies met near Askalon, Godfrey at the head of scarce 20,000 men. But such was their enthusiasm and bravery that nothing could withstand them, and the vast army of Afdal was gloriously routed. This battle firmly established the Latins in Palestine; and the great princes, feeling that they had fulfilled their vows, started one after another for home, leaving Godfrey with a few thousand men to solve the difficult problem of governing, protecting, and increasing his newly-founded domain.

Of the events of Godfrey's reign there is but little to say. He ruled wisely, strengthening himself in every possible way, and making good laws both for the governing and the governed. He died after one short year of kingship on July 18, 1100, and was buried on Mount Calvary, near the Saviour whom, in life, he had striven with reverence and single-heartedness to serve. Tradition gives us more than one version of the cause of his death. One authority tells us that he died from eating some poisoned fruit, presented by the neighbouring Emir of Caesarea; another states that he was poisoned by Dagobert, the new bishop of Jerusalem; but neither of these two stories seems to be any more reliable than the quartan-fever legend already mentioned.

Thus perished, in the flower of his age, the man who above all others was the leading figure in the great religious movements of the 11th and 12th centuries.

Caxton's reasons for presenting the English-speaking and reading world with a translation of William of Tyre's history, he gives us in his simple preface. He wishes to arouse his countrymen to a
renewed interest in the Holy Land, and above all to make them familiar with the noble deeds and "hye courageous faytes" of Godfrey of Bouillon. As Godfrey disappears from the pages of William's history at this point, so Caxton abruptly ends his translation, without other comment than the date when the work was finished. It may be wondered that Caxton makes no mention of William of Tyre, either in his preface, or at the close of the book; but there is no reason to believe that he, any more than the other editors and translators, knew who the real author of the work was, the identity of these editions and translations with the Latin text of William of Tyre, being a discovery which it was reserved for modern scholars to make.
GODFREY OF BULLOGNE,

OR

THE SIEGE AND CONQUESTE OF JHERUSALEM.

CAXTON, 1481. THE PROLOGUE.

He hye couragyous faytes / And valaunt actes of noble, Illus-
trous and vertuous personnes, ben dignie to be recounted / put in memorye / and wretone, to themede that ther may be gyuen to them name Immortal, by souerayn laude and preysyng,

And also for to meene and tenflawme the hertes of the Redars and hierers, for teshewe and flee werkes vycious, dishonnest and vytuperable / And for tempryse and accomplyshe enterpryses honnestes, and werkes of gloryous meryte, to lyue in remembraunce perpetuel / for as it is so, that thystoryagraphe haue wretone many a noble hystorye, as wel in metre as in prose, By whiche thactes & noble fayttes of thauncyent conquerours ben had in remem-

braunce, and remayne in grete, large / and aourned volumes / and so shal abyde in perpetuel memorye, to thentente that gloryous Prynces and hye men of noble and vertuouse courage, shold take ensample tempryse werkys leeful and honneste / Fyrst, for goddes quarrell/in mayntenynge oure\(^1\) fayth and the libertees of holy chyrche,

For the recuperacion of the holy land, whiche our blessyd lord Ihesu Criste hath halowed by his blessyd presence humayne / and by shedying therin for oure redemption his precious blood ; for the releef of suche cristen men as there dwelle in grete myserye and thraldomy, And also for the defence of theyr Royannes, Londes, Enherytages / and subgettes. And for thyse causes tendencouyre theym in theyr noble persones / with alle theyr puysseannees and power, tadresse and remyse theym in theyr auncyent Fraunchyses and lyberte / Acondlyng\(^2\) to that we fynde wretone in holy scripture of many noble histories, which were here ouer to reherce. But in especial of thre noble and mooste worthy of alle other, that 28 is to wytte, fyrst of duc Issue, that noble prynee / whiche laddde and

1 \(\text{Orig. once.}\)

GODFREY.
condyuyd the Childeren of Izrahel, the chosen people of God, oute of deserte in to the londe of promyssyon, the Londe flowyng Mylke and hony. Secondly, of Danyel the Kynge and holy Prophete / Whome God chaas after his herte, And achyeng many grete 4 Bataylles, gouernuyng the sayd chosen people of God by the space of fourty yeris / And the thyrde of the Noble Judas Machabeus; how he defended the sayd people in fghtyng many and mercuyllous bataylles, for veray zcelle and lone of his lawe, and mayntenying of 8 the same vnto the deth, for which causes a-forsayd, the names of thyes thre ahyde perpetuall, for thre of the moste beste and Nobleste of the Lewys / And in the nombre of 1 the moost digny and moost worthy / a Nd by cause valyaunce and prowesse is remembryd among the gentyles & payn[e]mes, as among thebrewes, I fynde wretyn of the incredible, chetarous prowesse of the noble and valyant Hector of troye, whos excellent actes wryten / Ouyde, Homer, Virgyle, 16 Dares, Dyctes and other dynerse, and eche better than other, re-herchyng his noble vertues / strengthe and humanyte / Secondly, of Alysaundre the grete kynge of Macedone, which domyned and had to hym obeyssant the vnyuersal world ; And the thyrde, the noble 20 Julysus Cezar, Emperor of Rome, whos noble actes ben wretyn by poetes, as lucan / stace and other / And dayly remembryd as newe and fresshe as he yet lynydf / whiche thre ben settte as for the moost worthy among the gentyles and paynems. 24 Ow let vs thenne remembre what hystoryes ben wretyn of
Cristen men, of whom ther be many wretyn. But in especial, as for the best and worthyest, I fynde fyrst the gloryuous / most excellent in his tyme / and fyrst founder of the round table / Kyng 28 Arthur, kyng of the brytons, that tyme regnyng in this Royanme / of whos retenne were many noble Kynges, Prynces / lordses and knyghtes, of which the noblest were knyghtes of the round table, of whos actes and historyes there be large volumes, and bookes grete 32 plente and many / O blessyd lord, when I remembre the grete and many volumes of seynt graal / ghalehot, & launcelotte de lake / Gawayn, percual / Lyonel / and tristram, and many other, of whom were ouer longe to reherce / and also to me vnknowen! But 36 thystorye of the sayd Arthur is so gloryuous and shynyng, that he is stalled in the fyrst place of the moost nobly / beste and worthye of the cristen men. Secondly, of Charlemayn, the grete Emperor"
of Allemayne, and kyng of France / whos noble actes and conquestes ben wretin in large volumes with the noble faytes and actes of his doue piers, that is to saye, Rowlond and olyuer / with the 4 other / whos name and renomme abydeth also perpetuel, and is stalled in the second place emong the most worthy of Cristen men.

Of alle thisse histories afor reherced, the bookes and volumes ben had in latyn, ffrensshe and Englysshe, and other langage.

8 t Henne as for the thyrd of the Cristen prynses, taken, reputed and remonned for to be egal emong thisse worthy & best that euer were, I mene the noble Godefray of Bolyne / whiche noow but late, not yet four C. yere syth he floureed, and was stalled in 12 the thyrd stalle of the moost worthy of Cristen men, whos hystorye is made and wretin in Latyn and ffrensshe in large and grete volumes / And as not known emonge vs here / whiche ben adiacent and neyghbours to the place of his natyuyte / whos noble hystorye I 16 late fonde in a booke of ffrensshe, al alonge of his noble actes, valyaunces, prowesses / and accomplyssement of his hye empryses / In whiche I fynde very causes, as me semeth, moche semblable and lyke vnto suche as we hawe nowe dayly tofore vs, By the mes- 20 creauantes and turkes emprysed / aynst Cristendom. And yet moche more nowe than were in his days / thet in his dayes the turkes had conquered upon Cristendom but vnto the braas of seynt George by Constantynople, And had no foote on this syde the sayd

24 Braas. But at this daye it is so that they have come onuer and gotten that Imperial Cyte, Constantynople aforssayd / and many Royanne and countre / to the grete dommage and hurte of alle Cristendom; To the resistance of whom, as yet, fewe Cristen prynses 28 hauie put theym in deuoyr. Thenne I retorne agayn vnto the conqueste at suche tyme as they were come to the sayd Braas, that by the dylygent soliciitute of a poure heremyte / the sayd Godeffroy of Bolyne, and other dynerse prynses / lordes and comyn peple at the dylygent soliciitute of a poure heremi.
Caxton wishes to incite Christians to reconquer Jerusalem. [Pro].

This history is no fable, considering the late encroachments of the Turks.

Henne I, thus vsytyng this noble hystorye / whiche is no fable ne fayned thynge, But alle that is therin trewe / Considerynge also the grete puysaunce of the Turke, grete enemye of oure Cristen fayth, destroyar of Cristen blood, and vspar of certayn Empyres, and many Cristen Royammes and countrees. And now late this sayd yere hath assayled the Cyte and castel in the Isle of rhodes, where valyantly he hath be resisted; but yet not withstanding he hath approchad more ner, & hath taken the Cyte 8 of Ydroute in puylle, By whiche he hath goten an entre to entre in to the Royamme of Naples; And fro thenes, withoute he be resisted, vnto Rome & ytalye / to whos resistence I beseche 1 almyghty God to pronyde, yf it be his wylle: Thenne me semeth it necessary 12 and expedient for alle cristen prynces to make pees / amyte and allyaunce eche with other, and pronyde by theyr wyssedommes the resistance agayn hym for the defense of our fayth and moder / holy churche / & also for the recuperacion of the holy londe & holy Cyte 16 of Iherusalem / In whiche our blesseyd sauylour, Ihesu Crist, redemed vs with his precious blood, And to doo as this noble prynce Godleffroy of boloyne dyde, with other noble and hyc prynces in his companye. Thence for thexhortacion2 of alle Cristen prynces / 20 Lordes / Barons / Knyghtes / Gentilmen / Marchamntes / and all the comyn peple of this noble Royamme, walsy & ylond, I have emprysed to translate this book of the conquest of Iherusalem out of fransch in to our materional tongue, to thentente tencourage them 24 by the redyng and heeryng of the meruellous hystories herin comprysed, and of the holy myracles shewyd that every man in his partye endenoyre theym vnto the resistence afore sayd, And recuperacion of the sayd holy londe. & for as moche as I knowe 28 no Cristen kyngge better pronyd in Armes, and for whom god hath shewed more grace / And in alle his empryses gloruous, vaynuqysshour, happy and eurous / than is our naturall / lawful / and soneayn lord and moost cristen kyngge / (1) Edward, by the grace of 32 god, kyngge of englond and of frynone, and lord of Yrland / vnder the shadowe of whos noble protection / I have achiyed this symple translation / that he of his moost noble grace wold adress, styre, or communaunde somme noble Capytayn of his subgettes to emprysse this 36 warre agayn the sayd turke & hethen peple, to whiche I can thynke that every man wyll put hand to in theyr propre persones /

1 leaf 2, back. 2 Orig. thexhortacion.

(1) The Clarendon figures in brackets refer to the Notes at the end of the text.
Admirers of brave deeds are exhorted to read this book.

and in their meuable goodes / Thenne to hym, my moste drad naturel and souerayn lord, I adresse this symple and rude booke, beseeching his mosto bounteous and haboundaunt grace to receyue

4 it of me, his indigny and humble subgette, William Caxton, And
to parronune me so presamyng ; beseechyn almyghty god that this
sayd book may encourage, moene, and enflamme the herites of
somme noble men, that by the same the mescreauntes maye be
resistedy and putte to rebuke, Cristen sayth encreaced and enhaunced,
and the holy lande, with the blesyde cyte of Iherusalem, recouerd,
and may come agayn in to cristen mens hondes. Thenne I exhorte
alle noble men of hye courage to see this booke, and here it redde;
by which ye shall see what wayes were taken, what noble prowesses
and valuauntes were achyeued by the noble compaynyes, & especial
by the said noble pryncye godesfroy of boleyne, due of Loryne / by
whiche he deseryued the name of one of the mosty worthy that ever
were, and ys stalled in the thyrde stalle of the Cristen conquers / And
in the nynte of the mooste worthy / where his name and
renomme shal remayne and abyde perpetuell / And for to deserne
the tenthe place, I beseeche almyghty God to graunte and ottroye to
our sayd souerayn lord, or to one of his noble progenye / I meane my
lord Prynce / and my lord Rycharde, duc of yorke and norfolke,(2)
to whom I humbly beseeche / at theyr leyzer and playesyr, to see &
here rede this symple book, by which they maye be encoragd to
deserue lawde and honour, and that their name and renomme may
encreace and remayne perpetuell / And after this lyf short and tran-
sytpore / All we may atteyne to come to the euerlastyng lyf in
heuen, where is ioye and reste withoute ende. Amen.

28 t Henne for to knowe the content of this book, ye shal playnly see by
the table folowyng / wherof euerly chapytroye3 trateth al alonge.
The fyrst chapytre trateth how Eracles conquerd Perse, And slewe Cosdroe]
and brought in to Iherusalem the veray Crosse / Capitulo primo. [p. 18,
32 How the pyssaunt Cosdroe wasted thempyre of rome, for tanegue the deth of
themperour Mauryee, fader to his wyf / capo. ij. [p. 20]
How this pyssaunt kyng entred in to Iherusalem / and demanded dyly-
gently of the temple / and reedeyd it, and assignd grete reuemes to
entretiene it / capitulo iiij. [p. 21]
How Charlemayne by his lyberalye gate, for the proulyf of cristens peple in
hethenesse, thamyte of hethen prynces. capitulo iiij. [p. 22]
Table of Contents. Chapters 5—21.

Of the noyse that sourded emonge the hethen peple discordyngge in theyr lawe / And how they of egypte yssued oute of theyr londe, and of the eyylles and harmses that they dyde. capítulo v. [p. 23]

How theafflyction / Iniurys, and tormentes of cristen men, grewe in the tyme of Calyphe hetham. capítulo vi. [p. 24]

How at the requeste of themperour of constantynople the cristen men obteyneyd licence to bylyde agayn the chirche of the holy sepulcre.

Capitulo viij. [p. 26] 8

Of the turkes, fro whens they cam, And how they grewe in to 1grete puyssance, & dyde chose theym a kyng for to maytene their warnys.

Capitulo viii. [p. 28]

Of thorryble synnes regnyng theame in Cristiente / as wel in thyse partyes as 12 in the partyes /

capitulo ix. [p. 31]

Of a bataylle that themperour Romayn of Constantynople had ayenst a prynee of thoryent named belphet /

capitulo x. [p. 32]

Of many maner tormentes / that the Cristen peple suffred for their synnes in 16 that tyme.

capitulo xi. [p. 35]

How after they had ben .iiiij C / lxxxx yere in the servage of the hethen men, our lord pourneyed remedye for his cristen peple. ca. xii. [p. 36]

How Peter theremyte enterprysed the more hardyly his viage, by the reue- 20 lacion or vysyon that he sawe in his sleep /

cae. xiiij. [p. 39]

Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme / And how the pope Vrban was put out of the see of Rome by the Bysshop of Rauenne.

Capitulo xiiiij. [p. 40] 24

Of a general counsayl that the pope Vrban ordeyned, for the reformacion of holy chirche and thamendement of the people. ca / xv. [p. 42]

How many noble and hye men / and other moyen peple of the royamme of fraunce crossyd theym for to goo ouer see /

cae. xvj. [p. 43] 28

The names of noble men that enterprysed this pylgremage / as wel on this syde the see as beyonde the montaynes /2

cae. xvij. [p. 45]

Of thourntures that a Rowte of Cristen men in this vyage, of whom one gaultier without knowleche was capitayn /

cae. xvij. [p. 47] 32

How Peter theremyte was chyef and Capitayn of a grete hooste, in this vyage toward the holy londe.

capitulo xix. [p. 49]

How somme of thoost of Peter theremyte vnytynge hym / sette fyre in the suburbeys of Nyz at theyr departyng /

capitulo xx. [p. 50] 36

How Peter theremyte was aduertysed of al this, and of the harms that ensiwed /

Capitulo xxi. [p. 51]

1 leaf 3, back.

2 Orig. montaynes.
How themperour of constantynople, beyng aduertysed of thies oultages, sente
his messagers to Peter theremyte / capitulo xxiiij. [p. 54]
Of the mayntenyng of thoost of Peter theremyte, And how thre M / duche-
men toke a castel by assault / and slewe alle theym that were therin
with the swerd, capitulo xxiiij. [p. 55]
How Solyman, lord of that countre, reprised and toke agayn the castel, and
slewe alle the duche men that were therin / cae. xxiiij. [p. 56]
8 How our men armed theym for taunenge the duche men, And of a recountre
that they had agaynst Solyman. capitulo xxvj. [p. 58]
How Peter theremyte, beyng in Constantynople, was aduertysed of this dis-
confyture / And saued thre thousand cristen men beyng 1 in grete daunger.
12 capitulo xxvj. [p. 59]
How a preest named Godechan made hymself Capytayn of / xv thousand
duche men in this vyage, And of theyr oultayes.
Capitolo xxvij. [p. 62]
16 How two C thousand Cristen men afoote, & thre thousand on horsbak,
withoute Capitayn, assembled in this pylgremage, And of theyr
mayntene / capitulo xxvij. [p. 61]
How this peple began to destroye the londe of the kyng of hongrye by
cause he wold not graunte them lene to passe / capitulo xxix. [p. 63]
How the duc godeffroy of Bolyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto
hongrye, and sente his messagers to the kyng to demande passage.
capitulo xxx. [p. 64]
24 How the messagers of duc godeffroy declared theyr message vnto the kyng
of hongrye / and therupon his answere. cae. xxxij. [p. 65]
How the sayd kyng sente for to fetche the duc Godeffroye, And how he
wente, & of the denyses that they had to gydre / cae. xxxij. [p. 68]
28 How the duc Godeffroye sente his messagers to themperour of constanty-
nople, 2 to thende that he shold deluyer to hym huon le mayne and other
that he helde in pryson. capitulo xxxij. [p. 69]
How duc Godeffroye constrayned themperour by force to rendre & deluyer
32 his prysoners. capitulo xxxiiij. [p. 71]
The grete despyte that themperour toke that duc godeffroy refused to goo
in to Constantynople vnto hym / capitulo xxxv. [p. 72]
Of the descripccion of the Cyte of Constantynople, And of many countrees
36 and londes therabout. capitulo xxxvi. [p. 73]
How our peple brente theyr lodgys, and toke theyr harmoys / and of an
assault that the grekes made on them. capitulo xxxvij. [p. 74]

1 leaf 4.  
2 Orig, constantynople.
How after our peple began to destroye the contre / And of a message fro  
Baymont vnto duc godeffroy. And the answer of the duc vpon the  
same agayn.  
capitulo xxxviiij.  [p. 76]  
How themperour appeased the duc Godefroy / and sente for hym / and of 4  
themperour that he dyde to hym /  
capitulo xxxix.  [p. 77]  
Of the yeftes that themperour made to duc Godefroye, to the barons, and to  
the gentilmen of his hooste.  
capitulo xl.  [p. 78]  
How baymont was made Capitayn of a greet hooste, And the names of 8  
many nobles of thooste, & of theyr maytene.  
ca". xliij.  [p. 79]  
Messages and lettres fro themperour to baymont, And the continuene of the  
same, as foloweth /  
capitulo xlij.  [p. 81]  
How Baymont approched constantynople, and was sente for to come to the 12  
emperour, And how by the prayer of duc Godefroye he wente toward  
hym /  
capitulo xliij.  [p. 82]  
How theyrle Robert of filanndres with his hoost approchyd Constantinople,  
And how themperour sente for hym / And of theyr dneyse to gydre.  
capitulo xliiiij.  [p. 83]  
Of the mayntyene of thoost whiche theyle of tholouse and the bisshop of  
Pay brought ouer see.  
capitulo xlv.  [p. 84]  
Ambassadours of themperour to the sayd erle and Bysshop, and of the 20  
conetinue of his lettres / and of the daunger wherein the sayd bisshop  
was.  
ca". xlvij.  [p. 86]  
How theyle of tholouse, beyng with themperour, wold not doo hommage  
to hym, And of the despyte that themperour dyde /  
ca". / xlvij.  [p. 87]  
How themperour, for tauenge hym and theyle, made his conestables tenbushe  
them, and assaylle thoost of theryle.  
capitulo xlviiij.  [p. 88]  
How at thynstaunte prayer of the barons of thooste, theryle made hommage to 28  
themperour, which theynne gaf grete yeftes to hym and his /  
capitulo lxix.  [p. 90]  
How duc Robert of Normandye / and other here named, approched Constant-  
ynople, and made hommage to themperour / ca". li.  [p. 91] 32  
How themperour sente, for to destroye our cristene men, one his seruants,  
faynyng to be a trewe conduytour and gyde.  
ca". liij.  [p. 92]  
Of the situacion of Nycene / And how our peple approchyd therto, meruayl-  
lyng of the place, and of the strengthe /  
capitulo / liij.  [p. 93] 36  
How the pyssantur turke Solyman with a greet hooste aduysez tyme and  
houre to assaylle and smyte on our peple, for to reysse the siege /  
capitulo liij.  [p. 94]  

1 leaf 1, back.
Table of Contents. Chapters 54—68.

How Solyman, beyng in the montaynes,\(^1\) sente his messagers to them of the tounn,\(^2\) And of the comforthe that he gaf to theym.

Capitulo Liiiij. [p. 95]

4 How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men / And\(^5\) by them was knowne the couyn of the sayd Solyman.

ca\(^6\). Lv. [p. 96]

How a grete batayll of Solyman cam and smote on our peple / And of the ende of the scarmuchche /

capitulo Lvj. [p. 97]

8 How our barons were lodged in the sayd siege / of their mayntene, & how euer day they enforced them thassaylle the tounn / ca\(^6\). Lvij. [p. 98]

How our barons made castellys of tree and approched the town, And how they within brake one of theyn / and\(^5\) slewe them that were therin /

capitulo Lvijj. [p. 99]

Of the cownseyl that our men toke for tassiege the tounn by water, for to constrayne them not for to entre ne yssue /

capitulo Lix. [p. 100]

How, after the cyte was assiged by water and by londe, our men\(^3\) assaylle it ; And of a shotte that due godeffroy dyde shote.

ca\(^6\). Lx. [p. 101]

16 How, after many assaultes,oure men beyng in cownseyl / A lombard cam to them / whiche offred to make an engyne that shold destroye the tounn /

capitulo Lxi. [p. 103]

20 How after / that this engyne was so wel wrought, the wyf of Solyman, with twnyne of her childeren, wente out of the tounn, & were taken by our men.

capitulo Lxij. [p. 104]

How themperour\(^4\) sente grete barons for to receyve the tounn / after that our peple had acerteyned hym that they wold yelde it /

Capitulo Lxijj. [p. 106]

How our hoost\(^5\) departed on theyr iourneye. And\(^5\) how somme departed fro theyr felawship / And how solyman determyned tassaille them /

(capitulo Lxijij. [p. 107]

Of the bataylle that Solyman had ayenst somme of our peple that were departed fro theyr felawship folyly /

(capitulo Lxv. [p. 108]

Of the dylygence that due godeffroy made whan he was adwertysed herof / and how Solyman was disconfyted, and\(^5\) his lygnage taken.

capitulo Lxvj. [p. 109]

How the fourth day after this vyctorye, our peple went forth on theyr waye, And of the grete mesease of the hooste the same daye.

Capitulo Lxvj. [p. 111]

How somme of the grete barons of thostes / after to hane approched Anthyocche the lasse / departed\(^5\) for to goo vytaille them / Capitulo Lxvijj. [p. 112]

\(^1\) Orig. montaynes. \(^2\) Orig. tovn. \(^3\) leaf 5. \(^4\) Orig. themperour. \(^5\) Orig. hoost.
Here recounted thystorye of somme advantures / that thanne fylle in thooost of Cristen men / capitulo Lxix. [p. 114]
How Tancre, that was departed fro thooost / assieged Tarse / and toke it by certayn cognenaut. caº. Lxx. [p. 115] 4
How bawdwyn, brother¹ of Godeffroy, sechyng his adventures, sawe Tancre and his peple tofore Tarse, and adrestyd hym to theym.

Capitulo Lxxij. [p. 116]
Of thennyue that Bawdwyn and his peple had, to see the bauer of Tancre on 8 the walle of the town. And how Tancre departed.

Capitulo Lxxij. [p. 116]
How a lytil after, Tancre cam to the Cyte of anamystre / whiche the turkes helde, and toke it by assault. capitulo Lxxij. [p. 118] 12
How Bawdwyn entred in to Tharse / And how thre honderd pylygrymys were slayn of the turkes afore the same toune / Capitulo Lxxiiij. [p. 118]
How the peple of bawdwyn knewe the departing of the turkes, ²And of the slaughter of the cristen men. capitulo Lxxv. [p. 120] 16
How the sayd Bawdwyn returned to the grete hoofst / And how Tancre maynteneº hym moche wel in conqueryng countrees.

Capitulo Lxxv. [p. 122]
How bawdwyn conquerº a grete contre vpon the turkes, by the counseyl of a 26 knyght Ermyne, named Pancrace / caº. Lxxvij. [p. 123]
How they of Rages sente their messagers to bawdwyn, prayeng hym that he wold come to theym. capitulo Lxxvij. [p. 124]
How this due that was at Rages varyedº for to holde this / that he had 24 promysed to bawdwyn / capitulo Lxxix. [p. 126]
How bawdwyn wente tassaylle famosette, a Cyte nygh to rages. Capitulo Lxxx. [p. 127]
How they of the toune of rages slewe theyr due, And chaas bawdwyn for to 28 be theyr lord. capitulo lxxxj. [p. 128]
How bawdwyn wente and assieged the toune of Sororge, nygh to Rages, and toke it / and of his ordenaunces. capitulo lxxxij. [p. 129]
How the grete hoofst cam to fore Marese, and how the turkes that were within 32 feldde / And how our peple payned them to conquere countrees / capitulo lxxxiij. [p. 130]
How it was commaundde vnto alle the barons to come to thooost, for to goo vnto Anthyoché, And of somme recountrees that they had in the waye / 36 capitulo Lxxxiij. [p. 132]
How Anthyoché by sucession of tyme / had dyuerse names. And of the noblesse of annyeunte.

¹ Orig. kroder.
Of the situacion of Anthycohe. [Lxxxvij.  p. 135]
Who was thenne lord of anthycohe / and by what maner he was comen vnto this seygnorie. capitulo Lxxxvij. [p. 136]
4 Diverse oppyynons of our men tofore they had assieged anthycohe. And how they acorded alle for tassiege it. capitulo Lxxxviiij. [p. 137]
How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye barons of thoost were lodged at the sayd siege / capitulo Lxxix. [p. 139]
8 How our peple assembled in counsyl for to fynde the moyen for to sende for vytaylle, and of a brydge that they made. ca°. Lxxx. [p. 140]
How our peple stopped a yate without forth / And of a castel of tree that they made. capitulo Lxxxxj. [p. 141]
12 How our peple were in grete meschyef, for as moche as they of the toun yssued / & entred in & out with grete rowtes.¹ ca°. Lxxxij. [p. 142]
Of the famyne and mortalyte of thoost, after that they had be at the sayd siege the space of two monethis / capitulo Lxxxxij. [p. 144]
16 How our peple ordeyned grete Rowtes for to goo for vytalle,² & to reteyne the peple whiche fledde for hongre. capitulo lxxxxijj. [p. 145]
How buymont and therle of filianndres mayntened theym, beyng in fourage of theyr recountrees / and of the gayn that they made. 20 capitulo Lxxxxv. [p. 146]
How a grete Rowte of Cristen men were in this tyme slayn by the turkes bytwene³ Fynemye and terme / capitulo Lxxxxvj. [p. 147]
How the vntrewre greke latyus departed fraudelously fro thoost, And other moo by the ensample of hym / capitulo Lxxxxvij. [p. 148]
How the prelates of thoost counseyelled to doo pennaunce for tappese god, & of thordenanaues that were made teschewe symne.⁴ Lxxxxij. [p. 149]
How buymont fonde a subtil remedye, for to delyuer and purge thoost of tespies of the turkes / capitulo Lxxxxix. [p. 150]
How the Calyphe of Egypte sente his messagers with grete yeftes vnto our hoost. capitulo C. [p. 152]
How Ancean, lord of Anthycohe / andt the barons, sente vnto the turkes theyr neyghbours for to demaunde socours. ca° Cj. [p. 153]
How our peple knewe the couyne of the turkes. Of thembusshe that they made, & of theyr vyctorye & gayn that they had / ca° Cij. [p. 154]
How the turkes of Anthycohe sprang out, and assayled the lodgyses of our peple / capitulo Cij. [p. 155]
Of a castel that our men made / Of somme pykryms that arryued atte porte / And how they were disconfyted by a bussheement of turkis. capitulo Ciiiij. [p. 156]

¹ Orig. rowtes. ² leaf 6. ³ Orig. bytwene. ⁴ Orig. symne.
Table of Contents. Chapters 105—122.

Of a bataylle where our men auenged them of the turkes / And of a stroke that duc godeffroy gaf in this bataylle. ca$^9$. Cv.  [p. 159]

How the cristen men thanked our lord of this vycitorye, And made a castel in their mahommerye / where they founde grete gayne.  [183]

Capitulo Cv.  [p. 162]

Of a fortresse that Tancre made ouer the ruyer, And how he defeended it valyauntly. capitulo Cvij.  [p. 163]

How themne the turkes of the toum$^1$ began to have mesease and sorowe, and 8 our peple case. capitulo Cviij.  [p. 165]

How there estienen of chartrys and of bloys fledde fro thooste shamefully, capitulo Cix.  [p. 166]

How a Cristen man, Emyrferyns, whiche was in Anthyoche, acqueynted hym 12 with buymont. capitulo Cx.  [p. 167]

Of som deuises that the saied emirferius sent to buymont,$^2$ & in what maner he acorded to deluyer hym the toum / capitulo Cxj.  [p. 169]

How buymont disconerid this thyng to duc godeffroy, to huen le mayne, to 16 the duc of normandye, & to thelle of flamades. ca$^5$. Cxij.  [p. 170]

3 Of the grete socours that the sondan$^4$ of Perse had sente to them of Anthyoche, And corbagat assiaged Rages / capitulo Cxij.  [p. 171]

How oure men adnertysed of the grete hooste of corbagat, sente somme of 20 theyr knygthes for to esteme them. And what they reported of that they had seen. capitulo Cxiij.  [p. 172]

Of the counseyl that oure peple toke for to ordeyne theyr nedes, whan they sawe the comyng of this right grete hoost. cap$^9$. Cxv.  [p. 173] 24

How after that buymont had declared his fayt to alle thoost / they acorded that the toum shold be his, sauf thelle of tholouse / ca$^9$. Cxv.  [p. 174]

How they of Anthyoche had fere of treson, And how they assembled in counseil, & of that which emirferius deposed therat. ca$^9$. Cxvij.  [p. 176] 28

Of the meschyf that the turkes made euery day to the cristen men that were in Anthyoche enhabytynge with them / ca$^9$. Cxvij.  [p. 177]

Of the dylygence that buymont$^5$ made in this werke. And emirferius sliwe his brudder, & delyuerd the toum to the cristen men. ca$^9$. Cxix.  [p. 179] 32

Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse, And of thaffraye of the turkes of the toum. capitulo Cxx.  [p. 181]

How Ancceau, lord of Anthyoche, fledde by a posterne oute of the toum / and he was recounted and put to deth. capitulo Cxxj.  [p. 183] 36

How, after that our men had made grete slaughter of theyr enimytes, our men helde counseyl for to take the dungeon / themne beynge some of the turkes, capitulo Cxxij.  [p. 184]

$^1$ Orig. toum. $^2$ Orig. buymont. $^3$ leaf g. back. $^4$ Orig. sondaner. $^5$ Orig. buymont.
How, whyles that thooth garnysshyd the toun, Somme of thooth corbagat cam rennyng to fore it. capitulo Cxxiij. [p. 185]

How, the thyrd day after the getynge and pryse of Anthyoeche, corbagat with his host arryued to fore it. capitulo Cxxiiij. [p. 186]

How after that the duc was within the barres of the toun / many of his men slayn, the turkes entred in to the toun. cae. Cxxv. [p. 188]

How our men striken men, that a lytil tofore had assieged the toun / were now assieged in the same. capitulo Cxxvij. [p. 189]

How corbagat dyde do assayle a fortresse which thercle of flamdres kepeth without the gate, & of that ensiewed. capitulo Cxxvij. [p. 191]

Of the grete famyne and messease that our men suffred in the cyte of Anthyoeche, beyng assieged on alle sydes by the said corbagat. capitulo Cxxvij. [p. 192]

How the turkes, felyng that our men were in suche meschye of hongre, enforced them for tassayle the cyte / capitulo Cxxix. [p. 193]

16 How corbagat sente his men of armes, for to sley the marowers that were at the parte ; wherof our men had a grete losse. capitulo Cxxx. [p. 194]

How gynylle de granteuylle and his felaws frytyfs cam in to 1 Allexandrye the lasse. Capitolo Cxxxj. [p. 195]

20 How thercle of chartres / discouraged thempour of constantynople, that he shold not goo & socoure our peple in anthioche. cae. Cxxxiij. [p. 196]

How, by the warnynges of the sayd Erle / thempour, whiche wold haue gone & socoured our men, returned shortly. capitulo Cxxx. [p. 198]

24 How our peple in Anthyoeche, beyng aduertysed herof, were alle discouraged / And Corbagat enhaunced in pryde. cae. Cxxxiij. [p. 199]

How the spere was founden that Ihesus was prechyd 2 on the crosse with / & of the comfort that our pilgrims toke therby. cae. Cxxxv. [p. 200]

28 How peter theremyte was sent by our men vnto Corbagat, the worlkes that he sayde / and aswere of the sayd corbagat. cae. Cxxvij. [p. 202]

How the sayd Peter returned in to the toun / and wold openly haue 3 sayd his message / and of the subtyl counseyl of the duc / whiche wold not suffice it / capitulo Cxxvij. [p. 204]

32 How tofore, or our men departed, they made reyd theyr batayles right wel in poynyt / And of the nombre of them / capitulo Cxxvij. [p. 205]

How Corbagat was aduertysed of thyssuyng of our peple / and sente archers for to defende the brydye / And how they were disconfyted / capitulo Cxxxix. [p. 207]

How our men rejoyysed them of a dewe descenyyng fro heuen / & of theyr mayntene in approachyng the turkes / capitulo Cxli. [p. 208]

1 leaf 7. 
2 sic : = pricked. 
3 Orig. laue.
How Corbagat ordeyned his bataylyes / and how the two hoostes marchted to
gydre in bataylle.
capitulo Cxlj. [p. 209]
Of the fleyng of corbagat, and 1 of somme turkes gadred to gydre and agayn
discomfyted by our men /
capitulo Cxlij. [p. 211] 4
How our peple returned fro the chaas / and wente to the pyllage. And of
the grete rychesses that they fonde /
capitulo Cxliij. [p. 213]
Of the fayr ordenaunces that oure people made in the chirches of anthyoeche /
& in other townes by / after this victorye / ca°. Cxluiij. [p. 215] 8
How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of constantinopole, for to
somone hym for to come socoure them as he had promised /
capitulo Cxlv. [p. 216]
How the pylgrymes of thoost desired to goo vnto Iherusalem, for teschewe the 12
mortalyte and tacomplysshe theyr vowe /
ce. Cxlvj. [p. 218]
The dylygence that due Godiffroye made for to socoure a turke, to whom he
had promised to helpe hym. And how he reysed the siege, beyng tofore
his castel.
capitulo Cxlvij. [p. 219] 16
Of somme pylgrymes goyng fro Anthyoeche toward the due godiffroye, that
were distressyd by the turkes / And rescowed by the due /
Capitulo Cxlviiij. [p. 220]
2 How the due alway enforced hym to augmente Cristiente, and of somme 20
fortresses by hym beten and destroyed.
ce. Cxlix. [p. 221]
How the knyghtes of Rages wold hane bytrayed Bawdwyn theyr lord, And
how he was therof admyrtyse /
ce. CL. [p. 222]
How therle bawdwyn was in daunger of deth, by the treson of a turk named 24
balac.
ce. CLij. [p. 223]
How therle of tholouse 3 toke the cyte of albane / and therin constituted a
bissop /
ce. CLiiij. [p. 225]
How oure peple returned in to Anthyoeche / and toke counseyl for to goo to 28
Iherusalem / and of this that foloweth.
ce. CLiiij. [p. 226]
How the due godiffroye wold goo to Rages to vysyte his brother, er he began
his way to Iherusalem, And of somme of his aduen[tu]res.
capitulo CLiiij. [p. 228] 32
How, after the cyte of albane 4 was conquerd, a grete debate araos bytwene
therle of tholouse and buymont /
ce. CLv. [p. 228]
How, at the request of the comyn peple, therle of tholouse ordeyned day for
to conduce them.
Ca°. CLvij. [p. 230] 36
How therle of tholouse anengyd hym of somme turkes Robbours which
robbed his hoost.
Capitulo CLvij. [p. 231]

1 Orig. and. 2 leaf 7, back. 3 Orig. tholouse. 4 Orig. albune.
How therle of tholouse approchyd with his hoost vnto Archys / And of the situacion of the same. Ca. CLviij. [p. 233]

Of a toun named tortose, whiche Raymont toke with a Rowte of pylgryms / And of the departyng of the other Barons. Capituln CLix. [p. 234]

How the duc assieged Gibelet / and of a trayson by whiche he left his siege. Capituln CLx. [p. 235]

How thoost murmured of the sperre founden in Anthyoehe, And of the grete myracle that happed in the presence of alle thoostes. Capituln CLxj. [p. 237]

Of thambassade of Epypte comen with oure men in to thooste of pylgryms / and of the reuerence that was don to them. ca. CLxij. [p. 239]

12 Of an embassade fro themperour of constantynople comen to our pylgryms, & of thanswer to the sayd Ambassiate / capituln CLxiiij. [p. 240]

How the comyn peple complayned them of this, that they wente not hastely to Iherusalem / capituln CLxiiij. [p. 242]

16 Of the grete dylygence that our men made for tapproche to Iherusalem, And of thalyannees of somme Turkes made vnto them. Capituln CLxv. [p. 243]

How the Cristen men of Bethlehem receyued moche wel Tancre & his rowte / & sette his baner in the chirche of our lady / ca CLxvij. [p. 245]

2 Of thardamet desire that the peple had to see Iherusalem, and how thoost approched, and was lodged by ordenaunce. capituln CLxvij. [p. 246]

Of the situacion of Iherusalem, and of the descripcon, and also of many other cytees, townes, and countrees theraboute. Capituln / CLxvijij. [p. 248]

How Iherusalem hath had many names, after dyuerse lorde therin regnyng / And yet of the situacion wel at longe / Capituln CLxix. [p. 250]

Here thyistorye denyseth of many mercuriellis edefyces conteyned in the same cyte of Iherusalem / & who made them. capituln / Clxx. [p. 251]

How the turkes of Iherusalem, when they knewe the comyng of oure hooste, stopped the pyttes and fontaynes of the toun / Capituln CLxxij. [p. 253]

32 Of the nombre of them of thoost / of them of Iherusalem, and how our men lodged them in the siege to fore Iherusalem. capituln CLxxij. [p. 254]

How our men began tassaylle Iherusalem, And of the grete dylygence that they dyde to make engyns for to take it / ca. / CLxxijij. [p. 256]

36 How our peple were in grete meschyef atte sayd siege / And how the turkes deserted them / by cause they myght yssue and entre in and out of the toun. capituln CLxxijij. [p. 257]

1 Orig. hit.  2 leaf 8.
How the turkes enforced them to make merueyllous engyns ayenst oures, and of the meschyef don to the cristen men dwellyng in the town.

capitulo CLxxxv. [p. 258]

In this tyme arrayned¹ a ship of geneuws atte porte of halappe, And how 4 theyr messagers cam in to thoost, and of theyr request /

Capitulo CLxxviij. [p. 259]

How alle the pylgryms, euerich after his estate / payned them to make thengyns for thassault.

capitulo CLxxvij. [p. 261] 8

Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made / to thende that god shold gyue to theym vctorye / And how they pardonne d eche other theyr male talentes and euyll wylles /

capitulo / CLxxvijij. [p. 262]

How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght theyr engyns vnto that 12 other parte of the town for tassaylle on that syde.

Capitulo CLxxix. [p. 263]

How, the daye followynge, oure peple made a merueyllous assault, & how the turkes defended them subtylyl & wel.

capitulo CLxxx. [p. 265] 16

The nyght departed the sayd assault, our peple withdrewe them / And how they watchid theyr engynes / and the turkes the town /

Capitulo Clxxxij. [p. 266]

How oure peple returned agayn on the morn to thassault² / And³ of the 20 sorceryes that they wold haue charmed one of our engyns.

capitulo CLxxxiij. [p. 267]

Of the dispar of our peple at the sayd assault, And how they were recomforted by a knyght vnknowne⁴ and euydent myracles.

Capitulo CLxxxijj. [p. 268]

How therle of tholouse assaylled vygorously toward the south, And⁵ of thardaunt desire that eche man had to doo wel /

Capitulo CLxxxiiij. [p. 270] 28

Of the pryse and takyng of Iherusalem / and how duc godeffroy entred fyrst on the walles / and who followed.

Capitulo CLxxxv. [p. 271]

Of the mayntenyng of our peple entred in to the town toward the northeest, and therle of tholouse, herof al ignoraunt, assaylled alwey.

Capitulo CLxxxvi. [p. 272] 32

How xM turkes were slayn in the temple, and of the gretre tresour that Tancre fonde in the temple /

Capitulo CLxxxvij. [p. 274]

Of the ordenancess that the cristen men made before they vnarme d them after that the town was taken.

Capitulo CLxxxvijij. [p. 275]

How the cristen men, that had charged theyr message for theyr delyneraunce to peter therymyte, knewe hym.

Capitulo CLxxxix. [p. 277]

¹ Orig. arrayned. ² thassault. ³ leaf 8, back. ⁴ Orig. vnknowne.
Table of Contents. Chapters 190—206.

How they clensyd the toun of the dede bodyes. Of many other ordenaunces / And how the dongeon was yolden to therle of tholouse.

capitulo CLxxxx. [p. 278]

4 How the hye barons of thoost assembled for to chose a kynge of Iherusalem, And thoppynyon of the clergye vpon the same.

Capitolo CLxxxxxiij. [p. 279]

How the duc godeffroy was chosen kynge of Iherusalem, And how he was presented to our lord in his chirche of the holy sepulcre /

capitulo CLxxxxxiij. [p. 281]

How duc godeffroy after his election requyred therle of tholouse that he shold deluyer to hym the tour dauyd.

capitulo CLxxxxxiij. [p. 282]

12 Of a patriarke electe and chosen in Iherusalem. And how there was founden a part of the veray crosse.

capitulo CLxxxxxiij. [p. 283]

How duc godeffroy payned hym to amende the Royamme: of his good conditions and statutes.

capitulo CLxxxxxv. [p. 284]

16 Of the sayeng of the countesse of boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she sayd of her iiij oldest sonses was verefyed / ca°. CLxxxxvj. [p. 286]

Of the wagyng of a bataylle which was bytwene duc godefroy and an hye baron of almayne /

capitulo C : Lxxxxvj. [p. 287]

20 Of a fayr fayte of armes, which that the duc1 dide in a bataill that themperour of Almayne had ayenst them of saxone. ca°. CLxxxxviiij.2 [p. 288]

3How the valyaunt duc godeffroy augmented holy chirche / and he wold neuer bere crowne /

capitulo CLxxxxxix. [p. 290]

24 How the turkes of Arabe and of Egypte made their sommance for to come in to Sury tassaylle our cristen men.

capitulo CC. [p. 291]

How the crysten men, whan they knewe thyse tydynges, cryed to god for mercy & for to haue vctorye.

capitulo CCj. [p. 293]

28 How oure men assembled and ordeynef theyr bataylles for to fyghte ayenst the turkes. And how the turkes were discomfited.

capitulo CCij. [p. 294]

How somme of oure barons wolde retorne home / after that they had don theyr pylgremage /

capitulo CCij. [p. 296]

How buymont and bawdwyn acertyned of the conquest of Iherusalem wold accomplyshe theyr pylgremage /

ca°. CCijj. [p. 298]

How our cristen men chosen a very patriark in Iherusalem / And assigned to hym rentes /

capitulo CCv. [p. 300]

How by thatysement of somme men a grete debate sourded bytwene the duc & the patriark of Iherusalem.

capitulo CCvj. [p. 301]

1 Orig. duc. 2 Orig. clxxxxvij. 3 leaf 9.

GODEFREY.
Of the Roman Emperor Eracles.

Here recounteth this history, how the fourth part of Jerusalem came unto the patriarch of the same./

Of the same mater.

How due goeffroy, for tangmente cristitene assyeged one of the tounes of the 4 turkes/

How the turkes brought presents to the due Godeffroye at the sayd siege / and of theyr deyyses to gydre /

How baymont was taken in goyng to meletene, whiche cyte the lord of the 8 toun wold haue yolden to hym. 

How the due goeffroy assembled his peple and entred in to Arabye. And of the gayn that he made of two grete strokes, that he smote on two camelis, And of his deth.

Here endeth the table of the content and chapytres nombred of this present book, entitiled the siege and conqueste of Jerusalem by cristen men.

1 Here begynmeth the boke Entitiled Eracles / and also Godefrey of Boleyne / the whiche speketh of the Conquest of the holy londe 16 of Jerusalem / conteynyng diverse warres and noble faytes of Armes made in the same Royanne / and in the contrees adjacently, And also many meruyllous warkes happed and fallen, as wel on this syde / as in the partyes this tyme duryng / And how the 20 valyant due Godefrey of Boleyne conquered with swerd the sayd Royanne / And was kyng there /

The first chapitre treateth how Eracles conquered Perse and slewe Cosdroe / and brought in to 24 Jerusalem the very crosse / capitulo primo /

He Auneyent hystoryes sayte that Eracles was a good cristen man, and gouernour of thempyre of Rome / But in his tyme Machomet had ben, whiche was messager of the deme, And 28 made the peple to understonde / that he was a prophete sente from oure lorde / In the tyme of Eracles was the fals lawe of machomet sowen and sprad abrode in many partyes of thorpyent / and namely in Araby / in so moche 2 that the prynces of the 32 londes yet wold not gyue faith to his seete that he prehied and taught, which is cursed and enyl / but he constrayned them by force and by swerd to, & alle their subjets to obeye to his commandemens, and to bylene in his lawe / Whan Eracles had 36

Caxton seems to have misunderstood his French here entirely. It was the prynces themselves who "constrayned their subjets by force and by
conquerd Perse, and slayn cosdroe, which was a puissaunt kyng, he
brought agayn to Iherusalem the very Crosse\(^3\) / whiche they had
ladde in to perse / And abode and dwellyd in the londe of Surrye
And dido do ordelyne and chose a patriarche, a moche wise man
named Modeste / By whos counseller he dyde do make agayn the
chirches / and habylled the holy places / and clenched them that
the tyrant Cosdroe\(^4\) of Perse had smetion down and destroyed,

8 Eracles sette grete entente & made grete costes for to repayre them / And
whiles he entended ther aboute / homar, the sone of captayn,
whiche was a prynce of Arabe, the thirde after machomet / cam in
to this contree named palestyn, with so grete nombre of peple that
alle the londe was couered with them / and had thence taken by
force a moche stronge Cyte of that londe named Iadre / from thens
he drewe hym toward damaske / and assiégé \(^1\) the cyte, and by
strenthe toke hyt / for he had so grete a nombre of peple that
nothyng myght resiste hym / theremperour heracles, which yet
dwellyd in a parte of this londe named Cylyce, herde tydynges of
this peple / And sente good espies & trewe, in whiche he trusted, for
to see and serche their counse / for he desired moche to hane
a dou with thise peple on the felde, and fyghte and chase them out
of the londes and cytes\(^2\) which obeyed to Cristente & to thempyre
of Rome. But whan his messagers cam, he had by them knowleche
certaynly that he had not peple ynowe to fyhte ayenst them / for
they were so fyers & so orgayllous of the grete nombre of peple
that they had / that they thought / nothyng myght resistem them /
And ther upon heracles had deliberacion, and counseilled with his
peple / that it shold be lest dishonour to departe and retorn in to
his contre / than suffre his peple to be destroyed, & myght not
amende it / Thus thence, he departed out of Surye, by cause the
kynge of Arabe & his peple were of so grete power & so proude / as
they fonde alle the contre habaundoned\(^3\) to them / for in a
short tyme they had conquerred alle the contre of Surye vnto Egypte / One thyng\(^4\) that was to fere happenned in this contre,

swoed to obey.\(^5\) Fr. que li princes des terres ne se tenoient mie à ce que
l'en enseignast et amonestast a creire celle male aventure, encois contrégnoiroient par force et par espéer tous leur sangierz à obier au commandement
Mahomet, viz, as the princes of the land were not satisfied with teaching and
admonishing, etc.

\(^1\) leaf 10, back

\(^2\) Caxton has translated very freely Fr. Car il désirais monolt à scaver
s'il peust celle gent attendre en champ ou ruser car et chacier des terres et
des cités.

\(^3\) Orig. habaundoned.
They did this the more easily, because of the damage done previously by Cosdroc, whiche heelp moche them of Arabe tenerece their power, for cosdroc the puissampt kyng ye of perse, of whom I have spoken to fore / had ben with grete puissasunce in Surye / and had destroyed the Cytees and castels / brent townes & chirches, and slayn grete 4 partye of the peple / and the remenant had brought in to Captuynte / And toke the cyte of Iherusalem with force, and slewe within the tounne xxxvj. M. men / And bare away with hym the very crosse that our lord Ihesu Cryste suffred deth on for vs, And ladde with 8 hym the patriarche of Iherusalem named (5)Acharye,1 and brought hym with hym with the other Caytysf.

Here recounteth thistorye how that the puissampt kyngye Cosdroc wastyd the Empyre of Rome, for 12 tauenge the deth of themperour Maurice / fader of his wyf / capitulo ij.

Ow I shall telle yow why he had so doon / lyke as I sayde / he was a ryght myghty kyng / now had ther be an emperour 16 at Rome, named Mauryce, which as we fynde was moche acqueynted with seint gregorie, And was his gossib, for 2 the sayde seynt Gregoreyre had cri-tenyed to hym a daughter named Marie / This Maurice gaf her in Marryage to this Cosdroc / And ther by was 20 a grete frenship bytwene them / & grete alyance bytwene them of perse and the Romayns as longe as themperour lyned / in suche wise / that for the lone of his wyf & the Romayns, whiche were Cristen / This Emperour made Cosdroc to be baptised. But after 24 it befylle that foca slewe in treson this Emperour Maurice / And was Emperour in his place, and was called foca cezar / when cosdroc herd herof he had merveyllous grete sorow, grete desdayne / grete orguyel, & grete hate ayenst the peple of the Romayns, by 28 cause that he whiche had slayn theyr lorde vtrewly / and was yet blody of the blood of the emperour, they had chosen to be their lord, and had gynen to hym thempire / for this cause he entended / to his power to hurte and destroye al thempyre of Rome / And for 32 this cause, for tauenge the deth of the fader of his wyf / whiche ofte enticed hym thereto / he entred in to the londe of Surye, whiche thene was subget to thempyre of Rome, and wasted / destroyed it / lyke as I have said to fore / and voyded almo-t alle the peple 36 that was therin / for whiche cause This kyngye homar aforesaid, &

1 Lat. Zacharias. 2 leaf 11.
his peple of Arabe, that fonde this londe so voyde, myght the better
doo theyr wyllles with alle /

How this puissant kynge entred in to Iherusalem /  
and deamaunded dylygently of the Temple, and  
reedyfied it, and assigned grete reuennes therto  
for tentyretene¹ it.  
capitulo iiijº

Han they cam in the holy cyte of Iherusalem, they fonde it  
destroyed and deserte / sauf a fewe cristen men whiche dwellyd  
there, and were suffred that they shold lyne as Cristen men, and  
make agayn their chyrches, and that they sholde have a patriarke.  
In the while that this myghty prynce duelled² in Iherusalem, he  
began tenquyre moche ententifly² of the peple of the tounz, &  
prynicipally of the patriarke whiche was named³ Sophonye / & had  
ben chosen after modeste, whiche was deed, of whom I haue spoken  
to fore, In what place the temple of our lord⁴ had be whan Titus  
the prynce defiected⁵ and destroyed al the cyte / he shewid to hym  
the very certayn place, & the fondamentes, & a parte of the  
muraylls whiche were themes & apperyng / he made anon to be  
sought & to be brought to hym, without longe taryeng, grete nombre  
of masons & of carpenters / & dide do be sette stones of marble &  
of other manere, & alle thynges necessayre therto he dide do  
assemble as moche as sholde nede / And deuised the maner &  
ordynance of the mesure⁶ / and of the dyspences for to make the  
temple / And⁷, as he was a noble prynce of hye affaire & noble / he  
brought anon to ende this that he had emprised⁸, in suche wise that  
the temple was reedyfied in suche forme and estate as it yet  
apereeth / this saide prynce hym self assygned grete rentes &  
reuvnes ffor ever more, for to sustene and repayre alle that shold  
be nedeful to the dylyfices and other necessites of the temple / and for  
the seruynes of the lyght / day and nyght, by the handes of them  
that he commysed⁹ to kepe the temple / Ther is in the same temple,  
within and without, ⁵letters of golde in the langage of Arabe,

¹ Fr. entreteneir, i.e. support. ² Orig. ententifly. ³ leaf 11, back.  
⁴ Fr. mercairit, building material, not measure. ⁵ The French has lettres faitez d'or musique, i.e. letters made of gold  
mosaic-work. Caxton probably misunderstood the word musique, and simply  
left it out. The Latin gives. Eristant porro in eodem templi aridificio intus  
et extra ex opere mosaico Arabice idiomatis litterarum vetustissima monu-  
menta quae illius temporis esse creduntur.
Of Charlemagne and Prince Aaron. [Ch. IV.

whiche denyse as we suppose / who was he that reeddefyd the temple / and what tyme / And how moche it costeto rebylede it /

How Charlemayne by his lyberalite gate for the profyft of cristien peple in wethenes / thamytye 4 of hethen prynces /

capitulo iiiij.

Hus it happe[n] that this holy cyte of Iherusalem, for the symne of the peple, was in seruage and 1 in daunger 1 of hethen peple longe tyme / That is to wete ccccxxxiiiij years con-8 tunedly / but not allway in one manere / They were one tyme better, & another tyme worse / lyke as the lords chaunged, whiche were of dynyse maners & condicions / but neuertheles these peple were alway in subiection / It happe[n] that one grete lorde of this 12 saide lawe had nyght in his seignory alle the londe of thoryent, sam[le] only ynde / This prynce 2 was named Aaron, (6) & his surname ressit / This man was of so grete cortosye / of so grete largesse / of so hye vygour / and of so grete afferay in alle good maners, that yet 16 the paynymes speke of hym / lyke as they doo in ffraunce of Charlemayn / they were bothe in one tyme, this aaron & this charlemain. 3 And thercfor, in their tyme, the cristien peple in Iherusalem were in better poynt / than thei had eu er be to fore 20 vnder any of the hethen peple / for Charlemayn the good Emp[erour] 4 whiche so moche traumilled and suffryd fo[r] our lorde / and so moche enhampa[n] the fayth of Ihesu Criste, to thende that the Cristiente in Surye myght be the better and more de[bonairly] cherysshed and 24 entreated, Purchass[ed] so longe that he had the lone and acqueyntance 5 of the said Aaron, by messages that wente and cam / Whereof this Aaron had moche grete loye / And aboue alle the prynces of the world he lond 6 and honour[ed] themperour Charle-28 mayne, and the Cristen peple that were vnder hym / And alle the holy places that were vnder his power / he wolde that thei shold be entreti[n]ed, mayn[ted], and wel aoune[d], lyke as Charlemma[n]ye had de-syre[d] and sente to hym worde / Whereof it semed that our 32 peple beyng there / We[e]re more vnder the power of Charlemayn than vnder the power of the hethen men / Whan he myght fynde the messagers of Charlemayn / he charged 7 and 8 lade[d] them alle with richesses of thoryent / With clothes of sylke, with spyces / 36

1 Fr. en daungier, in the power of. 2 Orig. prynce. 3 leaf 12. 1 Orig. Emp[erour]. 5 Orig. acqueyntance. 6 Orig. and.
Ieweles of golde of dynerse facions / And with ryche precious stones, whiche he sente to his frende Charlemayn / And largelie he gaf and rewarded the messagers / And emonge al other things, He 4 sente into ffraunce an Olyphant; This debonayrt ye purchased the good Charlemayn for the Crysten men that were in captiuyte under the saide Aaron / And in lyke wyse the said Aaron, for the lone that he bare to Charlemayn, purchased for other Cristen men that 8 were in al hethenes vnder dynerse lorde, as in egypte, And in Afrique / That is to saye in Alexandrye / And in Cartage / for he sente grete yeftes and 1 moche good 2 to sustene the power of Cristen men, 2 & sente grete presentes vnto their lordes & maistres mystere creauties, & amyable letters / In suche wise, that he purchased their lone and acqueyntaunce / by whiche they conteyned them more debonairly vn to cristiens that were in theirr subiecction; thus dyde the hye prynce charlemayn vnto the hethen lordes, that were 16 fer fro hym / for it is to be bileuid / that ye he had ben nyghge to them, that he wold haue essayed for to haue deleyuert in another maner the peple of our lord, lyke as he dyde ryght gloriously in many places /

20 Of the noyse that soured emonge the hethen men discordyng in their lawe / and how they of egypte yssued out of theirr londe, and of the cuyllis that they dyde. capitulo v°

24 N this season, it happened that a grete debate soured bytwene the mescreauettes of Egypte / and the mescreauettes of Perse / for encyche partye of this peple wold haue the seignourye vpon the other / The Rote of this grete hate and emyse soured and 28 arose of that whyche discorde / and yet dyscorde of certayn pouyntes of their lawe / in suche wise that they haue dynerse names / for they that holde the lawe of perse haue the name in theirr langage sound 4 / And they of the lawe of Egypte be named siha. And they 32 be not so ferre fro the very crysten lawe / as ben the other / It happened that they of Egypte yssued out of theirr londe, and conquered alle the lordes vnto Antyche / And emonge the other cytees that were taken / The holy cyte of Iherusalem cam vnder their law power

1 Orig. aud.
2 Fr. à soutenir les poures chrestiens. Caxton has here mistaken "poures," poor, for "poroir," power.
3 leaf 12, back.
1 Fr. Soun, Lat. Sonni.
and seignourye / The peple that were there in captinyte1 were resonyably wel entreated / tyl it happeid by the suffrancce of god that his peple shold be chastised / and that was by a desloyal and cruel lord and calyphe of Egypte, whiche was named hecam / he 4 passed in malyee and cruelte alle his predecessours in suche wyse 2that the peple of his lawe heble them as wode men of pryde / of rage / and of falsched2 / Emonge the other tyrannyes, he commanded to caste down to the ground the chyrche of the sepulcre of our 8 lorde Ihesu Cryste / whiche had ben 3made4 first of Constantyne thenperour / by a noble Patriarke of Iherusalem named Maxyme / and after reedified by modest that other patriarke / In the tyme of hemes, of whom we haue spoken to fore, he sente to them a fals 12 caliphe, one his bayly, which was lord of Rames, and named hyart.5 (7) This dyde the commandement of his lord, and caste it down to grounde / In this tyme was patriarke of this chyrche a right valyant man named Oreste / and was vncl seid to this vntraw 16 kyng of Egypte, broder of his moder / And this was the reson why he was so cruel ayenste Crystiente / for the heethen men sayde that he shold never be forme in theyr lawe / by cause he had a crysten moder / And for to take away this suspeicion he destroyed6 this 20 holy chyrche of the holy sepulcre / whiche was the fontayne and begynnyng of our very creance /

How thaslibiccyon, injuryes and tormentes of crysten

men grewe in the tyme of Calyphe hetam. 24

capitulo vjj.

Ro thenne forthon began thestate of our peple at Iherusalem f to be more grousous and more sorrowful than it was wonte to he / for they toke grete displayse at theyr herte for the 28 chyrche of the resurrexion of our lorde, which they sawe so destroyed7 emonge them / And on that other syde they were charged ouer sorrowfully wyth tributes, taskes and tayllages, ayenst the custome and peyvlyges graunted to them of heathen prynces / 32 And also, they were defensed to make any festes on the dayes of theyr hye festes / but thenne they were compeellyd8 to tranuylle by

1 Orig. captinyte.
22 Fr. que les gens de la loi le tenaient aussi comme forsené d'orgueil et de ranye, i.e. even the people of his own religion considered him crazy with pride and anger.
3 leaf 13.
1 Fr. "refait, premierement," Constantine did not make, but remade the church.
The Sufferings of the Christians in Jerusalem.

force and anger; or they were commanded not to issue out of their houses, nor dores; but holde them cloes within; to thende that they should make no semblance of feste within them; And yet also they might not be therin in peace assured, but they caste at them by the wyndows grete stones, donge, dyrte, and foul ordure; And if it happe it somtyme a Crysten man to saye a light word that displeased any of the hethen men; Anon he should be taken like a murderer, and brought to pryson, and shold lose therfore his fyste or fote; or he was brought to the gybet; And alle the good that he had was brought in to the handes of the Calyphe; Somtyme they would take the childef of the crysten peple bothe sones and doughtres, in to theyr owne howses; and made them mescreantes ayenst theyr wylle; And somtyme by betynge and another wyth lyes and flaterye made many yonge folke to renye our faythe; And thus they dyde to our peple moche shame and a grief. But notwythstanding, good crysten men lefte not but admonised and comforted the peple to suffer al this with a good herte and veri peniteunce for the faith of Ihesu Criste, and promised them for thise shames, the Ioye, thonour and the glorye of heuen, whiche euere shal endure. The good Cristen peple spack so to gydre that they enforced them to holde, And kepe their crysten faythe the more surely; By cause they dyde them so moche harm And repref. It sholde be ouer longe a thinge to recounte to you, Alle the mesases and the myschiefs that the peple of our lord endured that tyme. But I shal shew you one exampel, to thende that by the same ye understonde the more of other.

One of the hethen men, ouermoche malicious and vntrewe, whiche hated of ouermoche cruel hate the crysten men, he advised and thought an a day how he myght bryngle them to deth. He sawe wel that alle the cyte holde the temple in moche grete honour & reverence, whiche was reedefyed, & the laye peple namde it the temple dominus: & that they whiche had the charge to kepe it dide al their payne to kepe it cleen & nette; now ther was a place to fore the temple, whiche was named thaire of the temple; Whiche they wolde kepe as cleene, as crysten men kephe their chirches and 36 aultres; And this vntrewe man, that I have sayd yow of to fore,

1 Orig. or. 2 leaf 13, back. 3 Fr. "Plusieurs des autres." 4 Fr. aître, i.e. the Cathedral yard, or the square before the Cathedral. The word evidently puzzled Caxton, so that he transferred it bodily, instead of trying to find its English equivalent.
Toke by nyght, in suche wise that no man sawe it / a dede hounde al roten and styknyng, and brought it in to the same aitre to forethe temple / On the morn, whan they of the towne cam to the temple, they fonde this dogge / Thanne souneder and aroos / a crye / a noyse, and a clamour so grete thurgh alle the towne / That ther was nothynge spoken of but of this hounde. They assembeled / and put out of doubte / that this was not doon ne caste there but by the Cristyens / Alle the hethen men Accorded to this poynyt that alle S the cristyn peple shold be put to deth with the sword / And there were thery swordes drawen redy out / And they also that sholden smyte of their heedes.  

The heathen men all declared that it had been done by some Christian, and clamored for their death.

A young man devised the deliverance of the Christians, by taking the deed upon himself.

He had his heed smitten ed.

How at the requeste of Themperour of Constantynoble the cristyn men obteyned lycence to bylde 32 agayn the cherich of the holy sepole the capitulo .vij.  

---

1 Orig. tomm.
2-2 Caxton is so hampered here, by his corrupt French text, that he does not make a very intelligible translation. The text of A, shows us the sense of the passage—"Et ja estoient pres les especes traitez de cel qui leur devoient a tous les testes tranchier."
3 leaf 11.
4 Fr. deportez, protect, take care of.
s Uche diseases\(^1\) suffred the peple of our lord in this tyme; but Ihesu cryste, that wele can sette remedyes in thinges merociullos & out of ordre / recomferte them after, for this vntrue we 4 prynt of egipte, betam, deyde / and his sone, named dahaer, regned after hym / This dahaer renuweg the aliauances with themperour of constantynoble, \(^2\) whiche was a Romayn, and named Eliopolitans\(^2\) / he pryade \(^3\) the sade dahaer, whom he moche longuy,\(^3\) that he wold 8 suffre that the Cristen men myght reedefye the chichre of the holy sepulcre, whiche his fader had do beten donnu / he graunet\(^6\) it for the lune of themperour / It was not longe after that this emperour deyde / and\(^6\) after hym regned Constantyn, whiche had to surname 12 Monomaques / whiche is to saye in grece as a man fyghtyng alone / Thes pour christen that were in Iherusalem had lyence for to make agayn their chichres / but they had not the power, for their pouerte / And herupon they had a counseyl that they wold sende 16 to themperour / and requyre hym for goddes sake that he wold helpe and socour of his Almesse, for the reedefyng of this holy werke / Their was in the toun of Iherusalem a good man named Iohan \(^4\) Cariayntes, born in Constantynople, \& had ben a grete 20 gentilman of the court as of his ligne / But yet was he more gentil of herte & good maners / This man was comen on pylgremage to the holy sepulcre, \& had lefte alle the bobauce and honoure of the world / \& had taken thabyte of relgyion / for to folowe our 24 lord Ihesu Criste in pouerte\(^5\) in the place / where he suffred pouerte & mesease for vs / This sade Iohan was prayd of alle the cristen peple there, that he wolde entrepyse this message for to go to themperour, for the lune of god and of them / he dyde it with a 28 good wyle, and departed, and\(^6\) cam in to Constantynoble, and spak to themperour / and dide alle that he was requyre\(^6\) / for themperour graunet\(^6\) that he wolde make alle the dispences\(^7\) that should be nedeful to the byldyng of this holy chichre / and wolde reedefye it 32 at his owen coste / This Iohan was moche joyous when he had so wel accomplissey\(^6\) his message / and toke leue of themperour, and cam agayn in to Iherusalem / When he had sade to the peple the good tydinges that he brought / they made grete Ioye, And many

---

\(^1\) Fr. "mesaises" should not, in this case, be translated "diseases," but calamities, miseries.

\(^2\) Caxton has here misunderstood his text. The French has, "qui aroit nom Romain, et estoit nommé en sournom Eliopolitaines."

\(^3\) Fr. celui Daher qui mont l'aimoit.

\(^4\) leaf 11, back.

\(^5\) Orig. pouerty.

\(^6\) Orig. and.

\(^7\) Orig. dispences.
The Christi-
ans wept
for joy at
this news.

The church
was com-
pleted in the
year 348.

The Christi-
ans now feel
repaid for all
they have
suffered.

They had
suffered
greatly under
the Egyp-
tians and the
Persians,

but that was
as nothing
compared to
their treat-
ment by the
Turks.

wepte grete terees for pyte / by cause they thoughte that our lord
wolde not al way forgete them / when he had doo to them suche
comforte / In this tyme was patriarche in Iherusalem an holy man
named nycesores / Themepour held rycht wel his promesse, for
he sente without taryeng grete partyr of his tresor / and dide do
make the chyrche of the holy sepulcre moche hye in thestate and
manere that it is yet / And was ful made the yere of thincarnacion
of our lord a M xlviiij, And had ben xxxvij yere destroyed. This 8
was rycht the yere to fore that our peple recouered the cyte / When
the Cristen men there had made agayn the chyrche / they were
moche joyous, and were also therin well comforted of all thev
mesases and reprecues that they suffered, whereof they had grete 12
plente / not only in Iherusalem / But also in alle the cytees aboute / as in bethleem / And in the cyte where Amos the prophete was
born, named Tucua / As ofte as the Caliphe sente in to the lande a
newe bayly / so ofte were sette on them new tributes & taillages, 16
whiche they myght not well paye / & yf they payed not, anon they
menaced them for to caste down their chyrches to the ground, &
saide they had of their lord commandement so to doo: thus in this
sorow were the cristen peple / one while vnder them of egipte / 20
another tyme vnder them of Perse / but this was not but yet a
begynning to them, as whan they cam vnder the power of the
turques / for the turques concered the Royame of perse / and also
of Egypte. Thus the holy cyte fylle in to their demayne / whiche 24
demened it so cruelly & tormented it so cruelly / that it semed to
the peple of our lord that they had be in francheis and in grete
reste vnder them of Egypte and of perse. Thus helde the turkes
them there viij yere /

Of the turkes; fro wens they cam / and how they
grewe in to grete puisaunce, and dide chese them
a kynge for to mayntene their warres.

capitulo viiji 32

or as moche as we haue spoken of the turkes / & shal ofte
spoke of them in this book / me semeth good that I saye to
yow fro whens this peple cam first / & wherby they had so
grete power / The turke & turkemans cam out of a lynage, Rote, &

1 Fr. Nyceforos, Lat. Nycephorus. 2 leaf 15.
of a contre 1 toward the East which is in surye, 1 And were a peple moche rude & without ordynance / ne had no contreye, ne no certayn dwelling place / But went all aboute fro londe to londe / 4 & sought pastures for their beestis / ne nener duellid in castel no toun / And when they wolde mene from one place to another / themne wente every lynage by hym self / And they made in every kyured or lynage a prince whiche was theyr Justicer; by this / 8 prynces, all their me-sfetes and trespaces were redressyd and amendid / And they obeyed, and dide that he or they commanded / They caryed with them alle theyr thynge, seruauntes, menages, honsphold, thier Oxen, kyen, sheep, and other beestis. In this / 12 thynge was alle theyr rychesse / They laboured no londe by eryng ne sowyng / ne they coude neyther bye ne selle / for they had no moneye; but their beestes, their chese and Mylke, changed thei, for to have other thinges that they neded. When they had ben in / 16 one place, and had ned the hole in to another, they sente the wisest of their peple vnto the princes of the contre / And they made covenantes for them for to dwelle in theyr wodes & pastures for the tribute that they shold paye lyke as they shold accordy / Now it / 20 happed that a grete partye of this peple departed fro the other / and entred in to the londe of perse / & fonde this londe moche plentiful voss of pastures / and ryght good of suche as they neded / And gaf to the kyng the trybute that they were accorded fore / And dwelly & and lived / there a long time, / 24 there I can not telle how longe / This peple began to growe and multepley in suche wise that / there were of them a meruyllous grete nombre / in so moche that the kyng, and they of the contre self began to have grete doubte of them and fere / lest they myght / 28 doo harme by the power that ouermoche grewe and encreed ; here / upon they had a counselyl enmonte them / that they wold dryne and chasse them by force out of theyr londe / But after, they chaunged theyr counselyl / and semed better / that they shold charge them / 32 with suche tributes that they myght not suffice / And themne they shold departe 4 by their owne agrement lyke as they were come / Thus they dyde / But they suffred longe thise greues / til atte laste, whan they myght nomore suffice / thi counseylled emong / 36 them self that they wold nomore paye to the kyng. when the kyng hearde this / he dide do crye thurgh alle his Royanne / that

1-1 Fr. "vers bisse quand l'en est en Surie," i.e. north of Syria.  
2 Orig. multepley.  
3 leaf 15, back.  
4-4 Fr. "par cunni, et de leur gré."
How the Turks chose them a King, Seldus. [Ch. VIII.

At last they were ordered to leave the country.

The Turks came together to depart, they first reduced their number and power.

They decided to choose a King to rule them.

One Selduc was chosen by lot.

One Selduc was chosen by lot.

His first commandment was that all should return into Persia.

they shold yssue out of it by a certayn day that was named to them / And that they shold passe the flood named colar, whiche is vuterist part of the Royanne of perse on that other syde / And when they were departed, and on the playn, they sawe them self 4 ouer, & apperecnyed that they were so grete plente of peple that no londe myght suffysel them / ne withstonde them yf they helde hem to gydre ; ffor to fore, when they dwellid in perse / they dwellid fer a son bre, in suche wise that they knewe not their power / But now 8 when they sawe that they were so many, they had mermaillous grete deslaynec of that they had suffered, and the pryde & grieuousnes of one prince. They take counseyl emonge them, and sawe that no peple myght resiste them / but myght conquere alle londes ther 12 aboute / But one thynge destroble them / and that was / they had no kyngle on them / And therme they dyde in this manere / They fonde emonge them an hundred lignages / of whiche euerych had his mayne / And euery lignage brought forth an Arowe marked 16 in suche wise that the Arowe of eche lignage myght be known / and when alle thise Arowes were brought to gydre / They called a lyttel chylde / and commanded hym to take vp suche one as he wolde / ffor they had accorded emonge them / that of the lignage, 20 that the Arowe shold be taken vp by the chylde / they shold chese them a kyngle / The chylde toke vp one of a lignage that after was called Selduces / Now they knewe that of this lignage they muste chese a kyngle / And they toke an hundred of the most prudent & 24 wise men that they coude fynde in al the lignage / And commanded that eche of them shold bryngge an arowe / wherone his name shold be wretone / And after they called the chylde / and bad hym take vp one of the Arowes / And conluded emonge them / that he 28 shold be kyngle / of whom he 2 toke vp the arowe / he toke vp one / on whiche was wretone Selduc / This Selduc was a moche goodly man / and gretely honoured in his lignage / he was grete and stronge, a good knyght and wel proued / and semed wel to be a 32 good man and of lyye werkes / They chee alle this man for to be theyr kyngle, as they had promysed / And dyde to hym homage and feaulte by oth, and obayed hym, and honoured hym, lyke as is don to a new kyngle / This kyngle, for the first of his commande 36 mentis, commanded and made do crye ouer all, on payne of lesynge of theyr lyues, they shold repasse & goo ouer agayn the flood of

1 The French gives "suffrire," endure, which Caxton has evidently mistaken for "suffrire," to sufflicc.
2 leaf 16.
Of the Condition of Christianity.

Cobar, and retorne agayn in to perse, ffor they wold no lengre be in danger for to seche place and stede where they myght dwelle / but wolde that they shold conquere this londe and / and retyne them in theyr seignoury / lyke as he sayd / and commanded, it was don / ffor the peple conquered in a short space by force of armes, not only the Royame of Perse / but alle Arabe and other contrees of thoryent / and toke them by strengthe, and retyned them vnder theyr power / And thus it happed that this peple that tofore had be so rude / and lyued so out of rule as beestis / after gate in lasse than fourty yere so grete seignouryes, as ye now here / And mounted in so grete pryde / that they wolde no more haue the name lyke as the other had / wherfore they were called turkes / The other that wold not leue theyr maner of lyuyng were alleway named, and yet ben, Turquemans / Thise peple, when they had conquered this contre of thoryent / they wold entre in to the Royamme of Egypte / ffor they were of moche grete puissance / And descended in to Surrye / and conquered the contre / And emonge the other cytees, they toke the holy cyte of Iherusalem, And suche peple as they fonde there they demened right euyl, and 20 tormentid and grened them more than they had ben tofore / lyke as I haue sayd to you to fore / Of thorryble synnes regnyng thenne in crystiante, as wel in thyse partyes / as in tho partyes.

capitulo ix

E haue herd how this peple that were crysten were demened, y in this contre of thoryent / Noe ye may here how the crystiante is contenef and ruled in other partyes of the world / knowe ye for certayn, that this tyme were fouulen but fewe / that had the drede of our lord in theyr herte / Alle right wysnesse / alle trouthe / alle pyte were faylled / The fayth of Ihesu cryste was as it had be quenchid / and of charyte men spack not / debates / discordes / and warres were nyhe oueral / in suche wyse, that it semed / that thende of the world was nygh / by the signes that our lord sayth in the gospell / ffor pestylesences and fanynes were grete on therthe / fealdulnes of heuen, trembllyng of 36 therthe in many places, and many other thinges there were that

1 Caxton omits here "dont ilz vindrent."
2 Fr. se contenait, i. e. conducted itself. 3 Orig. but. 4 leaf 16, back.
ought to fere the herets of men, to drawe them fro euyl / & to brynge to them the remembrance of our lord / But they were as dead and blynde of heeryng and of seeuyng / this that was needful to them for to saue theyr sowles / The pryncees and the barons brente 4 and destroyed the contrees of theyr neyghbours / yf any man had saued ony thynge in theyr kepyng / theyr owne lordes toke them, and put them in prison and in greevous tormentis, for to take fro them suche as they had / in suche wyse that the chyldren of them 8 that had ben riche men / men myght see them goo fro dore to dore, for to begge and gete theyr brede / and somme deye for hungre and moseease / 1 As to the chyrches ne Religious, they kept not theyr priyyleges ne none other francheyses / but were taken fro 12 them alle1 that mocht be founden, as wel meobles, rentes, and other thynge & ye the crosses, chalyces, & the sensours, they toke fro the chyrches / and molte them for to selle / yf any fledde to the chyrche for to warante and saue hym / he was taken & drawen out 16 vylaynously, as out of a tauerne or an other place / To Monkes and clerkes were doon wronges, and all the shames they myght / Ther was no instyce / but on them that trespace? not ne forfayted nothing / The contrees were ful of theues & of murlriers / In 20 cytees ne in good townees was noman sure / There regned customably dronkenship / lecherye / playeng at dyse & robereys / ther was no mariage kepte / ne lignage / And also as of euyl lyf were the clerkes or worse / as the other / The bysshopes ne the other 24 prelates durst not reprehende ne chastysse none for theyr euyl werkes / The Rentes of holy chyrche they gaf ne payd none / but2 solde the benefices / And fynably I saye yow, that alle euyl werkes had surprysed alle crystiente / in suche wyse, that it semed? that 28 encheche dyde payne for to servse the deuyll / Of a bataylle that themperour Romayne of Constantynople had aycnst a puissaunt prync of thoryent named Belphet.

1-1 Fr. "As gylyses n'as religious ne gardoient nul previlege, ne nul franchise eunz leur tollent," etc. Caxton seems here to have translated the French as (à les) by the English as. It should read—They protected none of the privileges or franchises of the church, or of the religious orders, but took away, etc.

2 Orig. but.
1 For to saue them, suffred a grete flawe to come in to the contre, for to chastise the peple/ flor in this tyme, when themperour Romayn was lord in constantynoble/ issued out of the partyes of 4 thoryent a puissant hethen prynce named Belphet, whiche brought with hym so grete plente of peple out of perse & surye, that they coned alle the contre/ & the multitude was so grete that it myght not wel be nombred/ they brought with them cartes/ Charyottes/ 8 horses, camels/ beuffes/ kyen/ & other smale beestys, so grete plente/ that vntethe it myght be bylened/ & with this grete apparyl/ This grete force & strengthe he brought in to thempire of constantynoble/ & began to take & waste alle that he fonde/ &

12 where as they fonde fortresses/ eytees or castellis, they toke it al with assault/ flor nothyng myght resiste them, but that they smote alle doun to therthe/ alle the peple hool fledde to fore hym/ this tyldynes cam to themperour that this grete lord had supprised &

16 taken alle his contre/ anon without taryeng, he sente alle about in thempire, & dyde thenae somone alle his hoost, & assembled as moche peple as he conde gete/ & as moche good as he myght fine for this werke that was so grete/ when his peple were comen, he

20 yssued with as many men of armes and of warre as he myght hauue/ & drewe to that parte where this belphet cam/ he fonde hym to sone, as he that was ferre entred in to the fonde/ when they knewe that eche of them was so nygh other/ they ordeyned theyr bataylles

24 for to fyghte/ & assembled so cruellly & of so grete angre/ as peple that had eche to other grete hate. The hethen foughte for tenhaunce theyr lawe, & for tenerece theyr power/ & the hristen men defended theyr fayth & the lawe of Ihesu eriste, & to saue and kepe theyr

28 lynes & franchyses, & theyr wyues/ childrenen, & theyr contree/ The bataylle was moche grete & cruell, moche peple slayn, & blode shaddde here & there. Atte las the grekes myght not suffre the faytes ne the grete plente of the mesereaus &/ and fledde as dis-

32 comfyted so fowle that none returned again, but ranne away withoute ordenaunce, encryche where he myght best saue hym; they that folowed them dyde alle that they wolde. They slewe many, & toke grete plente a lyue, And emonge alle other, Themperour was

At this time came from the East a Prince named Belphet.

He began to devastate the Empire of Constanti-

The Emperor marched out against him.

Finally the Greeks fled, and many were slain. The Emperor was taken prisoner.
Prince Belphet conquers the Christians. [Ch. X.

taken hym self / whan tydings cam in to the contre that the batayl was loste, and themperor taken / ther was grete sorowe of alle tholde men, wyues / & childeren that had not ben there / belphet, this pynce of mysercauntes, seying that he had thus playn 4 victorye of the cristen men, mounted & arrois in to grete pryde / for he thought wel that he shold fynde no barre that shold lette hym to doo his wille in 1 thempyre. when he was lodged, & his hoost aboute hym / he commanded themperor to be brought to fore hym, S which had be taken in the bataylle / & he sette his foote vpon the necke of themperor / & this dyde he ofte, & whan he shold mounte vpon horsbak or descende / in shame and despite of the fayth of our lord and of the cristen peple. When he had thus a 12 whyle shamed, reuyled, & despyted themperor, He lete hym goo, & delyuered hym & som of his barons / that had be prisoners / & whan themperor was come agayn in to constantynoble / 2 the barons of the londe reputed hym as ouermoche dishonoured / as he 16 that had shamefully conduyted the bataille, 2 & toke hym & raced out his eyen, & lete hym vse his lif in sorowe & shame. This pynce belphet began to take alle the londe, in suche wyse, that in a lytil whyle he conquered fro the 3 lystes of surye, vnto the see 20 called the bras of seynt george / which is wel xxx iournyes of lengthe / & x of brede / & in som place xv, & whan he cam to the bras / he wold haue passe in to constantynoble / whiche is on that other side of that litil see / but he myght not finde shippis 24 ynowgh / Thus the cristen peple of that londe, for theyr synnes 4 were vnder this cruell peple / emong the other, the noble and hye cyte where saynt peter was, 5 & made fyrst as chyef of cristente / that is, antioche, was taken in the ende, and subgette vnto the 28 turkes / thus had this belphet in his seygnorye & demayne the londes named celessurye / the two cilices / pamphylee / lyce, lycaone / cappadoce, galace / Bethyne, & a parte of the lasse asy / alle thys countriees ar much fertility & ful of peple / this hethen 32 peple began to bete downe the chiches & grene the cristen peple, as

1 leaf 17, back.
2—3 Caxton's translation is here incorrect. "Les barons de la terre tinrent à trop gruit deshonour ce celui qui ainsi honteusement les avoit conduitz (var, avoit este mené), demeuroit plus seur dedans le povoir et la hautesse de l'empire." 3 Fr. Latiche, i.e, the town of Laodicca. 4 Orig. synnes.
5 It is hard to understand whether Caxton means here that Saint Peter was "made chyef of Cristente," or the city of Antioch. The Latin original has—"Inter quos nobilis et cristina provinciarum multitum moderatrix et princeps civitas principis apostolorum sedes prima capti est."
Of many maners of tormentes that the cristen peple suffered for theyr synnes / in that time / capitulo xi. The Christians suffered all these torments on acomptment of their sins.

w Hyles that this tyme was so peryllous for the seygnorye of thys hethen men / cam oftymes in pylgremages the grekes and the latyns in to Itherusalem / ffor to praye ourre lord and crye hym mercy / that he wolde not forgete thus his peple. yet many cam theder in grete perylle, ffor alle the countrees by which they shold passe were ful2 of theyr enemyes / and ofte they were robbed.

20 and slayn / And when they myght escape and come to the holy eyte / they myght not entre therin. But eche persone muste paye a besaunt for trybute, wherof happe ofte that they that were despoylled, had not wherof they myght paye this tribute / &

24 myght not entre in to the town / And for this they suffred Colde / hungrre / and grete mesease / And many deyde. And herof the Cristen men of the town were moche grended / For they susteynde them that lyued / And muste burye them that were dede / and

28 seche suche thyng as was nedeful to them selfe & other / 3They that myght entre in the town were yet more grended / ffor som were murrered in the holy places of the eyte secretely / & was doon to them moche shame & repreef openly. Ther was fulthe caste in

32 their visage / & other spytte in the myddes of theyr visage / & som men bette them / wherfore the cristen men of the town, that had som acqueyntaunces with the hethen men, conduyyd and ladde them to theyr pylgremages, for to kepe them to theyr power.

1 leaf 18. 2 Orig. ful.

3–3 Caxton has misunderstood his French, which reads “Cente qui paroient entrer dans la ville les grecs vouloient encore plus,” that is, gave them (the Christians of Jerusalem) even more trouble. 1 i.e. the pilgrims.
There were in the cyte of them of Malfe, which is a cyte of puyell, which had a chyrche in Iherusalem named saynte marye de la latyne,(8) whereby was an hospital of poure peple, where as was a chappel that was named sayunt Iohem Elyemont / This saynt Iohan 4 was a patriarke of Allexandrye / Thabbot of the chyrche of our lady had in his cure & in his pourneyaunce this hospital, & pourchassed alle that was needeful for them. There were receyued alle the pour pylgryms whiche had not wherof to lyue / And this hows was of 8 moche grete charyte / Thus were the cristen peple in grete disease¹ in the toun / But there was nothyng that displesyd them, as when they had made theyr devocions atte holy places in the toun, with grete tranycylles & grete costes, And when they were in the seruyse 12 of our lord / the hethen mescreauntes cam in with grete noyse & erye, and satte vpon the aulters / threwe down the chalyces / brake the lampes / & the tapres / & yet for more to angre the cristen peple / they teke ofte the patriarke, which was theune, by the 16 berde, and by the heer / And threwe hym down to the grounde, & defowled hym vnder theyr feet, of whiche alle cristente had grete sorowe & moche pyte / In thysy sorowes and meseases were the cristen men in the londe of Surye, as I haue sayd you to fore, 20 CCCC four score & ten yere / and alwey eryed vuto our lord for ²mercy with syghes & teeres / & prayde hym despointly that he wold not alle forgete them / But the good lord, that after the tempeste & derke weder can wel brynghe elerenes and sayr season, behelde this 24 peple in pyte / And sente to them comforte and deluyerance of the tormentes in whiche they had longe ben.

How aftir they³ had ben four CCCC lxxxxye in seruage of the hethen peple / our lord pourueyed 28 remedye for his cristen peple / capitulo xij.

¹ Fr. "mesaise," here means discomfort, misery.  ² leaf 18, back.  ³ Orig. the.
of moche clere engyne / and good vnderstanding / and spak right well / whan he cam to the gate of Iherusalem / he payd the trybute of a besaunt & entred in to the cyte / and was lodged in a good 4 cristern mans hows / This petre alwey enqyred & demanded 5 moche of his hoost / of the gouernaunce & estate of the cyte / And how the cristern men conteyned them vnder the hethen men / And how theyr lord demened & governed them / his hoost, whiche had 8 longe ben in the towne / tolde to hym alle the maner playnyly of the tymes passy, And how the cristente had be defowled / And the holy places dishonoure, whiche was sorrowful to here / And he hym self, which a good while had be in the towne for to doo his 12 pylegrome / sawe wel & perceyued a grete partye of the caityfnes / in which the cristen men were / he herd saye that the patriarke was a good wyse man, dente & religyous, which was named symeon / (9) Peter thought that he wolde geo & speke with hym / & demande of hym the estate of the chirches, of the clergye, & of the peple / he cam to hym, & dyde so as he thought, And asked of hym alle thynge / The patriarke apperceyued wel by his wordes and his countynaunce / that he was a man that dredde god / & right wyse 20 and vnderstanding / And began to telle to hym by layser / alle the meseases of the cristen peple. when peter herde thise sorowes of the mouthe of this good man, whome he bylyenyd wel, coude not absteyne hym fro grete syghes / & wepyng many teeres for 24 pyt & ofte demanded of the patriarke yt ther were ony counsel & remedye for this werke / & the holy & dente patriarke answerd hym: (10) “we haue made many orysons & prayers vnto oure lord god for to receyue vs in to his mercy and grace. But we apperceyue 28 wel / that our synnes be not yet purged / for we ben certaynly in the culpe and blame, whanne oure lord, whiche is so rightwys, holdeth vs yet in the payne. But the remonme of the contrees by yonde the montaynes is moche grete here, that the peple there, and 32 specially of them of fraunce, ben good cristene peple, and moche stedfast in the fayth. And therfore oure lord holdeth them at this day in moche grete peas and in hye puiss ance / yt they wolde praye oure lord that he wold haue pyt on vs / or 7 that they toke 36 couney, 7 for to socoure vs / we haue certaynly hope that our lord

1 After "Peter" Caxton has omitted Comme il estoit saige et enquierant, "as he was a sensible and inquiring man."
2 Orig. enqyred.
3 Orig. louge.
4 Coude = our, "he could."
5 Leaf 19.
6 Orig. puiss ance.
7 Fr. ou qu'ilz prinssent couesil, "or if they would take counsel."
Peter undertakes the Crusade.

[Ch. XII.

shold helpe vs by them for tacomplynshe oure werke. ff or ye see
wel that the grekes and thempour of Constantinoble, whiche ben
our neyghbours and as kynnesmen, maye not helpe ne counseyle vs /
ffor they them self ben as who sayth destroyed / And haue no 
power to defende theyr owne lande" / Whan peter hern / he
answerd in this maner / "fayr fader, 1 trouthe it is that ye hau
sayd / ffor of that londe am I. 1 And god be thanked / the fayth of
oure lord is moche better Holden there and kepte / than it is in ony 8
other londes that I haue ben in, syth that I departed on my Journeye
fro my contre / 2 And / I byleue certaynyly that [if they knew] of the
mesace and servage in whiche thise hethen mysbyleyd peple
holde you Inne, 2 / that, by the playsyre of almyghty god, by theyr 12
good wylles, they shold fynde counseyl and ayde in this your gre
tede & werke / wherfore I counseyl you one thyng, yf it be aggre-
able to you & seme good / that is, that ye sende your lettres vnto
oure holy fader the pope, and to the chirche of rome, vnto the 16
kynges, prynces & barons of the occident & weste parte / In which
late them wete playnly 3 how it is with you / & that ye crye to
them for mercy / that they wolde socoure you for the loue of god
& for his fayth in suche maner, that they myght haue honoure in 20
this world & sauacion of their soules in that other / & for that ye
be pour peple / ye haue no nede to make grete dispencis / yf ye
thynke I be sufficaint for so grete a message / ffor the loue of
Ihesu Criste & remyssyon of my synnes, 4 I shal entreprise 5 this 24
vyage, and ofre my self to take so moche trauayl for you / And I
promise truly to you that I shal late them haue knowleche / how it
is with you / yf god sende me grace to come thydre" / whan the
patriarke herd this / he had moche grete joye / he sente anon for 28
the moost saddest & wysest men of the cristien peple, & for the
clerkes & laye men / & sayde & shewe to them the bounte and the
sernyse that this good man ofryd to 6 them / They were right glad /
And thanked hym moche / Thenne anon, withoute taryenge / they 32
made theyr wrytynges and sealde 7 them with theyr scales / and
delyuerd to peter theermute /

1—1 Fr. "ray est, ce que vous avez dit de la terre dont je suy, "that is
ture, what you have said of the land from which I come."
2—2 Caxton’s obscurity is here due to his bad French text, which omits
one of the important verbs in the sentence. A. gives the correct reading, "Je
crois certainement que s’il savoient la mesure et li serrage qu’que cist
meservent ces tiennent," etc.
3 Orig. playnly.
4 Orig. synnes.
5 Orig. entreprise.
6 leaf 13, back.
How the said peter theremyte entreprised the more
hardily his vyage, by thapparicion or vision
that he sawe in his sleep / ca xiii

4 t Ruly our lord god is swete / pyteous / and mercyful / for he
wylle not suffre to perysshe / ne to be loste / them that hau
e in hym ferme and stedfast hope / And when the men lacke helpe /
god sendeth to them his ayde / And this may clerly be seen in
8 this werke / for fro whens cometh that this pour man / whiche was
lytill & despyshed persone, wery and brused of so grete Iourneye and
wayne / that durste enterprise so grete a dede and werke / how
myght he wene that our lord wolde accomplysshe so grete a werke
12 by hym / as for to dylyture his peple fro the myserye and caytyfnes
that they had ben in, nygh fyne C yere / But this hardynesse cam
to hym of the grete charyte that he had in hym / And the fayth
wrought in hym for the loue that he had to his brotheren / In this
16 dayes happep a thynge / that moche lyft vp his herte to pursoure
his enterprise / for this good man, when he had taken this message
and charge therof / he wente moche ofter than he was woonte to
do to the holy places in the cyte, and cam on an euentide to the
20 chirche of the holy sepulchre, and made there his prayers denoutly,
with grete plente of teeris / Aftir this he sleppte upon the pameute,
& hym semed that our saueour Ihesu Criste cam to fore hym /
and charged hym self to doo this message / And said to hym,
24 "petre, aryse vp hastely / and goo surely thedyr as thou hast
entreprysed / for I shal be with the / It is now tyme from hens
forth / that my holy Cyte be clensed / and that my peple be
soconed" / Petre awoke in this poyn, And was fro than forthon
28 more abandouned vnto the waye, and also sure, as his Iourneye and
message had be doon / he entered and appoynted his departyng
for to doo his erande / And had leue and benediction of the
patriarke / he descended doon to the see / and fonde there a shyp
32 of marchaunte that wolde passe in to mylle / he entred in to the
ship / the which had good wynde, & in shorte tyrne arryued at bar /

1—1 Fr. et lui enchaeryt ce message mesmes. Caxton translates mesmes
as belonging to lui, instead of to message. It should read, "and charged
him with this same message." Lat. "Et cæsum injuxisse legationem."

2 Caxton's original gives "enterima son departement pour faire son
chemin," i.e., "prepared to depart on his journey." Another version gives
"entera son airre." Caxton read "enterima" as enterma, an easy, paleo-
graphic mistake, and then made "entermed" of it in English. Lat. "ad
recedendum accinctus."

3 Orig. see.
Urban curses the Emperor, and is turned out of Rome. [Ch. XIV.

He delivers his letters to Pope Urban.

Harry, Emperor of Germany, has a quarrel with Pope Gregory VII.

The Emperor encroaches on the prerogatives of the Church.

The Pope endeavours to settle the matter peaceably.

The Emperor declares war.

He deposes Gregory, and puts Gilbert of Ravenna in his place.

Peter issued out, & went by londe to Rome. He fonde in the contre the pope Urban / and salewed hym in the name of the Patriarke and of the christen peple of Surye, and delyuend to hym theyr letters / & sayde to hym by mouthe, moche truli & wysely, the grete sorowes, the miseryes and vyletees that the christen suffred themne in the holy londe / as he that was expert therof / and coude wel saye to hym the trouthe.

Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme, and how the pope Urban was putte oute of the see of Rome by the bysshop of Rauenne / i

N this tyme, Harry themperour of Allemayne, had a grete debate ayenst the pope Gregory the seuenth, to fore this 12 Urban / and the discord aroos for the rynges and the croses of the bisshoppes that were dede in thempyre / For suche a customme had ronne a grete whyle there, that whan the prelates were deed / the rynges and croses of them were brought to themperour / And he gaf them to his clerkes and his chaplayns, or whom he wolde / and sente to the chirches, and bad them that they shoolde holde them for theyr bisshoppes and archebisshoppes without other election & other proef, by whiche holy chirche was adommaged sore / For he sente ofte personnes / that were not propice therto. The pope gregorie sawe that this customme was ayenst the right and lawe wreton, and also ayenst reason / and prayde hym anyably to leue this for the lone of god, of holy chirche, and for saucion of his 24 solwe / for it apperteyned nothing to hym / The themperour wold not leue this for the pope / wherfor the pope cursed hym / herof themperour had so grete despite & so grete desclayne / that incontinent he began to warre ayenst the chirche of Rome / & ayenst the pope 28 he made to rise an aduersarye / Tharchiebishop of rauenne, which was named Gilbert, & was wel letted & moche riche / This bishop trusted ouermoche in thayde of themperour / And in the plento of his rychesse / And he cam to rome / and deposed and put out the 32 pope of his see by fawmoure & force / And becam so fel, and of so grete pryde that he had, that he forgate his wytte & reson that he ought to haue by his cleryge / And sette hym self in the see / And made hym to be holden for pope, as he that wel wende to haue ben 36

1. leaf 20.
2. Fr. croses, crozier, or bishop's staff.
3. Orig. glete.
4. Orig. incontinent.
it; I have said to you to fore, that at that tyme; Cristen peple were
in gret paryll thourghout alle the world; & that the comandemens
of the gospel were moche forgotten; and of holy chyrche; And men
ranne faste and haboundantly to the werkes of the deuyl & to alle
synnes; & whan this discorde and Seysne was so grete; Thenne
alle trouthe was goon; & the faythe of our saueour was lyke as it
had ben alle perysshed! The bysshoppes, the abbottes, and the
8 prouostes were beten & sette in prison; And alle theyr thynges
were taken awaye fro them, namely by them that helde of them-
perour. In this debate was done alle the shames and repreuus to
the pope; Thenne the holy fader sawe that he was not obeyed as
he shold be; and that he was in paryll of his lyf. And he went in
to puylle; by the helpe and counseyl of Robert guichart; whiche
thenne was lord of the contre; This Robert dyde vnto our holy
fader; and to his peple, as moche of honour, of servyse, and bounte
as they wold take, and yet more; at laste our holy fader wente
hym in to salerne; & becam seke, and laye doun & there dyde; &
was there buryed! The Cardynals that were there Chose another,
whiche was named viator; whiche endured but one moneth or
there aboutes: After hym, they choos this urbain that I spack of to
fore; This urbain sawe that themperour was yet in his malice & his
angre; & durst not abandonne to hym, ne put hym in his power;
but helde hym in the forteresses of some barons, that for goddes
sake retayned hym in grete doubte; whyles he was in this poynes;
peter theremyte cam to hym; and brought to hym the message fro
the Cristen men in the holy londe; our holy fader the pope
knewe moche wel; the bounte; the wytte; and the religion that
was in this pater; And ansuerd to hym moche swetly, and sayde
that he shold goo hastily spoke to the princes and barons of the
royame of frannce of this werke; for yf he myght escape saucely fro
the handes of themperour, he hym self had Intencion to passe the
montayynes; and drawe hym toward tho partyes for to helpe the
better to this wherke; yf it were possible; Thenne peter was right

1 leaf 20, back. 2 Fr. prouoires, priests, not provosts.
3 Fr. "l'en mettoient autres evesques et autres abés en leurs lors no-
mienent à ceus qui se tenoient devers l'empeurer." Lat. "Quicunque
imperatorii in hac sua perseveritate non erant consentientes."
4 Orig. themperour. 5 Orig. onr. 6 Orig. aud.
7 Caxton here follows his French original, which is corrupt. The Latin
and the better French translations give Victor.
8-9 Fr. s'abandonner, à son pooir, "trust himself in his hands."
Peter preaches the Crusade with such power that the people weep tears of pity.

Like John the Baptist before Christ, so Peter prepares for the coming of Pope Urban.

Glad of this good answer of our holy father / and passed lombardye and the montayynes,\(^1\) and cam in to francie / And\(^2\) began diligently to gete\(^2\) the barons, like as he was sent expressly to them, and tolde to echo of them the shames and disconveniences\(^3\) that the hethen peple dyde to the Crysten folk in the holy londe / And the same he said\(^4\) to the mene peple / for he assembled them oftymes, and tolde to them the sorrowful state of the londe & Cyte of Jerusalem / in suche wyse that he made them to wepe many a teere / And at every tyme he made some fruyt by his sayeng and exhortyng the peple to gyne socours to the holy londe / And like wise, as saynt Lohan baptyste preched to fore, to make the way to fore Ihesu cryste / so in the same wyse this Peter brought tydynges to fore 12 the comyng of our holy father / wherfore he hym self, whan he\(^4\) cam, was the better herd and byleuid / and the more dyde in this werke /

Of a general counseyl that the pope urbain ordeyned for the reformacion of holy chirche & thamende-ment of the peple /

\(^{1}\) Orig. montaygne.
\(^{2}\) Fr. qwerir, search out.
\(^{3}\) Fr. disconvenances, insults, not disconveniences, as Caxton evidently read it.
\(^{4}\) leaf 21.
\(^{5}\) Orig. montaynes.

In 1095, Henry reigned in Germany, and Philip in France.

The Pope goes into France.

He orders a Council at Clony;

\(^{6}6-6\) Other editions give Verzelai, Lat. et universis transalpinarum partibus apud Vigilacrum.

\(^{7}\) Fr. Pii Nostre Dame.
mont, in auuergne / This was in the moneth of Nouembre / There were many Archebissshops / bissshops / abbotes / and grete prelates
and persons of holie churche of those parties. Ther were by the
4 general counseyl many commandements° gyuen for tamende clerkes
& layette 2 / for teshewe synnes / and receuere good maners / There
was holy churche al reformed, of whiche it had grete needed /
Emonge alle other, Peter thereremyte was there, whiche forgate not
8 the werke that he was charged with / but admonested the prelates
chee pryuatly by hym self, & prayde the commne peple openly
moche wel and wysely / Thenne take our holy fader the words,
and shewed generally to alle the counseyl / what grete shame it was
12 to alle the eristen men, of our faith / that was so nyghe destroyed
& faylled in the place where it began / and it myght be grete feare
and drede whan it faylle at the heed & welle / that the ryvers sholde
not endure / that were rennyng thurgh the world / And said
16 moche wel, that alle the very Crysten peple sholde take herof grete
despite of thus desherryted by their defaulte / and his contre
delynered to his enemies / And promysed that ye they wolde take
3 upon this ptylgremage, he wolde change theyr penanue in to this
20 werke. And ye they delye in this waye, confessid and repentaunt,4
he wolde take it on his fayth, that they incontinent sholde goo in
to the ioye of heuen. On that other syde, as long as they were in
the seruyse of our lord, they were in the warde and kepyng of holy
24 churche, bothe they and theyr thynges, in suche wyse, that they that
dyde to them ony domage, sholde be acursed, & alle this com-
manded he to be kept of alle the prelates that were atte counseyl.
This doon, he gaf every man leue, and commanded [that he] shold
28 preche this ptylgremage and pardon. And tolde to them that alle
men sholde tranaylle to gyue and make longe trewes and pees of the
warres, for tacomplysshe the better this ptylgremage, and to
performe it.

32 How many noble and hye men, and other of the
Royame of fraunse, crossed them for to goo
ouer see.

ca° xvj°

0 Wr lord gaf his grace vnto our holy fader the pope in vtteryng
36 of the word of god, which was said in suche wyse, that it was

1 Orig. commandements. 2 Orig. layefec. 3 leaf 21, back.
4 Orig. repentaunt.
The preaching of the Pope successful.

It is a difficult thing for a man to leave his wife and children;

but by so doing he saves his soul.

All the great barons of France undertake this work vigorously.

Many join to save their souls.

Many go for more worldly reasons.

Men need this hard penance.

fyxed and roted in the heretes of them that herde hym, and not only of them that were present, but of alle other that it was recorded and told vnto, for the bisshops wente in to theyr countrees and preached to theyr peple like as it was to them commanded. 1 How 4 be it that it was a strange thyng, 1 and right grenoos for a man to leve his contree, his wyf, his children / and lynguage, And leve them that he loueth by nature. But when one thynketh what reward he shal haue of our lord so to doo, thenne he geteth a feruent loun 8 in hym self for the charyte of our lord, and 2 leneth the naturall loun of his fleshe, for to saue his sowle / and this myght wel be perceyued and seen, for the peple of the Royame of frawnce, and the grete barons, and other lasse that were enclynyed to synnes and acustomed 12 to doo ylle, as I haue said to fore, aftir they herde this prechyng, entrepyred so vygorously the werke of our lord, and 2 awowed them to ward this pylvrengame, as ye shal here, for it semed that every man ought to entreprise tauenge the wronge and shame that the 16 hethen dyde to our lord, and to his peple, in the londe of Jeru-

saile. Ye shold haue seen the husbonde departe fro his wyf, And the faders fro the childeren, and the childeren fro the faders. And it semed that every man wolde departe fro that he lounyd best in 20 this world, 3 for to wynne the Ioye of that other / Ther was so grete affraye, and so grete a meuyng thurgh alle the londe, that vnneth ye shold haue founde an hows / but that som had enterprised this 4 viage / I saye not that alle that wente were wyse and of pure 24 entencion toward our lord / for som monkes wente oute of theyr cloystres without luen of theyr abbotes or pryours / and the rechuses wente out of the places where they had ben closed in / and wente forth with the other / Som wente forth for loun of theyr frendes, to 28 bere them felawship / Other wente forth for bobaunce, lest they shold be reputed for eyyl and not good / And som there were that wolde withdrawe them for theyr creancers, and haue respite of theyr dettes / But how that it was theyr entencions within theyr heretes, 32 it semyd good for the grete enterprice that they shewed outward / And it was of grete nede that this pylvrengame was chosen at that tyme / for there were in the world so many synnes that they withdrew the peple / frow our lord / And it was well behouefull that 36 god shold sende to them som addressement, 6 by whiche they myght

1-1 Fr. Bien savez, que forte chose, “Be assured that it is a hard thing,” etc.
2 Orig. and,  3 Orig. world.
4 leaf 22.  5 Orig. our.
6 Fr. adivement, according to Cotgrave, a directing or setting in the nearest course.
come to heuen / and that he gaf them som traneylle, as it were a
purgatorye to fore theyr deth / At this counselyl anowed presently
this pylgremage, the good bishop of Puy named Aymart / whiche
afterwaid was legate in the same hoost / and conteyned hym moche
wysely and truly / Also, the bishop of Orenge, whiche was an holy
man and releygious, anowed there the same viage / And ynowhe of
other whiche were not at that counselyl that enterprised the same
8 vowe / Our holy fader had commanded / and made the bishops to
holde it / that alle they that wolde auowe this pylgremage shold
sette the signe of the crosse on their right sholdre / for thonoure of
hym that bare the torment of the crosse vpon his sholders for to
12 sane vs / and tacomplysshe this that oure lord sayth in the gospell /
"Who that wil lyue aftir me / renye hym self and take the crosse
and folowe me?" / wel forsaketh he hym self, that leueth / that the
flessh leueth / for sauyng of his sowle / whan one of the grete barons
16 was croysed so on his sholdre in acontre, alle the peple of the
contre that were also crossey cam to hym, and chees hym for
theyr captayne, and made to hym feautle for to haue his ayde
and waurntise in the waye of the sayd pylgremage /

20 The names of noble men that enterprised this pyl-
gremage, as wel on this side as beyonde the
montaynes /

i. N the royame of fraunce and of Allemayne, 3 Hugh, the
24 yonger brother of the kyng of fraunce 4 5 / Robert, therle of
flaundres 5 / Robert, Duc 6 of Normandye, Sone to kyngge William
of Englonde / Stephen, therle of chartres and of bloys, which was
fader to erle thybauld the olde, whiche lyeth att laigny / Raymond,
28 therle of tholouse / and many knyghtes of that londe / The valyant
man Godefroy of buyllon, Duc of lorayne, with his two brethren,
Bawdwyyn and eustace / And one theyr cosyn, Bawdwyyn, sone to
the counte huon de Retel / Therle garnyer de gres / Bawdwyyn, the
32 erle of henawde / Ysoonart, the erle of ye / Rembout, therle of
Orenge / William, therle of forests / Steenen, therle of Anbмalle /
Rotrout, the erle of Perche / Hughе, the erle of sytay pol / & many

1 Orig. whi he. 2 Fr. renie. "let him deny himself." 
3 Fr. "Hue le maine, frere au roy France," Hugh the great, not
"Hugh the younger brother." 4 Orig. fraunce. 
5 Orig. flaundres. 6 Orig. Duc. 7 leaf 22, back.
barons and knyghtes that were not counted\(^1\) / As raoul de bangenel / Euerard du puisat / Guy de garlande, which was steward of fraunce / Thomas de fierre, Guy de possesse, Giles de chaumont / Girard cherisy / Rogier de baryule / Henry dansique\(^2\) / Centon of 4 heart / Guillem ananaix, Gaste the bediers, Guillem de montpellyer / and Gyrard de Roussillon / ye may wel knowe that with this peple were croyssed moche grete plente of knyghtes and other, with grete nombre of commune peple / whiche peter theremyte gadred\(^3\) 8 in the Royanne of fraunce and in thempyre of Allemaygne. And by yonde the montayns men croyssed them also / Buymount the prynce of Tarente, whiche was soon to Robart guychart, that was Duc of pylele, and Tacre his newe, his sustres sone, and many other grete 12 barons of this londe that were not so remnommed ne known as thise were. There was grete Appareylemens, and\(^4\) arraye that was made for this pylgremage. The grete men had enterprised, that assonse as the wynter was passed they wold putte them on this pylgremage. 16 The mene peple, the knyghtes, the barons, and other, aftir they were acqueynted that one with that other / sente to ech other lettres and messages for tacreode to goo to gydre / and apoynte\(^5\) the tyme of departyng; and\(^6\) of the waye that they sholde holde / 20 And\(^7\) whan Marche was come, ye sholde hane seen horses arrayed, with sommyers, palfroyes, and stedes / tentes and puyllons, and to make armures.\(^8\) ye maye wel knowe\(^9\) that there was moche to doo of many thynges;\(^10\) for the barons were acorded that they shold 24 not goo alle to gydre, ffor no contre myght suffye ne fynde that which shold be nedeful for them / ffor whiche cause alle the hoostes neuyr assembled (as ye shal here) tyl they cam vnto\(^11\) the cyte of Nycene. The mene peple charged them self not moche with tentes 28 ne Armaures, ffor they myght not bere it. And therfor evey man garnysshid hym after that he was, with moneye and goodes, as moche as he supposed shold be nedeful for hym. Whan the dye of departyng\(^12\) cam, ther were grete sorowes, grete wepynges, and 32 grete cryes at departyng of the pylgryms / ffor there were but fewe howses but of them som wente / And\(^13\) suche howsolders ther were / that they wente alle, and\(^14\) caried theyr wynes, and\(^15\) bare theyr children with them / It was a meruyllous thynge to see this 36

\(^1\) Orig. counted. \(^2\) Fr. Henry d'Asque. Lat. de Asca. \(^3\) Orig. and. 
\(^4\) Fr. "faire-armenues chargier." Caxton neglected to translate "chargier." 
\(^5\) ye maye wel knowe that there was moche to doo of many thynges; for the barons were acorded that they shold 24 not goo alle to gydre, ffor no contre myght suffye ne fynde that which shold be nedeful for them / ffor whiche cause alle the hoostes neuyr assembled (as ye shal here) tyl they cam vnto the cyte of Nycene. The mene peple charged them self not moche with tentes ne Armaures, ffor they myght not bere it. And therfor evey man garnysshid hym after that he was, with moneye and goodes, as moche as he supposed shold be nedeful for hym. Whan the dye of departyng cam, ther were grete sorowes, grete wepynges, and 32 grete cryes at departyng of the pylgryms / ffor there were but fewe howses but of them som wente / And suche howsolders ther were / that they wente alle, and caried theyr wynes, and bare theyr children with them / It was a meruyllous thynge to see this 36

\(^6\) Orig. knowe. \(^7\) Orig. vnto. \(^8\) leaf 23. \(^9\) Orig. and.
menynges / ffor it had not byfore be acustomed to see suche thynges in fraunce / ne never byfore was crosse born ne taken for pylgremage.

4 Of thauentures that a Rowte of Cristen men had in this viage / Of whome one Gaultyer withoute knowleche / was Captayne / capitulo xviiij.

1 He yere of thyncarnacion of our lord .M. foure score xvj / the eght daye of Marche cam a gentilman, a knyght right noble, named Gaultyer,(12) without knowleche1 to his surname. with hym cam a merueyllous2 grete plente of folke a foot, ffor ther were butfewe men a hors bak in this rowte / they passed in allemayne, 12 and drewe hem toward hongrye / The Royamme of hongrye was alle enuyronned with grete waters, and large mershes, and depe lakes, in suche wyse that none myght entre ne yssue but by certayne places and strayt entrees that ben as yates of the londe.

16 In hongrye was thenne a kyunge, a moche valyuant man named Colemant / And was a very good cristen man / He knewe that Gaultyer cam by londe with grete peple / and had therof moche grete Ioye / and helde wel with the pylgremage that he had entered / he receyued them debonayrly in his londe, and commanded thugh his royame that they shold haue alle maner vytyallle, good sheep,3 and alle that they nede.4 The pylgryms passed alle hongrye in good peas, tyl they cam to the ende, where they fouunde a water 20 whiche was named Marce / This was the bounde of hongrye toward thoryent. they passyd this water in good peas, and entred in to bongrye.4 And withoute knowynge of this Gaulteer, some of his peple abode over the water / And cam to a castel named Mallenylle, 28 for to by vitaylles, of the whiche they had nede / The hongres5 by cause6 that alle the hoost was passed, sauf they which were but a fewe, ranne vpon them / And bette them / And dye to them over moche shame. They passed the water, and cam to gaultier / and 32 shewde to hym playnly how they had ben demened without for.

1 Some of the French texts give "Gantier sans Savoir," which Caxton follows; others have the more correct, "Gantier sans Avoir," i. e. Walter the Pennyless. Lat. Gallerus cognomento "Sans Avoir."
2 Orig. merueyllons.
3 Fr. à bon marché, i. e. at low prices: "good cheap" seems to have been the ordinary translation, see p. 48; liht cheap is another form for the same expression. See Aureén Riwle, I. 398, and Townley Mysteries, 102.
4 Bougrye, Bulgaria. 5 Bougres, Bulgarians. 6 Orig. cause.
Disasters to the Christians in Bulgaria. [Ch. XVIII.

They complain to Walter.

The Duke of Bellegrave will not sell them provisions.

A conflict ensues.

Walter sees that his men are to blame.

He sets out for a city called Stralyce.

They are well received here.

and given a safe conduct to Constantineople.

Here the Emperor receives Walter kindly.

faytte: They had moche grete despite, and moche sorowe herof. And passed the water agayn, yf they had not so grete peryl and so grete distourblyng; And thought they wold goo theyr wanye, and lene for tauenge this thyng / So long they wente tyl they cam 4 to belle graue, whiche is the first Cyte of bougrye2 on this syde. Gaultier sente to the duc of the town, and requyred hym that he wold late them ther by vytyayles / he wold not suffe ony to be sold to them. Thoost had grete disease3 for lak of vytyayles / and 8 myght not lenger kepe them, but that a grete parte of them wente a fewragyng for to gete vytyayles for them, and for theyr beestys / They founde grete plente of beestes in the contre / whiche they toke and brought to their lodgynges / whan they of the contre herd this, 12 they armed them, and assembled grete peple of the contrée, and ran vpon them where they droef their proyes, and fought with them / and toke the beestes fro them / and many of them they slewe, and hunted the other away. the nombre wel of Cx1 of oure4 men, shytte them 16 in a monasterye for to kepe them there sauf / but the bongres cam there aboute / and sette fyer on the chirche, and brente alle / Gaultier sawe that he ledde with hym many folyssh peple, whiche he conde not rule ne sette alle in ordenance, And withdrew hym fro them, 20 and toke them that wold be ruled and obeye hym, and wente in to forestes of bougrye,5 which ben large and long, and began to passe the moost wysely and stylle that he myght / tyl he cam to a cyte named stralyce / and is a contre named danemarche6 the moyen / 24 There fonde he a good man that was duke of the londe / whan this duke knewe what they were and whyther they wente / he receyued them moche debonayrly, and made them to haue vytyayles and other thynges good cheep. And dyde to them bountes and seruyses 28 ynowgh for the oultreage that was doon to them at belgravia. And dyde redresse and yelde agayne to them as moche as he myght recouere / and aboue alle this / he delyuered to them good condyute and sewr tyl they cam to constantynoble / whan they were come to 32 constantynoble, themperour sente for gaultier. he cam vnto hym, and sayde to hym thoccason of his viage, and that he wolde abyde there, peter theremyte, by the commandent of whom he had brought thysye ppygryms / whan themperour herde this / he receyued hym 36

1 leaf 23, back.
2 Lat. “Bulgavorum et fines alligat ad locum deveniens qui dicatur Belgravia.”
3 Fr. souffrete, lack, scarcity.
4 Orig. oure.
5 Bougrye, Bulgaria.
6 Fr. Danemarche la Maienne. Lat. Dacia Mediterranea.
moche wel and swety / and assygned to hym a fayr place without the town / where as he lodged hym with his felawship, and commanded that they shold have vytyaille and alle other necessaries 4 good chepe / and ther soiouerned they a whyle.

How Pieter the heremyte was chyef of a grete hoost in this 1 viage toward the holy londe. capitulo xix? Peter the Hermit starts with his Army. 49

Peter the Hermit sets out with 40,000 men.

They arrive at Malleville. Here they learn of the injustices done to Walter's men.

They kill 4000 men to avenge their fellow-pilgrims.

The Duke of Hungary has great fear of them.

2 \* orig. osterdamch. 3 Fr. Meslées.
4-4 Fr. "s'entre commencèrent à semonduire et à amonester à bien faire." Caxton, misled by the recurrence of the preposition à, skipped a line in his translation.

GODFREY.
whyles he laye yet at maleuylle, herd saye that the kyng of 
hongrye had herd of the deth of his peple / wherof he was moche 
angry / and that he somoned and assembled alle his power for 
tauenge his men that had be slayn / And doubted herof / And was 4 
no merueyyle / wherfore he made tassemble alle the shippes that 
myght be founden atte ryue of the see to hym / and made his peple 
.to departe mocho hastely his cartes and charyottes / and the beestes 
they had merueyllous grete praye, and lad away grete rychesses fro 8 
the castel of maleuylle, that they had there taken when they were 
passed ouer in to bongrye. ¹ they cam to fore bellegrane / and fonde 
the cyte alle voyde, ² for they were alle fled / After they wente eight 
grete journeyes by many grete forestes yyl cam to fore a cyte ¹² 
named Nyze / This town fonde they moche stronge, and wel wallyd 
with grete towres and stronge / And within was grete garnyson, 
and the beste men of warre of alle the londe, and grete plente of 
armours and vytyllle / Peter the heremyte and his hoost fonde a ¹⁶ 
brygge of stone by whiche they passed a water rennyng² nyghe to 
the cyte / they passed the brygge and lodged them bytwene the 
water and the towne, And by cause they had not mete³ ynough / 
Peter sente his messages vnto the lord of the towne / and prayd hym ²⁰ 
fayr for hym and for his peple that were cristen / and pylgryms 
that wente in the seruyse of our lord / that they myght bye 
vyttayllles of the towne at resonable prys / Thenne the lord sende 
worde to peter that he wold not suffre / that they shold entre in to ²⁴ 
the towne / But, and ye he wold gyue hym good ostages / that his 
peple shold doo no harme ne oultrage to the peple and marcheauntes 
of the towne that shold come for to selle them vytyllle / he shold 
sende to them ynoough at resonable prys. when Peter and his peple ²⁸ 
herd this they were glad ynough. They delyueryd good ostages / 
and anon they of the towne cam out with grete plente of vytylll 
and other thynges necessarye in the hoost /

How some of the oost of peter therymte vnuwetyng ³² 
hym sette fyre in the subarbes of Nyz at theyr 
departyng / cap² xx³ 

m oche was this nyght, the hoost of the pylgryms, refresshyd of 
alle thynges that they had nede / ²² for they had ben long fro ³⁶ 
ony good towne. And they of the cyte were to them moche debonair

¹ Orig. rennyng. ² Fr. viandes, food, victuals.
and resonable. On the morne they demanded their ostages / And they were deluyerd gladly / And forth they wente in peas. But now ye shal here how the deuyll doth grete peyne for to empressehe

In the morning they go their way quietly,

and lette good werkes / In this compayne had ben the euen a fore a stryf to one of the marshallates of the town / and som of the oost / when the hoost was departed, the duchemen assembled to the nombre of an hundred, and for vengeance of the stryf / they sawe vij myllynes, whiche stode at brygge nyghe the town / and sette them a fyre, and brente them anone / this was not ynoogh, but there was a litle borough without the eyte / and they sette that a fyre also, and bende hit to asshes / and syth wente theyr waye.

except a hundred Dutchmen, who set fire to a little town near by.

12 aftir theyr felawship, whiche knewe nothyng herof / Of this thynge the lord of the town, whiche had the euen to fore shewde to them grete debonayrte was gretelty meuyd, for he sawe that they rendrid euyl for god / and was half out of his wytte for angre /

[3 leaf 25]

This felonye that this fewe dyde was wyted alle the hoost, which was euyl and pyte. he made anon arme alle the town, and yssued on horsbak and on fote / hym self cam to fore / and prayde, and moche desyred his peple for to venge upon thyse false rowters, and theuys the outlrage that they had don. whan they approched the hoost / they fonde fyrst thise thre malefactours which had not yet ouertaken theyr felaws / And ronne on them, and smote of their heedes / it had theenne be ynowgh, but they were not con-

The duke pursues the pilgrims.

24 tent, but smote in the aftirst parte of thoost whiche doubted nothyng / they fonde charyottes / sommyers / males, seruauntes, wynnmen, and children / whiche myght not goo so faste as the other / They slewe many, and somme they ouerthrew, and ladde away the cairiage. And thus returned in to theyr eyte without hurte, and alle blody of the bloode of the pylgryms.

How Peter theremyte was aduertysed of alle this.

And of the harme that ensiewed. capitulo xxj.

32 p. Eter was goyng with the grete compayne when a messager cam to hym rydying, & told to hym of this aduertise that was

1 Orig. hunderd, 2 Orig. and,

1-4 Fr. "et la felonie que pou des gens lui avoient faict, mist sus a tout l'ost."

5 Fr. Tiois : these Dutchmen; Caxton probably mistook Tiois for trois, and translated accordingly.

6 Orig. but.

7 Orig. content.

8 Fr. compayne de l'est, with the main body of the army. After "l'est" is omitted "qui mot ne scaroit de cecy."
fallen in the tayle of thoost. Peter sent anon to them that were to fore, that they shold retourne agayn the waye that they were comyn vnto the cyte of nyz / In this retorne they fonde thynges ynowgh that displesyd them, for they fonde their felawes byheded, lyeng by the waye / they had grete sorowe herof / One fonde his fader deed / Another his brother or his sone, and another his wyf or his daughter / there were many disconuenyentes. Peter, whiche had his entencion pure vnto oure lord / entented not, but tappeste the malyce, and leye doun the discord whiche was sourded among the peple / he sente som wyse and prudent men to the lord and to the moost hye men of the cyte, for to demaunde by what occasion they had don this euil and crueltees ayenst the peple of our lord / They answered that this was by the defaulte of the pylgryms / and that they had fyrst doon grete oultreage to brene their mylnes and burghe. whan Peter and the wyse men that were with hym hered this / They thought wel that it was no place ne tyme to venge 4theyr shames, And therfor torned the mater vnto peas and acorde / for to recouvre the praye, the prysonners and caryage whiche they had ledde away fro thoost / for there were of the mene peple whiche wold not be ruled, and wold not suffre them of the towne to haue peas with vs / but wolde auenge by force the oultreage that they had doon / Peter felte this thyng, And appecreyued anone the euylle that sourded / And sente of the wysest and grettest of his companye to make the peas / his peple wold not haue peas. He made a crye on payne of deth, in his name and the name of the barons / that noman be so hardy to breke the peas that was made. And this he charged vpon their pylgremages, theyr feaulte, and on thobedyence that they had promysed hym / And whan they of the hoost herd this / they 7remeuyd not / But folyssh peple weunte forth and made grete noyse, and wold not obeye. The messagers that were in the toun for taccorde this that was don, sawe that the noyse grewe more and more, and retourned to theyr felawship withoute ony conclusion or doyng that they had enterprised / and dyde theyr best to sece the debate / but they had no power, for there were moo than a thousand pylgryms, whiche noman myght

1 Fr. disconuenies.  
2 Orig. oure.  
3 Orig. aud.  
4 Orig. aneuge.  
5 Orig. compauye.  
7 Caxton's original is here corrupt. A gives the correct reading, "si ne le crurent pas," they did not believe it, instead of "they remeryd not," which is in direct contradiction with the next sentence.  
8 Orig. but.
holde ne reteyne / But that they wold goo armed to the towne. Out
of the towne yssned as many or moo ayenst them, ther began the
bataylle and the medle grete and thyk, and began to erle eche other
largely / Peter ne his route meuyd not / but byhelde the bataylle.
They of the towne that were on the walles and at wyndowes sawe
that theyr peple had the worse, and apperecyued that the grete
power of thoonst 2 entermeted not of this warre, and 2 thought that
they wold not helpe them / And 3 opened theyr yates and yssued
oute by grete rowtes alle armed, and smote in the bataylle / And
founde of our peple aboute a / V / C. vpon the brygge / 4 And
addressyd to them and slewe them alle, sauf somme that were caste
in the water / And alle were perysshed. when the grete hoost
apperecyued theyr peple thus euyl demened, they myght suffre it
no lenger, but wente to Armes / and smote in to the bataylle / one
after another, lyke as they myght be armed. the peple that had
bygonne this debate were discomfyted fyrst / And began to flee so
fast that nothing myght tarye them / They began to bete them on
horsbak, that cam for to helpe them / by whiche the good men were
discomfyted / And they of the Cyte that were nygh to theyr
retrayt, began to chase them moche strayly, and to slee them / At
last, whan oure peple were withdrawn / they returned 5 by the
caryage and harnoys / And caryed alle, and ledde it with them.
And toke wymmen and childerne that myght not flee, and putte
them in prison. There were wel slayn and lost of the peple of the
hoost / X / M / and the bongres 7 wan alle the harnoys of thoonst / 
There was a cart loste that longed to pether theremyte, alle ful of
Rychesse, whiche had ben yoen to hym in ffraunce for to socoure
and sustene the necessytees of the hoost / they that myght escape
fro this discomfite, drewe them in to the forestes / and hydde them
in the depe valeyes in the nyght / And on the morn they began to
calle eche other / and to whistle, 9 and sowne trumpes and busynes
in the woodes. And thus began to reassemble, and gadred them
to gydre on a territorie. 10

1 Orig. but.
2–2 Fr. "ne s'entremetot de celle guerre."
3 Orig. Aud.
4 Fr. "et s'adreçiren à eulx."
5 Orig. retourued. 7 Bougres, Bulgarians. 8 Orig. soconre.
9 Fr. huchier, to call in a loud voice, not "to whistle."
10 Fr. tertre, a small hill. The word territoire, with which Caxton
translates tertre, seems to be peculiar to him.
The Emperor orders Peter to go to Constantinople. [Ch. XXII.

How Themperour of Constantynoble, beyng adver-
tised of thise oultragges, sente his messagers to
peter theremyte

"\nca. xxij\n
a T the fourth daye were nyghe alle assembled aboute peter, 4

And they were about a four thousand. they were in moche
grete meschye, as they that had lost theyr frendes and theyr peple,
and almost alle theyr harmoys / not withstandyng 2they lette not,
but wente forth on the waye 2 that they had enterprised, with grete 8
mescase and payne for lak of vytaylle. And as they were in this
poynit, They sawe come ayenst them the messagers of themperour of
constantynoble, 3 whiche spak to peter / And anon he dyde assemble
the heye men and Capytaynes of the hoost for to here the message 12
that they brought. And aftir they sayd in this manere / "ffayr
syrs, moche euyl tydynges and renomme is comen of you to our
lord themperour / flor it is tolde to hym that ye goo by the countree
of his empyre with force, and robbe the peple of suche as they 16
haue, breke his townes, and slee his peple / and doo alle the
oultragges and wronges that ye may / the good chere / boute, and
alle the seruyse that is doon to you anayleth nothyng, ne may
adonlee ne aswage your hertes / Therefor he commandeth you that 20
ye abyde in none of his eytees more than thre dayes / But goo
your waye strayt forth to constantynoble / flor he hath commanded
vs to goo with you / and that we do brynge to you on the waye
vytayli good cheep ynowe." (13) when thise good men herd this, 24
that themperour had don to them this boute / they had grete ioye /
and excused them of thise bataylles and fyghtyng, and shewd
openly what the bongres had doon withoute theyr offence or culpe
by force and grete oultrag. 4 The messagers dyrected them on the 28
way tyl they can to constantynoble / They fonde there gautyver
sans sauoyr / and his peple, that taryed for them / And thenne they
wente alle to gydredd / And lodged them in the place that was
assignyed to them / And there eche tolde to other of theyr mys-
32
32 a\n
1 Orig. therempe,
2—2 Fr. mais ne laissierent mie pour ce quiz ne se meissent en la roy, but this did not hinder them from starting on the journey, etc.
3 Orig. constantynoble.
4 Orig. ggdr.
5 Fr. mesaventures, misfortunes.
6 Fr. et en ce palais mainten richesses et mainten merveilles.
and marueyles 1/ But he was a man of grete herte and courage, and 2 abstasijd of nothyng / Themperour demanded of hym of the state
of his peple, and of other barons of thoecyent / that were thus
4 meuyd to this pylgremage. Peter answerd hym moche wel of alle
thynges / And said that they were pour peple, and were come to
fore / But the prynces and hye men cam affyr with moch grete
peple / which wold not long tarye / themperour and his barons of
8 the palays sawe alle that peter was so lytil. And so wel / so wysely /
so fayr and so wel appoynt of alle thynges, answerd that they
merueyled ouer 1 moche / and alowed and preyed hym moche.
Themperour gaf to hym grete yeftes / And recyued hym in his
12 grace / And syth he lete hym retourne to his peple. There rested
the oost of the pylgrmys wel at ease and in peas / And a whyle
affyr shippes were made redy by the commaundement of themperour,
And they passed the see named the braas of seynt george, And
16 cam in to the lond named bythyne / This is the fyrst partye of
Asye / vpon the see / And they lodged them in a place called
Ciintot. 2

Of the maynteneyng of the hoost of peter theremyte / 20
And how thre thousand duchemen toke a castel
by assault / and slewe alle that were therin with
the swerde /

24 His was in the marches of theyr enemyes / there was the
hoost about two monethes, And enery day they fonde fresshe
vytaylles to selle good cheep, wherof they were wel at ease, 3 sou
moch that it coude not wel be suffred longe / They began to meue, 3
and made routes for to goo en fourage in the contré / Ther wente
28 wel somtyme .X. M / or more, maulgre the barons, that were
captyayns in the hoost. Neuerthelesse 4 Peter commanded and
sente lettres to them, that they shold abyde, and not remeue fro the
oost / to pyle tyl the grete Prynces were comen. On a daye it
32 happed that Pieter passed the bras / And cam in to Constanty-
noble 5 for to speke for vytyaylles / that began to wexe dere / 6 The
meue peple sawe that Peter was not there, And were the more
hardy. they assembed, and were of a companye wel eght thousand

1 Orig. oner. 2 Fr. Civitot.
3-3 "Tant que li peuple qui à peine peut souffrir grant aise longuement
se commenca à es mouvoir;" etc.
4 Orig. neuerthelesse. 5 Orig. Constanty noble.

The Emperor asks many questions of Peter.

He gives great gifts to Peter.

The Crusaders pass the Bras of St. George.
a fote, and thre hondreld a horsback, they made theyr bataylles, and wente alle in ordenaunce toward the cyte of nycene, ayenst the wille and deffence of alle the grete men of thoost / when they cam nyghe to this grete cyte, They smote in to the townes about it, and toke merueyllous many beastes, grete and smale, And brought moche grete gayne / And returned saufly withoute hurtie home agayn in to the oost with grete ioye and feste. The duchemen, whiche ben a peple rude and hardly, sawe this glorie and this gayne that they had wonne / and had grete enuye therat / and were menud with counetyse of good, and to haue worship / relied them to gydre alle of that tongue vnto the nombre of thre thousand a fote / and wente strayte toward Nycene / There was a / Castel at fote of an 12 hylle, nygh vnto Nycene, at leste Foure myle of. These Duchemen cam theder and began tassaylle the castel moche strongly / they within defended them to theyr power as long as they myght, but it anayllled not / for the castel was taken by force / And the duchemen 16 entred therin / And alle them that they fonde within, men, wymmen, and chylderen, they slewe without mercy / They fonde ther in vytayllle ynowgh, and other thynges / and sawe that the place was moche fayr and delectable / and garnysshed it, and sayde that they 20 wolde it holde tyl the grete prynces, whome they abode and taryed for, were comen /

How Solyman, lord of that contre, reprysed and toke agayn the castel, and slewe alle the duchemen 24 that where therin.

Olyman,(14) whiche was lord of this contre and gouernoure,1 had herd longe to fore / that the cristien peple were meuyd of the Royamme of ffraunce for to goo in to the londe of surye / And 28 that they addressed them for to passe by his londe / Therfore he had ben in thoryent, fro whens he was come / and had brought grete plente of knyghtes and other peple / by whom he entended to kepe his londe / And greue his enemyes / that shold passe there by / he 32 was thence drawn toward our peple, and with his folkes was in the montaynes and woods / He herde how thys duchemen had taken his castel and slayn his men / and cam the moost hasty wyse he myghte and assyeged the castel / and toke it without taryeng2 / 36 and he smote of the 3 heedes of alle them that he fonde / The

---

1 Orië, gonernoure.  
2 Orië, taryeug.
tydynge cam in to the hoost that Solyman had slayn alle the duchemen and theyr felaws / They had moche sorow / and ther arroos a grete crye and grete wepyng in the lodgys / The peple afote toke herof grete despite emonge them / And began to speke hrewdly / And said that the barons of the oost ought not to suffre his. But that they shold renne a horsbak and anuenge blood of theyr bretheren, \(^1\)that so nygh was shed \(^1\) / The grete men of thoost, that knewe more of warre and of other thynges / than the mene peple, wold haue holden them in peas / And sayde this may wel be yet amended / And also themperour counceylled / And it was trouthe / that they shold abyde the comynge of the grete barons, whiche shold not longe tarye / The peple and the folyssh folke were not content with thyse wordes / But they had a Capytayne named godefrey bureau, whiche brought them in suche reuere\(^2\) and murmure that they spake largely and rudely ayenst the knyghtes / And sayde alle clerly that they were vntrewe and eyyl, and that they lete not to auenge this by wysedom / but for grete cowardyse /

### How oure men armed them for tauenge the duchemen, and of a recountour that they had ayenst Solyman /

1. T happeth oftyme that the worse counselyl ouercometh the better / And it is no meruaylle, ffors there ben more fooles than wysemen. Thyse mene peple, and without reson, meuyld them so moche and cryed that the barons and other men that were with hem ran to armes, an horsbak\(^3\) and on foote. There were wel / XXV / M. on foote / and / V / C / a horsbak, alle wel arrayed / They made theyr bataylles / and wente forth in ordenaunce toward the montaygnes by the woodez strayt toward Nycene / They were not departed thre myle whan Solyman, whiche had moche peple with hym, apperceyued\(^4\) them : ffor he cam alle couerd and secretely in the wode / ffors to make an assaylle / in the oost of the pylgryms / But whan he herd the noyse and thaffraye in the foreste, he wyst wel that thei were the cristen men that cam ayenst hym, and suffred them to passe. he hym self with alle his peple drewe hym incontinent oute of the wode in to the playn where as they shold

---

1-1 Fr. "qui ainsi pres d'eux estoit espandu," viz. "which was thus shed so near them."
2 Fr. enredere, rage, fury, obstinacy.
3 Orig. borsbak.
4 Orig. apperceyued.
pass / when our peple were yssued, they sewed them sodenly / they toke none hede of hym, and anon with their felowship ran vpon our men with their speres and swordes for tauenge their bretheren. The hethen men sawe on that other syde that certaynly they wold fyghte / and that euer man dyd his beste / receyued them moch fiersly / the bataylle began moche cruelle / and many were deade on bothe sydes: and the bataylle dured longe / But solyman had moche more peple on horsbacke, whom the pylgryms a fote myght not lenger suffre / But began to flee without ordenanonce / and were discomfytcd / The turkes folowed them aftir, sleeyng alle them that they myght atteyne, tyl they cam to their lodgyng / There were slayn Gaultier sans sanoyr / Reynald de broyes and floccher dorleans, whiche were good and valyant knyghtes / and almost alle were slayn and brought in to prison / fier of / XXV / M men / and fyue honerd men on horsbak, coude not be founden thre to gydre / But that they were taken or slayn / 16

How pether theremyte beyng in constantynoble was aduertysed of this discomfytur / and saued thre thousand cristen men, beyng in grete daunger. capitulo xxvij: 20

Solyman attacks the Christian camp.

Solyman brought Solyman in in grete pryde, and in grete sewrte he smote in to the lodgis of the Cristen men / where as wer lefte thanacyste peple, men, wymmen, clerkes, and monkes, whom he put alle to deth / he fonde maydens and smale childeren, whiche he ledde with hym, for to be eater aftir in servage. On that one side of the tentes nyghe vnto the see / was an old fortresse for-leten and beten doun, in whiche no man dwelled, nether was fonde therin done ne wyndowe / Theder feldde of the pylgryms aboute a thre thousand, one aftir another for to kepe theyr lyness / They stopped thentre the best wyse they myght with grete tymbre and trees, and with grete stones / The turkes knewe therof / and cam and began tassaylle it on alle sides moche anguysshously / They defended them the best wey they myghte, fier they had grete nede. whyles they were thus assaylled / a messager wente hastely to pether theremyte, which was in constantynoble, as is said to you to fore. This message said to hym that alle his men were peryshyd / sauf a lytil remeanaunt, whiche were at grete meschief in an old hows assembled, whiche were in moche grete daunger / yf they had not
hasty socoure. Peter was moche abasshed / And had meruayl-
ously grete sorowe / Neuerthelesse, anon he ranne to themperour,
and fyld down at his feet, and prayd hym for goddes sake and 1 for
4 the sanacion of his sowle, that he wold sende socoure to this poure
peple that were in so grete peryll / that yf he hasted not / they
shold be alle deed / Themperour that moche louyd peter sente anon
his messagers theder / and commanded the turkes that essaylled
8 them / shold leue thassault / and departe thens / They wente aweye
anon whan they had herde the commandement of themperour, But 2
they ledde with them prisoners ynowe / horses, mules / and other
beestes / tentes / panyllons, and gounnes, and wyth alle they
12 retourned in to nycene / here ye maye here how so moche peple
was loste / by the folye of the moyen peple / whiche wold not
haue ne endure the gouernaunce of the wyse men aboue them.
Here may men wel see that it is grete peryll to truste to the bataylle
16 or warre of them / that knowe not of it /

How a preest named godecham made hym self cap-
tayn of / xl / M / duchemen in this viage, and
of theyr oultreages /

20 s Yth that Pieter was passed in to bythme as I haue said / it
was not longe aftir that a priest named Godecham 3 had prechyl
in duchelonde / lyke as peter theremyte had doon in sfraunce. And
cam with his peple for to goo in this pylgremage, ffor he had wel
24 assembled 4 / xl / M / of duchemen. They entred alle in to the
londe of honrye / ffor the kynge had commaundad that they shold be
receyued debonayrly, by cause it were his neigbours, and that 5
they shold vytaille and other necessytees 6 at prys resonable. 7 They
28 that fonde the londe right good began to abyde there alle the
wynter 7 / and for the ease that they had they began to wexe proud
In suche wyse that they toke away the vytailles and other thynge,
and ledde away the beestes oute of the feeldes / they toke wyues /
32 bete theyr husbondes and slewe them / and for noman wold they

1 ff. 28, l. k.) Peter begs
the Emperor
for help.

2 Orig. But.
3 Lat. Godescalens.
4 Fr. et Lat. XV m, instead of XL M.
5 Caxton has omitted the verb in this clause. Fr. "l'en leur vendoit
viandes," etc.
6 Orig. uscessytus.
7-7 Caxton here translates s'enyrer, i.e. to become intoxicated, by
"to pass the winter," evidently mistaking it for a derivation of yver,
winter. Fr. "ceux que trouvent la terre monte bonne, se commencerent
d'enyrer," etc.
leue thysse oultreages / The kynge of the londe herde the tydynges of this peple, and was moche displayysyd, and was moche sory terefore / And myght not wyth his honour no lenger suffre it, lest it shold torne to ouermoche hurte of his londe and of his subgettes. 4
And dyde do assemble moche peple on horsbak, and on fote for tawenge on thysse duchemen. he began to pourseyewe them so ferre, that he fonde them right in the mydle of his royame by a castel named bellgраue / the kynge had seen and also herd of thoultrages 8 that they had doon in his londe whyles he siewed aftir them / The duchmen knewe that the kynge cam vpon them and was nyyge, 1 and they knewe wel that they had not ben wel governed toward hym / But had doon many ylle tornes and wronges in his londe, 12 wherfor they had not deseruyd his grace and his loun 2: Neuirtheles they ran to armes, and sayde that they wolde defende them fro the hongers / and wold neuer deye for nought / but erst wold they selle theyr lyf moche dere / whan the kynge and the hongers sawe this, 16 they thought that this peple were moche stronge and3 hardy / and there as alle dispayred / And sawe that he myght not ouercome them without grete losse of his peple in that maner / and lefte the force of bataylle / and toke hym to subtilite and falshed / as peple 20 that is ful of barate deccyte and trycherye. The kynge and the hongers 4 sente message to godechan and to the grete men of the compaynye for to deccyue them by fayre wordes of peas / and sayd to them in this manere :

"Ouer grete complaynte and moche fowle renomm is come to the kynge of you, fayr syres / whiche hath sente vs hether / ffor as he hath herd saye / ye haue not had to none of youre hoostes no faythy ne trouthe, But haue taken fro them that they hadde, and 28 haue beten And slayn them / ye haue taken their doughters and wynes, and doo suche outlage to them as it ought not to be sayd. The marechaunte and other peple that ye fynde by the wayes, be not sure, and goo not quyt fro you, but be robbed and pyled / Of 32 whiche thynges the kynge hath grete clamours aftir him / Neuirtheles the kynge knoweth wel / that ye be not alle in this defaulte, but ther ben emong you many 5 good men and wyse to whom this folde moche displayysyth / And the outlage of the malefactours 36 whiche haue so angred the kynge and his peple / Therfor the kynge wil not put the defaulte of one partye vpon alle / ne it is not right

2 Orig. lone. 3 Orig. and. 4 Orig. hongers. 5 Orig. many.
that the trewe pylgrmys shold bye the trespass of the bad / and he doubteth to take vengeance on you alle / wherfore we counseyled you that ye appese the kyng in this maner / And we promyse you in good fayth that ye shal neuer haue damage / Offre, and putte your bodyes / your armes, and alle your thynges in his wylle and in his mercy, without makyng of ony appoyntement with hym / for ye wil not so doo ye see wel, ye haue not the 8 puysaunce ayenst hym / for ye be in the mylde of his royamme, And may not escape hym." Godechan and the grete men of his hoost to whom this outrages moche displeysyd. and the folyes of the mene peple trusted wel in the wordes that they had brought to 12 them, And had grete hope in the hyenes and mercy of the kyng. They called the peple / counseyled and prayde them that they wolde rendre theyr harnoys / and put them in the mercy of the kyng / they wold not doo it, and sayde ther shold neuer come good 16 to them to put them under so untrew peple. Neuertheles, atte taste they dyde by the counself and wylle of the wyse men. Theyr harnoys, and alle that they hadde they delyuerd atte commande- ment of the kyng, when they supposed thereby to haue goten 20 theyr lyf / They ran to the deth / 4 for the hongers assayled them anon in the mylde of them alle armed / And of this poynnt toke none hede / they began to slee and smyte of heedes without de- mandyng who was good ne who was euyl. They slewe so many 24 that they waded in the blood vnto the half legge / it was sorowe and pyte to see theyr bodyes of so fayr peple slayne in the stretes, wayes and feeldes / som happed trespale that wente emong the other, and returned in to theyr contre, and tolde this meschye and 28 trayson / by whiche they taught alle the pylgryms that they fonde that they shold not truste to the peple of hongrye /

How / C.C / M. cristén men a foote and thre. M. a horsbak withoute captayn assembled in this pylgremage / and of theyr mayntene / capitulo xxviij:

1 Fr. comparent, pay for, i.e. to be punished for. 2 Orig. putte.

4-4 Fr. "guar li Hongre saillirent et milieu de cels qui de ce ne se gardoient et les commençèrent à oëir." Caxton's translation is very obscure here: as can be seen from the French, it was the Crusaders who were off their guard.

6 Orig. withonte.
Another company of pilgrims started without a captain, who slay all the Jews that they meet, especially in Cologne and Mayence.

[3 leaf 39]
They were not allowed to enter Hungary, which was defended by a strong fortress on the Danube.

There were 290,000 footmen and 3000 horsemen in this company.

They begged to be allowed to send messengers to the King of Hungary.

Another company of pilgrims assembled moche grete peple a foote without capytayne. Neuerthes their were among theye men and good knyghtes. But the commone peple obeyed them not / ne bylenciud them of nothynge / There was emonge them Thomas de fere, clerembauld of vendueyl / Guilleme Carpenter. And the counte herman / These peple that were a foote dyde many ylles and outrages by the waye / And ther arrosse emonge them a madenesse and a rage of whiche they coude not kepe them fro sleyng of alle the Iewes in alle the wayes and tounes by whiche they passed / They sleye merceyllours grete nombre at Coleyne, at Magonce / and in other places(15) / In thys partyse as they wente was an erle, a right noble lord named Emyeon / whan he sawe this peple / he put hym self in theyr compaynye for to goo with them in this pylgremage / he chastysed not ne blamed the myrsluled peple / but entysed them to doo eyyl tornes / They passed by francone and by baupere so ferre that they drewe in te hongrye, 16 and cam in to a toun named mesezebors. wel supposed they to haue passed in to hongrye without ony gaynsayeng / but whan they cam to the brygge / it was deffended them and closed. There was a fortresse whiche was closed on that one syde with the ryuer of the dunoe / and on that other syde with the ryuer named lintans / The remenamet was enuymoned with a depe mareys / within the fortresse was grete plente of peple wel armed, wherfore it was not lyght for to passe that toun by force / ffor the kynge of hongrye had wel vnderstande of the comyng of this peple / whiche were withoute saylle wel / CC / M / on fote. And on horsbak were nomoo but thre thousand / And doubted moche that they whan they were entred in to his londe, wolde auenge tho occision that was doon by falsched and trayson upon the peple of godechan, ffor the rumoure and speche was moche yet of that fowle and yulanous sayle that thurgh out al the londe / They that sawe that they myght not passe in to the londe, prayd them of the fortresse that they wold sufere them to sende messagers to the kyng of hongrye, for to requyre his grace that they myght passe in good pease / and they wold lodge them ther whylest in tho places that were ful of pastures to fore the paas.

1 Orig. But. 3 Fr. occision, slaughter.
How this peple began to destroye the londe of the kyng, by cause he wold not graunte to them lene for to passe / ca. xxix:

4 a Lytil whyle taryed they that wente to the kyng / but returned anon / for they myght not spede of such thynges as they demanded. The kyng answerd that for yeete ne for prayer shold they entre in to his londe / when they of the oost, grete and smale,

8 herd this / they were moche angry / for they had trauaylled and desponded moche good to come thelyr / And now they had loost their waye / They concluded emong them that they shold brenne and destroye the contreye of the kyng / as moche as was on this

12 syde the mareys / They sette fyer on townes, and toke the men, and destroyed alle the contrey whyles they dyde thus / the peple of the fortresse cam out, and with other peple of the kynges to the nombre of / vii / C / what of knyghtes and other peple wel

16 armed, and passed by shippis er euer the pilgrims knewe of it any word, and they sette them for to defende the pylvryms at a paas that they shold not entre. whan the pylvryms sawe this / they ran vygorously upon them in suche wyse, that er they myght sayne them

20 self they were slayn alle / sauf a fewe of them that withdrewe them in to the mareys / and hydde them in the reed / whan thyse pylvryms thus had the victorie / they mounted in moche grete hardynes / and said that by force they wold take the fortresse of [1 if. 30, bk.]

24 hongrye / and withoute leue they wold passe thurgh the londe. Thenne they began to somonne and recomforte euer man to doo wel / They toke polec and made scaffolde moche grete plente / whiche they sette to the walles / And monted vp couerd with

28 their sheldes and targes, and assaylled it moche hardely many pyked with pykoys, and myned the wallses with grete force that thenthe semed al redy for to entree, they that were within were nyghe deed for despayer, for they defended slowly as men affrayed in their hertes, for they supposed anon to be slayn / and sodenly cam a fere and a drede uppon the hertes of the pylvryms that wened but are not successful.

1—1 Fr. or avoient leur voyage perdu. A good example of Caxton’s literal translations, the meaning being, “now they had had their journey for nothing.”
2 Orig. ont.
3 Fr. “tant chevalier que sergent.”
4 Orig. pilgrims.
5 Fr. entrevenforter.
6 Fr. entree.
7—7 Fr. Ponc et eschiéles firent à maout grant plente. They made a great number of scaffolds and ladders. Lat. pontibus fabricatis.
8—8 entre should read entree and vice versa.
Panic among the French Pilgrims, who are slain. [Ch. XXX.

anon to be slayn / And neuer was knowen wherfore it was, and anon yfyl donn fro the scaffoldes / and taryed not / but fledde sodeynly / and none wyste why they fledde. The hongers whan they sawe this / myght wyth grete peyne blyne eu it, that this was 4 trouthe / for they sawe no rayson why. Neuertheles, whan they apperceyuyd they descended down / and began to folowe the chaas in suche wyse that them next to fore them were almost alle taken and slayn.1 In this auenture was fonden none other reson / sauf 8 that the peple was so ful of synne / that they had not deserynd the lone of our lord / ne thонoure of the world / And therfor theyre synnes2 acowered them in suche wyse that they myght not doo ne accomplysshe this grete werke / whiche they had nyghe achyued. 12 The erle Emycon cam agayn in to his contre with grete nombre of peple disconfyted / The other barons of ffraunce that I fore haue named wente in to lombardye, and so in to payylle / There had they knowleche that somme of the grete barons were passed in to dursas, 16 and fro thens in to grece / They wente aftir and folowyd them. In this manere were the peple of ffraunce disperpled and of the contreess ther by / The waye of hongrye was moche more strayte and ner yf they myght haue goon it / 3And had not be destrowbled by 20 theyr folye3 / But the other that cam aftir payned them moche for to goo more wysely and more in peas.

How the due godefroy of boloyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto hongrye, sente his messagers to 24 the kyng for to demande passage /

capitulo xxx°.

Omen was the moneth of anguste, in the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord / M / lxxxxxvj / the xv / day of the same moneth, 28

The valyant godefroy of bayllyon, due of loraygne, assembled them 4that shold be his felawes in this iournye / And cam fro his contreys with so grete apprayllement as it apperteyned to his estate / with hym Bawdwyn his brother / Bawdwyn, the Erle of 32

1-1 Fr. "telement que ceux qui ung pour devant estoient presque mors en prins occioient oves les autres." Caxton has not at all understand his French here. He seems to have mistaken devant for a preposition, and to have translated the rest of the sentence accordingly.

2 Orig. synnes.

3-3 Fr. "si ceux qui enant estoient allés ne l'ensent si destourbe par leur folie," if those who had gone in advance had not by their folly closed it.
henawde / Huge, the Erle of seynt pol / Euerard his sone, which was a moche valyaunte1 yonge man. Garnyer the Erle, surnamed of gree / Bernard, the Erle of Toul / Pieter his brother / Bauwdwyn de bors, cosyn to the duc / Henry dasque / godefroy his brother, and many other good knyghtes with them / Thise men were so good frendes emonge2 them, and so wyse men, that in no wyse they wold departhe that one fro that other / they cam alle hool with their thynge in to Osteryche the / xx. daye of septembre vnto a town which is named tyllhenzborch, there reyneth a ryuer named lyntans, and departed thendrye of allemaygne fro the royaume of honrbye / when they were comen theder, they had herk by the waye euyl tydynges of the grete mesanturents, that godechan and his peple had in honrbye / They assembled and toke counseyl emonge them / how they myght passe this contre in peas / They alle acorded that they shold sende messengers & lettres vnto the kynge of honrbye for to demande first / by what reason theyr felows, the pylgryms which were theyr bretheren were thus perysshes3 in his power and his londe / Aftir this they encharged the messengers that they shold entyre with hym in to communicacion,4 that they myght passe his Royaume seuri and in peas / And4 that herin they put them in demoury and payne / for this waye was for them moche shorte / and more conenable yf they myght haue it / than for to passe by see / In this message wente godefroy dasque, brother of henry, by cause he had long to fore ben aequynted with the kynge of honrbye / with hym they sente other wyse men / They wente so fer that they fonde the kynge, and salowed hym in the name of hem that sente them, and delyuered their lettres of credence / And aftir sayd to hym thysse wordes.

How the messengers of the duc godefroy declared their message vnto the kynge of honrbye / And ther vpon his answere / 32 "t He wyse man & noble Godefroy, Duc of lorayne, And the other prynces that with hym come in pylgremage / hauent now vnto you, And by you wolde knowe by what occasion the other pylgryms, whom they helde for felows and bretheren / hauent so cruely be slayn and smeton in pieces in your power / Wel they

1 Orig. valyaunte. 2 Orig. emonge. 3 Orig. coïcacion. 4 Orig. fo.

GODFREY.
The King replies. [Ch. XXXI.

They marvel that good Christians could so destroy those who had left their homes to enhance the faith of Christ. They wish to know if it were the fault of the pilgrims.

The king, surrounded by his barons, answered: "It please me, Godfrey, that thou art come, and I am glad to have you hear my excuse."

We received Peter and his men kindly.

They repaid us with ingratitude.

knowe and sende you[1] worde that they haue ben so slayn, for they haue fonden many of them that ben escaped / Moche they meruayle how ye and your peple, which ben cristen as ye saye / haue thus destroyed the good companye, whiche for to enhauise the 4 fayth of Ihesu Crist ben departed out of theyr contre / in suche wyse that the most mortal enemyes that they haue, had not don worse / They desire moche to knowe ye it were by the deualte of the pylgryms; ffor ye ye haue doon it by Justyce, or in defeyndyng 8 you and youre londes / or other wyse that they wold enforce and take any thynge away ye it were so / The duc and his felaws wold take it more lightly / But ye it be doo without their trespaas, or for hate that ye had to them / and thus murdred them, they that sente 12 vs hether, lete you wete by vs that they haue lefte theyr owne contreyes for tauenge the wronges and the outragges that haue ben don to the peple of oure lord / And ye they finde that ye haue so doo / they be not in wylle to passe ferther, tyl they haue to theyr 16 power auenged the deth of the pylgryms of our lord." And herewith godefroy, that auncounted to the kyng, made an ende of his wordes.

The kyng was in his palay, where he had grete plente of barons of his Royamme and of other peple, themne answer[2] and 20 sayde: "Godefroy, it plesyth me moche that ye be come in to this contrey for to speke to me / It is a moche good thynge for me for two causys / that one is that ye be of myn acqueyntaunce and my frende longe syth / And we shal aflerme and renewe our loues and 24 our acqueyntaunces in this youre comyng. That other causys is that I knowe you to be a man wyse, resonable, & of good wille / and am moche ioynys of this that ye shal here my excusacion / trouthe it is that we haue the name of the cristiente / it were & shold be 28 moche fayr to vs ye we haed the werkes / But[3] they that ben passed tofore with peter theremyte and with godechan, haue not the werkes of pylgryms ne of cristen men / ffor we receuyed peter theremyte & his peple in oure londes and in our[4] townes with 32 grete debonayrte, And departed with them oure vytyalles: and other thynges we gaf to them / But they, lyke as the serpent that pryeketh or styngeth hym that kepeth hym warme in his bosomme / hath guerdonned & rewarded vs for our good dedes / for in 36 thonde of the royamme of hongrye / whan they ought to thanke vs and rendre graces to god & to theyr frendes / They toke by force one of oure best castellis / And put to deth alle that were therin,

1 Orig. yon. 2 Orig. But. 3 Orig. ornr.
and caried the beestys with them / they toke alle the maydens of
the town lyke rowters & thenes. The company of godechan cam
after them / they abode not 1 2 to forfaytte til the ende of our
4 Royamme / but assone as they were entred and passed the yates of
honygye, they began to make alle thoutragyes they myghte / They
brente the townes, slewe the men / enforced the wyymmen / and
bare away alle thynges / they dyde so moche, that for their
8 trespaces were wel worthy to hane hate of god & of the world /
we that be here in the place & in the dygnyte / by whiche we
ought to kepe the peple / as long as it shal please god / and our
barons that hane sworn the feaulte of the Royalme, myght not wel
12 endure 2 thus to destroye our peple and our contrey, but hane put
to the hand by force in vs defendyng / The thyrd companye cam
also with folke a foote / we doubted the noys and debate in suche
wyse / that we wold not suffre them entre in to our londe ne come
16 emonge vs / Our lord, that Ingeth alle the wordes & knoweth alle
thyng, wote wel that it is thus, and that I haue lyed to you no
worde. Nowe we praye you that ye excuse vs oneraal where ye shal
here speke of it" / when he had said this, he sente the messengers
20 in to theyr Innes / where they had 3 moche grete honour and 4 grete
feste / The kyng toke counseyl of his barons / and ordered his
owne messengers, which he sente to the duc godefroy and 5 to the
prynces that cam. He had spoken ynowgh to godefroy dasque /
24 and made hym grete chere / and gaf to hym and his felawshippe
yeftes / And 6 aftir toke leue of him and returned al to gydre with
the messengers / when they were comen to fore the duc godefroy / 7
one of them sayd the message in this manere: "The kyng of
28 honoryge saleweth you, my lorde / And sendeth yow worde that he
knoweth certaynly by renomme that ye be a man of moche hye
lygnage, payssamment 6 of peple, wyse and trewe of herte, prudent and
valyuant of body / in suche wyse that your prouesse is born in to
32 many londes / for thyse thynges our lord the kyngye, whiche neuer
sawe yow, preyseth and loueth yow moche in his herte / And hath
moche grete desire to doo you honoure / These pylgryms that ben
with you / And that hane enterpyrsed so hye a pylgromege he
36 preyseth moche / and desyreth moche to see them, and to worchippe,
and to hauyn theyr acqueyntaunce: for he holdeth hym self eurons
and graciouz that our lord hath sette hym in such a poynt, that he

2 Orig. endure. 3 Orig. and. 4 Orig. And. 5 Orig. and. 6 Orig. payssamment.
Godfrey traverses Hungary peacefully. [Ch. XXXII.]

may doo seruyse and boute to one so valyaunt a man. Therfore vnvo you, may lord, and to the hye men of your companye he prayeth, requyreth and demandeth for a synguler yette, that it wold plesse you to come see hym at one his castel named Ciperon / for he desir eth moche to speke to you at leyser / and doo that ye wille demaunde."

"How the said kyng seeth for to fetche the duc godefroye / And how he wente / and of the 8 deuyse that they had to gydre / capo xxxij

w Han the duc and his barons had herd the messenger thus speke, he drewe them a parte and toke counseyl / They accordewel that the duc shold goo. he sente for suche companye as he wold 12 haue / And wente forth with thre honderd horse, withoute moo, on his way / hit was not long but he cam to aperon / he passed the brygge / and fonde the kyng, which made to hym grete ioye and moche honour. And long they spak to gydre / And the kyng 16 excused hym of the deth of the pylumus / vnvo the duc / lyke as he had doon to the messagers / At thende the kyng cam so to poynt that they were appeased goodly / The kyng accorde to hym the passage thurgh his royamme / ye he wold sette hym suche hoostages 20 as he shold chese for to kepe the peas / alle this was granted / And he demanded in hostage Bawdwin, brother of the sayd duc, his wyf and her maygne / they were deluyerd to hym gladly. Thus entred they with alle theyr peple in to the lond of hongrye / The kyng helde to them wel his covenantes / for he dyde doo crye in alle the townes as they shold passe / and also thereby that they shold selle to them vytyalles good cheep / and 5 that noman shold mene to them no debate / The duc commanded also and made to be 28 cryed, that none on payne of his lyf were so hardly to take ony thyngue fro the lond ne fro no man / ne for to doo no wronge, but holde them for felawes and bretheren / Thus it happe that they passed alle hongrye without ony maner styrf or noyse. The kyng 32 rode alwey nyghe to thooste, on the lyfte syde / ledyng his hostages with hym, redy for tappose ye ony noyse arroos / Atte laste they cam to mallelylle, wherof ye hane her to forse, whiche stondeth on the ryuer of the dumoe / There they taryed tyll alle the hoost were 36

1 Orig. valyaunt 2 Orig. singuler: Fr. singulier duc, as a special favor. 3 Orig. you. 5 Orig. and.
They arrive at Nissa.

Passed by shippes / wherof were but fewe / But to fore he had don sette ouer / a thousand men wel armed for to kepe the arruyuyng on that other syde. When the hoost of the comyn peple were passed, the kyng cam to the duc and to the barons, and brought the hostages that were delyuerd to hym / he made to them moche ioye and honour at departyng, and gaf to everych grete yeftes and ryche. Aftir he toke lene, and returned home ageyn / The duc and the barons passe\textsuperscript{d} ouer with their peple / and cam to bellege, a cyte of bougrye, of whiche we haue spoken to fore / And there they lodged them / After they passed through the wodes / til they cam to the cyte of nyz, and after to stralyce /

12 How the duc godeffroye sente his messagers to themperour of constantinoble, to thende that he shold delyuer huon le mayne and other, that he helde in prison.

16 h Ere may be known the enyl disposition and deceytye of the grekes / for synth themperours latyns faylled in constantynople / and thempyre cam vnto the grekes / of whom the fyrst was nycofores. Anon the barbarins that were aboute them, the blacz and the comans,\textsuperscript{5} they of bougrye, \textsuperscript{6} which ben toward the eest, supprised and toke thysse londes that were so good, plentifulous / and delytable / And conquerd alle fro the dunoe vnto constantynople, And on that other parte vnto the see Adryane / There is a cyte in lombardye, nygh to the londe of the marquys, named Adre / & is right a litle cyte / But by cause it is nygh the see of venyse and of Ancone, hath this see the name of the see Adryane in wrytyng. This see goth right nygh constantynoble / vnto a /

28 xxx / myle. This euyl peple of thempyre of constantynoble had wel wonne vpon the grekes / xxx. journeyes of lengthe, And x of

\textsuperscript{1} Fr. quil leur rendit. Caxton has here exactly reversed the meaning of his French text.

\textsuperscript{2} Orig. departyng.

\textsuperscript{3} leaf 33

\textsuperscript{4} Lat. Nycephorns.

\textsuperscript{5} These two nations inserted by the French translators. They are not in the Latin original.

\textsuperscript{6} Fr. qui leur sont devers bise,—towards the North; Lat. septentrionalis.

\textsuperscript{7} This whole sentence is an insertion by a French translator.

\textsuperscript{8} Caxton has spoold the sense by his omission here. The French text gives "pres de la terre le Marquis d'Eest, qui a non Adre," viz. near the land of the Marquis of Este, which is called Adre.

\textsuperscript{9} Orig. wonne.
They traverse many Countries. [Ch. XXXIII.

The chief city of Epirus is Duras.

In this land are also Arcadia, Thessaly, and Macedonia.

The Emperor Basilis re-conquered these countries.

The duke passed through Moesia.

At Asinople they heard that the Grecian Emperor had imprisoned Hugh the Great.

brede / for above this see that I have spoken of, is a countre named Epyre. 1 The chyef cyte is named duras / of whiche pyrrus was somtyme kynge. 2 An other is named Mayene / that is in the mydle of the londe 3 where ben also noble Cytees / Nyz and 4 stralyce / In this londe was Archade / Thessale / and machedone / Of these thre landes enerych was called Trace / And alle thise were conquerd vpon the grekes / But afterward ther was an Emperour named Basilie reconuev these londes, 5 And brought the 8 blaz and the bougres longe afore this tym / in suche wyse that the two danemarches were comen agayn to his power 5 / but yet wold not the grekes suffre to repayre agayn the townes / ne labour the londes, which shold be right good, to thende that none shold 12 enhabyte there, By cause they holde it for a strengthe / And that nothynge shold be fonde therin / Also in espyre, whiche extendeth fro duras vnto a mount named bagulars / And endureth foure journeyes : by that passed 1 the other barons / But the Duc and his 16 companye passed 1 by danemarche la Mayen / whiche is named otherwise Mese / They cam by a destryte, whiche is named the Cloystre of seynt Basyle / And syth they descended in to a playne / Where they fonde grete 9 plente of vytylle and of pastures / And 20 cam vnto Asine pol, whiche is a moche fayr cyte and good / There heri they saye and tronthe it was / that themperour of constantynoble had enprisonned huon le mayne / broder of the kynge of France, and many other barons that cam with hym ; for these 24 noble men were hasty, and cam by lombardye in to puylle / fro thens they passed 2 to duras / And soijourned for tabyde the other barons / whiche ought to come in to the partyes / ne they supposed to hame doubted ony thynge in the londe of the grekes, that were 28 eristen as they were / But the bayly of duras toke alle the moost

1-1 Fr. *a deux terres, de quoi chasenue a non Espire*. Lat. *super Adriaticum enim mare erat tristique Epirus, cuius alterius metropolis est Durachaunch.*

2-2 Fr. *en la terre ou ces pelerins passoient avait deux Danemarches*. L’anne avoit non de Ripe (Lat. *Dacia Ripensis*) qui est á seestre sur la rive de la Dunae l’autre est nomen la Maienne.* Caxton has ruined the sense here by his omissions. 3 Lat. *‘Dacia mediterranea.’* 4 Fr. *‘et trois terres dont chescun avoit non Trace,*’ Caxton’s translation again faulty.

5-6 A *il chasca les Basc et les Bougres bien loin si que les Danemarches li remestrent,*” The text B that Caxton followed gives *acheta, which is evidently a corruption of *chagia, and the “bought” may be a misreading for “bought,” The Lat. gives *‘codem Bulgavorum subjungato populo per Basilium.’*
The Emperor has imprisoned Hugh the Great.

The bailiff of Duras sent all the great barons, who were with him, in irons to Constanti-

noble to doo his wylle with them / he helde them in prison, and
4 grete power he wolde delyuer them for theyr lone / and yf they cam with

and i>i"as Greek

N this tyme was Emperour a greke, moche fals and ful of

tricherye, and was named alexes, and to his surname Conius / he was moche acqueynted and pryue with that Emperour
20 Nychofores bothoniat, in suche wyse that he made hym his steward / And was the grettest man of the londe sauf thempemour. He by

his malyce purchased euyl and harme ayenst his lorde, by thassent of grete peple that he helde aboute hym, and toke hym and helde
24 hym in his prison vj yere tofore that our pilgryms cam theder / The messagers of the Due ad the other barons demanded of this

Emperoure Huon le Mayne, lyke as they were commaunded, and the other prysonners / in lyke wyse / Themperour answarde shortly
28 that he wold not delyuer them / They retourned2 in to the hoost, and said to them thansuer of themperour. 3 when the due & the

other barons herd this, they were moche wroth, And concluded emong them by theyr counsel / that they wold playnly make
32 warre ayenst hym / that dyde so grete oultrage to holde so hye a

pryunce in prison, ne wolde not answere by mesure ne reason / They

habandonned to the hooste to take in that contre where they were in, Alle that they coude fynde, And brente alle the townes / Thus
36 abode they in thise parties, and destroyed alle the contre / And
dye moche grete dommage and harme : and grete plente of prayes

1 Orig and. 2 Orig. retourned.
The Emperor releases Hugh. [Ch. XXXV.]

and other gaynes cam in to the hoost of the barons / Themperour sente vnto the duce and vnto the other barons / that they shold doo holde theyr peple in pces, And that he wold doelyure huon \(^1\) le\(^2\) mayne and the other prisoners. They agreed and acordid gladly, 4 And cam with alle theyr bataylles renguin\(^3\) and in ordenaunce to fore constantynoble, as for tassiege the toune. Anon yssued oute huon the mayne, doene dancelle\(^4\) / Guyllame charpentier, Clarembault de venduel / And entred in to the panyllon of the Duc / And 8 thanked hym moche and alle the other of theyr delyueraunce / And the duce and the hooste receyued\(^5\) them with moche grete ioye / for they had moche grete angre and grete despite of that was don to them.

The grete despyte that themperour toke, that duce godeffroy refused to goo in to constantynoble\(^6\) vnto hym.

w Hyles they spak thus to gydre, cam the messagers fro them- perour to the duce, And requyred them in theyr lorde name that he wold enre with a fewe of his companye in to the toune / And come spake with themperour / The duce had counseyl herupon, and answerd\(^7\) / that he wold not yet come in to the toune, when 20 themperour herd this, he had therof moche grete despite, And defended oneral that ther shold nomore vytayllle be sold to them, ne none other thynges. The noble men sawe this, and sente out on fouraung ouer alle the countrey. And they brought in vytayllle 24 grete plente, in suche wyse that they had ynowgh, pore and ryche. Themperour sawe that this contre shold be destroyed / and doubted that they wold yet doo worse / therfore he commanded\(^8\) to his marcheauntes that they shold goo in to the hooste and seile to them 28 suche thynges as they neded. The daye of Cristemasse or of the Natynite of oure Lord\(^9\) approched / Therfore the Duc and the Barons dyde do crye in the hooste / that no man shold forfaytte ne trespas in tho foure dayes / The mene whyle cam the 6 messagers 32 of themperour, that spak to the barons moche fayr, that they wold passe the bryge and come on the syde of the palays whiche was

---

\(^1\) Orig. hnon.  
\(^2\) Orig. te.  
\(^3\) Caxton’s French text gives Doene Dancelle, which he follows. This is, however, a corruption of Dreue de Neele, Lat. Drogo de Neela.  
\(^4\) Orig. constantynoble,  
\(^5\) Orig. auswerd.
The winter was very cold and rainy, so that the army was very uncomfortable in tents.

So they accepted the Emperor's invitation and came into the town.

The arm of the sea runneth between Sextos and Abydos.

It also divides Constantinople from Nicara.

The winter was very cold and rainy, so that the army was very uncomfortable in tents.
The second side of the wall extends from the church of St. George to the Golden Gate.

The Emperor sent often for the Duke to come and see him.

The Duke would not go.

So the Emperor sent his archers, who slew many of the pilgrims.

How our peple brente theynr lodgys and toke theynr harmoys / And of an assault that the grekes made on them /  
ca. xxxvij.

seyl / they sente the brother of the duc for to take the brigge / to thende that they of the town shold not sease ne take it / They

1 Fr. pan, piece, strip.
2 Fr. as portes vieres, to the golden gates. Lat. usque ad auroam portam.
3 The French here misunderstood by Caxton, "Si quielz furent enclous entre la grant mer et le bras, selon le port ou ils estoient logiez, en maisons qui la estoient faictes," they (i.e. our men) and not the bridge, were inclosed between the sea and the arm. They were not lodged "behind the gate," but along the harbour. Caxton has mistaken port, harbour, for porte, gate.
4 Orig. Themperour.
5 Fr. Bandonin de Bore, or Borgh, Lat. de Borgo.
6 Fr. sur mer.
7 Orig. duc.
The Duke sent 500 men to seize the bridge.

The pilgrims burned many of the houses in which they were lodged.

The army then passed over the bridge into the country.

Then they discomfited and slew many of the Greeks.

It was evident that the emperor had behaved very treacherously.

1 Fr. "Tant chevalier comme autres."  
2 Fr. on, where.

Caxton's obscurity is here owing to a corrupt French text.—The text given in the Historians Occidentaux has the correct reading: "Et ces autres delez qui duroient bien milles ou sept, si que aucuns des mesons i firent arses, qui estoient l'empereur,"—i.e. they burned the houses in which they were lodged, which occupied six or seven miles of ground; and some which belonged to the emperor were burnt also.

4 Fr. trompettes.
5 Orig. ordenannce.
6 Orig. doubted.
7 Orig. but.
8 Orig. Aud.
9 Fr. "qui les destourna de ce conseille."
How after this our 1 peple began to destroye the contre.
And of a message of buymont vnto due gode-froye. And the answer of the due vpon the same.

Every man of a 
both foot and 
horse was 
commanded 
to arm him- 
self.

Part of them 
went for-
aging, and 
brought back 
corn, wine, 
and other 
viptuals.

Bohemond 
sent messen-
gers to God-
frey.

[2  leaf 56]

Telling him 
to be on his 
guard against 
the malice of 
the Greeks, 
and the 
treachery of 
the Emperor.

Bohemond 
offers to come 
and aid God-
frey.

S some as thoost apperseyued 1 on the morn the day / it was 
cryed that every man on payne of deth sholde arme hym / on 
horsbak and on fote / The Captayns of som bataylle were ordeyned 
for to lede the peple in fourage. The other sette them in ordyn-
8 
amce for to kepe their lodgys / for wel they apperseyued certaynly 
that themperour pouredchased for them alle the euyl that he myght, 
They that wente for vyttaylle withdrawe them wel / lx / myle / 
They pylla aboute them alle the townes that they fonde / And 12 
brought Corn, Wyn, Beestys, and other Ryche ses / Wherof the 
Jonde was full that vnethe myght they condeyn alle / And 12 
were oute sex dayes / And 12 after retourne in to the hooste with alle 
this merceuillous gayne / whyles as they condeyned thus, Messagers 16 
cam fro Buymont to fore the Duc / And 12 salewed hym in theyr 
Lordses name / And 12 delyuered to hym lettres whiche saide in this 
manere / He salewed in his lettres the due as he ought to salewe 
suche a man / After 2 they sayde / "knowe ye, sire, that ye haue to 20 
do with a moche vntrew man / whiche alwy sette his herte and 
purpoos to deceyue them that truste in hym / Specially he haeth the 
Latyns to the deth. And doth his power in alle maners, that he 
can to doo euyl to our 1 peple. And yf ye haue not yet apper-
24 
seyued it / ye shal knowe al by tyme as I saye to you / for I knowe 
wel the malyce of the grekes / And 12 also the trycherye of them-
perour / Therfor I pray you / that ye withdrawe you fro constant-
inoible / And retourne to ward the playnes of andrenoble or of 28 
symeple / and there ye may wyntre you where as is gret plente of 
alle goodes / And 1 myself, yf it please god, assone as the sprynge 
of the yere cometh, shal come and hast to meue, And 1 shall as-
semble with you / And 1 shall helpe you / as my lord and frende, ayenst 32 
the vntrew prynce that entendeth to doo euyl with alle his power 
unto cristiene" / whan the due had herd thysse lettres, by the counseq 
of his barons He sente to hym ageyn other lettres that after the 
salewyng spak thus / "we thank ye gretely, And 1 so doo the other 36 
prynces that ben with vs, of the lone and trouthe that ye haue

1 Orig. our.
sent us / And knowe ye certanyly that we haue founden on the prynce and on the peple of grekes / lyke as ye wene wel to knowe / we knowe wel that ye saye it of wysedome and of trouthe / But we doubte moche the armes that we toke in our contrey for to warre on the heten men / shold retorne and converte ayenst them that bere the name of cristiane as we our self doo / we attende and desyre moch your comyn / Thenne, ye god will, whan ye shal be 8 comen we shal doo take you to our counseyl."

How themperour appesed the duc godefroye and sente for hym, and of the honour that he dyde to hym. capitulo / xxxix.

12 t Hemperour was moche anguyssous amonyg his pryce counseyl, & thought how he might appese to hym the duc & his peple by cause he destroyed his contre / of which he herd the clamours right grete and ofte / And by cause that he knewe that 16 the messagers of buymont were come / and had brought tidynges / that he wold hastely come, he sente ageyn his messagers to the duc / & prayd hym that he wold come speke to hym, & ye he doubted of any thynge he wold sende Iohan his sone in hostage in 20 to the hoost / This message plesyd moche to the barons whan they herde it / and they sente conon de montagu / & bawdwyn de borg h for to receyue the hostage / they receyued hym and to Bawdwyn brother of the Duce, whiche abode / for to Reule and 24 gourne the hoost and to kepe the hostage / The duc and other barons wente in to Constantynople to fore themperour which had moche desyred them / The grekes made hym to them grete Ioye meureylously what someuer they thoughte. Themperour kyssed them 28 alle. And demanded of euerych his name / for to honourue euerych by hym self / as he that wel coude do it. they were wel beholden of alle them of the palays / At last themperour satte in his mageste, and the barons aboute hym, And sayde to the duc thyse wordes / 32 "we haue herd saye many tymes in this londe, that thou art of hygle

1-1 Fr. "nous arons ja trouve, et en prynce et en peuple, ce que vous en souprenez."  
2-2 Fr. "Nons devoitons mons les armes, que nos prësimes en nostre pais pour gevernoir la gent meserante, turner à cens qui portent le non de la cristiente, si com nos fesons."  
3 Orig. sende.  
4 Orig. moutagu.  
5 Orig. and.  
6 Orig. delynerd.  
7 Orig. thoughte.  
8 Orig. themperour.
lygnage / and of moche grete power in thy contre, and a good
knyght and trewe, in suche wyse that for the fayth of Ihesu
creste tenhauence, hast enterprised to warre ayenst the mescreantes
and hethen peple / whiche grete the cresten peple merueylyously / for alle
tyse thynges we prayse the and lone in oure herte / And wylle
honoure the with grettest honour that we may doo / for thou art
worthy and dygne / It playseth vs and thereto accorden our barons /
that we choose the & anowe for oure sone / And we put oure 8
Empyre in to thyn hande, that thou kepe it as oure sone from henss-
forth in good estate and in termes of lone”

"We choose and avow thee for our son, and put our Empire into thy hand."

Of the yeftes that themperour3 made to duc godefroye, 16
to the barons and to the gentilmen of his hoost.

The Emperor then presented the Duke and his companions with
great gifts.

But the Duke divided all his [5 leaf 37]
gifts with those about him.

1 Fr. “en enterine amoure,” in sincere or perfect love. Caxton probably
read enterine as two words (in, termine), and translated accordingly.
2 Orig. And.
3 Orig. themperour.
4 Orig. merueylyous.
5-5 Inserted by Caxton.
They lodge near Chalcedon.

They had done harme to the pikelgrims but shold do selle to them alle maner wares at prys resolable. The due in lyke wyse dyde doo crye, that every man as dere as he louyd his lyf shold doo no force ne wrong to them of the contree. Thus forthon lyuyd they in moche peas whan Marche cam the due knewe wel that the other barons wold come and apperceyued wel that the wille of themperour was that he wold passe with his peple the bras of seynt George. To the same accorded the barons and the other of the hoost. And saide to themperour that he wold passe ouer. And he anon dyde do make redy many shippes & passed wel alle and cam in to bethnie, which is the fyrrst partye of Asye. They lodged them aboute the Cyte of Calcedonie. Of this cyte fynde we wryten, that in the tyme of pope lyon and Marcyen themperour assembled there one of the iiiij grete counseyllis where ther were .iij.C.xxxvij prelates for to condempe an heresy, that a Monke named Entyses had founden. And that helde a patriarche of Alysaundre named discretus (17) but there they were dampned. This cyte is so nyghe constantynoble that there is but the bras bytwene them bothe. And there was the hoost lodged moche easly. For who so had to doo in the cyte of Constantynoble he myght passe twayne or thyres in a day. The cause why themperour made the due to passe, was for he wold not that the hoostes of the barons that were to come shold not assemble to gydre so nyghe hym. And in lyke dyde he to the other barons that cam aftir, for he neuer wold lodge twayne to gydre.

How Buymont was made capitayn of a grete hoost. And the names of many nobles of hoost & of their mayntene.

A For this maner contened hym themperour and due goddefroy. But buymont theesome of Robert guychart, pryncle of Tarente, had passed the see adryane. And was come vnto duras whan alle his hoost was comen he toke his waye thurgh the desertes of bougrye. And wente softe and fayr by cause of them that foloowed hym. In his rowte were many noble men of whom we shal name to you a

---

1 Orig. aboute. 2 Orig. but. 3 Orig. constantynoble. 4 This "not" is superfluous. 5 Orig. assemble. 6 Orig. soue. 7 Orig. an fayr.
Many noble men accompanied him.

They spent Christmas in the city of Castore; but could get no one to sell them provisions.

They went foraging in the country, and got great wealth and booty.

The Emperor feared the coming of Bohemond.

And sent men to follow him, and to do him damage if possible.

part/that is to wyte/ Tancere the sone of graal the marquys.¹
Rychard the pryncipat sone of william thierbrace. The Brother of Robert guychart/Raymont his brother/Robert the hanse²/Herman of caryn³/Robert of sourseval/Robert fyzt christen,⁴ And frey fyzt raoul⁵/Rychard sone of therle Rainol erle of ronsynol,⁶ and alle his bretheren. Ogan of chartes. Aubery of canac/ And vnfray of montygnex/ Alle thyse had made buymont their captyayn/ They cam in to the cite of castore and made there the 8 feste of cristemasse and helde it moche hyely/ But⁷ by cause they of the contro wold selle to them/nohything which helde them for enemyes/ therfor by force they muste sende out on fourayng and brought grete proyes and good gaynes/ of whiche they dyde moche 12 harme to alle the contrey/ Afir they cam in to the londe of pelagone, whiche is moche good and fertile, and lodged them there/ Afir they her⁸ saye that nygh by was a castel right strong, wherin alle the popeliquans⁹ of the lande were withdrawn for the strenght 16 of the place/ And⁰ there were none but suche myshylened peple/ Buymont and his peple armed them and wente theder anon¹¹/ And founde there moche grete rychesse in the towne and grete proyes whiche they put out a part/ And after sette fyer ther in the town/ 20 And alle them that yssued they sleye with the swerde. And the bemenant bothe men and wymmen they brent alle. Themperour her⁸ saye that Buymont cam with grete peple. And doubted moche/ And¹² had his comynig moche suspecyonous, for he had 24 many debates ayenst hym and his, of whiche he hadde alwey the worse. The souldyours of themperour and alle they that entermed¹³ of armes soiourned and wyntred in thys partyes by whiche Buymont passed¹⁴/ Themperour commandeled¹⁵ to his constables of 28 alle his peple, that they shold cooste buymont with as moche people as they myghte gete vnto the water name¹⁶ bardare/ in suche manere that yf they myght grene, ennoye, and dommage in ony paas to them,¹⁷ that they shold come on hym strongly. Thus he had 32

¹ There is a discrepancy here in the French texts, some giving "son of Gral," others "son of William."—Lat. "Wilhelm marciomis filius."
² Fr. Robert de Hanse.
³ Fr. Herman de Carni.
⁴ Fr. Robert le filz Casten. Some versions give "Tristan."—Lat. Robertus filius Tristan.
⁵ Fr. Onfrey le filz Raoul.
⁶ Fr. Ramol.
⁷ Orig. But.
⁸ Fr. popeliquans, heretics. Lat. heretici.
⁹ Orig. anou.
¹⁰ Fr. s'entre mettoient, had to do with.
¹¹ Orig. commandes.
¹² Fr. en aucun pas, at any place, or, on any occasion.
ordleynd cautelously behynd them, but to fore as he \ was moche disloyal and couerit, and coude wel make semblamant of other thynge than he thoughte, he sente vnto buymont of his grete 4 men / And by them lettres moche payssyble and of fayr wordes / And of bountes moche debonayr and deceuyalle whiche were as folowen.

Messagers and letres fro Themperour to Buymont, and the 2 contene of the same as foloweth. [2 leaf 38]
capitulo xlij.  

He salewyng to fore was moche fayr / And aftir sayde / "we knowe certaynly that thou art an hye prynce & moch noble 12 some of an noble and valyaunt man / 3 for this grete maner we preyse the / and haue the in chierte / And also for thou hast enterprised, with so good herte and so good wille in this tyme the seruyse ofoure lord / And the pylgremage which is due vnto alle 16 them that byleue in Ihesu criste. we haue ferme wylle & certaynly purpoos to honour the / And shewe by dede our grace that we haue thought / Therfor we praye and requyre the in good fayth / that thou commande to thy peple that they doo none 20 outrage tooure peple, & haste / the to come to vs all surely, for thou shalt haue ther by honoure & prouffyt / Our messagers that come to the shal by our commandement doo thyne hooste haue resonable market of vytaylles and of alle other thynge / The sem- 24 blaunt of thise wordes were fayr / but ther was ther under moch venym and of felonnye. Buymont, which was wyse and knowyng many thynge, had many tymes preuyd the desloyalte of themperour / And receyued thys wordes by semblanunce moche aworth 28 and in thanke / But he preysed them lytil in his courage. Neuerthelesse, he thanketh hym by mouth / and by lettres that he daygne\ with wyte to hym and sende, considered that he was so smal a man ayenst hym & sente hym other curtoys wordes, &c / Thise 32 messagers that were thus comen, conduyted the hooste vnto the ryuer of bardre / whan the moost partye of the hooste were passed

1 Orig. Buymont.  
2-3 Fr. Por ce, de grant maniere, te prisons, et avons chier." Caxton's French text may have omitted the "de."  
4 Orig. enterprised.  
5-5 Fr. "qui est la besogne de tous cex;" which is the duty of all these, etc.  
6 Orig. commaude.  
7 Orig. Our.  
8 Fr. courage, heart.  

GODFREY.
Buymont approaches Constantinople. [Ch. XLIII.]

ouer, & the other ordeyned them for to passe after. The con-
estables of the soldyours which had awayted and followed them
wened to haue founden theyr poynyt. And launced on this partye
of thoost whiche was not yet passed, and were many moo of them 4
than of oures / The noyse and the crye arroos moche grete. Tancre
whiche moche was appert & hardly, had 1 tho passed half the
ryuer whiche was grete, but 2 when he herd this he retorned agayn
as hastily as he myght, 3 and discomfyted / ij. M / of the moost 8
noble of them vigorously and putte 4 them to flyght. 3 And 5 many
he toke of them a lyue / whom he brought to fore buymont, he
demande them in the presence of alle / wherfore they had ronne
so on the hoost of the cristen men / whiche were also cristen and 12
peple of themperour their lord 2 and freni\e / They answerd that they
were seruauntes and soldyours of themperour and muste 5 doo his
commandement, or by hym they had this don / 6 here by myght
alle they apperceyue that herde this, that the fayre wordes that 16
themperour sayde were but deceyuaunce and tricherye / but buym-
ont, whiche was wyse and knewe that he muste passe by them-
pyre, made semblau/it that he appereyued not, and made good
chere to thise men for to couure his courage / And that plesyd not 20
som of his barons /

How Buymont approched constantinoble, 7 and was
sente to come to themperour, And how by the
prayer of duc Godefroye he wente toward hym / 24
capitulo xliii. 8

b. Uymont and his hoost wente so ferre by the countrees that
they approched Constantynoble. whan themperour knewe that,
he sente agayn grete messagers to hym / and prayde hym entierly 28
that he wold lene his hoost and come speke with hym with a pryne
meyne / Buymont wyst not what to doo, for he was in the daunger
of hym so grete a man, whom he doubted to angre / And on that
other parte, he knewe his falsenesse and deceyuaunce, And had wel 32

1 Fr. i[t, already.
2 Orig. but.
3-3 This sentence seems to have been entirely misunderstood by Caxton.
Fr. "Et deux milles des plus preux revourerent avecces lui; Ils se fra-
perent en cente qui estoient rennez monst rigoureusement, si que ilz les discon-
firent tantost, et misrent en fuite." — i.e. two thousand of his own men
returned with him, and attacked the others and discomfited them, etc.
4 Orig. putte.
5 Orig. muste.
6 Orig. constantinoble.
apercayed that he louyd hym not / And therfore, he fered to goo to hym / whyles he was thus entredeux / The Duc Godfrey cam to hym the thursdaye afore Esterdaye, for themperour had so moche to pray the Duc / by cause he doubted that he wold not gladly come to hym / that the Duc wente to hym for to make hym come to themperour / when the duc and Buymont mette / they made moche grete Ioye to gydre, and spak to gydre of many thynges. After

appereyued that he louyd hym not / And therfore, he fered to goo to hym / whyles he was thus entredeux / The Duc Godfrey cam to hym the thursdaye afore Esterdaye, for themperour had so moche to pray the Duc / by cause he doubted that he wold not gladly come to hym / that the Duc wente to hym for to make hym come to themperour / when the duc and Buymont mette / they made moche grete Ioye to gydre, and spak to gydre of many thynges. After

Godfrey endevours to persuade him to come to the Empe:er, And finally prevails upon him to do so.

Bohemond hesitated about obeying the summons.

1 A good example of Caxton's habit of transferring French words and expressions bodily into English.

Bohemond swore fealty to the Emperor, and receives great gifts from him.

Bohemond would not go to the Emperor, but crossed over to Chalcedon.

[4 leaf 39] Here all the Crusaders awaited the coming of the other barons.

Tancred was right wyse and of grete herte, retched not for to see

Themenperour ne to speke to hym / But made alle the hoost to passe ouer the bras seynt george, and to lode in bethine, nygh to calcedoine / where thooste of the other barons / had ben a good whyle / when themperour knewe that tancre had eschewed hym,

and the countree aboute.

And how the erle Robert of ffolaunderes with his hooste approched Constantynoble, And how themperour sente for hym / And of their deuyse to gydre / cap. xliii.

32 How the erle Robert of ffolaunderes with his hooste approached Constantynoble, And how themperour sente for hym / And of their deuyse to gydre / cap. xliii.
Robert of Flanders does Homage to the Emperor. [Ch. XLV.

Robert of Flanders wintered at Duris, and in spring hastened to follow the other pilgrims.

He was receyved in Constantynople with great honor by the Emperor.

He joined the other Crusaders, and they held counsel together, and were very impatient, because the rest of the great barons arrived not.

Of the mayntiene of the hooste that therle of Tholouse and the bishop of puy brought ouer see.

1 Fr. plantureux, fertile.
2 Orig. receyyed.
3 Orig. constantynoble.
4 Orig. Themperour.
5 Orig. constantynoble.

The Earl of Toulouse and the Bishop of Puy were accompanied with many valyaunt and puysaunt men of their countreyes. Ther was fyrst William, bishop of Orenge / Raybout, 32 erle of the same cyte / Gaste de bedyers / Giralt de roussyelon / Guillem de montpeliers / Guillem, erle of forrestes / Raymond peles / centon de beart / Guillem de Amaneux / And many other barons

1 Fr. plantureux, fertile.
2 Orig. receyyed.
3 Orig. constantynoble.
4 Orig. Themperour.
5 Orig. constantynoble.
moche worshipful, which for the seruyse of oure lord lefte their countrees, their lygnages and alle their delytes. They cam alle in to lombardye, and passed by the syde of aquylee. And after cam in to the londe called Ister / ffro thens in to dalmace, which is a grete contrey bytwene hongrye and the see adryane / Therin be fore Archiebisshopps / Iadre / spalete, Antibare, and Raguse / The peple of that contrey is cruel and moche acustomed to robbe and to 8 slee / There be montaynes, and the londe is ful of depe waters rennyng / And large mareys in suche wyse that there is but lytil londe gaynable. Beestes ther be grete plente in the pastures by whence they lyue / Neuertheles they that dwelle nygh the see / ben 12 of other maner lyuyng of habyte & of langage / ffor they spoke Rommant / And the other speke not but as they be nourysshid. The noble men of whom I spak / camen in to this londe, And had ther many grete trauallys and diseases for the wynter, which 16 was ouer cold, And for the contrey, which was euyl garnysshyd of vytaylles / they hadde merueyllous grete suffraunce, ffor alle the peple of the countrey for feer of the pylgryms had lefte cytees, castellys, and townes for to flee and hyde them in montaynes. They had born theder alle their thynges / ffrom thens they pour-siewed the pylgryms / And them that were olde / seke and feble, and taryed after the hoost, they slewe alle / The erle whiche was wyse toke hede of the hoost / The other barons he sente to fore / 24 he kepte alwey the rier garde with grete nombre of his peple wel armed aboute hym / the ayer of the contrey was so ful of mystes and so thycwe / that they byhynde myght vvneth folowe them to fore; ffor this londe, as I said to fore, is ful of ryuers and rennyng waters / of lakes and mareys / that a grete nyle souldeth every day / it semed that it shold neuer sesse / On that other syde the sclaouuns and the dalmaces that knowe the places and the countrees made on them many violentes at certayn paas and slewe 32 many of them that were vnarmed. The Erle and the good men of the hoost closed them in, And slewe many of them. And many moo shold haue slayn / yt the wodes & their retraytes had not be so nyge / Somtyme it happed that therle toke of them a lyue / 36 And made to smyte of theyr feet and handes / And lefte them lye

1 Fr. gaingnables, capable of being cultivated.
2—2 Fr. "les autres ne parlent se Esclavonois, non,"—the others speak nothing but the Scavic tongue.
3 Fr. nisle, fog, mist.
in the waye for to ferewith the other that cam after / In this maner they were thre wekes in that londe in grete paryl / And in grete mysase / After they cam in to a castel named sendre there they founde the kyng of sklaunoye. The Erle that was wel be spoken / spak moche fayr to hym / and gaf to hym largely grete yestes and Iewellys / for he hoped ther by that he wold haue holden his peple in peas, And haue don hem had couenable market of vytaylles / But3 it auaylled not / for neuer for prayer, ne for no S seruys / myght they as wage4 his courage / ne mollyfye the peple of the countre / But they founde them more cruel and more vyllanous than to fore. Thus were they foure wekes after in this sorowe, for they were fourty dayes in passyng this contre / Aftir cam they 12 to duras.

Ambassadours of themperour to the sayd Erle and bishop / And of the contenue of his lettres / And of the daunger wherin the said bishop was thenne / capitulo xlvi." t Hemperour had in suspension the comyng of therle / by cause that he knewe wel that he was a moche wyse man and of grete courage. And wel herd saye that he had with hym grete 20 plente of good men / Therfore he sente to them to duras nobile men of his londe that delyuered to hym lettres fro themperour, which spak in this maner after the saleyng / "The good rennomme that renneth of the thurgh the world, hath made vs to haue certayn 24 tydynges / that thou art a man of grete wytte, of grete power, and of grete prouesse / Therfore we moche desyre to see the, and honoures as hym that we loue of good hert, and preyse / And we praye the moche acertaynly, and requyre for a grete yeffe / that 28 thou doo thy peple passe our contrees without oultradges and doyng harme. And haste the to come to vs, alle sure to haue our grace and oure bounte; we haue commanded that vytaylles and other necessyttes shal be sold to thy peple at prys resonable" / whan the 32 Erle and alle the barons herde thise tydynges by thysse lettres, they were glad5 and joyous / for they had longe suffred grete diseases / They tooke their waye by forestes and by montaynes, and passed the londe of Epyre. Aftir they cam in to pelagonne, where they 36

1 Fr. "pour espouenter les autres," to frighten the others.
2 Fr. Sceude. 3 Orig. Bnt. 4 Fr. "adoucier son coeur."
fonde moche grete plente of alle goodes / The valyaunt bishop of
puy lodged hym on a day fer fro the hoost in a fayr place that he
founde / and in the nyght the bougres assaylled hym in his lodgys
4 and toke hym / But by cause he was necessarie to cristiene our
lord's sauyd hym, that they slewe hym not / for one of the barbaryns
daemanded of hym gold / theryfore he defended hym fro the other,
that they slewe hym not / In the mene while the noyse was herde.
8 in the hoost. Thenne they ranne to armes / and synth ran on them /
And recouured the bishopp with alle his thynges / On the morn
they toke theyr waye and passed salenyke / And alle macedonie / And
after grete trawavyles and many iourneyes they cam to a cyte
12 named Redost / Thether cam the messagers of themperour agayne /
And spak to the erle, prayeng hym in theyr lorde's name / that he
wold come to fore his hooste with a fewe of his companye in to
constantynoble / Messengers ther were also fro the barons that had
16 passed the braas / And requyred the same by mouthe, And by
lettres fro theyr lorde. The erle hym self had sente messagers to
fore to knowe the beyng of the countre / and of the barons. And
they were retorned, whiche accorded moche to the same, and coun-
20 seyllled hym to doo that themperour requyred.

How the Erle of Tholouse beyng with themperour
wold not do hommage to hym, and of the despyte
that themperour dyde / ca / xlvij

24 b Y the prayer of so moche peple therle muste doo soo at
theyr instaunce / And thus lefte his hooste / And cam in to
constantynoble with a fewe of his meyne / many messagers encount-
red hym, whiche alle cam for to fetche hym / whan he cam to fore
28 themperour he was well receyued with moche grete chere and ioye
of hym, and alle the barons of the palays. After themperour dyde
to be sayd to hym / and requyred hym right swetly / that for to
haue alwaye alyaunce and amytee with hym / And also for the grete
32 prouffyt that he shold haue therof, he shold make hommage to
thempour / lyke as alle the other had don / he answered shortly
that he wold none make ne doo to hym. Themperour had grete
desdayne, and was moche wroth / he sente to fetche the conestables
36 of his souldyours, and for them that had the charge of his men 3 of

1 Orig. salenyeke.  
2 Orig. aud.
The Emperor treats them treacherously. [Ch. XLVIII.

Armes / And commaund{ed} them secretly in counseyl, that they shold anyse theyr tyme and poyn{t}, and Smyte in to the hooste of The Erle / And doo to them alle the harme they myghte, And slee grete plente of them / This dyde Themperour¹ commaund{ed} them 4 the more surely / by cause that he wylte wel that they that were on that othersyle myght not helpe them, And² by cause they were his³ men ⁴they wold not some greue them⁵ / And had commaund{ed} that alle the shippes to bere ouer vytyl{le}, sho{le} come hastely 8 ageyn in to the Cyte, So that they on that other syde shold not come ouer agayn / ⁶for euere he had suspicion thassemble of oure peple⁷ / And therfore he made them to passe ouer ech{e} after other as they cam / The grete chere that he made to them / And the grete 12 yeftes that he gaf, cam more by barate and of drede than of loue or of largesse / But oure peple, and specially the fryenssmen, myght not blyene that this loye that he made to them / Ne the Rychesse that he gaf myght come of any trayson ne of euyl / They knewe 16 not by experyence so moche thense as they dyde afterward.

How themperour, for tauenge⁵ hym on therle / made his Conestables tenbussehe them / and assaylle the hooste of therle /

ⁱ Orig. Themperonr.
⁲ Fr. si homes, his liege men, that is, they had sworn fealty to him.
³-⁴ Fr. "ne li nuiroient mie si liegierement," they would not for a light thing injure him.
⁵ Fr. "Car toujours avait il souspeconnenne l'ensemble de nos gens."
⁶ Orig. tauenge.
⁷ Fr. refroidier.
small & comine peple, but many of the grete & noble men had forgotten theyr vowes and theyr honours, and wold haue returned home vnto theyr countrey. But the noble bishop of Puy / and 4 the Bisshop\(^2\) of Orenge were emonge them, and many good, wyse, relygyous men and clerkys, that preche\(^2\) to them the wordes of our lord, and recomforted them moche wel / And\(^2\) shewde them that ye they retourned, they shold lese thonour of this world / And also of that other. Thus with grete peyne they retyeyned them. when the erle, whiche was in Constantynople, herde of the trayson that was don to hym in his hoost, he was as a man out of his wytte, & anon sente his men to themperour / And\(^2\) sente hym word\(^2\) that he 12 had betrayde hym. \(\text{ffor whyl}e\) he retyeyned\(^2\) hym and made hym good chere, he had doe slee his peple by trayson / And\(^2\) sente worde herof to the barons that were on that other syde, prayeng them as his bretheren that they wOLD come to hym to auenge it. wel may 16 ye knowe that ye therle had power sufficient, he wold not haue departed tyl he had\(\text{auengyd}\) hym; And\(^2\) that it shold haue ben dere bought / \(\text{ffor}\) he was a man of grete courage, And\(^2\) forgate not lyghtly shame don to hym / Themperour sawe that this thynge was 20 goon ouer ferre, in suche wyse that he repented\(^2\) hym / that he had so commaundad in his angre and hastynes, and\(\text{hasted hym moche for to sette counseyl in this werke}\) / And\(^2\) sente / for Buymont and therle of flaundres to come and speke with hym / by cause he wold 24 sente them for to appease therle of Tholouse / They cam, whiche were moche angry of this that was don / They wente to therle in the name of themperour / But they sayd\(^2\) to hym more on theyr owne behalue than of themperours / They shewde hym wel that it 28 was not tyme ne place for tauenge his shames that had\(\text{ben don to hym in the seruyse of oure lord, \(\text{ffor}\) it shold be empesshement vnto the grete werke that they had\(\text{enterprise}^2\) for to saue theyr sowles / And on that other syde, ye they wolde so doo, they had 32 not the power ne puyssaunce; therfor it were better to hyde there thoughts / than to discouere their hertes, to theyr domage and shame / the Erle, thus angry, was no fool / but\(^3\) souffred\(^2\) that his wytte vaynqyuyshe his angre / And\(^2\) said that he wold submette to 36 thysse two noble men that spak to hym, and\(\text{bye}leu\) them / They cam to themperour priuely\(^4\) and\(\text{shewd to hym al the fowle de}de and\(\text{werke that was commune}^2\) / Themperour understode the grete yre that they had in their hertes / & sente for therle to come to

\(^2\) Orig. Bisslop. \(^3\) Orig. bnt. \(^4\) Orig. prinely.
hym in to his palays / & excused hym to fore alle pryue, & apperte, & estrangers, that he had not comanded this fayte to be doon / but it displesyd hym moche / And yet he, beyng without culpe and blame therof, he was redy to restore to the Duc alle the 4 dammages that 1 were don to his hooste after his power. Thus every day by day / and more and more myght wel be percyued the grete hate that the grekes had to the latyns, And of the desloyal felonnye that themperour had in his herte / ayenst oure peple / but 8 it must be suffred / sfor it myght not thenne be amended.

How at thynstaunt prayer of the barons of the hooste / The Erle made hommage to themperour / whiche gaf grete yeftes to hym and his. 12

Capitulo xlix:

a Fter the counselyl of the other barons / the erle was therto meuyd / And by the grete prayers of themperour, that he dyde hommage to hym, and sware to hym feaulte, lyke as the other had 16 doon / And the pes was affermed among them. Themperour gaf to them so grete yeftes / that alle they were merueyllously esmyayed / The other barons, that were come ouer agayn on the hether syde, receyued newe yeftes and presentes. After, they passed the braas, 20 and retourned in to bethnie. And they praye moche the erle that he shold not longe tarye and abyde there. the Erles hoost cam in to Constantinoble / And he made them passe ouer the braas, & to lodge with the other: he hym self abode in the toun, for certeyn 24 necessytees that he had do to doo and to ordeyne / And he, as a moche wyseman, praye and Incited ofte themperour / that he shold enterpyre the seruyse of our lord, And that he wold be lord and captyyn of alle the hoost / where as were so many noble men / 28 And he had hope that our lord shold sende to hym suche honnour that he shold delynuer his peple and londe by hym / 3 wel coude the Erle make to hym remonstrance / acordyng to the barons whiche had spoken in this mater / Themperour answerd to them alle in 32 one maner / that this pylgremage was a moche hye thynge / and that he moche desyred the pardon / And aboue alle other thynge the

2 Orig. necessytees.
3 Fr. "Bien saperait le conte lui montrer, selone ce que les autres barons lui avoient monstré guèî parlast, et euxmesmes en avoient parlé?"

1 Orig. pylgremage.
companye of so hye noble men plesyd hym moche. And about hym and his empyre he sayd he had moch cruel peple and moch vntrew, as the Bougres, the comans, and other that gladly wold doo 4 harme to hym and to his loude, and conquer his Empyre, as moche as they myght gete / And theryfore it were grete parylle for me to withdrawe fro my Countreye / well and fayre he excused hym withoute forth / But that he sayd to oure 1peple was but trychelrye [H. 42, bk.] 8 and falsched; ne he had never talente to helpe our peple / But thought wel in his herte how he myght noye them to his power / They that were ouer the braas / The Duc Godeffroy / Buymont / therle of flaundres / And the Bixsshop of Puy, aduysed and ordeyned 12 theyr affayres for them / And sayde they wold drawe them to ward Nycene / ffor to abyde there the other Barons that were conyng on the waye / when they approched a cyte which was named Nycome / which is the oldest Cyte of the Countre of Bythyne / Be ye 16 certayne that Pieter theremyte, with a fewe peple that had abyden there, yssued oute of the poure 2 place / And had ben there for the wynter. And cam ayenst thyse Barons, and salewed them. They made to them good chere / And demaunded them of thyer waye 20 and Journeys / They gaf to them 3grete yefets, of whiche they had grete mede. 3 Pieter tolde to them theyr grete mesauntures, 4 And sayde that it cam by theyr owne outrage and folye. Thyse noble men of whome I haue sayd, had peple ynowgh, and cam to Nycene / 24 And assiaged it the XV / day of maye / They lefte places ynowgh for to lodge the other Barons that cam after. The Erle of Tho louse, when he had do made suche thynges as hym neded in Constantynoble / he toke leue of Themperour / whiche gaf to hym 28 ryche yeftes alle newe / And cam after hastely to the syege of Nycene.

How duc Robert of Normandye, and other named, approched Constantinoble / and madc 32 hommage to themperour.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Orig. ponre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-3</td>
<td>Caxton has translated here very freely. Fr. “telement quilz curent grandement leurs necessités.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Orig. mesauntures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Duc Godeffroye, sente to the Emperor and to other Barons their messengers. In their company were Steven daumbable, Alayn fergaunt, and Conayn, two hye Barons of Brytayne; The erle Rotheron of Perse, Rogyer de Barneuylle, Thyse and other ynowgh 2 in the Yere to fore, in theatre of Wynter, comen in to Puylle and in to Calabre, whiche ben good Countreyes. When the newe tyme was comen, they assembled their peple, and ordeyned their passage on the see, and cam to duras. And by 8 cause they had taryed so longe, they hasted them moche, and passed Macedome and the two thaarses, by grete Iourneyes and grete tranaylles cam vnto Constantynople. Themperoure sente for them, cam to in to hym. They that knewe how the other barons 12 had don, cam to in to his palayes to hym. He receyued them with moche grete Ioye. Alle his Barons made to them grete feste. He spak to eueryche by hym self ryght swetly, and acqueynted with hem. After dyde do requyre of them hommage and seaulte. They dyde as the other had don that were passe to fore. And it was no shame to ensiwe the sampl of so valyaunt men, ne to ddo that they had don. They becam his men, and dyde hym hommage, and swore to hym. Themperoure receyued them in his grace. And 20 gaf to them so grete yeftes that they were abasshed alle; for the yeftes were so ryche and so dyuerse that they neuer to fore had seen none such. And after toke their leue of Themperour. And passed the braas of Seynt George, and cam with grete haste to 24 Nycene. Where as the hooste of cristiente abode for them. The Ioye was grete thane they were comen, whiche were the laste. They lodged them in the places that were kept for them.

How themperour sente for to destroye our Cristen men one his seruaunt, faynyng to be a trewe Conduyteur & guyde.
Atyns 1 was a Greke, and wel aqveynted with thempour; 1
the moost fals, vntrew man that enuer was. And 2 so he wel
semed / 2ffor he had his nosethrellys remuled 2 and tourned. 2
4 This felawe, by the commandement of his lorde, wente with oure
men / And sayd that he wold conduyte 3 them, 3ffor he knewe wel
alle the Contre and the pases by whiche they wold passe and go /
But Themperour dyde alle this for euyl / ffor he trusted 2 in the
8 falsenesse of this fals greek / whiche counselyld 2 them allowey
to theyr dammage / And 3 was alwyas as the serpent emonge the elis.
And 1 thempour had charged hym for to late hym wyte every day
how the hoost behaued 2 them, and 1 of theuyr purpose / And therup
12 he wold sende to hym his wylle and 1 extente / At this siege oure
peple first assembled 1 to gydre, and the Capytynys and barons spak
of theuyr comune 5 werkes and counselys / ffor to fore they had
never ben to gydre, ne seen ech other / 6ther was knowen
16 certynly 7 by nombre and by extymacion to 8 fore Nycene, 6 when
they were alle assembled 1 / sixe .C / thousand 2 men a fote / And 1 of
knyghtes and 1 men of armes on horsbak, an hundred 2 thousand 1 or
moo / They alle had moche grete wylle for to employe them wel in
20 this warre / And 2 desyred 1 moche at this fyrst beginnyng of theuyr
warre to enterprise so hyely and 1 doo so wel / that alle other peple
shold doubte them.

Of the situacion of Nycene / And how our peple
approched therto / Merueyllyng of the place and
of the strengthe /
28 be taken away fro the power of this archebysshop / and 1 it was a
place of honour / by cause 9 the fyrst of the iii grete counselylles
had be sette there / ffor in the tyme of seynt syluestre the pope /

1 Fr. Latins. Lat. Latinus.
2 Fr. “Car il avoit unes marines rennliées.” Lat. “nares habens
mutilas in signum mentis perversae.” Caxton evidently read rennliées, and
then not understanding the word, gave it an English termination, and
transferred it bodily to his translation.
3 Orig. condyte.
4 Orig. aud.
5 Orig. commne.
6-6 One of the important verbs is left out in this sentence. Fr. “selon
ce qu'il fut certainement seen par nombre et par estimacion ilz eurent devant
Nicene,” etc., i.e. they had before Nicene, etc.
7 Orig. certayuly.
8 Orig. canse.
ther was a patriarche of constantinoble, named alexandre / & emperour constantin / ther was a mescreaunt named arrius / which mesprised certeyn poyntes of the fayth / & many men folowed hym. therfor assembled in the Cyte of Nycene iiij. C. xviij. 4 prelates / And there was disputed ayenst this popelican. And by wytnes of scripture, and by thaccoord of holy men that were there, Arrius was condemne\textsuperscript{d} and his mescreaunce / Syth after, in the tyme of an another constantyn, Emperour, which was sone vnto 8 ayerne,\textsuperscript{1} Assembled\textsuperscript{2} another counseyl\textsuperscript{2} in the same place / whiche was the / vij / Thence was adryan pope of Rome: And Tareste\textsuperscript{3} was patriarche of constantinople. there were damnpned som mysbyleuyd peple, that said / that alle the ymages that were made in 12 holy chyrche were ayenst the fayth, And they were false cristien men and\textsuperscript{4} vntrewe that suffre\textsuperscript{d} them. This cyte of Nycene stondeth in a playn, but the montaynes ben ngyhe / And\textsuperscript{5} it lacked\textsuperscript{d} not moche, \textsuperscript{5}but they be round\textsuperscript{a} aboute\textsuperscript{5} / The countrey is moche fayr and 16 plenteuous / \textsuperscript{6}the grete forestes ben by a ryuer ngyhe the cyte, toward the weste, moche longe and\textsuperscript{6} brode\textsuperscript{6} / By that ryuer the shyppes brynge vytyallle and\textsuperscript{6} other marchandyse in to the cyte; when it is a grete wynde, the grete waves nymte sore on the walles. 20 On that other part of the towne ben grete dyches, brode and depe, And\textsuperscript{7} ful of water, of a lake and other ffontaynes. The walles aboute be stronge, hye / thycke / And full of grete Tourettys / The Peple within\textsuperscript{7} the towne were fiers and hardy, and wel aduyysed 24 of armes\textsuperscript{8} / And\textsuperscript{7} grete plente there were / when oure men approched it, they merueyllled moche of the strengthe of the towne.

How the puyssaunt Turke Solyman, with a grete hoost, aduyysed tyme and houre to assayle and 28 smyte on our peple, for to reyse the siege /

Capitulo liij\textsuperscript{9}

\textsuperscript{1} Fr. Iren. Lat. Irenae. \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{2} Orig. couneyil.\hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{3} Fr. Tareses. \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{4} Orig. and.

\textsuperscript{5} Fr. "quelles ne soient tout entour," but that they surround it entirely.
\textsuperscript{6} Fr. "Les granz foyse sont delez; uns lains est prei de la cite mont" (fluenve), which he has followed, but the Latin and the other French translations give "lake" (lais).

\textsuperscript{8} Fr. "avisés d'armes," skilled in armes.
the coutre aboute. he was moche wyse / hardy and manly of his body. f'ro the tynme that he herde of the comynge of our peple / he was garnysshed of his frendes and soldyours for to defende his
cyte and his londe. An vnkle of his, named Belphet,(18) moche
puyssant and ryche, had late conquered alle the londe that is fro
the bras of seynt george vnto surry / whiche is / xxx / iourneyes
longe / In that tynme Romanus diogenes was Emperour,¹ whiche²
8 was to fore alexes / that was deposited / This belphet, soudan of
perse, had gyuen the gretter parte of the londe to solyman his
neuwe / in suche wyse that he had alle the londe fro the cyte of
tarce, that is in Cylyce, vnto the bras of seynt george / Thus this
12 solyman³ had his baiiies in the town of Constantinoble,⁴ whiche
resseyued⁵ his passages⁶ and custommes of the marchans of the
toun and of other. This solyman was withdrawn to the montaynes
with as moche peple as he myght haue, a x / myle fro the hoost,
16 And dyde lye in a wayte and espye how he myght fynde the maner
to reyse the siege / yf he had mocht /

How solyman, beyng in the montaynes, sente his
messagers to them of the toun, & of the
20 comfort that he gaf to them.

Were peple cam to fore the toun, and without acorde and
without ony ordenaunce began tassaylle, in suche wyse that
they within myght not yssue / ne they without entre. But
24 the grete lake that toucheéd the town destrouledd moche, f'or they
myghte, maugre the Hooste, goo and come by the see as ofte as
they wolde / Oure Peple had none shippes, ne myght not deffende
the lake. Certaynly they had besygeddd it wel by londe / Solyman, [1f. 44, 1ff.]
28 that sawe this cyte thus enyronned with peple, wherof he was
wroth & angry / And doubted moche that they of the toun shold
be abasshed of the grete multitude. ther for he sente two of his
preuy messagers, And commanded them in his name that they
32 shold entre in to the toun / And saye thyse wordes, “I holde you
so valyuant men, and of suche prouesse, that I bylyue certaynly

¹ Orig. Emperour. ² Lat. “qui ante hunc Ailexium fuerat tertius.”
³–³ Caxton’s corrupt French text does not follow the Latin very closely
here. The text of the Historiens Occidentaux gives a more correct version;
“En tel maniere neis qu’il avoit ses baillez, d’autre part, en la rene de
Constantinople,” i. e. he had his bailiffs just in sight of, not within
Constantinople.
⁴ Fr. pungs, tolls for passage.
Solyman's Messengers are taken Prisoners. [Ch. LV.

telling the inhabitants not to fear the Crusaders, who were weary with travel, and poorly armed; and to be ready, for he would come the next day to deliver them.

Our people espied the messengers, and killed one, and took the other prisoner.

After hearing his confession, the great barons took counsel and prepared to meet Solyman, who arrived, as he had promised, the next morning.

[\* leaf 44]

that ye preyse and sette lytil by this peple, that ben comen fro so fer contreyes, where the sonne goth down. And they be wery, enyl ordeyned and garnysshed, and hante none horses that may endure trauayll / we ben fressh, and our horses rested in our contre / whereof it is no doubte we be better than they an C / tymes. And that ye maye wel knowe, fflor it is not longe syth that we disconfyted in one day moo than / l. M / Therfor conforte you and mayntene you as noble men, fflor to morn, to fore the houre of none, 8 ye shal be without faylle delyuerd of them alle / but be ye wel aduertysed & redy, that when we Smyte in the hoost / ye opene youre yates & yssue upon them in suche wyse / that ye threme be partieyners of the vctorye of thonour / & of the proffytt / 12

How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men, and by them was knowne the couynge of the sayd solyman.

cap. IV.

He messagers of Solyman cam upon the lake, And arryued a 16 lytil ferre fro the toun. And after began tespaye and see how they myght entre in to the cyte / Oure peple apperecyued them and ran on them, that one of them was slayn atte takynge / That other was brought a lyne to fore the barons / they made hym to be 20 drawn and payned to saye the trouth. he confessyd and sayde that Solyman had sente them in to the cyte fflor to garnyshe them & make them redy / fflor theyr lord on the morn shold come and Smyte sodanly in the hoost / the barons bylenyd hym wel. And 24 commanded hym to be kept / And toke counseyl entwem them how they shold doo. Therle of Tholouse and the bishopp of puy were not yet come vnto the hoost / The barons sente for them hastely for this thynge / They cam and rode alle the nyght, in suche wyse 28 that they cam in to the hoost to fore the sonne rysynge. The baners were displayed, and the trompes sowened. Ther was moche peple, & vmmeth myght they be lodged in the places that were kept for them / Thenne Solyman at the hour of tierce / lyke as he sayf that 32 was taken / cam doum fro the montayn in to the playn. Thenn our peple that were wel aduertysed armed them. And dyde do

1 Orig. without. 2 Orig. youre. 3-5 Fr. "pour eulx garnir de ce que leur seigneur vendroit le lende-
main," to warm them that their lord would come the next day; garnir seems here to be used in its original German sense.
sowne the trompettes. Every man drewe hym in to his bataylle as it was ordeyned / and moche quyckely\(^1\) were alle sette in ordenaunce.

4 How a grete bataylle of Solyman cam smyte vpon our peple, And of thende of the scarmuche.

\(^{o}\) F the hooste of Solyman departed\(^2\) a bataylle fro the other, wherin where\(^2\) x.M / men on horsbak / And\(^3\) drewe them 8 toward the gate right toward the south / Ther was lodged\(^4\) therle of tholouse. And this yate was delyuered\(^5\) hym to kepe / But Solyman that the day to fore had espied\(^6\) that waye and had\(^6\) seen no man there lodged / And\(^7\) wende that no man had\(^7\) ben there / for he knewe nothyng of the comyng of therle ne his companye / this bataylle smote in emonge the people that were comen / They receyued them moche fiersly with glayues & swerdes / & sore adommaged them / \(^8\) And\(^8\) made them to resorte agayn bakward.\(^3\)

16 Solyman\(^4\) that ensiowed made them to retourne with hym, and assembled to the peple of the erle of flanaders / The duc godefroye, buymont, and therle of tholouse, aduysed and sawe that ther were so many of the turkes / that the erle of flanaders myght not suffre 20 alle. And\(^9\) adressyd theyre bataylle to that parte / And smote in emonge them. The medle was moche harde / and aspre\(^5\) / And many turkes were slayn / Ther was so moche don and so wel / that Guy de gerlande, seneshal of the kynge of fraunce,\(^6\) Guy du puysett, Rogier de barneuylle / Thyse bareawy the prys to fore all other. But this bataylle endurer\(^5\) wel an houre al hoole / In thende the turkes myght suffre nomore our peple / But were discomfyted\(^6\)

\(^1\) Orig. quyckely. \(^2\) Fr. estoient, "were," not "where." 
\(^3\) Fr. "et firent ressortir arrivee."
\(^4\) According to the Latin original Soliman on returning, attacked, not the troops of the count of Flanders, but those of the count of Toulouse, and the count of Flanders came to his rescue with Godfrey of Boulgne and Bohemond. Caxton’s translation is due to his corrupt French text. Lat. "cum ece Solimanus, cum majoribus subsequens copiis eis, refundens animos qui jam erant dissoluti, secum iterum in nostros redire compulit. At vero dux, dominus quoque Boamundus et comes Flandrensis, cum suis expeditionibus, ad unquam armati, videntes hostium majores advenisse cancoct et turmas densiores, [et] gravi multitudine et animosa instantia comitis exercitum supra vires fatigari, irrumpit unamuniter, et hostium se inferunt legionibus."
\(^5\) Fr. aspre, vigorous, sharp.
\(^6\) Lat. Guido de Parsessa. A Guy de Passe.

GODFREY.
and fledde away moche fowly / Our peple folowed them not ferre, for the montaynes and the wodes were ouer nere in which they fledde / But were of turkes slayn / iiiij. thousand, and som ther were a lyne taken / Oure peple had moche grete ioye of this vycorye, and cam ageyn to theyr siege, and besieged the toun as well as they myghte for to angre and discourrage them within the toun, whiche awayted after socoure. They made to be caste with engynes to them within the toun grete plente of heedes of the turkes that had ben slayn in the bataylle / The prisoners a lyne and a thousand heedes of the turkes they sente to the emperour / He coude them grete thanke and had therof moche ioye. And sente to them agayne newe yeftes of jewellys, of clothes of sylk and other thynges right largely / And commanded to the marchauntes that they shold lede vytaille ynowe ynwo tnto the hooste / and other thynges necessarie.

How our barons were lodged in the sayd siege / of 16 their mayntene / And how every daye they enforced them tassayllye the toun / Capituló lvii:

They sent for timber to make ma-chines.

The great barons take counsel how to arrange the siege of Tyrce.

They sent a thousand heedes of the slayn to the Emperor.

The Crusaders were greatly encouraged by this victory.

1 Orig. tonn.
2 Fr. "ilz s'efforcecoient," they exerted themselves.
3 Fr. "devers bise," toward the North. Lat. Septentrionalis.
4 Orig. and.
5 "Caxton has altered the sense here, by wrongly dividing his sentence, misled probably by his original, in which it is difficult to decide which is the correct division. A gives the clearer and more correct reading—"le quens de Flandres et li duns de Normandie se bagirent lez aux : devers midî fû li quens de Toulouse," etc.
6 Orig. dink.
7 Orig. hooost.
Ch. LVIII. | The Barons make an unsuccessful Assault.

99 sawyers cam forth / of whom was grete nombre. In a lytil whyle they envisayed and slynges. And made in therthe wayes and caues couerd for to fylle the dyches and to myne the walles, They cast great stones at the wall, and broke it in many places.

4 Ther was grete caste of grete stones at the walles and tourcttes / so that in many places the walles were clefte and broken in many partes / for to doo thyse thynges / they were wel .vii. wekes. There were in this whyle many assaultes and fyghtes ofte to fore

8 the yates / On a day the barons acorded† that the town shold be assaylled; but this assault endamaged lytil the toune ne them within. But ther were lost two valyaunt men / that one was named Bawdwyyn handeron,¹ a ryche man and a good knyght of

12 berry / That other was of filauders named Bawdwyyn of gaunt, noble and hardy / ²Thyse two wente so ferre to fore daye, that ² the one was slayn with a stroke of a stone / ³And that other with an Arowe / Guyllem, Erle of forest / And Galles de lylle,³ thyse two

16 were lyce noble men / and assaylled moche that day. In this tyme deyde of sekenes in the hoost guy de possesse a moche good knyght. The hooste were sorouful of the deth of thyse noble men / but every man⁴ that our lord wold⁵ gwerdone them perpetually in

20 heuen flor the good seruyse that they deyde in. They were honourably buryed⁶ / And after entended vnto theyr werke /

How our barons made theyr castellys of tree and ap- ² leaf 47 cloched the town. And how they within the
toun brake one of them and slewe them with

Inne. Capitulo lviii.

² Fr. “ces deux s’estoient monté tirés avant, or jour, tant que,“ etc., these two had gone so far in advance (of the others) that day, that, etc.—Caxton has mistaken “avant,” for a preposition governing day, instead of an adverb modifying “tirés.”

³ Fr. “Li autres d’une sajete, et remest li assauz, un autre jour fu recommenciez li assauz par acort des barons et fu oceis d’une sajete, Guillaums li quens de Pores, et Galles de Lyle. Caxton has ruined the sense here, by his “bourdon.” He has omitted all between the two “sajetes.”

⁴ Fr. “tos avoient ferme esperance que nostre Seigneur, qui en son service les prenoit, leur guerredonnoit monté hautement a tousjours;” Caxton has omitted, “had a firm hope,” just before “that our Lord.”

⁵ They soon raised engines and slings


² Fr. “ces deux s’estoient monté tirés avant, or jour, tant que,“ etc., these two had gone so far in advance (of the others) that day, that, etc.—Caxton has mistaken “avant,” for a preposition governing day, instead of an adverb modifying “tirés.”
The Turks destroy the Engines of the Crusaders. [Ch. LIX.

an enuye hastely in his parte / The erle herman of duchelond\footnote{1 \textit{Orig. and.}} and\footnote{1 \textit{Fr. "entrepreneants,"} enterprising.} \footnote{2 \textit{Orig. one.}} henry dasque, that were good knyghtes and\footnote{2 \textit{Fr. "de gros tr\'es de chene,"} of large timbers of oak.}\footnote{3 \textit{Fr. "de gros tr\'es de chene,\"} of large timbers of oak.} \footnote{4-1 \textit{Fr. "Il deffoiisa et chent tout ensemble,"} it broke in pieces, and fell down in a heap.}\footnote{4-1 \textit{Fr. "Il deffoiisa et chent tout ensemble,"} it broke in pieces, and fell down in a heap.}\footnote{5 \textit{Orig. fynde.}}\footnote{5 \textit{Orig. fynde.}} enterprisers, had deuyed a thyng of a\footnote{3 \textit{Fr. "de gros tr\'es de chene,"} of large timbers of oak.} grete tronke of an oke, and had sette theron / xx / knyghtes alle couerd aboue / And ynder they had men ynoough\footnote{4} for to myne the walle / They approch\footnote{4} the castel that it ioyned\footnote{4} to the walle / The knyghtes aboue began to defiende them, And they ynder pered the walle. The turkes within had dressed\footnote{4} the grettest part of theyr engyns to this castel, and\footnote{4} many strokes had\footnote{8} smeton so longe that wyth the strok of a grete stone they brake alle and fylle dowm to gydre\footnote{4} in suche wyse that neuer one escaped aboue ne ynder, but alle were deed, There was grete sorwe in the hoost / And moche more shold be, ne had not be the grete com\footnote{12} forte that they had in our lord / They lefte not herfore, but every man payned hym more and more to grene them with Inne / And\footnote{16} gaf to them so many assultes day and nyght / that they lete them haue but lytil reste / but one thyng ther was that grened our peple moche / And\footnote{16} that was that ther cam euery day in to the toune fresshe vtyaylles and newe men / Armours and\footnote{28} artyllery by the lake / And they coude not defende it, wherof they were moche marry\footnote{5}.

Of the counseyl that our men toke for tassiege the town by watre for to constreyne them not for to entre ne yssue / cap\footnote{0 \textit{lix.}}

\footnote{1} Erof wold our barons haue counseyl how they myght dis\footnote{24} trouble this enomyng by water / They assembled and aconed that they wold\footnote{24} sende of theyr knyghtes grete plente, wyse men, and\footnote{24} men a fote and\footnote{24} take alle the shippes at the see syde that they coude fynde,\footnote{6} and sette them vpon charyottes of the hoost and\footnote{28} brynge suche as they myght brynge hoole. And\footnote{28} the other they shold\footnote{28} parte in two ypees or three. And also they wold\footnote{28} sende to themperour and\footnote{28} praye hym that he wold\footnote{28} deluyer to them shippes / They that had\footnote{24} charge of this werke cam to the see without taryeng\footnote{32} and fonde shippes grete plente, suche as they had neve of. And\footnote{32} by the commandamendment of themperour, whiche graunted gladly,
drew out of the water ynowgh, Thenne coupled they to gydre
four\(^1\) cartes or fyue after that the shyppes were, and settete them
theron by force of peple al hole, and with many men drewe them
fourth with cordes and with trayse of the cartes in one nyght / vij.
longe myle or more / Thise shippes were taken of and launched in
to the lake moche hastely, \(\text{ffor many hondes make light werke.}\)
And the peple wente therto with a good wyle. They had emonge
8 them many maromers that coude wel shippecrafte / \(\text{And they were}
sette therin, moche peple offerd them self to entre alle armes}^2 / \(\text{they}
toke as many as needed, and garnyshe}^3 \text{d wel thysse shippes / Somme}
shippes had\(\text{ in an honders}^3 / \text{and other} / \text{l. or xxx. or xx} / \text{after theyr}
grethen / \text{in suche wyse that the waye that they had} \text{in the lake,}
Oure men hadde taken from them, whan they of the hooste sawe that
this waye of the laken was take from them,\(\text{ they had grete Ioye.}\)
And hoped that the siege shold not endure / \(\text{The turkes of the}
16 towne when they apperceu}^3 \text{d that oure men had don so grete a}
werke and so stronge, They fyll in despayre and were abasshed\(\text{ and}
merueyllde of the vygour of our peple that had don this in so short}
tyume / \(\text{And thenne were they enclosed on alle sydes, and had loste}
20 the waye for theyr shippes.}

How after the Cyte was asseygged by water and by
londe, oure men assayllde it / \(\text{And of a Shotte}
that Duc Godefroye dyde.} \text{ Capitul} / \text{lx}^o

\(24^w\) Han the Barons sawe that theyr shippes were in the lake in
suche wyse that no man myght grene them, Anon they dyde
do crye that alle men shold\(\text{ arme them and come to thassault, And}
it was acorded that ech of the barons shold assayyle in that parte
\(28^w\) where he was lodged\(\text{ / they admoneset}^4 \text{d and enforced theyr peple}
to doo wel / Thassault was more\(^3 / \text{than euer it had}^4 \text{be} / \text{There}
somme threwe of out thengys grete nombre of stones / Every man}
dye his part: toward the south in the partye that was delyuerd\(\text{.}\)
\(32^w\) to therle of thoulouse / there was an hye toure more grete than ony
of the other / by that toure was the palays, In whiche Solymans wyf
was. Therle had sette alle his entent for to breke this toure longe
tyume / \(^5 \text{ffor he had doo throwen ther at grete stones}^5 / \text{And had}

\(^1\) \text{Orig. four.}\)
\(^2\) \(\text{i. e. the towns-people.}\)
\(^3\) \text{Fr. greindre, greater.}\)
\(^4\) \text{Orig. delynerd.}\)
\(^5\) \text{Fr. "Car il y avoit fait jeter deux grosses perricres longuement."}
not broken one stone of the tour / And by cause he would not for
shame so leue it without takyngr of it. And ordyned greter
stones alle newe, which began to breke the crevaches of the same
tour / & with the strokes of the stones moche powdre cam out of
the clyfetes / The peple of the hoost apperecyued it / And sawe
that the toure began to falle / they passed the dyche / and brought engyns vnto the walles. Ther began they with grete exploit to
myne the walle and to perse it, they within caste grete stones upon
the engyns / And with shotte of handbowes and arbalestres they
hurte many of them that they sawe discouer / And by cause
they save that the closyngr of the toure began to faylle / they 
walled it within forth with stones and chalk, and made a right stronge wall good and thycke / Our men that were atte tour had made an
hole in the walle, that two men myght wel entre attones frely /

On the walle in the parte where Due Godffroye assaylled, ther
was a turke stronge, grete, & hardly, which dyde grete dommage to
oure men / And hurte many with a stronge bowe turquoyes that
he had / And with a lytil of oure langage that he conde cessed not
to syae euyl and discouraie them that assaylled and called them Cowardes. hit happed that due godffroye saw it / And anysead hym many tymes and was merucylyllus displesyd with hym / And
thought how he myght cheysshe to be at his case, he toke in his
hand a arbalesste good and myghty / and helde it bent til the turk
cam agayn and abandouned hym / The due toke his syght and 24
marke and shotte at hym, & smote hym right thurgh the bely,
that he fyl dow to the ground fro the walle / The eyre and the shawtyng began grete in the hooste and the ioye / The due had
grete honour and many good prayers therfore. the other sarsyns that
were on that other parte of this deffence were moche abashshed

Caxton mistakes here: "perrières" (machines for casting stones) for "pierres" (stones).

2-2 Caxton’s translation here does not make sense. Fr. “Le jor de l’assaut on commence à recevoir erreuvres, en celle tour, qui se longuement s’estoit tenue,” i.e. they commenced to see the crevices, instead of “break-ing” them.

3 Fr. “menèrent un chat,” brought a cat, i.e. a covered shed.

4 Orig. hurte.

5 Fr. clôture, barriere, that which encloses.

6-6 Fr. “nos gens, qui estoit un chat,” our people who were in the shed.

7 Fr. “se pensa comment il porroit ee vechier,” and devised a plan
for revenging himself.

8 Fr. “s’abandonna,” exposèd himselt.
and ferd that they defended them the more cowardly. The other
that were in the other partyes of the towne caste fro the tours stones
upon oure peple that were atte assault and hurtte many with castyling,
shotying, and throwyng upon oure engyns pytche / Oyle and grece
alle boyyling/ And theyr also brondes and other thynges bren-
nyng' moche thycke in suche wyse, that somme they brente. They
that assayled on the partye of therle of tholouse at the tour that I
sayd to you to fore, laboured sore for to myne the walle / But one
thyng destroobled them sore, what someuer they brak on the day / they
within made it agayn in the nyght / in such wise that they
were in wylle to leue it / And wrought more slowly then they
12 dyde byfore, wherefore a moche tryalante knyght of the
Normans cam right theder and admoneste the assayles for to
goo forth, he passed the dyche tofore with his helme laced / the
sheld upon his head and brake vygorously the walle, where as
16 the turkes had made agayn / But ther was none that followed hym.
And they of the wallys throwe so grete stones on him and so thycke,
that they slewe hym in the presence of the other that were by /
And after with hookes and crochettes they drewe the bodye vp to
20 them on the walle / And there disarmed hym, and throwe the
bodye to our peple. Thenne our men that were there tok the
body, and buryed it worshipfully / he was moche bewayled in
thost of cristen men.

24 How after many assaultes, oure men beyng in Coun-
seyl, A lombard cam to them, whiche offered to
make an engyne that shold destroye the towne.
capitulo / lxj:

28 Henne sawe the Barons that they loste moche peple with
thassault / And dyde but litil harme with theyr engyns7
vnto the towne and theyr enmyes / Assembled for to make coun-
seyl how they myght doo / There cam a man to them, a lombard,
A Lombard offered to build some engine of war for the
Crusaders.
32 which had seen the grete hurtte & losse of our peple / & said
to the barons that he was a good maister to make engyns, ye he
myght haue stuff & maters therto propice & necessary / which
with goddes helpe shold in short tyme overthowe the tour where
36 to they had don so moche payne / and wold make large waye for to

1 *Orig.* byforee.  3 Fr. *assaillans*.  4 *Orig.* vygorously.
5 *Orig.* turkes.  6 *Orig.* engyns.  7 *Orig.* vnto.
Our Men destroy the Tower. 

LXII.

The barons agreed to give him material and men, and to pay him well.

He finished his engine, and fastened it to the wall.

"Our" to the town who so wolde / They that herde hym promysed hym that he shold haue alle that shold be nedeful / And yet a good reward and ryche for his laboure / This maister toke werkmen and made them to werke as he commanded, that in short tyme he had made his engyn, which was merueiillously strong and grete / And he joyned it to the walle alle ful of men of armes & footemen / they that were on the walles uppon the tour threwe with grete myght grete stones and fyre brennyng moche thyece / but thengyne was so stronge and rude, that the strokes dyde it no harme / ne the fyre myght not fastne on it: whan they of the toum apperecyed that they coude not noye this engyn, they were sore a ferde, and discouraged merueiullously, and alle in despayre. Our men trancylled to theyr power to take oute the grete stones atte fote of the walle of the toure / And undersetted it with strong stanchons and grete / whan they had so moche myned that them semed that it was ynowgh. They toke theyr habyllemens and sette them ferre fro the walle / and thenne put fyre on alle sydes vnder the toure, & wythdrewen them to their habyllemens and to thengynes alle in saufte, which were a grete wyay of. About mydnyght the fyre had soo brente and wrought that this tour fylle doun to therthe with so grete a noyse and tempeste that it semed that alle therthe trembled / And ther was none, but he had grete honour and eer in his herte / Oure peple made hastely do sowne the trumpettes, and crye to armes for to come diligently to thassault.

How after that this engyn had so wel wrought / The wyf of solyman, with two of her childeren, wente out of the toune and were taken by our men /

Solyman's wife endeavours to escape with her two sons.

He wyf of Solyman, that longe had be in mesease of drede / had so grete feere that almost she deyde for drede, and sayde she myght no longer see it ne suffre / and made sodanly make reall a vessel, and put it on the lake for tescaye by nyght / But oure 32

---

1 Orig. merueiullously.
2 Orig. merueiullously.

4-4 This passage seems not to have been entirely understood by Caxton. Fr. "Il mistrest leur atret, boiz et grant merrien, por le muir qui iert fortament estanconcz, puis bonurent le feu de toutes parz et se trestrent arrières dedanz leur engins tot sauvement." —Lat. "Et sustentacionis qui murum casurum sustenta- bant tunc supposito et nutriendis suis apud subjecta materia machinam relin- quunt ut suas cum omni celebritate se conferentes."
peple that were in the shippes for to kepe the water fro theyr
demyes cam ayenste her, and toke the lady with her two sones
that she had with her thenne in her companye. They presented
4 them in the mornyng to fore the barons. They made them to be
kept right surely with the other prisoners that they had1 / The
Turkes in the town1 were thenne in grete meschief, as wel for
threnre that was so grete and brode / as for their lady that they
8 had loste / thenne they axed trewes for to speke to the barons to
gyue ouer the town and them self in to theyr handes. Tacius, the
greck of whom I haue spoken to fore, whiche was moche double
and malicious, spak to the noble men that had the gouernanuce of
12 the town in counseyl, And shewed to them that theys pylgrymes were
strauengers2 of ferre countrees and enyl and cruel men / And shold
doo to them alle the harme they myght, And destroye the peple
and the londe, yf they yielded the cyte to them. But and yf they
16 wold aduowe and take themperour to theyr lord / And yelde them
to hym theyr lyues sauf, and theyr goodes in to his hande, he shold
kepe them well and saufly3 / and shold doo to them grete good/4
for he was theyr neyghbour / So moche sayde he and dyde, that
20 they of the town toke theyr counseyl4 & cam to the barons, and
sayd to them that they wold put in the handes of themperour theyr
lyues sauf/ theyr bodyes the cyte and theyr goodes / This displaysyd
not moche to the barons / for theyr entencion was for to passe
[2 49, b.]
24 forther / & hopef5 that themperour wolde departe the gayn / proye
and goodes of the town6 generally in thoost, neuertheles, to fore
that they wold graunte them this thynge / they sayde that they
shold delyyer entierly, and doo come in to the hoost alle the
28 prisoners of pieter theremyte that were in the castel of counthot7 / 
And in lyke wyse alle the other that they had taken in the siege,
and them to fore that Solyman hele. And this don they acordef8
that they shold yelde them to themperour / Thenne the barons,
32 prynces and knyghtes, and also the comyn peple sente by one
acorde messagers to themperour for to sygne theys hym how they of
the cyte had yelde them to hym / Therfore they sente to hym / 
that he shold sende of his hye and noble men with grete nombre of

1 Orig. town. 2 Orig. strauengers. 3 Orig. sanfly.
4 Orig. counseyl. 5 Orig. town. 6 Caxton's French text gives "Cunthot." In the different French MSS. of
our text, there is a remarkable row of variations for this word. Ocrinchof, Sundoth, Cunthot, and Tuachot. Lat. Civitot.
The Emperor received the surrendered City. [Ch. LXIII.

peple for to resseyue the toun, And the persones of whom they had many / ffor they alle acorded that the honour shold be his, And that the toun shold come in his demayne, And the prisonners at his wylle / They that had enterprise? theyr vowe for taccompolysshe, 4 had purposed ffor to departe fro this place, and to goo forth vnto the lande of surye.

How themperour sente grete barons for to receyue the sayd toun after that our peple had acerteyned 8 hym that they wolde yelde it / Capituló / lxiiij

The Emperor was greatly rejoiced, and took possession of the city.

He sent thanks and special gifts to each of the barons.

But the common soldiers complained bitterly,

because they received none of the spoils,

Ret eioye had themperour of thysse tidyinges / he taryd not / but sente of his moost prime men, as wel barons as knyghtes, with grete quantite of men of armes that resseyued the cyte in his 12 name / And garnysshef it of alle thynges that was nedeful, & dyme repayre the walles and alle that was broken of the torettes. Alle that euer they founde in the toun of Armures of Rychelesses and of vytyalles they seased for themperour / And sente the 16 prisonners in to Constantinoble / Themperour sente to encrych of the barons special lettres, presented to them grete yeftes / And thanketh them meche of thymanour / that they had done to hym / And of this that they so wel kepte theyr promesse / 1ffor that toun 20 had done grete gyryf and anoyance 2 to thempyre 1 / The mene peple that moch had tranaylled in the siege and had holpen with grete courage / compleyned sore / ffor they had hoped that alle the hauoyr and goodes of the toun shold have ben departed amongst them / 24 But themperours men bare it alle away, And they that tranaylled for it were not rewarded 3 / the worde that was moche grete cam 3 vnto the barons / & they sayd 4 that they had grete wronge / ffor the couenantes made bytwene themperour & them were suche 28 that yf they gate in theyr wyay, ony cytees that had ben to fore themperours, they shold deyluer the cyte & the londe to themperour / but the proyes & gayne shold be departed 4 in thoost. Ayenst thyse couenantes dyde themperour, but it was not tyne 32 thenne ne place to make argument ne debate ayenst the Grekes, therfor the noble men made the comyn peple to tarye, 5 to thende

1 Caxton's French MS. is faulty here. A. gives the correct reading:—
"que grant accroissement avoient ja fait a l'empire."

2 Orig. anoyance.

3 Fr. fàire, to keep still, not "to tarye."

4 Orig. departed.

5 Fr. tòrre, to keep still, not "to tarye."
that they should not enpesshe this pylgremage / thus was suffred that the wyf of soliman & his ij sones & grete plente of prisoners were ledde in saefte unto th empathyrour / which made moch grete 4 feste to the lady & her children, & as longe as they were in the toun he helde them moche honorably / after in short tyme he sente them againy to solyman, alle quyte delyned, without demand yng of ony raunson. this dyde he to thende, to haue the lone and 8 grace of the turkes / in suche wyse that ther was bytwene them a counseyl & acorde to greue our peple / & also for another rayson / that is to wete yf they were in such poynth of another cyte or place, that the cristicus constreyneyd so by force, that they shold 12 not be aferd to yelde them frely in the hande of themporaryrour / thus was taken the cyte of nycene, the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord, a / M / lxxxxvij, the xx day of the moneth of Iuyyn.

How our1 hoost2 departed on theyr iourny / & how som departed fro theyr felawship / and how solyman determyneyd tassayle them /

Capitulo Ixiiij

The city of Nicaa was taken on the 29th day of June, 1067.

The Crusaders marched forth out of Nicaa, and encamped a two-days' march from the city.

Here they separated into two divisions.

1 Orig. ouer. 2 Orig. hoost. 3 Orig. peranenture. 4 Fr. eschangmailer.
Solyman followed the left division to see how he might harm them.

He attacked them at daybreak.

They placed the women and children in a safe place, sent messages to the rest of the army, and prepared to defend themselves.

Solyman had 200,000 horsemen, our people were but few in number, and mostly on foot.

Of the bataylle that solyman had ayenst som of our peple that were departed fro theyr felawship folyly /

Han the Hooste of the Turkes smote in on our men, the noyse was moche grete of busynes / of trompes / of men, and of horses that none myght be herd / and was grete hydour to here the fyrst comyng on of the turkes / They shotte so theycke 36 vpon our peple that there was neuer rayn ne hayl so like, in so

1 Oryg. orpe.
moch that ther were many hurte of our peple. wan the first route 
1 had made theyr shotte / The second route cam after where moo 
Archyers were than to fore / & began shote moche more thycke than 
4 may be recounted2 / Our knyghtes sawe that they loste theyr horses 
& them self by the shotte, And smote in to the turkes vygor-
ously, But the multitude of the turkes were so grete / that our men 
had grete dammage, whiche were but fewe. They that had theyr 
8 sheldes & targes they kept them som what, But they that were 
without armour muste flee / or ellys they had be slayn emong the 
horses. And many were slayn and hurte / There were slayn of oure 
peple, as wel of footemen as of horsmen, two thousand. Ther was 
12 slayn a moche valyaunt yong man, noble and hardy, whiche had 
don wel alle that day, Guyllam, sone to the Marquys, Brother of3 
Tancre / he was smotn with an arowe and deyde in the place / 
And another valyaunt man in like wise named Robert of Paris. He 
16 deyde by his prowesse / Tancre that was hardly made merueylles 
of Armes / And abandouned hym self, as he that sette not by his lyf / 
Buymont sawe hym / & he brake alle the prees / And cam there as 
he was / And toke hym by the brydle and brought hym bak / the 
20 turkes sawe our men moche hurte and tranayled4 and toke theyr 
bowes on the lyft Arme, And after ran on them with swerdes and 
maces in suche wyse that they ouerthrew5 them and6 put them a 
bak unto theyr caryage. There they helde them And hydde them 
24 by the reed, and deffended them vygorously, and suffre6 the grete 
plente of turkes discharge uppon them one route after another.

Of the dilygence that Duc Godeffroy made whan he 
was aduertised herof / And how Solyman was 
28 discomfyt & his bagage taken. Capitulo lxvi7

o Wr barons, godeffroy, the noble duc, and the other prynces 
herde thysy tylgynges how buymont and his companye were at 
suche meschyef hasted them sore / ther cam to gydre the duc8 and 
32 his ij bretheren, bawdwn & Eustace, the erle raymont / hue le 
mayne, and many other barons ynowgh. The peple a foote9 / 
And they that were cuyl horsed they lefte for to kepe the lodgys / 
they wente forth / & wel10 xl / m / alle armed & wel horsed /

2 Orig. recounted. 3 Orig. of of. 4 Orig. onerthrew. 5 Orig. and. 
6 Orig. dntk. 7 Orig. foote. 8 Caxton has omitted "estoient" here.
1 When Bohemond's men saw assistance arriving, they took heart and fought more bravely.

The Turks soon fled discomfited.

Our men found great body in the tents of Solymon.

The Crusaders rested themselves and their horses three days.

1 Caxton has mistranslated his French. Fr. "quant ils approcherent, et les gens de Buymont, qui estoient si audessous, oyrent les trompes et l'effroy des chevaux qui venoient, si leur, revint le cuer a tous."

2 Fr. "qu'il sembloit a ung chausse d'oule que l'on s'attendoit a lui de toute la besoingue," that it seemed to each one of them that he was expected to take the whole burden of the battle on himself.

3 Orig. "estonements," equipments.

4 "Burthon."
they in this batayle, & grete honour had they and shal ever haue, and in especial they that here be named: / Bawdwyn le borgh / thomas\(^1\) de fedre / regnaut de beauvais / Gale\(^2\) de chamont / 4 gaste de bedyers / & geart\(^3\) de cherysye / thenne was ordeyned & acorded by the barons & cryed\(^4\) in thooost / that no man shold ryde fro thens forth by hym self without leue of the captayns.

How the iiiij day after this victorie our peple went forth on their waye / & of the grete mesease of thooost the same day / cap° lxvij:

}\(^5\) Fter this, when they had abyden there thre dayes / the fourth daye folowyng, by tymes to fore day, they dyde doo sowne\(^6\) 12 theyr trompettes, & wented forth on theyr waye / Syth they passed\(^6\) bythyne / And entred in to the londe that was named piside. They trauaylled so long, that at the laste they fonde a contre moche drye & infertile, without waters / The tymes was 16 moche hoot and brennyng, as it falleth ofte in Iuyll / They had so grete thurst / that they wyst not what to doo. the peple on fote specially fayled and faynted, alle for the duste / for the heete / and\(^7\) for thurste / ther deyed wel this same day of mysease fyue 20 honderd men & wymmen. And\(^7\) knowe ye certaynly that ther happed\(^7\) a merueyllous thynge that day in the hoost, that we fynde nowher in none other historye / ffor the wymmen with childe, that yet were not come to theyr terme / by thanguyssh of the heete, & 24 of the mesease of thurst, that they were delynued of theyr children & chyled / & not only the pour wymmen / but the ryche also / this was a grete sorow, & pyte to see / The men, that ought to be more hard & stronge aynst trauaylle, wente theyr mouthes open / 28 & sought thayer and moysture therof, which they myght not hane: the heete, and also the swote destroyed them / ye shold hane seen the horses and other beastes, that myght not goo\(^8\) forth, in suche wyse that they muste leue them, whiche deyde in the waye / 32 houndes for the chace & huntyng / fowles for the flyght, as frawcons / hawkes / & sperhawkes, ye shold hane seen that day abyde & deye. & in lyke wyse the grete stedes & cursours,

They will ever receive great honour for this battle.

\(^1\) Fr. "Thomas de Fere."
\(^2\) Fr. "Gale de Chaumont."
\(^3\) Fr. "Girart de Chervis."
\(^4\) Orig. Fter.
\(^5\) Orig. sowue.
\(^6\) Fr. "aller avant," go further.
They arrive at Antioche the Less. [Ch. LXVIII.

and horses ran mad for lack of water.

Our Lord had pity on His people, and led them to a running stream.

They arrived at Antioche the Less, and quartered the army there.

which were most peryllous / became alre araged and wood for thurst / & with grete payne were ledde forth / when they had been long in this mesease / Our lord beheld them in pyte, & made them to adresse in to a valeye, where they fonde a remynyng of water, fayr & grete. theune ranne our peple to the brynke or rynage with grete haste. many ther were that drank so moch that they deyde vpon the place; for som of them that had eschewed the deth / fonde it there, by cause they kepte no mesure. & this S fylle vnto knyghtes & other men, and beestes, which drank as moche as they wolde / when they were escaped this cuyl adventure, they cam in to a londe moch fayr and fertile, ful of woodes, of ryuers, of medowes, and of good feldes labourable / This was by 12 anthycoche the lasse / which is the chyef cyte of the londe of pisside; and there lodged they with theyr hoost.

How somme of the grete Barons of thost, after to haue approuched Antyoche the lasse, departed 16 for to goo vytyaylle them. Capituló lxvij.

Som went farrther on, because it was difficult to [31 ff. 52, bk.] find provisions for so many.

Baldeuin, Godfrey's brother, led one party, and Tancred another.

f Ro thens departed / som of the barons of thost / & helde their waye, by cause it was a greuous thynge to fynde vytyalles to so moche peple to gydre / The fyrst was Bawdwyn, Brother to 20 the duc; with hym was peter therle of scarnay, Reynart therle of toul / Bawdwyn de borgh, & guyllebert de montcler / ther wer wel v / C / on horsbak / & ladde with them men a fote largely /

The second was tancre / & with hym Rychard du prynceipat, 24 Robert danse, & other knyghtes grete nombre, that they were / v C / on horsbak, & had also many men a fote as the other had. theyr entencion and purpuse was to ride about the thost in the contre, for to seche somme adventure and vytyalle; 10 & yf they 28 had founde ony paryll / grief, pas, or plente of theyr enemyes, 10 that they wolde lete thost haue knowleche therof / they wente strayt

1 Orig. thurst. 2 Orig. Om. 3 Orig. fonde. 4 Fr. "si l'en les laissest tant boire comme ils voulurent." 5 Caxton has here misread his French, which gives "Pierre conte de Starnoy." This, in turn, is a corruption for Stademois, which is the reading of A. Lat. comes de Stademos.

7 Fr. "Robert d'Auns." 8 Orig. knyghtes. 9 Orig. so. 10-10 Fr. "Silc cussent trouye auleun peril de grief pas, ou de plente de leurs ennemis," if they should get into any trouble, either from a dangerous place, or on account of the great number of their enemies.
theyr waye, & passed by syde ij cytees: that one was named lychonic, and that other Eraclée. after, they torned on the right honde, and passed toward the see side. The duc Godfroy & the 4 other prynces abode in theyr lodgys, for the plesaunt & delyt-able places that they had founden, by cause they wolde playe & refresshe them of the trauaylles & annoyes that they had suffred. thenne said they that they wold goo hunte in to the forestes, which 8 were nygh to them on alle sydes, & were ful of wilde beestes / On the morn they entred in the woode / eche helde his way at his will. the duc, as he wente a path thurgh the foreste, herde a man crye / & he drewe thederward / & he sawe a poure man, that 12 was gou for to fetche wode for to bere in to the hoost, fledde, strongly cryeng, to fore a grete bere / The duc ran vpon hym, & drewe his swerde for to delyuere the poure man fro the beeste / thenne the bere adressyd hym vnto the duc, and lefte the poure man, that 16 fledde fro hym / he hurte the dukes hors so sore, that he caste the duc to therthe. The duc keep a foote, & drewe oute his swerde. the beeste was nothynyg aferf of hym, but made a felonous crye, horryble & hydous, & synth ran vpon the duc, & bote hym 20 right cruell in the thye. after, he adressyd hym right vp, & embraced hym with his potes, or feet to fore, for to haue caste hym to groudne. the duc, thus hurt as he was, was yet mouch strong, & fyl not to the erth themne / but caught hym by the skyn about 24 the nekke with his lyfte hande, for to put away his heed from hym ; & with that other hand he put his swerde in to his body, thurgh bothe the sydes vnto the crosse, and so slewe hym. After, he wente and sette hym doun on therthe right by / flor he had so mouch 28 bleddle of his wunde that he had in his thye, and was so merueylously sore hurte that he myghte not stonde longe on his feet. the poure man, whiche he had deluyured fro deth, ran hastely in to the hoost / and tode them this tydyng of the 3duc. Alle they 32 that herde it were so effrayed that they ranne with grete haste theder / The barons, and alle the other that myght gou. they founde hym lyeng on the ground, pale and discoloured ; and after toke hym in a lyttier, and bare hym in to the hoost. But neuer 36 man was more demened, ne more sorow made, no noe moo pytyous cryes and 1 mentacions thurgh alle the lodgyses, As wel ryche as poure / and men as wymmen / Anon were sette alle the maistres

1 Orig. hurte.  2 Orig. tydyng.  3 Fr. "vain," weak, faint.  4 Orig. nr.  5 orig. nr.
and cirurgens for to dychte hym & to hele hym; there were many / for everych of the prynces had of them, for to awayte on them in the hoost.

Here recounteth thystorye of somme adventurés that 4 thennen¹ fylle in the hoost of cristen men / cap. lxix⁰.

X this sayson, the same tyme, it happed that another valyant man, named Raymont, Erle of tholouse, laye down seke of a 8 maladye moche greuous and peryllous / Nevertheless, the hooste wente forth alwey / Therfor he must be caried forth in a lyttier. On a day it happeñ that he was so desteyned of his maledye / that certeanyly they supposed that he should dye / They that kepte hym 12 made the littier to be sette down to the grounde, for they sawe hym so feble that they thought certeynly that the sowe shold departe. The bishopp of Orunge, whiche was a moche holy man and a religeous, sayd the commendacion for the soole and the serayse, as 16 of one deuyng, sauf syngyng masse. Alle the hoost was ouermoche discomforted / by cause they supposed alle, that anon and sodanly to lesse thise two grete men, which were of moche grete counseyl² and of grete ayde / They made prayers and orysons thurgh alle 20 thoost, Where as they songe masses. The ryche and the pour praye moche humbly, and with good herte, that our lord wold rendre them hool and sauf / for to socoure and conseyle them / as they had neede. The barons departed in charyte largely almesse 24 vnto the pour peple / so moche dyde they, one and other, that oure lord, which is ful of pyte, herele them, and gaf helthle to the two noble men in short tyme, in suche wyse that they roode al hool, & in good poynt with thooste they passed al pissyde. And after 28 entrede in to a lande named lycaone, And cam vnto³ a Cyte called liceine / they founde it alle voyde, and nothynge therin / they had grete mesases of vytyall, for the Turkes, which had herde the tydynges that oure peple cam / trusted in none of their fortresses / 32 but voydeñ them, and fledde in to the forestes and montaynes / men, wyrmyn & childderen, ⁵horses, beestes, vytyall, & alle other thyng they caryed with them / They⁶ suffred moche disease

¹ Orig. thenne. ² Orig. counseyl. ³ Orig. vnto. ⁴ Orig. and. ⁵ Fr. "Car ilz se hastrent mont de passer celui pays," they hastened, not "suffred."
to passe that contre. They cam in to Eraclee/ And after cam in to a cyte named Marase/ There they lodged and soijourned three days/ Bawdwyn, brother of the Duce, that was departed fro the hoost, lefte
4 his wyf with his two bretheren/ She deyde there of sekenesse/ She was an hye lady of England, valyaut, wyse, and godt/ gutier was her name/ She was buryed and entered moche honorably in the same place/ She was moche bewaylled in the S hoost.

How Tancre, that was departed fro the hoost, assiaged Tarse/ And toke it by certeyn couenaunt.

12 t Ancre, whiche was a wyse a man, and of grete courage, rode thurgh the londe sekynf auenture, in suche wyse that he fonde in his waye a cyte called Tarse. This londe of Scylyce is a countrre of thoryent, toward the sonne gooyng doun. In this londe ben
16 two grete cytees, whiche ben Archebissbopriches, that one named Tarse, of whiche I said to fore/ Therin was born seynt poul thappostle/ That other was named anauazie/ And eche of thise two cytees have other cytees vnder them/ Tarse founded one of the
20 childrenen of Noe Ionen, whiche was sone of Iaphet/ the sone of Noe. Neuerthles, solins sayth that persens founded it/ but it maye be wel that one founded it/ And that other repayed and amended it/ Tancre assiaged this cyte, and constreyned them
24 within, what by menaces and fayr wordes/ that they yelded it to hym in a manere/ They sette this banere vpon the hyest toure of the town. And he swar and affermed to kepe them from damage and hurte; ne non shold be put out of his hows, ne lese ony thync
28 that apperteyned to them vnto the comynge of the grete hoost. And thenne shold they yelde the toune vnto the grete prynces of hoost without ony debate/ Thus was it acordef bytwen hym and them of the toune. In this toune were cristien men, hermyns, and
32 grekes/ And in alle the londe about. But the turke helde alle the fortresses that meddef with armes/ And had the seynorye vpon this peple/ And wold not suffre them of nothyng, sauf to occupye and laboure therthe, and for to marchaunte to bye and selle.

1 Orig. valyaut. 2 Fr. Gutucr, Lat. Gutucra. 3 Orig. about.
How Bawdwyn, brother of Godeffroy, seyng his auentures, sawe tancre & his peple to fore tarse, & adressed hym to them

\[2 \text{ leaf 54}\]

Baldwin's party, after many hardships, arrived at a mountain from whence they could see Tancred's tents.

Tancred mistook them for Turkis as they approached, and went out against them.

They soon recognized each other as friends.

\[2 \text{ b} \]

Awdwyn, Brother of the Duke, and the peple that he lede, with hym, were entred in to a countre moost barayn, where they suffered grete peyne for vytyaylle. After, they cam vpon a montayne, where they myght see alle the londe of Scilice / and the cytes vnto the see. They sawe tarse nygh them, and the panyllous, And they supposed that they had be turkes / that had assieged the cyte / They descended down for to knowe what peple they were / And also for tenquere the beyng of the countre about / They that were with tancre, in thanant garde, sawe thyse men of 12 armes approache, And lete theyr lord haue knowleche / Tancre wende certaynly that they had be turkes, that cam for to socoure them of the toun, and made eche man to arme hym dylygently / and sette them in ordenannee; And after yssued oute ayenst them / The baners displayed. But when they approached that one to the other / And knewe eche other by the armes / they opened theyr helmes and embraced eche other, and made moche grete ioye, And after cam to the cyte. And thenne bawdwyn was by tancre right 20 wel and honoursbly lodged, for tancre had grete plente of vytyayles, of whiche bawdwyn and his peple had grete ned.

Of thenuye that bawdwyn & his peple had to see the baner of tancre vpon the wallie of the toun / 24 & how tancre departed.

\[2 \text{ leaf 55}\]

Baldwin and his men were jealous when they saw Tancred's banner on the tower.

X the morne when the sonne was vp, and cleer daye, bawdwyn, and they that were with hym, sawe the baner of tancre vpon the hyest tour of the toun. And had therof moche grete ennuye; 28 and began to murmure and speke maliciously of that they had gretter power, and moo peple and better, & said that they ought to haue the worship of this toun / It is trouthe that vnto this day there / bawdwyn and Tancre had ben lyke two bretheren, in moche pynye acqueyntaunce and trewe lone / But bawdwyn, by ennuye of his herte and by euyl wordes that som of his men made hym to understonde, was thyns of this thynge menyst. Tancre, whiche was moche wyse, attemperat and resonable man, vnderstode thise 36

\[1 \text{ Orig. seyng.} \]

\[2 \text{ Orig. and.} \]
words, And dye moche payne for tapesse hym. And cam in persons to bawdwyn, and shewde hym how to tooe that he was comen / ne that noman knewe of his comynge, were thysen comen. 4 autes made bytwene hym and them of the toune / And his baner sette vpon the toure. And herin he understode not that he myght hane ony shame ne dishounour. Bawdwyn was not content of thise wordes, and he founde somme that attysed hym in his folye / 8 he spak grete wordes, ylle and injuryouses, to tancre / in suche wyse / that with lytil more they wolde hane don armed theyr men, for to hane destroyed ech other. themse sente bawdwyn for them of the toune / And when they cam, he menace them strongly, and 12 saide that they shold throwe down the baner of Tancre to therthe / And sette vp his on the tour: And ye they dye not, they shold wel knowe that he wold destroye them, and alle that they had without the toune / and take the toune and caste it to therthe, 16 maugre alle that tancre myght doo / They of the cyte sawe that tancre myght not waraunte ne def ende them ayenst bawdwyn, made with hym suche couenauntes as they had made to tooe with tancre / And sette his baner where as he commanded / Tancre 20 saw the force that was don to hym, and was gretely desplesyd, and had grete yre in his herte / But he couerd his thought wysely, and wold not suffre the peple, that were comen in this pylgremage for to make warre ayenst themenyes of the fayth of Ihesu Crist, sholde 24 sse ech other for theoccasion of hym. he departed fro this place / for he doubted that some noyse or medle myght sounde hereof. And cam to a cyte nygh by, named adane / There myght he not entre / for a nolle man of burgoyyn, named gelphes, was parted fro 28 thoost with a grete route of men of armes as the other dyde, for to seke aventurest, and he had taken this cyte by force / And had caste out the turkes / And helde it entierly. Tancre berde that somme of our peple helde it, and sente goode messagers to gelphes, 32 And pray hym to opene the yates, and suffre his men that they myght goo in to the toune for to bye to them suche as they neded / This Gelphes dyde it debonayrly / And hym self gaf to them largely for nought / for he had founde the toune ful of gold and 36 syluer, of Robes, of beestes / of whete / of wyne / of cyle / and of alle good that a man had neede of /

1 Orig. wrodes. 2 Orig. hane. 3 Orig. tour. 4 Orig. command. 5 Orig. command. 6 Orig. And.
How, a lytil after, tancre cam to the cyte of anamystre, whiche the turkes helde it, and toke it by assault / cap. 6 lxxiiij. 

Ancre on the morn toke leue of his hooste, And toke his way 4 with his peple / And rode so fer that he cam to a Cyte, named anamystre 1 / This was one of the beste cytees of that londe / It was fayr / and moche delectable. Tancre cam there, and knewe certeynly that the turkes helde it / he assiged it al aboue, And 8 fro 2 the tyme that he cam he assayled the toun. thus he dyde the first, the second, and the thirde day / so many assaults he made to them, and hurted them of the toun, 3 that they were strongly greuyd and abasshed. they without toke 4 the toun, and entred under the 12 walles, 4 And thus was the toun taken by force / And alle them that he fonde therin of hethen peple, he put to deth without mercy. The toun was ful of rychesses, and alle maner of vytaylles were grete plente. Tancre departed al the gyn and the goodes of the 16 toun to his men, as he that wel knewe how that he sholde doo / and to ech man after that he was / in suche wyse that alle his men were ryche. They refressshed them moche wel, and theyr beastes, of the mesase that they had suffred in theyr waye. They soiourned 20 there a grete whyle with moche grete deduyt.

How bawdwyn entred in Tarse. And how / iii. C of our pylgryms were slayn of the turkes to fore the same toun. ca. lxxiiiij. 24

After the departure of Tancre, Baldwin comanded the inhabitants of Tarsus to admit him into the city.

b Audwyn sawe / that Tancre was departed fro Tarse, And sente for them of the toun 3 and sayde to them that they sholde lete them entre in to the toun, for hym thought 5 shame to lye long and abyde there ydle without doyng ony thyng, tyl the comynge 28 of the grete hoost / They sawe and aduynd wel that they had not power ynoough to resiste them, and thought ye they lete them not entre with theyr agreement / that they wold entre ayenst theyr wylle & without force 6 /theme they opened their gates / & wold 32

1 Fr. Anamistre, Lat. Mamistrane. 3 Orig. tonn.
2-4 Fr. "prinrent eschicles et entrerent pardessus les murs."
5 Orig. thought.
6 Fr. "et a force," and by force. Caxton has said here exactly the contrary of what he intended, probably.
that bawdwyn shold have two toures where he shold lodge, & other of thosiste in the howses in the town alle peasaibly, the turkes that had the seygnorye of the town helde yet the other toures in

4 theyr puissancce / they had in moche grete doubte and suspicion bawdwyn and his men that were lodged in the town / And they thought that they shold have no socours / And above this they had moche grete drede of the grete hoost that shortly shold arryue

8 there / and sought emonge them the moyens and maner / How they myght yssue oute of the town, and lede with them theyr wyues\(^1\) and children\(^2\) with theyr pyncipal bagens and Jewelys / It happed\(^3\) that this same nyght thre hundred men afote that were

12 departed\(^4\) fro Baymont for to folowe tancre arryue\(^5\) alle to fore this Cyte of Tarse, where they thought to fynde hym / when bawdwyn knewe what peple they were / and that they wente in thayde of tancre / he wold not\(^6\) suffre them to entre in to the town / They

16 were very and tranaylled and pray\(^7\) hym moche sweetly, and cryed\(^8\) hym mercly many tymes, that for the loue of god\(^9\) he wold\(^10\) doo so moche that they myght this nyght be lodged in the town / for they wold no thyng but\(^11\) good. herof the fotemen\(^6\) of this companye

20 pray\(^7\) hym in lyke wise / But he wold\(^10\) in nowysse here them / Xenertheles by cause they without\(^7\) had mescase / the mene peple in the town aneled don with cordes, breed ynough,\(^8\) and wyn in barellys, and other vytaylles, with whiche they myght wel passe

24 this nyght / when our peple were a slepe in the town, And they without began theyr first sleep it happed that the turkes that were within the toures / opened the yates of whiche they had the keyes secretly withoute noysse, & ledde out theyr wyues, theyr children

28 & alle their thynge, And\(^1\) all the heten men of the town thought they were not sure with theyr ghistes, and yssued out of alle the town : when theyr wyues and children were withdrawn a lytil fro the town / they wolde lene tokenes crueil and ylle of theyr depart-

32 yng\(^4\) / they cam unto the thre hundred pylgrims that hye withoute gate & slepte strongly as they that doubted of nothynge / And and slew the 300 outside the towne, that hye withoute gate & slepte strongly as they that doubted of nothynge / And and slew the 300 outside the towne...

1 \textit{Orig.} wyunes.
2 Caxton's French text, which is corrupt, gives: "\textit{avec leurs autres principales bagens}," which he has followed by translating "bagens and jewellery." The Lat. gives "\textit{et omni mada substantia sua}," which the better French texts translate, by "\textit{toutes leurs choses}." \(^5\) \textit{Orig.} not. \(^5\) \textit{Orig.} not.
6 Fr. "\textit{de sa companye}," of his own army. \(^7\) \textit{Orig.} without. \(^8\) \textit{Orig.} ynough.
How the peple of bawdwyn knewe the departyng of the turkes, and of the slaughter of the eristen men.

In the morn- ing Baldwin's men discovred the flight, and the dreadful slaughter that had taken place.

The common soldiers put the blame on Baldwin.

The knights begged the soldiers to be quiet until Baldwin could address them.

One morning they saw a fleet in the sea near them.

from Flanders, Holland, and Friesland.

How the people of Bawdwyyn knew the departure of the Turks, and the slaughter of the Christian men.

On the morne erly when our men awoke in the town they saw the towers where the Turks had been lodged open and the howses voyde: They knewe wel that they were fled. They searched the walles and yates for to enquire how they were gone. They wente so ferre that they fonde this grete occision and slaughter at the 8 gate. Thenn began a sorow and a moche grete crye in the town, Alle men put the blame and culpa on Bawdwyyn and his knygtes, for they wold enunge the deth of their brethren, whom the sarasyns had so shanely and vylaynously slayn. By cause that the 12 knyghtes of Bawdwyyn and also he hym self wold not suffre them to come in to the town. And in dede the men of foote sayd this was don by grete outraghe & grete falshe. And ye they had not lyghtly withdrawn them in to the towers / they had Smyten them alle to deth / The knyghtes helde them alle styll tyll that the footemen were coole6 / and after sente messagers whiche spak to them and requyrem them to forbere so long / tyll that Bawdwyyn had spoken to them / they were content to here Bawdwyyn speke. 20 Bawdwyyn excused hym to fore alle / and swar and affirmed that for none other thynge thentre was defended them, but for that he had sworn to them of the town / that by hym shold none entre tyll the grete hooste cam / By thyse wordes and by cause other enter- 24 meted to make the peas and spoken devonayrly to the mene peple, was bawdwyyn acorded to the foote men and his knyghtes also. In this town they sojournd and aboye a certayn whyle, vntyl a morn- yng / they sawe in the see nygh them a shippe aboute ij myle fro then / They yssued oute of the town and descended to the see / they that were in the ship approched to them in suche wyse that they spak to gydre / they of the ship sayde that they were eristen men, they demannded of what contre, and they answerd of flaun- 32 dres / of holande / and of ffrye-clande / And trouth it was they had be escumours of the see and robbers the space of viij yere. Now they repentd them / And by penaunce cam in pylgremage to thernusalem / they desyred them to come a londe / And they cam 36

1 Orig. and. 2 Orig. occasiou. 3 Fr. "une navie," a fleet, instead of a single ship. Lat. classis. 4 Fr. "escumours," pirates, corsairs.
and made to gydre grete ioye / they had a maister ouer them named guynemem. And was born of boloyne vpon the see in the londe of Erle Eustace, fader of the said duc Godoffroy / whom he herde that 4 Bawdwyn the sone of his lord was there, he lefte his ship, And said he wold goo with hym to Iherusalem / he was moche ryebe of this euyl gayne. And had many men with hym / that he ladele in his ship / thenne Bawdwyn lefte / v.C men of armes for to kepe the 8 toun wel in poynt. And after he toke his waye for to seke somme aventures as he dyde to fore / he helde the right way til he cam to the cyte of anamyster, whiche tancre had gotten by force of armes vpon the turkes, as I haue sayd you to fore / Bawdwyn thought 12 wel that he wold not lete hym entre in to the cyte. And therfor he lodged hym in the gardyns about / 2Tancre knewe that bawdwyn whiche loued hym not was so nygh hym / And he had not forgotten the wronge and the outtrage that bawdwyn had don to hym.

16 Thenne he dyde do arme his men, and sayde that thenne was tymé for to venge hym / for he was nygh his retrayt, & bawdwyn was fer fro his. They sente Archiers to fore in grete nombre for to hurte and slee theyr horses, whiche they had sente in to the 20 pastures. Tancre had with hym fyue honord men of armes in good poynt and wel horsed. And smote in sodanly in to the peple of bawdwyn whiche were not aduyysed of them / they slewe many and moo theyr hurted, the men of bawdwyn ran hastely to 24 arme them & cam & fought with them that ran by the tentes / there began a bataylle bytwene them moche grete and fier, but it endured not longe, for tancre had not so grete plente of peple that myght endure ayenst the men of bawdwyn, therfor they wold with 28 drawe them in to theyr toun / but theyr enemies enhassed them strongly so moche that they muste flee / there was a brygge ouer a water bytwene the hooste and the cyte / the peple of tancre entred so thyck that many were lost and slayn vpon the brygge and 32 drowned in the water / whan they were put in to the toune agayn they were moche angry in their herte / and wold take more peple and retorn agayn; but the nyght cam that destroubled it 4 In this scarmuche was taken Rychard le pryncipat, cosmos germayn of 36 tancre, and rober danse, both two were noble men, by their counseyl and atysement tancre had rondne vpon Bawdwyn. Of that

1 Fr. "guynemere."
2 Fr. "Tancre savoit que Baudoin qu'il n'aimoit mie."
3 Fr. "le conseil," i.e. their plan.
4 Baldwin now started out in search of furtheradventures.
Tancred and Baldwin are reconciled. [Ch. LXXVI.

other syde was taken a moche noble man, named Glylbert de Mounteler. they were moche angry on that one syde and on that other for them that they had loste, for they doubted that they had ben slayn or drowned? / when it cam on the morn and? theyr hertes 4 a lytil aswaged / they sente messagers eche to other / And 5 knewe certaynly that those men that were taken lyued of whom they drede that had ben deed, and good men wente bytwene / And? medled? for to speke of pees in suche wyse that they cam agayn to 8 entier concordance and parfyght lune by the grace of the holy ghoost that adressyd? theyr hertes / They amended? theyr trespaas eche to other / And kyssed? to gydre as frendes in good? fayth /

How the sayd Bawdwyn returned to the grete hooste / 12 And how Tancre mayntenyd hym moche wel in conqueryng contrees.  

b  Awdwyn had? counseyl when he was come to Maraze, as I have recompted that he shold? goo no further forth / But 16 returned in to thost of the barons, By cause he herd saye how the duc his brother had be hurte peryllonsly / And wold see and knowe of his estate and how he ferde / theyr counseyl was that tancre shold? goo forth. Bawdwyn lefte with hym guy neueres (20) / And then 20 that were in his companye comen fro the shippe / They passe? all slyce and? bete doen alle the forestes1 of the heten men that they myght fynde. they brente the townes, and slewe theyr enemies. And? after cam vnto a cyte called? Alexandrye the lasse, 2 that they 24 toke by force, and conquerd al the contre about. The hermysns and turkes that dwellyd? in the montaynes of this contre, herde tydynges that Tancre and his men were so valyant and so myghty that nothyng myght holde ayenst them / And? sore drede that lyke as 28 he conquerd the playne, he wolde come vpon them in the montaynes / And destroye the londe entierly and the peple, for tappecase his courage they sente to3 hym good and certeyn messagers, whiche brought to hym grete yeftes, as gold / syluer / pre-32 cious stones / clothes of sylk / horses / and mulettis / they sente hym moche largely / for whiche cause Tancre4 lefte them in peas. Thus dyde he wel his honoure and his prouflyt5 in alle places that he went by / in suche wyse that it sene6 wel to every7 man / 36

1 Fr. "fortresses," not "forests."  
2 Orig. proulyt.  
3 Orig. ta.  
4 Orig. Tanere.  
5 Orig. proulyt.  
6 Orig. eyry.
that our Lord God addressed his way and maintained his works vertuously.

How bawdwyn conquered a grete contre vpon the turkes by the counseyl\(^1\) of a knyght hermyyn, named pancrace\(^2\) / ca\(^o\) lxxvij.\(^n\)

ow ye haue herd how Tancre mayntened hym in sylwe / the grete hoost that folowed hym cam vnto marase / Bawdwyn that had seen his brother the duc hool and sound, had herd agayne the tydnyges of Tancre,\(^3\) how he dyde by the contre where he wente / he had moche grete desire to gadre to gydre peple, & goo serche the contre lyke as he dyde to fore / But he had lost moche thoultrage that he had don to tanere and to his men. And therefore many doubted for to entrepreize the way with hym / Buymont and his men also had not lyghtly suffred this thyng vnnanegd, ne had it ben for the love of the duc his brother / Therfor bawdwyn founde but few felaweys that wold goo with hym / Godeffroy the duc, which was a moche wyseman / and of good wyll / blamed and reprenyed moche his brother of this werke / he brought hym herto that he knowledge his folye to fore alle the peple, and sayde that he had made amendas to tanere / after his will & yet wolde amende it vnto his playsyr / & swar that he had doon it more by the counseyl and atseyment of other / than of hym self. By these wordes he appeased the hercys of many men; for he was a moche valyant man and moch curtoys / & neuer was perceyued in hym vylonye. he had an hermyne with hym moche pryue / named pancrace / he was right wyse and an hardy knyght. But he was ouermoche trycherous and \(^4\) untrewe, he was escaped oute of the prison of themperour of constantynoble. And cam in to the hoost at nycene, where he acqueynted hym with bawdwyn / And he prayd hym and admonest\(^5\) that he shold take men and goo in to a contre where he shold lede hym to / which was moche plentious and ful of goodes / And \(^6\) if he wold goo / he shold conquere it lightly / so ofte he said to hym herof that he began to take his way and departed with two hundred knyghtes and other men of armes ynough and feotemen grete nombre / They folowed pancrace alle /

\(^1\) Orig. counseyl, \(^2\) Lat. Panceratus, \(^3\) Orig. Tancre, \(^4\) Orig. conquer.
The Turks are much afraid of Baldwin. [Ch. LXXVIII.

which brought them toward byse in a moch riche londe / they that dwellyd in this londe were alle cristen men, sauf a fewe turkes which helde the fortresses / they were lorde of the contre / and suffered not the cristen men shold meddle with ony armes in no wyse / whan they that were of oure fayth sawe bawdwyn and his men, they were glad and joyeful / for they loved not the turkes, they deluyerd over the contre where they had payssaunce / in suche wyse that in a short tyme that he had conquerrd alle the 8 londe vnto the flood eufrates : Bawdwyn was moch drad & doubted thurgh alle the contre ther about in such wyse that for drede / they lefte hym alle the fortresses wel garnysshed, and toke them without debate / the cristen men whiche had receyued hym 12 in to his londe, bycam so fiers and hardy / that they hunted alle the hethen men out 2 of the contre. ther were somme barons of the contre that seruyd bawdwyn with alle theyr payssaunce / and helpe hym to brynge alle thyng to his wylle /

How they of rages sente theyr messagers to bawdwyn, prayeng hym that he wold come to them.

cap. lxxviij:

He renomme of this grete man, of whom his prowessse & 20 wytte spreadde onerall, cam vnto the cytezepons of rages, 3 hopynge by hym to be deluyerd of the seruage in whiche they had ben long. The grettest men that had the gouernance of the toun sente certayn Messagers to Bawdwyn, and praye hym for the loue of God, 24 for his honoure and prouffyt, that he wold come vnto theyr cyte, which was named rages 4(21) / as is founden in the byble / Thether sente thobye his son, young Thobye, for to demaunde the moneye that Gable his cosyn ought hym / and on the way wedded sara his 28 wyf / the Cytezepons of this cyte receyued cristen fayth anon after the deth of oure lord Ihesu criste / by the preychynge of seynt Iude appostle, brother of seynt Symon 5 / as it is founde wretyn 6 the book of Eushebe of cesaire / they helde yet fermly this lawe that tyme / 32

---

1 Orig. oure. 2 Orig. ont. 3 Fr. Rohdes. Lat. Rhages. 4 Lat. "est autem Edessa nobilis Mesopotamia, quor, alio nomine, Rhages appellatur." 5 Fr. "Si comme l'en trouve au premier livre (A. inserts here 'de l'estoire') de sainte Eulise, que Eushebe de Cesaire, etc."—as is found in the first book of the Ecclesiastical History of Eushebe of Cesarea.
but the turkes that were about them constreyned them so moch
that they made them paye greuous and grete tributes every yere,
in so moche / whan tyme cam for to galde theyr fruytes, of
theyr vynes and other / they rausounsed them and muste paye at
theyr wylle / or ellys they wolde destroye alle / Neuertheles in the
town durst noman dwelle but he byleuyd in Ithesu criste, for this
only town was holden hool and entierly in the fayth. the hethen
8 peple had conquerd the other townes / and therfor they greened
moche the cristien peple of this town / ne wold not suffre them ysse
out of the town for to doo theyr nedes, fior on alle sydes of them
was the puyssaunce of the turkes / In this town had the segyanye
12 a greek that was moche oold(22) / and had no childer, he had
been there syth the tyme that this londe was vnder themperour of
Constantynoble, for he was sente thyder by themperour for to
baylly. And when the turkes toke alle the countrey / he departed
not thems, but abode alwey in his bayllyage / Neuertheles he was
that made neyther hoot ne cold / ne kept not the peple / but at
theyr wylly / whan the Cytezeyns were acorled for to sende for
bawdwyn he knewe it wel and was content / whan Bawdwyn herde
20 that they of rages had sente for hym by comyn counseyl and
acorde / he toke counseyl with his men & fondy by his counseyl
for to goo theder. he ordeyneyd lxxx horsemen without moo for to
goo with hym / he passed the ryuer of enfrates / and lefte the
24 remenaunt of his peple in the fortresses that he had conquerd in
the contre to kepe them surely / the turkes that dwellyd in this
lande knewe the tydvynges how bawdwyn shold come to rages with
a fewe men, & made an embusssement by the waye where he
shold passe / and sette there grete plente of men of armes / thys
tydvynges wer sayde to bawdwyn, & therfor he torne to a castel
by, whiche an hermyne helde / he receuyed hym gladly & al his
men moch honorably, & was lodged there ij days / the turkes that
32 were ennoyed to be so long so embussched, yyssed out and cam with
baners displayed to fore the castel where bawdwyn was Inne / none
yssoed out for ther were ouer many men / The proye that they
founde in the pastures / they brought alle with them. And after

This was the only Christian city in all this

The lord of this city was an aged and childless Turk.

Baldwin went with eighty horsemen to the city.

The Turks set an ambush to attack him on the way.
Baldwin escape[d] and went on to Rages,
where he was received with great honours.
[36 LXXIX, bk] 

Baldwin is to have half of the income of the town at present, and the whole after the old Duke's death. The old Duke did not keep this agreement.

The people of the town were so indignant, that the Duke was forced to abide by his bargain.

turned in to their country / On the third day Bawdwyn issued out and took his way and came to Rages / The duke of the town that was a greek, as I have said to fore, cam ayenst hym. And all the other on horsbak & a foote with trompes and busynes / The peple of the town receyued hym with procession the most honorably they myght, euerych peyned hym to make hym feste after his puyssaunce.

How the duc that was at rages varyed for to holde s this that he had promysed to Bawdwyn /
capitulo LXXIX. g Rete suspicion had the duc in his herte when he sawe this Ioye that alle made to Bawdwyn. thenne by enuye he began 12 to fynde occasions by which he myght / parte fro the covenamous suche as he had sente, whiche were suche / Bawdwyn shold haue half the Rentes of alle the Cyte and of alle thexploytes / as long as the duc lyued / After his deth, whiche was olde, he shold haue alle 16 the seygnorye entierly and hool. Now the duc wold not holde this / But sayde, that yf Bawdwyn wold defende the cyte fro the strengthe of the turkes, and fro theyr gryenes that they made in the countrie he wold gyue to hym, and his men resonable souldye 20 and good wages / whan Bawdwyn hert this that he was come theder for to be a souldyoun / he had moche grete desdayne, and sayde that he wold not abyde there so / but wold ordeyne for hym & his men for to retorne / the Cytezynes of the town sawe that 24 this thynge wente not wel / And cam to the duc / and shewde hym that grete euyl & peryll shold folowe yf he lete this noble man departe / for by thayde of hym they and alle their thynge shold be kept in peas and defended / and they shold be in grete franschysce. The duc sawe wel by thysse wordes that he shold do folye / yf he sette hym ayenst them of the town / thercfore he concerued his herte for that tyme / not withstanding he considered many thynge and thought / But sayde that he wold acorde thereto / and made 32 semblanct that he dye it with good wil in the presence of alle them of the town, and avowed Bawdwyn to his son / and graunter hym the half of alle that he had and shold hauie his lyf duryng / And after his deceas to hauie alle as his heyr / Grete ioye had they in the cyte when this was made / And had moost ferme hope for to

1 Orig. country. 2 Orig. tomm. 4 Orig. defended.
reconouer the franchise of the tributes that the turkes had charged them with. So that day forth they began to remember in their hertes the wronges and gryes that their due had don to them in tymc passed, And thought moche that yt tymc and place cam to poynt / they wold suffre it no longer / But thought how they myght anenge this that they had suffred alle the tymc that he had be due.

8 4 How Bawdwyn wente to assaylle famosette, the cyte

Capitulco lxxx

a. Cyte was there nyghe by / moche strenge and wel garnysshed / named famosette. An vntrew turke named Blandue was lord of Famosette, a neighbouring city.

12 therof / he was a trychour / but he was noble and hardy in armes / This sarasyn had don moche harme to the cytezeyns of Rages; he sette on them trybutes and dyuerse demandes ofte, as they had ben his bondemen / And for to haue thyse thynges he had good ostages, he helde thyr children so fowle as they had ben in seruage, he made them to bere doune and fylthe, and dou fowle werkes / herof they of rages were moche greuyde. They cam to fore bawdwyn, and kneled to hym at his feet, and prayd hym with 16 ioyned handes right humbly, wepyng grete teres / that he wold delyuer them fro this turk forsayde, in suche wyse that they myght reconouer thyr children / whom he helde so shamefully / Bawdwyn wolde fayne doo thyr requeste, after thyr desire at this thyr first requeste / And to gete thyr loun and thanke / he dyde do arme hym and alle them that he myght hanc / And yssued with them out of the toon / And cam to fore famosette / And assayllcd the toon moche vygorously / But they within defended them as men 24 wel garnysshed and in a strong place / whan Bawdwyn had ben there, I wote not how many dayes, and sawe it coude not lightly be taken. he lefte in a fortresse nyghe by lxx knyghtes / and put in it garnyon of men of armes and vytyalles, And commanded them 28 wel garnysshed and in a strong place / whan Bawdwyn had ben there, I wote not how many dayes, and sawe it coude not lightly be taken. he lefte in a fortresse nyghe by lxx knyghtes / and put in it garnyon of men of armes and vytyalles, And commanded them 32 that every day they shold reume to fore the toon of famosete, And suffre to yssue of the toon neyther man ne beste, and after he cam agayn to rages / the Cytezeyns of the toon sawe wel that bawdwyn was a moche curtous man / wyse, noble, and valyaunt in alle his 36 thynges / And had despyte and grete deslayne, that this old due

1 Orig. reconouer. 2 Orig. tributes. 3 Orig. due. 4 Fr. Bawdus. Lat. Baldus.
whiche was nought worth, and that had don to them moche sorowe / and was not his felow, but his lord in the town1 / therfor theye toke counseyl emonge them / and sente for a puysaunt man, whiche had many fortresses by2 them in the montaynes, named constantyn, & acorde alle to gydre for to slee their due, & wold make bawdwyn due & lord vpon them. for theye moch hated this old man, that without fayll had greued3 them long tyme in many maners / for he toke fro them gold & syluer, & all that 8 ple-yd hym in the town, & ther was none so hardly that durst withstande hym ne disples hym, for yf theye diode, anoz by the turkes with whom he was acqueynten, made them to destoye theyr vygnes 4 and fruytes, and brene thouy their whete and corne / and lede 12 away their beestes. And yf ony of them went out of the town, they had fere for to lose theyr heedes /

How they of the town of rages slewe theyr due, and chees bawdwyn for to be theyr lord / cap9 lxxxxi 16

1 Hey had not forgeten the wronges and Inyryes5 that they had suffred of theyr due / they hoped al, that yf he were deed / that bawdwyn shold defiende them better than he. Therfore they wente al armed, as it was enterprised, vnto a tour where as he laye. 20 And began strongly tassayle it, and enyronned6 round about / The due sawe that the peple was so sore meny and angry on hym / And called bawdwyn, and prayd hym to take of his tresour as moche as he wolde, and repease the peple / Bawdwyn cam emong them, 24 and trauaylled moche by prayers and menaces for to hane supposed to hane repeased them / but he myght doo nothyng, for al way ther cam moo and more, in suche wyse that the companye encreeced / Bawdwyn departed thus fro them, and spak to the Duc, and said28 that he shold take to hym suche counsey / that he myght eschewe the furye of the peple / for he myght not remedye it. Thenne the due, as a man despayred, bonde a corde to a wyndowe and descended down therby / But when they apperceyued he was thurgh 32 smeton with arowes er he myght come to therthe. Thenne theye toke hym al deed / And drewe hym thurgh the town / And after

1—1 "and" should be omitted, and "not only" supplied here, to make the translation correspond with the original. Fr. "estoit non mie seulement son pareil mais son seigneur." 2 Fr. "pres d'cule," near them.
3 Orig. grened. 4 Orig. Inyryes. 5 Orig. enyronned. 6 Orig. enyronned.
7—7 Fr. "comme il pourrait pour mieule cherir unique es cule."
smote of his heed / And coude not doo ynowgh to satisfie their crueltees. On the morn they toke bawdwyn by force, ayenst his will in defiendying hym self / and lyft hym vp as theyr kyng / and lorde / They made to hym oth of feaunte / And after delyuered to hym the grete fortresse of the toon / And gaf to hym at his will Rychesses and moche grete tressours that the grekes had assembled by long tyme / Thus was the cyte of Rages delyuerd withoute contradiction to bawdwyn / Bandue, that was lord of ffamosete / sawe how Bawdwyn conquerd alwey the londes and contrees, and encreed his puysaunce / And sette to hym messagers whiche lete hym wete how that his Cyte was moche stronge / and myght not lightly be wonne, but he wold selle it hym yf he wold gyne hym .x / M / besauntes / Bawdwyn aduyseyd hym herupon / & by counseyl acorded to bye it, and payd to hym that somme, & receyued the toon entierly / & Bandue rendred tostages that he had holden alle thenne / And thus he conquerd the hertes and lour of them of the toon / that they called hym theyr fader / And they dyde alle that plesyd hym to theyr power, and redy tobye hym to the deth.

20 How bawdwyn wente and assieged the toon of serorge, nygh to rages, and toke it / And of his ordenaunces. cap. lxxxij.

N this londe was a Cyte named serorge, other peple sauf heten men / The lord of the toon was named balak, the turkes that were therin dyde many traueyles and vylaynous outrages / so many that they praye bawdwyn theyr lord for the loun of god / and for thaffection that he had to them / that he wold take counseyl and sette a remedye of this thyng / he answerd curtously / And sayde that he wold doo it gladly, thenne he commandeth that every man shold arme hym dylygently / And whan they were redy / they shold yssue out of rages, and goo strayt for to assige the cyte of sororge / Thenne dressyd they theyr engyns, and began to leye the siege / And brak the walles ond torettes. The turkes that were within the toon were moch abasshed, flor they thought wel that bawdwyn ne his peple wold not leghtly departe fro the siege / ne they understode of no socours fro noo syde / wher-

1 Orig. delyuered. 2 Orig. And. 4 Sororge.

GODFREY.
Godfrey and his Army arrive at Maress. [Ch. LXXXIII.

fore they sent their messagers to Bawdwyn / And so entreated them, they sent yede the town to hym. Bawdwyn receyued the town / And put in the greatest fortress, one his bayly, that shold Doe his commandement in that countrey / And ordeyned a moche grete tribute on them of the town,¹ and lefte hem therin / for he had not other peple ynough² for to people the town yf they wente their waye / By the prise of this cyte, was alle the way deluyerd of the heten, fro rages vnto anthyoche / for to fore myght 8 none goo vnto the ryuer³ of enfriates for the peple of sororge / Thus cam⁴ Bawdwyn to grete honour and to moche ioyous feste in the cyte of rages / Now we shal lene to speke of Bawdwyn / And shal spake now of the grete hooste that cam be hynde after.

How the grete hooste cam to fore maress.⁵ And how the turkes that were within fledde. And how our peple payned them to conquere countrees /

capitulo lxxxij⁶

¹ Fr. revint, returned.
² Orig. ynough.
³ Orig. ryner.
⁴ Orig. marese.
⁵ Orig. maress.
And Gossolyn the sone of aconon\(^1\) de montagu / they were wel a thousand men of armes whom they cam to fore the town / Anon they assieged it. The turkes that were within trusted not the 4 walles of the town / And wold have withdrawn them to the gretter fortresses of the town. But the hermys and the other men of our fayth / to whom the turkes had don long tyme grete shames & moch harme in the town / when they sawe oure men they had grete 8 affyance and truste in them / And\(^2\) toke vnto them moche grete hardynesse / And\(^3\) sone to armes / and er the turkes myght with drawe them in to the fortresses\(^2\) and toures / they slewe them / and\(^4\) threwe their heedes ouer the walles to our men / & after opened 12 the gates & recyued them in to the town with grete ioye, & therin they soude al that they had ned in / ffor the cyte was meruylously ryche. ffo thes\(^5\) vnto Anthoche was but xv myle / this cyte of whiche I speke is vnder the patriarche of anthoche / 16 & for fere of oure peple were the moost parties of the turkes fledde in to anthoche. when they herd saye that artayse was thus taken / & they had slayn them that were lorde, they toke counseyl emonge them for to aduyse how they myght hurt thoost, they 20 choos out / x m / to whom they comanded tacompleyshe this thynge / they wente forth / and when they approched thoost / they put\(^3\) them all in a bussheument sauf / xxx. wel horsed and lightly armed\(^6\), whom they sente forth for to drawe men fro thoost, they 24 approched so nygh / that the hooste of the town sawe them / ffor they made semblantz for to take fourriers\(^5\) and the horses nygh\(^4\) them / oure peple ran to armes / & began to folowe so ferr that they fought to gydre folyly upon theyr watche / they sprange out, 28 and\(^2\) wold have romme bytwene them and the town for tenclose them in, but our men assembled them and ran to gydre / and cam def- fendynge them / vntyl they cam into the town in suche wyse that they loste woman / The turkes sawe wel that they myght not 32 recouere the town, and began to assiege it / ffor they had peple ynowgh, and after began tassayle it. they within defefended them wel that they without loste more than wan. when the turkes sawe that the gret hoost made them redy and approoue / And that 36 they prouffyted not, they toke counseyl / and\(^2\) retorned in to anthioche / But\(^6\) the brygge that was bytwene they garnysched moche wel / The Erle of flamandres and the other that were with

1 Fr. Conon, not Aconon.  
2 Orig. fortresses.  
3 Orig. pnt.  
4 Fr. foriers, foragers.  
5 Orig. But.  
6 Orig. But.
How it was commanded unto alle the barons to come unto thoost for to goo vn to anthyoch, and of som recountres that they had in the 8 waye / cap. lxxxiiiij. w Han the turkes that were come fro anthyoch for to recouure artayse were departed from thens / at the spryngyng of the day / tydylnges cam that the grete hooste was lodged nygh by, for 12 they had herd saye / how therle of filaudres was besieged / And therfor by comyn counself they had sente xv / C / horsmen to fore to socourre them yf they had nede. They commanded them that yf the siege were departed / they shold leue peple resonably to 16 kepe the toun / And shold saye to therle of filaudres, and to them that were with hym, that they shold come agayn in to the hoost. Tancre, whiche had conquerd alle slylye, had in commandement to come agayn / and he returned, and alle the other also that were 20 departed fro the hooste generally were comen agayne / sauf Bawd-wyn, whiche abode aboute Rages, where he diid wel his thynges. 1 when the hoost was thus counseyled & ordeyned, they dyde do crye thurgh out al thoost that nonan shold departe without 24 leue. Thenne toke they al theyr way for to goo strayt unto Anthyoch / they herd 2 wel saye that ther ran a water whiche they muste passe. But the brygge vpon this water was moche wel garnysshed of their enemies, to thende thenne that the hoost 28 shold not be destrouended for to passe when they shold arryue there / by comyn counself of them alle, Robert, the due of normandy, shold goo to for to knowe yf he myght deluyere the passage / and to sende worde to the barons what he founde. with 32 hym wente euerard du puysaut and Rogyer de barneuylle, thysne two he made conestables of his hooste, and had thunaunt garde /

1—1 Fr. "Se fu rassamblez enteniment," viz., "when the army was again entirely assembled."
for they were bothe moche cheualrous and proved in armes. thus departed they fro the hooste and cam to the brygge / the brygge was lift vp which is named esenclaues / And in scripture 4 Orontes / Also it is called in the contre helle. The brygge was moche strong / And had at theatre on this syde hye towres and stronge / In every tour were .1 / men of Armes for to deffende with bowes and aramblestres the entree of the brygge and the passage of 8 the water. On that other syde toward. antyoche were come seuen hounderd horsmen for to kepe that syde of the water toward them / this ryuer of helle remneth on the syde of Antyoche, And cometh by another cyte named cesaire / But it sourdeth by another cyte 12 named Eliopee, And is called mallec, and descended in to the see by there as I haue sayd / when our peple were come to this brygge / theatre was wel denied them, for grete plente of turkes were descended down to the bariers / The other touers rested not 16 to caste stones and shote so sore that it was a moche grete scarmuches and fiers. they fought so moche to gydre that tydnyges cam in to the hoost which alwyes meuyd, and was themne not fer fro the brygge. they anaunced theyr paas and sowned trompes and 20 busynes / and smote on them that held ayenst them the paas / they that were in the touers durst holde them no lenger there for fere of the grete peple that they sawe come with the grete hoost / for they thought they shold not be there sure. The other also descended / 24 And were put alle to flyght / in suche wyse that oure men toke the brydge / the other knyghtes of oure peple that myght not come to the baryers for the prees whillis the scarmuches was, were moche anguysshions and descended down, where as there was a place to passe whiche they of the contre knewe not of, And passed ouer and discomfyted the seuen honderd sarasyes that kepte the bancke / So moche dyde one and other that alle the hooste passed delyuerly ouer, And caryage after / they lodged them in a moche / fayr place, 32 a / vj / myle fro the town / On the morn they 4 approached alle the

This bridge was over the Orontes.

It was well defended, and there was a sharp skirmish here.

Our main army came up, and soon took the bridge.

Our men all passed safely over.

[1 leaf 62]

1—1 Mistake arising from a corrupt text. The correct French is, "Il ponz estoit sur l'ance qui a non es anciennces escritures, Orontes."—In Caxton's French text, "esanciennes" is written as one word.—Caxton read it "esenclaues," and then left out part of the sentence in order to make an intelligible sentence with his new word.

2 Caxton follows his French text, and translates "l'Enfer" by Helle. The correct form is "El Fer," the Fer. Lat. "Orontes appelatur, verbo vulgari, Fer dictus."

3 Fr. Mauvec, Lat. Malbec.
The different Names of Antioch. [Ch. LXXXV.

grete waye bytwene the montaynes and the ryuer, in suche wyse that they lodged but a myle fro the cyte.

How Antioche, by succession of tyme, had dyuerse names, and of the noblesse of aunyente / cap. lxxxv.

1. Nthyoche is a moche noble cyte / which conteyneth the third place among the patriarkes, after the chirche of Rome. This cyte was named somtyme Esencianes / after that the wrytynges witnesse / Nabugodonosor, kyng of babylone, brought sedechyas, kyng of Iherusalem, theder, whan he had taken hym / And slewe his sones to fore hym / And after put out his eyen, as is founden in the fourth book of kynges. whan Alysaundre, kyng of macedone, was deed, Anthyochus had this part of the londe, & enforced moche the cyte of grete toures and wallys / And wold haue it named after hym Anthyochre, and ordeyned it chyef of alle the Royame / the prynce of thappostlys, seynt Peter, was first bisshop there, in a chirche that theophilus made to hym of his hows, which was a noble and a myghty man in the toon / Seynt luke, the holy euangelyste, was born in this toon / to the same theophile wrote he theactes of thappostlys / whiche was the. vij / bisshop in anthyocre / ther was the first counselyl of them that bylenyed in Ihesu Criste after his deth. And there was establyssed that they shold be called crysten men of crist; for byfore they were called nazaryens, of the cyte that he was of / this cyte was converted by the prechyng of Seynt Peter, therfore he gaf it the name of theopoble / which is as moche to saye as of gode oure lord / vnder Antyoche ben .xx. grete cyttes / of whiche ben / xiiiij Archebisshopriches / The sex haue two Primates, which ben called catholicoes / that one is in the cyte which is named Amene, And that other is at bandras. And alle this claymeth thoryent /

1. Caxton's text has the same corruption here as in p. 133. The correct sentence reads "cestotnones anciennees escritures Roblada."
2. Orig. tomm.
3. Orig. converted.
5. Fr. "et tout ce clame en l'orient," viz. "and all this is called the Orient."
Of the situation of Antioch. capitulo lxxxvij.

His cyte, of whom I have spoken, is anthycoche. And stondeth in the londe of this Surye. And is parte of the londe of the grete surye. It stondeth in a moche fayr place and delytable. Now I shall recounte to you how it stondeth. It is a moche grete towne. And aboute moche good londe, for to bere habondannce of whete, of corn, of fayr fontaynes and smale rennyng waters. And [l. 62, bk.] it is emong the montaynes toward the eest, whiche contre dureth wel xl myle of lengthe, & wel vj myle of brede. Above ther is a lake or mere, assembled of sprynges & wellys, that renne therin. Whiche is full of fysshe. Of this lake yssueth a rennyng water, whiche cometh uygh the cyte. And renneth in to the ryuer that renneth by the towne / the montaynes closed the two sides of the towne. Nevertheles, ther ben vnder them fressh waters and erable londe. The mount whiche is toward the south is named Oronte. One monte is named Orontes.

Lyke as I sayd you of the ryuer; ffor seynt Gregoire sayth that anthycoche is sette bytwene oronte the ryuer & oronthe the montayne / one partie of this montayne, that goth toward the see, is moch hye, in such wyse that it hath a name by hym self. Somme peple wene that this hylle be pernasus, a montayne of whiche scripture spoketh moche / by cause of a fontayne that is atte the foote of the same hylle, which is named leschielle buymand. But, without faulte, this is not the mount of whiche the auctors speke: ffor this montayne pernasus stondeth in the lande nome Thessaylle. That other montayne, which is toward the south, is named the black montayne, fulle also of sprynges and wellys / of wodes and of pastures. There were worste anniently thermeyes for to dwelle.

Thurgh this valeye renneth the Ryuer that I spak of to fore. And renneth to ward the see. In the montayne toward the south, begynneth the walles of Antycoche, and come vnto the Ryuer. It is a grete espae within the closure. ther ben enclosed within the walles two montaynes / vpon the hyest stondeth a barressse, so stronge that it is not prenable, but by famyne. Bytwene thisye two montaynes, which ben moche hye, is a valeye right depe, but it is strayt / in that renneth a litil water, right faste and swyfte, and in to the towne: and doth moche good to the towne. In the

2 Fr. escriptures, the books, the ancient writings, not "the Scriptures." 3 Fr. sans faulte, without doubt. 4 Orig. mount. 5 Orig. auctors. 6 Orig. Ryner. 7 Orig. montaynes. 8 Orig. town.
Cyte ben many fontaynes / but the beste is the fontayne which is named the fonteyn of seynt poul, And is nythe to the eest gate / ther is another fontayne without the towne, which by crafte and condynetes is brought in to the towne right subtalyly / Alle the walles 4 of the towne / that is to wete, they that ben on the montaynes, and they that ben hangyng / And also they that ben in the playn, ben merueyllous thrycke, fôr they ben of ouer stronge werk / Ther ben toures moche hye and wel defensable, that is toward the sonne 8 goyng' down / The ryuer renneth so nygh the towne / that the brygge on whiche men passe ioyneth to the walles and to the gate of the cyte / The lengthe 2 of the towne is wel two or thre myle / hit is nyghc vnto the see / xij myle of.

Who that was thenne lord of antyoche / And in what manere he was comen vnto this seygnorye / cap. 6 lxxxvij:

Anecan was lord of Antioch.
The town is two or three miles long.

[2 leaf 63] F this cyte of Anthyoche was lord 2 a turk, named Anecan of 16 the mesque / ther had ben a puysaunt sowdan of perse 3 / of whom we have spoken to fore, named belphet, which had conquierd alle thyse londes. And after, whan he wold retorne agayn in to his contrey / he departed entierly his conquest to his neues, and to 20 somme of his myyne / by cause that he wold that they that were his trewe men and frendes, shold holde peas, eche in his partye / and shold be as defendours and the closyng of the londe / he gaf to his neues solyman, nycue, or nycene, with alle theyr ap- 24 pertenauntes, as ye hane herd to fore / to another neues, named dutar, 4 he gaf the Cyte of damaske / And alle the countre about / and wold that eche of them shold bere the name of sondan / and lyke dygnyte / Solyman, 5 by cause he marched 7 on the grekes, had 28 euyer day debate ayenst themperour of Constantynoble / Ducar was ayenst them of Egypte / And ofte made warre eche to other, fôr they lound not to gydre / To thende themme that thyse two, Solyman and ducar, myght the better mayntene theyr warre, he wold 8 that 32 they were puysaunt and hye men as sowdans. To one his seruaunt,

1 Orig. but.
2 Caxton has spoiled the sense by dividing his sentence incorrectly. Fr. "un Ture qui avoit non Ancan: de la maigeie avoit esté d'ung puissant Soudan de Perse."
3 Fr. Ducar, Lat. Ducac.
4 Fr. "Soliman parce quil marchissoit aux grees," i. e. "because he was neighbor to the Greeks."
named assognur, which was fader of sangum, And grantd fader of Noradyn, of whom ye shal here here after / he gaf the renowned
eyte, called halappe / To this Ancean, of whom I spak to fore, he gaf this hye and noble cyte antyoche, and lytil bond about / for the Calyphe of Egypte helde alle the contreye vnto the boundes of Surye. this ancean, whom he herd that the grete hoost of cristen men cam, he sente messagers and lettres to the barons of thoryent / 8 and hym self spak to them by mouth expressly, and rekyred the caliphe of bandras and the soudan of perse, which was more myghty than any other / that they wolde socoure his londe and hym. They beleuydy al this lyghtly / for Solyman was comen to 12 them / that had wel assayed what oure men coude doo / theryore2 he also rekyred moche to grene oure cristen men, And that they wold0 auenge3 hym / Ancean rekyred that they wold0 deffende hym / The grete barons of thoryent, and other hye and noble men, 16 promysed0 hym that they wold0 helpe hym certaynye / Ancean forgate not in the 4 mene whyle / but gadred0 as moche peple as they myght haue in the contreye aboute hym / as they that fro day to day abode the siege, he assembled vytyayles, Armures, engyns, and alle other thynges necessarie to peple assyeged / And pryd moche ententifly the cytezeyns of the toun that every man shold make pronysyon and garnyson for hym self as moche as he myght. Thenne wente the cytezeyns of the toun to vyllages and other places ther aboute / And brought alle in to the cyte, whete, wyn / Oyle / and alle maner of beeostes / so moche that the toun5 was merecyvellously garnysshed. many hye, puyssaunt and noble men, were comen fro the contrees that oure peple had passed0 / whiche 28 were fledde in to this stronge toun for to kepe them self / in so moche that it was sayde / and0 was trouthe / that ther were in the cyte / vij. M / horsmen, alle armed and0 wel in poynt / And0 of footemen there were, that bare harnys, moo than / xx. M / He was so diligent that the toun was soon well garnished.

32 Dyuerse oppynyon of our men to fore they assiaged Anthyoche / And how they acorded alle for tassiege it / cap0 lxxxvii0.

1 Orig. renowned.  
2 Fr. "pour ce, s'entre semonaienc moult efforcement de grever nos xpiens." Caxton has also omitted "Soliman priot" before "that they would avenge him."  
3 Orig. auenge.  
4 Orig. toun.
Our men were not agreed about besieging the town. The winter was coming on, their number was not large enough, and they needed help from Constantinople.

Finally they encamped before the town the 10th October.

The town meanwhile was very quiet.

1. 'Orig. counselled.
2. 'Orig. towne.
3. 'Orig. tenure.
4. Fr. "avoir il grant partie des murs, des le pie du tertre jusqu'au fleuve, en beau plain, qui ne peut estre accoint de gens," a large part of the walls, from the foot of the hill to the river, were exposed, which could not be surrounded by the army.
How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye barons of the hoost were lodged at the sayd siege.

4 a Nthyoche had, conteynyeng in the cyte / v / yates / toward thoryent / ther was one, & was named the porte seynt poul, & that was by cause it was vnder the monastery of seynt poul whiche is hangyng on the territoire¹ / the second was toward 8 theocident. And² the lengthe of the toun³ is bytwene both thys yates, and that is named the porte of seynt george / On the syde toward byse ben thre yates, whiche alle yssue toward the Ryuer / that yate aboue is named the porte of the hound⁴. ther is a yate 12 to fore this yate⁴ / by whiche men passe the mareys which is vnder the walles of the cyte / the seconde is named the porte of the duc: the ryuer is ther wel a myle long fro thys two yates. The thirde is named the yate of the brygge, by cause the brygge is there / by 16 whiche men passe the Ryuer / ffour bytwene the port of the duc, which is in the myddle of thysy thre / and this that is the laste on that syde, approcheth so the flood of the toun, that fro thens it reñneth costeyeng⁵ the toun alle ioynyng to the walles. wherfor it 20 was that this yate, ne the yate of seynt george, our men myght not assiege, ffour noman myght come theder but if he wente ouer the Ryuer / Buymon⁶ assieged this yate aforsayd⁷, with them that were comen in his companye. beside hym, in⁷ analysyng down, were 24 lodged Robert the duc of Normandy, Robert therle of filandres / Steuen therle of bloyes, and huon⁸ le mayne / Thysse had⁹ pourprised fro the lodgyš of buymont vnto the yate of thounde / ffour the freysshemen / the normans and the bretons, were with them to fore 28 this gate / therne were lodged therle Remont of thoulouse, and the bishop of Puy, with them that were come in thry companye; that were the pronyncceaux, the gascoyns, and the burgoyonnys / ther was moche grete peple / They toke alle the place, vnto the gate

¹ Fr. "qui est ou pendant du tertre," viz. "which is on the slope of the hill," Lat. "posito in elivo montis."
² Orig. Aud. ³ Orig. tonn. ⁴ Fr. "il y a un pont devant la porte." ⁵ Fr. cotoiant, extending along the side of. ⁶ Fr. "Buymont assiege la porte dessus," (i.e. the upper gate, of the three) instead of "the gate aforsaid." ⁷ Orig. Buymont. ⁸ Lat. Hugo Magnus, Hugh the Great.
next after / At this gate were lodged the duke Godffroy / Eustace his brother / Bawdwayn therle of henawd / Reynold therle of Toul / Guemes\textsuperscript{1} de montagu / And other barons, many whiche alwey helde them with thysse prynces. Ther were the loraynes, the henewers, 4 they of sessoungue / they of bauyere, and they of francoine / They toke vp alle the place almosto to the yate of the brygge / And helde the Ryner that ranne there. In this partye, toward\textsuperscript{3} the towne, was grete plente of apple trees / of fygtrees, and of other trees 8 beryng fuyt / whiche our peple cut, & hewe of alle for to lodge them. they of the toun\textsuperscript{2} byhelde, by the hourdeys\textsuperscript{3} and batyllemens of the wailles, the manere and contenaunce of thoooste / And menraylled moche of the Armes / of the tentes / and of the facion 12 and manere that they had for to lodge them / They were in grete doubte / ffor they were wel adcereteyned\textsuperscript{9} / that so moche and grete peple wolde not lightly departe fro this siege without doyng\textsuperscript{1} them grete dammage and harme / Ther were many that were so grete\textsuperscript{1}\textsuperscript{6} efrayed\textsuperscript{1} for theyr wyues, theyr children & theyr other frendes, that they wold\textsuperscript{1} that they had ben deed\textsuperscript{1} and buryed\textsuperscript{1} long to fore / to thende that they shold not see the destruction which they doubted for to see.

How our peple assembled in counseyl for to fynde the moyen, for to sende for vytyaille / & of a brydge that they made. ca\textsuperscript{0} / lxxxx.

Our men had o Wr peple, that were thus lodged, founde not about them 24 pastures for theyr horses ne for theyr other beastes / Therfore them behooced ofte to passe the ryner / and to renne thurgh the contrey / thus dyde they many tymes / by cause they of the toun menyd not yet / And it was a noyous and grousous thynge to passe 28 the Ryner / ffor\textsuperscript{1} ther was no brygge / but feriel\textsuperscript{1} oner\textsuperscript{5} in botes bothe horse and man. whan the turkes of the Cyte apperecneyd\textsuperscript{6} this, they sente secretely oner theyr brygge theyr peple, which toke and slewe our men, that they fonde so sprad in the centre. And 32 this dyde they surely ynowgh / by cause they myght not retournar

\textsuperscript{1} Fr. guennes de Montaign. Lat. Canon de Montacuto. \textsuperscript{2} Orig. tonn. \textsuperscript{3} Fr. "Archieres et hordeis," i. e. from the openings for the archers, and from the palisades. \textsuperscript{4} Fr. "Car il n'y avoit point de que," for there was no ford there. \textsuperscript{5} Orig. oner. \textsuperscript{6} Orig. apperecneyd.
but by the ryuer / & they of thoost myght not socoure them. [Orig. concluded]
wherfor our barons conseylld them to gydre, and concluded that they wold make a brygye in somme maner by whiche they myght passe without damager of them of the toun / they fonde shippes in the laye, and abone in the ryuer they toke and ioyned them to gydre, and sette plankes on them, and nayled them in suche wyse that thre or four men myght passe on a front / this brygge dyde moche ease to alle thoost / This brygge was nygh the lodgys of duc godeffroy, right ayenst the yate that he kepte ; And therfor the yate was named the yate of the duc / ffo this brygge of tree vnto the brygge of stone was a grete myle, as I sayd to you to fore / by this yate & by this bryge was moche harme don to our peple / And by the yate named the porte of the hounde, they grened moche our peple ; ffor they had a brylde of stone by the toun, of dynerse waters gadered to gydre, that ran there / by that brygge they made theyr assaylles day and nyght vpon the peple of therles of tholouse, which kepte the gate. Oftymes they opened the yates / and yssued out vpon theyr lodgys, and dynerse they hurted, and slewed many. And when they had don, they retorned in to the toun / ffor our men myght not porscwe them but by the brygge, therfore hit happedd that the bisshopp of pay, therle of tholouse, and the other barons that were there / were more hurte in theyr monturvey than alle the other of thoost.

How our peple stopped a yate of the toun without forth / And of a castel of tree that they made. cap. lxxxxj°

Our men took counsel how to put a stop to this damage.

Orig. "Sans danger de coute de la vile." Orig. duc.
Caxton's text is corrupt here, the sense being ruined by omissions. A. gives the correct version: "Car il y avoit ung port de pierre, pour passer le palce qui estoit fets de diverses eues," etc.
Barons.
Monteurs, i.e. their mounts (horses, mules, etc.). Lat. "in equis et mulis."
Caxton has spoiled the sense here by his omissions.
The Christians attempt to destroy a Bridge. [Ch. XCII.

They made a wooden engine, and set it against the bridge.
[1 If. 65, bk.]

The Turks burnt it to the ground.

Our men then stopped up the bridge with big stones.

They made a wooden engine, and set it against the bridge.

Theirs proved false and broke the bridge, but the walls were so strong and hard that they might not hurt it. And on that other side they of the town were on the walls and turrets, which throwed great stones and they cast on them that so they pecked to break the bridge, that they were fain to leave their enterprise and returner for the next did so. After this they thought of another thing and made a new castle of tree, and set it against the bridge for to keep it that they should not pass over it. On them it was made work and payne to make it. When it was set up and dressed, they in the towers shot that at great pleasure of 12 Arowes, so many in such wise that none durst abide in this castle, and none thought of it. On a day it happe that our men withdrew them from the bridge and for ther about. And they within opened the gate and issued out by the rowtes. They that were in the castle 16 of tree fledde. And the other sette sinner so on it. And brent it to ashes. Our men sawe well thenne that they warred not well thus, and ordered the gonne that at the bridge, whyle they shotte none of the turkes yssued oute there. But as 20 sone as they cessed, they cam oute and made ther ayssalles as they dyde to fore. It displesed moche to our barons that they might not sette no remedye ayenst the comyng oute of thyse turkes. Atte laste they accorded that they would take grete stones of the 24 Roche, such as were connenient for a gate, and stoppe the passage. They took an hundred men and more, and stopped the gate over the bridge. ther were so many that it was doon in such wise that it coude not be lightly broken agayne. They had grete 28 tranayle and payne to make it. But they that were lodged there kepte alle armed them that brought the stones. Thus was the gate stopped in suche wyse that thoost abode alle in peas there. And for the Turkes might no more make theyr assayles there.

How our peple were in grete meschyef for as moche as they of the toune yssued and entred in and oute with grete rowtes. Capitulon lxxxixiij.

2 Orig. about. 3 Orig. ont. 4 Orig. thenne. 5 Orig. gonne.
6-5 Fr. "ils s’accordèrent à ce qu’ils prîrent grands roches, tels qu’il convenoit bien à l’une porter, C’hommes on plus, et estouperent la porte."
7 Orig. connenient.
o Nu a day it happe\textsuperscript{d} that ther wen\textsuperscript{e} out of thoost as wel on
foote as on horsbak a thre honde\textsuperscript{r} men / and\textsuperscript{e} passed\textsuperscript{e} over
the brydge of tree. And\textsuperscript{e} sprad\textsuperscript{e} the contrey\textsuperscript{e} as men that wen\textsuperscript{e}
4 on foragyng / It is the custome of an hooste for to goo out\textsuperscript{2} so
oftymes & retorne without dammage or hurte / Therfor they had
supposed\textsuperscript{e} to haue ben sure / They of the toun appre\textsuperscript{e}ned it and
ys\textsuperscript{e}ued\textsuperscript{e} out with grete plente of peple / And\textsuperscript{e} wen\textsuperscript{e} over the brydge
8 of stone and ranne on them that they sawe goo so fol\textsuperscript{y} / And
somme they slewe / And other fledde to the brydge\textsuperscript{3} of shippis
where they supposed\textsuperscript{e} to haue passe\textsuperscript{d} / But thenemyes were there
to fore. And\textsuperscript{e} defended\textsuperscript{e} them the waye / in suche wyse that many
12 of them were drowned in the water that supposed to haue passe\textsuperscript{d}
on\textsuperscript{er} / other of oure men recou\textsuperscript{t}ed the turkes that had slayn &
discom\textsuperscript{y}t\textsuperscript{ed} our men & bare away with them their proyes and
despoylles, And wen\textsuperscript{e} on them / The Turk\textsuperscript{e}es fledde / and\textsuperscript{e} our men
16 pors\textsuperscript{i}ewed\textsuperscript{d} them sle\textsuperscript{y}ng and\textsuperscript{e} bet\textsuperscript{y}ng them vnto within the brydge
of stone / They of the toun\textsuperscript{6} that sawe theyr men so pors\textsuperscript{i}ewed\textsuperscript{d}
sprang\textsuperscript{e} out with grete prees and passed the brydge, & ran on our
men / whiche wold haue defended them / but they myght not
20 suffire so grete nombre of peple and\textsuperscript{e} fledde. they folow\textsuperscript{e}d them
doy\textsuperscript{ng} to them grete dommage, til they cam to the brydge of
shippis / there they assayled them so harde\textsuperscript{7} / that many men
armed fyll in the water whiche were there drowned\textsuperscript{e}d and\textsuperscript{e} loste
24 Oure\textsuperscript{8} men lost there many men on foote and\textsuperscript{d} on horsbak / In this
manere were they of thooste in grete mese\textsuperscript{a}se / f\textsuperscript{or} for they were better
besieged\textsuperscript{d} than they of the toun / There were many of theyr enemies
in the woodes and montaygnes whiche ofte ranne vpon our peple
28 whan they sawe them goo without ordenaunce, and they of the toun
ys\textsuperscript{e}ued\textsuperscript{e} out whan it plesed\textsuperscript{d} them / in suche wyse that our\textsuperscript{9} men
durst not goo fer fro thooste for to fourage ne for none other thyng / And\textsuperscript{e} also in theyr lodgys were they not assured, f\textsuperscript{or} for the tyd\textsuperscript{y}ng
32 was that the turkes assembled moche grete plente of peple for to
smy\textsuperscript{t}e in thooste on that one side / & they of the toun on that
other side shold yss"ue on them /

\textsuperscript{1} Fr. "et s'expandirent par le pays." \textsuperscript{2} Orig. ont. \textsuperscript{3} Orig. brydge.
\textsuperscript{4} Orig. and\textsuperscript{e}. \textsuperscript{5} Orig. toun.
\textsuperscript{6} Orig. toun. \textsuperscript{7} Fr. s'entasserent, i. e. they crowded on so thickly.
\textsuperscript{8} Orig. Oure. \textsuperscript{9} Orig. our.
The Christians suffer greatly by Famine. [Ch. XCIII.

Of the famyne and mortalite of thoost after that they had be at the sayd siege the space of two monethes.

f Or to recounte alle thoaunrentes that were in so grete a siege 4 shold be ouer greunous and a moche long / Theroft 1 I shal saye to you this that longeth to the comyn / thooste had holden siege vnto the thyrde moneth, vytyall began to faylle / And was grete suffrere and scarssenes in thoost / they had in the he-S gynyng largely and grete habundaunce both for men and horses; but they made grete waast & more than needed, & so by their oyltrage & folye they lacked in short tyme / which myght have long susteyned them yf they had kepte it wel & governd 2 by 12 mesure. they suffred grete penurye in thoost of vitayl for men & beastes, in such wise that the pour peple were in grete peryl / every day assembled / ij / or iiij / C men of armes to gydre for to serche the contryc & fetche vytyalles / they swore to gydre that 16 alle the gayne that they myght fynde & conquer / they shold 7 departe equall ymone them. They wente forth 2 fer fro thoost / and fonde the townes moche wel garnysshed by cause they were fer fro thoost / they thought that noman shold robbe ne take 20 nothyng fro them / And thus brought vytyall to thoost. But when the Turkys of the toun, and also other in the countrye, had apperceyued this / they made embusshementes and ranne vpon our 3 men when they returned, or other whyle when they went forth, & 24 slewe them somme tyme alle that none returned fer for to bryng tydynges to thoost / And therfore durst they goo nomore a four-agyn / The derthe was moche grete in thoost / & every day grewe the famyne 4 in suche wyse that a man etc wel at a mele in 28 brede 5 four / dr / a cowe was worth 6 four marc weight of syluer, which a man myght haue at begynnyng 7 fer ech or ten shyllyngis / A lambe or a kyd was at sex shyllyngis, whiche to fore was worth but thre or four pens / the mele for an horse for a nyght cost .xvj / 32 pens / ther deyde many for hangre in suche wyse that at the begynnyng of the siege the horses were nombred at .lxx / M /

1 Lat. "unde omisssis specialibus, generalia prosequemur."
2 Orig. our.
3 Orig. famyne.
4 Fr. "pour deux soulz de pain."
5 Lat. duabus marcis.
6 Orig. legynnyng.
7 Fr. V. B. à v livres ou iiiij. A à cinq soulz, ou iiiij. Lat. quinque solidus.
8
At that tyme were scarce / ij.M. And they were so poure, feble, and lene that vnmeth they myght helpe oun man / the tentes and paullons roted & for it rayned continually a rayne so thyecke 4 and grete that no cloth myght susteyne it, wherfor moche peple in the hooste deyde for coldke and mescase. Their clothes roted on theyr backes by cause they myght fynde no place to drye them, ther was one so grete mortalite in thoost / that vnmeth myght be fonden men for to burye them that deyde / Many that sawe this grete daunger and peryll in thooste wente and departed pruely to Rages where bawdwyn was / & in to Sicilie where other eytces were also / Thus were many slayn. And grete plente dect of famyne and of other maladyes / And the hooste was so mynysshid that ther were not half so moche peple as they were at begynnynge.

How our peple ordeyned grete rowtes for to goo for vytayll, & to reteyne the peple which fled for hungre /

0. Ftyymes assembled the barons for to fynde counseyl how they myght reteyne the peple that thus departed / & also in what maner & how they myght aduye & ordeyne for vytayll for thoost, & they concludde that one partye of the barons shold haue grete plente of men with them, & go right depe in to the londe of the paynens for to brynge vytayllles and alle that they myght fynde and gete on theyr enemies / to this were chosen buymont 24 & the erle of filanundres, Thoost was deluyed to therle of thoulouse and to Huon le mayne to gouerne, for the duc of normandye was not there, And duc godeffroy laye seke moche greuously / They departed for to goo on fouroage, many folowed for to gete somme 28 gayne / when the turkes of the toun 2 save thoost thus voyde and waxe lasse, And knewe for certayn that therle of filanundres 3 / Buymont / and the duc of Normandye went not there / And that the duc godeffroy laye in his bedde seke / They preyed and doubted 32 moch the lasse the remenant. And toke counseyl that they wold make an assayllong by the brydge / but they that kept thoost haue knowleche herof / And were advertyse / And were al armed on horsbak and cam ayenst them and slewe many of the turkes that were come to fore and were many grete men of the toun / when the other barons sawe this what for sorow and for fere were discom-

2 Orig. tom. 3 Orig. filanundres. 4 Orig. advertyse.

GODFREY.
Loss of the Christians in a Skirmish. [Ch. XCV.

fytèdk and fled agayn in to the town / But a grete mesanenture happed to oure peple / For as the turkes fledde dyscomfytèd one of them was beten doon of his hors / And his hors fledd toward the lodgys / And many of our men ran after to wynne hym / The mene 4 peple and other that sawe the horse supposed that our men had been dyscomfytèd and that they had fled to fore theyr enemyes / And they began to flee / And other that sawe them flee / fledde also in suche wyse that alle tornèd to dyscomfytour over fowle / 8 when the turkes behelde this and sawe that our men dyscomfytèd them self, anon they retorneò and pasèd the brygge / And began to chace them that so fledde, and bete and slewe them fro the brydge of stone vnto the brydge of the shippis / there were slayn 12 of our men on horsbak a / xx / And a foot yet moo. the turkes returned in to theyr cyte demenyng grete løyne and festé for this journeye.

How buymont and therle of flaundres mayntenèd hem 16 beynge in fourkeage / Of theyr reconctrees and of the gayne that they made. Capitulò lxxxxxvº.

b) Vymont And therle of flaundres that were sente by comyn councel in fourkeage; entred for in to the lande of theyr enemyes. And founde 2 a moche Ryche town good and ful 3 of thyng that they had nede of in thost; they toke all / for they fonde neyther man ne woman that empesshèd ne letted them / Thysè two barons had sente theyr espyses in dyners partyes of the 24 londe for tenquyre & serche where they myght gete more vytayd for to lede the hooste / Now it happed that one of the espys cam to buymont & sayde that a grete company of turkes were embassèd in a place nyghe by them, for to renne on them whan 28 [1 k. 57, b.] 4 they wente on fourkeage. Thenne they ordeynèd that therle of flaundres shold goo forth with his men, & buymont 5 shold come fer after. And so was doon / Therle of flaundres fonde thyse men, And assembled to gydre fiersly, the batayll was long & cruel / 32 for the turkes had mo men than therle of flaundres. At the laste our men were dyscomfytèd, for the flemynge ws myght not endure but fledde er buymont cam / And so were lefte of our men there wel an hunderd or more in the place / And thenme our men retornèd 36 in to thost with grete good and gayn that they had gadered to

1 Orig. and. 2 Orig. foundè. 3 Orig. ful. 4 Orig. buymont.
gydre / whyles they were there cam to them other espymes of an other contre / that aduertysed them of other turkes that wayted to hurte them whan they sawe theyr advantaige / they were thenne
4 moo men and better armed than they had ben to fore / they were
counseyl / & therel of flamandres woldt that noman sholdt enter-
prise the batayl but he. But he toke mo men with hym than he
dyde tofore / Buymont\(^1\) cam after with as many as he myght
8 hane. Therle of flamandres hasted hym and surprised the Turkes
in a valeye strat\(y\), in suche wyse that they myght not reme hether
te heder for to shote. But were constreyned\(^2\) to defende them
strongly with theyr swerdes and maces / whiche was not sure for
12 them / By cause whan oure meyne discar\(d\) on them they myght
not susteyne it, but fledde anon / Oure men folowed\(^3\) them in hew-
yng & slaying\(^4\) them / and ouerthrewe many of them, They wanne
horses / mules / Armourues and robes grete plente, & after returned
16 in to the hoost with grete victorye & grete gayne. Grete joye
was made themre in hoost when they were comen / alle they were
refresshyd & alleged of their meseces that they had longe suffred\(^5\) /
They had vytyalles resonable a certeyn tyme. But it endured not
20 longe that whiche they had brought with them /

How a grete rowte of Cristen men were in this tyme
slayn by the turkes bytwene fynemye and
terne /\(^6\) cap.\(^7\) lxxxvij

\(^{1}\) Orig. Buymont.

\(^{2}\) Fr. Roumanie, Roumania, not Rome. Lat. "\textit{interea de partibus Romaniae.}"\\n
\(^{3}\) Fr. "qui moult leur mist grant doulceur et grant angoisse escuers, et leur mesaise doubla."

\(^{4}\) Orig. angnysshis.

\(^{5}\) Fr. guennes. Lat. Danorum regis filius Sueno nomine.
take thoose of the firenshemen, but he myght not overtake them / for he can ouer late / And had none in his company sauf men of his country / he cam by constantinoble / where themperour dyde to hym honour / and after he wen to Nycene with alle his com-panye / And lodged hym bytwene two eytees / that one was named fynteyne / And that other terme, there they dyde not as they ought to doo, by caue they were in the londe of theyr enemyes / but they assured them ouermache / in suche wyse that on a S nyght a grete partye of the turkes that had espyed them smote in sodanly on them and began to sle them in theyr beddes / Neuertheles somme ther were that apperecued them and ran to theyr armes / & cam ayenst the turkes and sold theyr lyf dere / but in 12 thende they were alle slayn, and none escaped of alle thoose except a thre or foure atte moste.

How the vntrew greek latyns(23) departed fraudelously frou the hoost. And other moo by thensample of 16 hym / cap. lxxxvij.

Latyns, the deceitful Greek, had carefully watched our army.

Seeing how matters stood, he advised our men to leave the siege,

and promised to bring aid from the Emperor, in the spring.

1 Atyns this disloyal greek of whom we have spoken to fore, whom themperour had delyverd to oure peple, for to lede and conduyte them had foynously taken heede of the gouernance of 20 thoose vnto this day / and of the rewle of the barons, & alway peyned hym for to deceyue them in alle the maners that he myght. Now apperecued he wel, that thaffayres of thoose were not in good poynt / ne in good disposicion and doubted moche, for he was 24 ful of cowardys, and thought the pylgryms shold somme day he surprised of the turkes of the toun, and shold alle be slayn, therfor he spak secretely to one and other, and counselfled them to leue the siege. And that al thoose shold departe in to the eytees that 28 our men helde vnto the newe tyme, for it was certayn he sayde that themperour had sente for the grettest hoost, that he myght assemble for to come and socoure them as some as he myght fynde grasse on the erthe for the horses / And he hym self / By cause he loued 32 the werke of oure lord with the noble men that he had, wold enterprisse vpon hym for the comyn proufyt a grete tramayll, And he hym selfe wold goo dylygently to themperour for to haste hym with his hoost and alle the Vytyyle that he myght fynde / And to make 36

[1 H. 76, 72.] hym come / Many of the Barons knewe vpon 4 this poynt his

1 Orig. constantinobll. 2 Orig. bytwnee. 3 Orig. on.
falseness / And perceyued that he sought manere by this waye for to flee. And blyeuyd hym not / but accorded that he should goo his waye; he made semblant for to retoure and come sone ageyn, 4 and lefte his panyllons and som of his men to whom pereaduenture he had sayd that they shold folowe and come after / or ellys that he neraught what myght come of them. Thus departed he whom the he departed, deuyl had brought, And had hym away agayn; for by the wordes 8 that he had sowed / and by the example of his departyng, began and many men to departe fro thoost / And toke no regarde to theyr auowe ne to the oth that they had promised / but wente secretly one after another / The famyunc was moche grete in thooste. The 12 barons coude fynde no remedye ne counseyl therafore. Trouth it was they sente ofte two and two of the grettest lordes with grete companye of men for to pourchasse vytaylles, They wente moch surely in the landes of thevryr enemies right deep and ferre. And 16 sleyng many of them that wolde hane defended theyr passage / but vytaylles brought they none, for the turkes of the centre that had appereyued thatoure peple wente for to seche vytalles had do ledde away alle their beestes and their vytalles vnto the mon- 20 taynes and deserete places where none myght come, & somme had they hydle in the wodes and caues vnder the erthe, whiche our men coude not fynde.

How the prelates of the hoost counsaylled to doo penaunce for tappese god, And of thorden-ances that were made teschewe synne /

Capitulo lxxxxviiij.

Amyne / mortalyte / and many other perylls cessed not to famine and death were on all sides.

The Barons generally believed him not.

The Crusaders were now in great straits,

and could obtain no victuals.

And the Cruasaders were now in great straits,

and could obtain no victuals.

Amyne / mortalyte / and many other perylls cessed not to famine and death were on all sides.

The Crayseiders were now in great straits,
penance for to crye mercy vnto our lord by the space of iij dayes, to thende that he wold pardon their trespaces & beholde them in pyte. this was don with grete wepyng & waylynges of herte / after this they commanded that alle the comyn wymmen of enyl lyf shold be voyded & cast out of thoost / & was cryed thurgh out al the hooste / that who that after that were taken in adulterye or in fornycacion shold haue his heed smeton of / Incontinent the dromcardys of the tauerne, the players of dyse, and the grete othes were defensed upon the same pynte, fals mesure and thefte / alle suche thynge were commanded to be lefte and eschewed / there were choosen wise men and trewe, that shold take heed for to punyssh the malefactours / After thyse ordenaunces and statutes were somme founden culpable in the same / where were so punysshed thervere / that the other were chastysed therby / whan the peple were amended vnto our lord, the mercy of our lord cam without taryeng on them / for the duc Godfrey, whiche was all the surete of thoost / And as theyr estandart / had ben lange seke by theoccasion of his hure, that he had taken in the londe of pysside by a bere, as it hath be sayd to fore, nygh by lytil Anthyoche, and was now sodenyly come to good helthe / wherof alle they of thooste had moche grete ioye / and byleuyed fermly that theyr penance and prayers had lengthed his lyf and respyted it.

How Baymont fonde a subtil remydye for to delyuere and purge the hoost of the espyes of the turkes / cap. lxxv. 1. By their sayling was spradd thurgh out al thoryent / and toward the countrees of the south / that ouer grete nombre of peple of the countrees where the somne goth down were comen, and had besieged the noble cyte of Anthyoche / hit was a grete thynge in trouth / But the tydynges were moche more gretter withoute comparson / Ecuyche of the puysamant lorde of that countrees and londes had sente theyr espyes in to the hoost / and ther were so many that they cassed not to come and goo, and continually & vnethe nyght ony thynge be don or sayd in thooste ne in the lodgys, but that it was anon known in the panemye / It was a

---

2 Fr. "les benuérès, les taverne," etc. 5 Orig. malefactours.
3 Fr. "que les autres s’en chassèrent." 6 Orig. anun. 7 Fr. pationne, heathendom.
light\(^1\) and easy thynges for them to be with our peple in thost / Ther were of the turkes that coude speke greek / and the langage of Ermenye / And toke thabyte of the surreyens, of grekes / and of them of hermeny / ther were many of suche maner of peple / the barons toke counseyl emong them how they myght voyde & purge thost of this pestelence of espyes, for they helde them in grete paryll & grete daunger / that theyr couyne & purpoos shold be known in the lourdes of theyr enemies, and it was no light thyng to knowe them that were suche espyes / Emong\(^2\) alle other thynges they coude \(^3\) fynde none other remedye / but to holde theyr counseyl secrete / and fro them forthon saye lasse to the peple than they were woont to doo / Buymont, whiche was of moche grete wytte and hye herte, spak to the barons, and sayd in this manere / "thayr lourdes, I praye you that ye wil labe me chouysshe with this matere / for I haue rememdyd how we shal be deuyneyd of this thyng / wherfor, I praye you, gyue to me the charge therof" / The barons helde Buymont\(^5\) for a moche wyseman, and prouient / And gladely sette the charge therof on hym, and departed fro the counseyll / Buymont\(^6\) forgate not this that he had promysed whan 20 tyme of soupper cam / he disposed \(^7\) and ordeyned hym for to souppe / he made the knyghtes\(^7\) of his contre to take out somme turkes that he had in prison, And made theyr throtes to be cutte / And after smote thom in pyeces and arrayed thom for to be rosted. 

24 Thenne began they to demaunnde what he wold doo / Thenne Buymont\(^8\) sayd to his men / And haue his men also to saye to other / "that alle the barons ha\(\wedge\)d thus ordeyned and sworn, that alle the espyes that myght be taken in thost shold \(\wedge\) be rosted and servyd at the tables of the barons / And the barons shold ete them by their oth." thys tidyinges were anon spre\(\wedge\)d thourgh out thost / that suche lustyce was don in the lodgys of buymont. Alle men ran theder for to see this merueylle / The turkes them selfe that were 32 comen in to thost to espye, were moche affrayed, And euerych of them thought longe\(^9\) or he was departed fro the lodgys, by cause they doubted that they shold be seruid in lyke wyse / Aftir whan

---

\(^1\) Orig. liught. \(^2\) Orig. emonge. \(^3\) Fr. "vous me laissiez convaincre et chévir de ceste chose, car jai pensé une délivrance, de ce peril," viz., let me settle this matter for you, for I have thought of a way to deliver us from this danger. \(^5\) Orig. Buymont. 

\(^4\) The correct French text gives "bouchiers" (butchers), instead of "chevaliers." Lat. carnifices. 

\(^5\) Orig. Buymont. 

\(^6\) Orig. Buymont. 

\(^7\) Orig. Buymont. 

It was a difficult thing to get rid of them. [3 If. 60, bk.] Bohemond took charge of this matter."
They went home and reported that the Crusaders surpassed all men in cruelty. After this no men were willing to go as spies to the Christians.

How the Calephe of Egypt sente his messengers with grete yestes vnto our hoost / Capitulo C°

[2 leaf 70] 2e Mong other mescreamtes grete lorde and prynees, The caliphe of Egypte was the moost myghty of men and moost ryche of 16 goodes; he sente his messengers vnto the barons that were in hoost, And I shal saye how and by what occasion (24) Grete hate and moche fiers hath ben bytwene the Turkes of thoryent and the Turkes of Egypte / And hath be of annyevent and long tyme, By cause they 20 discorde in theyr creanunce and mysbyleue / And eche sayd to other and yet doo that they be fals sarasyns / as I haue sayd to fore in the begynnyng of this book, And therfore they ben ofte in warre / Somtyme one partye is aboue / And another tyme that other / In 24 the tyme that our peple were to fore Anthychoe / this caliphe of whom I spoke now, helde alle the londe of Egypte vnto the Cyte of Sureye / whiche conteyneth wel / xxx / Iournyes longe / The Soudan of Perse, a lytyl tefore that oure peple cam, hadde conquerd 28 the towne of Anthychoe, whiche is by the Royame of egypte / and alle the londe entierly vnto the bras of seynt george, as I haue sayd to fore / Now had the calyphe of egipte in moche suspicion the Sowdan of Perse, and moche plesyd hym his destruction and 32 dommage / And hadde moche ioye that Solymen had lost Xycre, whiche Solymen was neuew to the sayd Soudan / and was so enfeble of his men. And also he was plesyd that our eristen peple had besieged the Cyte of Anthychoe / Therfor he sente good 36

1 Fr. Amiraute, i.e. Emirs. 2 Fr. La Lich, de Suric. 3 Orig. Turkes. 4 Lat. usque Laodicen Syriac.
messagers to speke to them whiche brought right grete yoftes / And moche ryche presentes / yf they wold receyue them / And they sayde that the Caliphe was redy for to gyue to them socoure and 4 ayde right largely of men / of good and of vytayll, and prayd them moche derely that they wold mayntene and contente theyr siege. The barons of our hoost receyued the noble men that were comen, and sent from hym honorably, and made them to soiourne with 8 them / And they that were wyse knewe anon the wytte & vygour of our barons, and begonne to haue moche grete doubte & suspicion that our peple were so valyaut / & that yet they shold do grete dommage in theyr londe / so that they deuyed in this thyng as ye 12 shal nowe here in relynge hooly this book.

How Ancan, the lord of anthyocoche, and his barons
sente vnto the turkes, theyr neyghbours, for to
demaunde socours1 / cap.2 Cj°

16 t He lord of Anthyocoche and the other grete and noble men of the toun, seyng that our men suffered so moche famyne and 3mescase / as we haue sayd to fore / and fore alle thyse thynges wold in no wyse leue theyr siege, but shewed by their counten 20 aunces that this trauyay greued them not / wherfore they were moche abasshyd. And thence Ancan, by the counseyl of his men and them that were moost pruyse with hym, sente messagers and letters to his moost ryche neyghbours / And prayd hym right 24 derely for the honour of theyr lawe, for the sauynge of them self / And for his lone, that they wold come and socoure them without taryeng. And he sente them word in what maner they shold approche secretely to Anthyocoche. And after they shold couere 28 them in a busheement nygh by / And there abyde the pylgryms as they had ben acustomed, and at suche tymes as they shold come to the brydge / for there shold they sprynge out of the toun / And shold assayle them, & whyle they were besy in fyghtyng, they 32 that were embusshed shold sodenly breke & come by hynde on them & fyght, And so shold they be enclosed bytweene them within And them withoute, in suche wyse that none shold escape / They that herd thysse letters and thyse messagers doubted them 36 moche ofoure peple / wherfor they acored gladly to this counseyl. they assembled them of ballape / them of cezayre, them of haman /

1 Orig. socours. 2 Orig. our.
and of other cytees about, tyf they were a grete nombre of peple / And this dyde they the moost secretly they myght, as was to them communed, and began to departe and approache Anthychoe / And cam to a castel named harant, whiche is fro thens a xiiiij / 4 myle. there they lodged and thought on the morn as sone as the scarmuche shold be bytwene the pylgrmys and them of the town / they shold Smyte in with theyr spores vpon oure men. And oure christen men were in grete peryl / But one thyng ther was themne / 8 that tho and other tymes dyde them grete good / for ther were christen men, hermys and suryens in the cytees of whiche the turkes were departed, whiche anon let the barons of thooste hauent knowleche how it was concluded bytwene the turkes / They 12 assembled anon for to take aduys herupon, And was accorded enmoge them / that alle they that had ony horses to ride on shold be arayed And on horsbak as sone as it were nyght / And that every man shold drawe in to his bataylle lyke as they were 16 assygned / And after shold yssue out of thooost without ony noyse. the peple on foote shold abyde styll alle, and be redy to defende the lodgys, ye ony thyng sould ayenst them.

How oure peple knewe the couyne of the turkes / of 20 thenbushe 3 that they made, and of their victoyre and gayne that they had. Capitulio Cij;  

S sone as it was nyght they yssued out lyke as they were commanded / They passed the brydge of shippes, And they were 24 not passyng / vii / C / men on horsbak / they that wente cam to a laye, whiche was bytwene the laye of whiche I haue spoken to fore / And the Ryuer named helle / whiche ben that one fro that other, nyh a myle / there they rested them this nyght, theyn enemies that 28 knewe no thing of their conyng / were this nyght passed the brydge, whiche is vpon the Ryuer of helle. In the mornynge, as sone as our men apperceeued the day, they armed them and made vj bataylles of them / The turkes had sente by fore their corromes / 32 which cam & sayde that the grete peple cam ayenst them / they sente to fore ij of their bataylles, & after cam the grete peple / whan they approcheyed they were in grete desraye / the Archers approched first, whiche shotte theycke; But oure men smote in 36 with the speres moche aspyly in suche wyse that they made them

1 Orig. hauent. 2 Orig. And. 3 Orig. named. 5 Orig. ef.
to flee, and chaced them to theyr grete bataylles. There were theyr in suche a destroyt bytwene the Ryuer, and the laye that they myght not shote ne flee after theyr customme. There was the 4 medlyng grete and fiers / And the barons and men of armes dyde moche wel, But the turkes that had lost the maner of fyghtyng / myght not deffende them, ne endure the strokes of oure peple, but fledde theyr way al that they myght. Thenne whan our barons 8 sawe this / they began to doo wel, And commanded that noman shold faygne, but folowe the chaas asprely / The turkes fledde vnto hernant. Oure men followed alwey, sieyng and hewyng of heedes and armes, that al the waye that they passed by was sowne with 12 dede men / This chaas endured wel .x / myle / The turkes that were within the castel of hernant sawe that that theyr men cam alle discomfyted / They sette fyere on the castel, & they them self fledde / But the hermyns and the other eristen men of whom were 16 many in the castel recouuerd the fortresse / and yielded it to oure men whan they cam. This daye were slayn of the turkes moo than / ij / thousand? / They toke .v / C / heedes of them that were best arrayed, And brought with them in signe of vctorye. They 20 war there wel a / M / horses for Armes, grete and myghty, whereof they had grete nede. Thus retorne they to theyr lodgys charged ful of prayes of armures & of dispoylles, makyng grete ioye, and thankyng oure lord that had comforted 1 them in theyr mescases.  

21 How the turkes of Anthyoche 2 sprange out 3 and assayled the lodgys of oure peple. Capitullo Cii:°

The conflict was great and fierce.

2 Orig. Anthyoche.  3 Orig. ont.  4 Orig. incontinent.
The Christians victorious in another Skirmish. [Ch. CIV.

were not yet comen agayn in to thooste. 1 They assayled them moche asprely and harde / so longe that somme of them that were in the playnes within the towne wente vpon the towres and vpon the walles, by cause that our 2 men that fought 3 shold be abasshed by 4 theoccasion of theyr peple that shold come 1 / And as theyr peple approched the turkes / they apperceyued that the other that they abode / were discomfytéd, by cause our men cam ioysously with alle theyr despylyes. Thene acros the sorow grete thurgh alle the 8 town. Our men approched the towne / And dyde do throwe ij. C / heedes of the turkes that they had brought with engyns in to the cyte for to make them certayn of theyr victorye, And yet to thende that they shold not forgete theyr sorowe that was entred in to theyr 12 hertes. The other ij C / that were lefte they pyght them on stakes at the foote of the walles / And sette there men for to keppe them / By cause they shold be alwey in theyr syght. whan they cam to the defence / the nombre of them that were discomfytéd 16 were / xxvij / M. Thus 4 were somme grete turkes taken & brought prisoners / This was don in feuerer the / vj / day the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord / M / lxxxvij. 0.

Of a castel that our men made of somme pylygryms 20 that arryued at the porte, and how they were discomfytéd by a bussement of turkes / cap. 0. Ciiiij 0.

1—1 Caxton has exactly followed his original here, which is very faulty; A. gives the correct reading: "Durament c il assailirent, et longement, tant que cil qui estoient sur les beastes les virent, lors leur furent signe quil s'en retur-
nassent, en il voient venir gens. Cil entrerent en la ville, et monterent sur les tors, et sur les murs par connaistre si c estoit leur gent qui venoient." Lat. "pene duo dic nostri gravissima intulerunt certamina, quosque de superiori-
bus civilitates significabantibus cæcubitis nostrorum adventum in urbem se receiperunt, ubi super turres et moenia et loca eminentiora constabili adventare gudem consid-ent legiones ignari, tamen nostrorum an suorum essent, castra que accedrent." 2 Orig. our. 2 Orig. fought. 4 Orig. Thus. 5 Orig. Buymont.
& ordyned, so was it made without taryeng: and valyant men and hardy were sette in this fortresse largely. theme was alle 
thoost assured as they had ben within the walles of a good Cyte / 4 The 1 siege had endured theme. v. monethes / A shippe of genewes 
cam theder, whiche had brought pyrgyems and vytaylles. they 
aryned at the porte, & sett them in the Ryner of helle, as it 
falleth in to the see / they had sente ofte messagers in to the hoost / 
8 that they shold fetche them by som of the grete barons, with so 
good company that they myght be sauffly conduyted in to thoost, 
they of the town had themne apperceyued that messagers wente and 
cam fro the shippe in to thoost / And sente out men, that sleye 
12 somme of them; And therfor durst none goo more without grete 
companye. Our barons had aduyseyd to make a grete fortresse at 
themde of the brydge, in a mahomme ye 2 / that the turkes had, and 
wold sett men of armes there for 3 to kepe and defende thyssue of 
16 the brydge, yt the turkes wolde come / But by cause that there 
were peple yssued out of thoost for to goo to the ship, were chosen 
somme of the barons, which shold goo and fetche them, for they 
were peple that were goo for to here tydynge of theyr contrees / 
20 and wold hane comen agayn, but they durst not. therto was chosen 
buymont / the Erle of tholouse, Euerard du puysat, And therle 
garnyer of greece, whiche also shold conduyte the messagers of the 
calyphe vnto the port of the see, and at retornyng shold brynge 
24 agayn and conduyte them of thoost / they of Anthyche herd saye 
that the sayld Barons were departed ffo thoost, and descended toward the see / And sent out four / M / knyghtes 4 of the moost 
noble that they had, for to lye in a wayte at theyr retornyng. It 
28 happe that the fourth day that our men sette them on the way for 
to retorn, and brought Armures and many horses laden with 
vytaylles and other thynges / And toke none heed of them that 
laye in a wayte / The turkes brake sodenly on them / And surprised 
32 our men at a paas. The erle of tholouse had the vaward 5 / And 
Buymont cam after. The erye began moche grete. 6 when the 
Turkes sawe thyse noble men, they held them al stylle 6 / And 

1 After city Caxton has omitted "Car devers Orient estoit celle garnison 
venue. Devers midi les murs de la palus qui costoient le mar. Devers occident 
et devers bis le gardeit le fleuve, qui se espandoit vers la mer."
2 Fr. Mahomerie, Lat. "ubi crat quoddam eorum superstitionis oratorium."
3 Orig. sor. 4 Orig. knyghtes. 5 Fr. l'avantgare.
6-6 Fr. "quand les Turc zindrent, les proudhommes se tindrent tout 
coyement."
began teneigne the peple on foote, that they shold holde them to gydre. They of the grete affraye that they herde, for drede that they had, hydde them in the busses, and fledde in to the montayne and woodes, and toke none heed to that they brought / when our barons sawe this, they newe wel that theyr strethre was not lyke theyres, And began to come to the lodgys dylygently with as many men as they myght condyyte. The other, that wold not folowe, ne myght not, were alle there slayn / there were slayn 8 wel of men and wymmen to the nombre of iij C. / this duryng tydynges cam to the hoost, that alle they that were comyng were al slayn & put to deth by the turkes, that had espyed them / Of the barons2 them self, that conduyyed them, was not known3 12 whether they were a lyue or deead. the due Godeffroy, that was not ydde, had grete anguyssh in his herte for the peple of our lord that was thus lost, And lete do crye that alle men shold arme them in thoost on peyne of deth / and that none shold abyde behynde 16 in so grete a werke / alle assembled, & passed the brygge of the shippis / and they made .v / bataylles / robert, due of Normandy, lad that one ; The .ij / lad thelke of Flauadres / the thyrdr, huon le mayne / The forth, Eustace / brother to the due4 Godeffroy / And 20 the due4 hym self had the fythe. when they were all ordelayned, the due4 called them ; And alle they heryang, sayde in this manere / "Fayr lordes, yf it be tronthe thus as the tydynges reme, that for oure5 synunes thise cruel houndes and fals / hane6 slayn so valyuant 24 men, and of so grete counseyl, whom ye sente to the see side / And with them be perysshed also our felows, whom they shold hane conduyyd / I see not but of two wayes that one / or that we deye with them as good cristien men in this world, and certeyn to recyue 28 the reward of Ihesu Criste, whom we shal serue vnto the deth / Or yf oure lord wyll that oure seruyce be to hym acceptable / that we take vengeance on these mastysf, that hane thus empayred cristience, and endommaged and destroyed these valyuant men. As for 32 my self, I saye to you8 certaynly / I had leuer to deye presently, than to lyue without to be aungemenge on them / Now understonde ye what I shal saye to you; me semeth that these turkes, yf they have the victorye vpon oure men, as it is sayde / they shal be now 36 mounted in grete pride / And by grete bobance, for to angre vs, wyl come to the cyte / And brynge theyr proyes and fardeyllys to fore

1 Godfrey
2 Orig. barons.
3 Orig. known.
4 Orig. due.
5 Orig. oure.
6 Orig. synunes.
7 Orig. hane.
8 Orig. you.
vs / And ye shal wel see that they shal not kepe them wel in 
ordenaunce, but shal goo folyly ; And this shal be grete auantage to 
vs / Therfore, 1 by my counseyll, yf it be so / that^ we hold^ vs al 
4 redy for to doo the seruyse of oure lord, for whiche we departed 
oute of oure countrees / late vs have in hym stedfast hope, for he 
2'guerdonneth right wel his souldyours / when our enemyes shal 
come to vs, late vs recyue them vygourously with glaynes / speres 
8 and^ swerles / late everyche of you remembre wel in his herte of the 
wrongs and shame that they hane don oure lord, and^ to oure self.” 
This worde, that the duc sayde, was wel vnderstande of alle / And 
plesyd them merueyllously well. They began to warne eche other, 
12 and somone to doo well / As 3 there they knewe to gydre, And 
there helde them al redy / And^ thenne buymont arnyued, & cam 
emong them / And^ a lytil whyle after cam therle of tholouse : And 
ythey tolde to them of theyr mesaunture. They had moche grete 
16 ioye of their comyng, and that they were escaped / They moche 
comforted eche other / And after sayd 4 to them the counseyl of duc 
godeffroy / They arcored therto / and sayd that it ought so to be 
do; And^ so abode there alle they to gydre / Ancan, Capytayn of 
20 the Cyte, by thysse semblances that he sawe, knewe that his peple 
had discomfyted the oures. Moche doubted he of theyr comyng 5 
agayn, by cause that our men were yssued ayenst them / therfor he 
dyde do crye in the toun / that alle men shol 6 arme them and^ 
24 come to the yate of the brydge, for to be redy in araye for to 
socoure their peple, yf nee were / Our men had sente their espynes 
and their courreurs in dyuerse partys, for tenquyre and^ knewe 
when the turkes shold come, and fro what parte.

28 Of a batayll, where our men auenged them of the 
turkes / and of a stroke that duc godeffroy gaf 
in this bataylle. 

1 T was not longe after, but whyles as they taryed there, and 
32 had theyr hertes desryung to doo prowesse, yf they had tyme 
and place, that theyr messagers arnyued alle rennyng, whiche tolde 
to them that the turkes were nygh / They began to recomande them 
self to oure lord, and^ wente forward in theyr bataylles like as they 
36 were ordeyned 7 / when they sawe tyme and place, they smote theyr 

1—1 Fr. “Pour ce c'est mon conseil, si vous voiez qu'il soit bon, que,” etc. 
3 Fr. “si comme ilz se cognossoient.”
hors with theyr spores / And cam to so fiersly that the turkes were al abasshed / thenne they began to smyte asprely on the right syde and lyft, And flewe in to the presse in suche wyse that euer man wold be the best and moost valyant / in so moche that they gaf 4 to theyr enemyes no leyser to adnyse them what they shold doo / They myght not endure the grete strengthe of oure men / but wold haue drawn toward the brydge / 1But the duc godeffroy / that moche knewe of suche thynge, was 2 poureued therof to fore / And 8 had taken a lytil territorio, which was ayenst the brydge / And there he helde hym in his bataylle / Alle the turkes that they chaced toward hym / he slewe them, or he made retorne ayenst them fro whens they cam, where they slewe them alle and hewe 12 them / the erle of filamuúres dyde right wel this day, as a good, valyant & handy man in armes / the Duc of Normandy brak the presse, that no turke durst 3 approche hym / the Erle of tholouse hym self wold aneuce this / that they had made hym to spore his 16 hors the daye to fore / honon le mayne forgate no to shewe of what lynguage he was, and of what contre 4 but 5 semeid that he dyde to his enemies / that alle the werke and charge had ben his / thenne eustace, brother of duc godeffroy; Bawdyw, erle of benawd / 20 hughe, thele of seynt pou I And alle the other barons, knyghtes and noble men, in theyr countrees dyde meruaylles of armes, ther was neuer man lyuyng that sawe ony werk better enterprised and more valyantly achiuyd, and that communely of alle / Auncean 24 sawe this bataylle so grete / 6 And sawe his peple yssue out 7 for to gyue them herte and courage 8 / And to put awaye theesperance of theyr flyght, commanunde to shette the yates after them. they cam pryckyng ayenst our men / & wold hane made theyres to 28 retornne whiche were discomfyted, but the affraye and the drede was so grete in them that they neuer made semblant therto / they them self, that frely cam on, whan they sawe the provesses of oure men,

2 Fr. "s'estoit par avant moult preve," i.e. he had thoroughly prepared himself in advance.
3 Orig. durst.
4 Caxton is very obscure here, although he seems to have understood his French. Fr. "aunois sembloit à ce qu'il faisait sur ses ennemis que toute la besoign estoit si nue," viz. it seemed, to judge from what he did to his enemies, that the whole burden of the fight lay on him.
5 Orig. but.
6-9 Fr. "si fist ces gens issir hors, et pour enle donner cruc." Caxton seems to have read vist (saw), instead of fist (made).
7 Orig. out.
and the 1 grete strokes that they gaf, torned theyr backes with the other / no neuer made grete resistance / there was the fyghtyng grete, and merueylous2 betyng3 down of the turkes, that men myght
not but with grete Payne passe / ther was so grete noyse, so grete
crye, & so terryble mehyng4 of horses oueral, that a man shold not
have herd thondre. they that had made the yates to be shette
after them, 5 were ofte this day in peryl to lose their lyues,6 the
8 wyues of the turkes, the maydzens and feble peple of the town, were
vpon the walles and tourettes, where they sawe theyr peple torn to
meschyef and to destruction / ye may wel thynke that they had
grete sorowe / wepynge, and moche crye and noyse. wel cursed
12 they that tyme, that they so longe had lyued that they shold see
suche meschyef happen to them / Ancean sawe that he loste alle his
men, and had none hope for to recouere them / commanded7 that
that yate shold be opene for to receyue in to the town them that
16 were lefte / when the turkes sawe the yate opene / they had so
4 grete wylle to entre in to the town / that vpon the brydge they
pressyd so euyl for haste, that they fylle in to the water of them
grete plente. The Due Godeffroye, that al that day had so wel
20 don, And whan it cam for to departe to fore the bridge / he gaf a
strook8 moche valyant / and suche one / that it shal perpetuallly
and euermore be spoken of in wele and in honour / for I trauw
ther happen neuer none suche to fare / ne neuer shal happen here
24 after. There were this daye many heedes smeten of / Armes and
sholders at one stroke / he wel apperceyued9 one of his enemies,
whiche helde hym nygh to Godeffroye, And annuenced hym ofte, and
pyned10 to greue hym / The valyant Due smote hym with his
28 swerde by suche myght and vertue, that he smote hym in two
pyeaces in the myddle / in suche wyse that the ouerste part of hym
fyl to the ground11 / And that other parte abode styll syttyng on the
hors / whiche entred12 in to the Cyte with the other / And knewe
32 ye certaynly that this sayd Turke was armed with a good hauberk,
and moche stronge / Alle they that sawe this merueyle / were
gretely abasshed; And the Turkes them self had grete fere and
dred. 5O mercyful God, what myght and strength theyz thou
36 to thy seruauntes, that haue their fayth and truste in the / Suche a
stroke hath not6 be herd of to fore this tyme5 / That same daye

1 Fr. sentirent, left out by Caxton. 2 si omitted.
3-5 Fr. "furent à maints, le jour, perdre les vives," he caused many, that
day, to lose their lives." 5-5 Inserted by Caxton. 6 Orig. not.
The Turks suffer great Loss. [Ch. CVI.

they of Anthoche loste moo than two thousand men. And ye the nyght had not comen so sone on, they shold haue ben so ensebled of men / that with payne shold they haue come holden and kept the town ayenst our men. It seemed wel that at the brydge were 4 many Turkes slayn, for it was thycke there of deede bodyes. The ryuer that descended to the see / was alle blody vnto the See / Somme Cristen men of the londe yssued oute of the town, And cam to our peple / that told them that xij / grete admyrals had the 8 Turkes loste in the bataylle / For whom they were ouermoche sorrowful; For they were so endommaged / that neuer in theyr lyf shold they be therof restored.

How the Cristen men thanked our lord of this 12 vyctorye / And made a Castel in theyr mahomemerye, where there they fonde grete gayne.

Capitullo Cvj°

1t He next day, whan the daye was wel cleer, the barons 16 asembled alle, for humblly to thanke our lord of the victorey that he had gyuen to them; And after, spak of the comyn besynes. Comynly was deuysed and acorced of alle / that there shold be made a tour, as they had enterprysed at thende of the brydge, for 20 to take away the yssue fro them of the town / And for to kepe and warante our peple whan they ranne to fore it / There had the Turkes buryed by nyght the dede men that had ben slayn in the bataylle to fore / whan the peple afoote knewe this, they ranne, 24 And there unburyed them / And toke them out of theyr sepultures and grazes / And toke and bare away Gold / Syluere / And theyr robes, the whiche they had buryed with them in their sepultures, after theyr custome / They of the town had moche sorrowe, by 28 cause they sawe to fore theyr eyen the corses taken vp of theyr frendes, whiche they had buryed with grete costes and despenses. And it displeysed them moche that the nombe of theyr deed men shold be knowne / whom they had supposed to hawe kepte secrete / 32 for without that fylle in the floode or Ryuer, And without them that were buryed in the toune / And them that were hurt vnto the deth, and buryed in the toune, were taken vp oute of theyr grazes in the mahomerye a thousand and fyn hundred. 36 They smote of thre hundred heddes, and sente them to Themperour, for to late hym hawe certayn tydylynes of the bataylle that they had.
Ch. CVII.] The Barons make a strong Fortress. 163

ayenst the turkes / The messengers of the Calyph of Egypte were not yet departed fro thens. And when they sawe this, they were joyous of the deth of theyr enemies / But they were alway after afered, and dred oure peple / There were many of oure owne men that had fledde in to the woodes and montaygnes, whiche after returned in to thoooste / There cam many in to thoooste / that men supposed had ben deed / the barons commanded that the fortresse 8 shold be made, & adresseyd moch hye and stronge, hastily. It was made of such stones as they drewe out of the tombes & sepultures of the turkes / & after, the barons began to aduyse to whom the kepnyng of this tour shold be deleynerd, which was fayr & strong; &

2 to forr was made a dyche, moche depe. ther were Barons ynowe, which excused them by many reasons why they myght not kepe it / But the valyant Erle of Tholouse pronffred hym self / And prayde that it myght be deleynerd to hym ffor to gouerne / ffor by the grace of God he shold kepe it wel / Alle the Barons coude hym moche good thancke / And by this recouerd he the grace and loue of the comyn peple / whiche he had alle loste / ffor fro the somer to forr, by thoccasion of a sekenes and maladye that he had / he had don 20 none aunanement of ony werkes and neles of the hoost.4 Everyche of the other barons had don his power / But he dyde right nought / therfore thenpyre coude hym thank / ffor it was supposed that he was the rychest. but for tentreprise of this thyng, they sayd wel 24 alle that he was not a ferd, ne cuyll. And on that other syde, yet he dyde more, ffor he leyd out v / C / marck weyght of syluer in the hand of the Bisshop of puy, and other good men, for to helpe to restore the dommages of the horses that the poure men had taken in the bataylle. there were many after, that were the more hardy for to goo ayenst theyr enemies, for hope to haue, and recouere theyr horses / ffor thys thynges was therle of tholouse moche lonyd and preeyset, in so moche that they calyd hym fader 32 and wardeyn of thoooste.

Of a fortresse that Tancre made ouer the Ryuer and deffended it valyautly. capitulo C / vij°

1 Orig. ayeust. 3 Orig. recouerd.

4-4 Fr. "s'estoit si forfait (var. "soustrait," which is the correct reading), de toutes les besonges de l'est." Lat. "Nam ab aequa praeterrita, per totem insequentem hyenem, occasione euisdom aegritudinis, ilia remissus jacuerat, et pene tuiditis."
By this new fortress, the Turks were kept from going in and out of the town.

They decided to build a second fortress.

Tholouse sterte forth to three fore / and gaf to hym an / C / mareck of syluer for to make it with. And it was ordeyned that he shold 20 haue every moneth xl marke of the commune. Tancre, whiche was moche valyaut and wyse, dyde do make this tour, in a lytil tertre nygh ynowgh to the gate, and after recyued it in to his warde and kepyng. And god gaf to hym so moche worship / that he loste 24 nothyng / But kepte it al hool vnto the ende of the siege. In the syde bynethe by the Ryuer was a moche fayr playne in whiche habounded many fayr pastures / And grete plente of trees a / iij / or four myle fro the Cyte. They of the town by cause they had not 28 pastures ynowgh / they had sente grete plente of theyr horses and mounture in to that place / whan they of thoost apperecyued it / They assembled knyghtes ynowe and other valyaut men of Armes / And wente theder / but not by the right waye / but by 30 pathes and hyth wyues, so longe that they assayled them that kept them and slewe them. They brought in to the hoost / iij / M. horses for men of Armes grete gente, and fayr / besyde the mules and other beestes, wherof they had largely. Of this gayne had 36 they grete ioye / for they had of nothyng so grete nede in thoost as of horses / for they had ben mynnysshed moche and lassed in the batayle / And many dyed that tyme for hungre and mescase.
How thenne the turkes of the toun began to haue mesease and sorowe / And our peple ease /

Capitulno Cviij?

4 t  Han\(^1\) the Cyte was thus on alle sydes assyeged that the turkes myght not issue oute / they began within to haue mesease, for the Turkes had not vytyll\(^2\) ynowgh,\(^2\) whereof it happe\(^2\)d that they myght not helpe them in theyr neede / ifresshe mete [flylle\(^2\)] them, whiche greuyg\(^2\) them moche / Our men had bandoon to goo vnto the Porte of the See / \(^3\)By whiche they had so moche to suffre as they had\(^3\) endured all the wynter\(^3\) / for the pryme\(^4\) temps and swete tyme was come in suche wyse that shippes myght goo and 12 come by the See / whiche brought vytylles ynowgh. There were many of oure people that ha\(^5\) d soiourned\(^5\) all the wynter in the Townes, whiche thenne cam agayne in to thoostte alle fressh & wel armed. / bawdwyn the brother of duc Godeffroy / of whom ye haue wel her\(^6\) speke to fore / whiche ha\(^6\)d so moche rychesse / had herd tydynges\(^5\) that the barons \(^6\)had suffred many meseases in thoost / And sente to them alle grete yeftes and presentes / not only to the grete prynces / But also to the moyen peple / And to the leste gaf he also ynowgh of his owen, wherfor had the lune & grace of alle this companye / he gaf to his brother the Duc alle thysusses of his londe that he ha\(^6\)d on this syde the Ryuer of Eufrates / with whiche he gaf to hym the Cyte of torbesel & the 24 contre ther about\(^7\) wherein was moche whele / wyne & oyle. And yet aboue at this he gaf to hym / L / M. besauntes / And\(^8\) there was a noble man of hermonye whiche was named\(^8\) Nyceose, whiche was wel aequyented with bawdwyn. And for his lune sente vnto 28 duc Godeffroy a panyllon, the moost fayr and moost ryche, that myght o wber be seen / It was of ouer strawnge facion and meruellously grete / But when his messagers bare it in to the hooste\(^8\) / One pancerase a moche ryche man of Hermonye / Of whom I haue 32 spoken to fore, dyde do espye them by the waye / And\(^8\) dyd\(^8\) to take

---

1 Fr. Quand.  
2-2 Fr. "car leurs chevaux n'avoient mie assez viandes—" for their horses —(not "the Turks") had not food enough.  
3-3 Fr. "dout ils n'avoient mais tel souffre comme ilz aroient endurir tous l'yeur." Lat. "Nude et ni castris ex parte plurima relevata erat illu vicitus inopia qua periculose minis per totam hyemem laboraverat exercitus."  
4 Fr. doulx temps, spring time.  
5 Orig. tydynges.  
6 Orig. about.  
7 Orig. haoste.
Duke Godfrey gets back his Pavilion. [Ch. CIX.

it from them. And after sente the panyllon to Buymont. And was presented to hym in his name, when the seruantes of Nycose cam to Duc godeffroy / And had tolde hym alle this that panercase had don to hym / he had therof moche grete desdayne / Syth he stole with hym the Erle of sfiandres, to whom he had more lone and aqueyntaunce than to any other of the barons / And wente to buymont and demaundede his panyllon that was gyuen to hym / Buymont answerede that therof he knewe not / that it was longyng 8 to hym / for a noble man of the coutrere had gyuen it to hym. But when he knewe that the duc wold not suffre it / By hys curtosye and atte prayer and requeste of the other barons he rendred and delyned to him his sayd panyllon, to thende that no noyse 12 shold sourde ne arryse betwene them and myght lette the werke of oure lord / Thus were they good frendes / Many men merneylde them how that so valyaunt a man as the Duc godeffroy was / In whom was no thynge founden to be reprehended was so meuyd / 16 ayenst so hye and noble a man for so lytil a thynge as was a panyllon. Xe I can see none other reason, But that a noble herte maye not suffre shame / And it was late hym understande that it shold be to hym a grete shame / And also it shold be ayenst his honour ye 20 he suffred it to be taken away from hym, for couetsyse he dyde it not /

How the Erle Estyeuen of Chartres and of Bloys fledde fro the hooste shamefully / Capitulo Cix. 24

It was reported that the Soudan of Persia was coming with a vast army.

Steven, Earl of Chartres and Blois,

left the Crusaders, and went to Alexandria the Lesse.

1 H. 76, bk.
2 fr. se fist malade, fell ill.
or ellys hool / Thus he departed and 1akè away with hym grete good / & with hym departed .iiiij/M. men, which were of his companye and of his countreye, he wente strayt in to Alexandrye 4 the lasse / And there helde hym to thende / that yf our peple had vyctoyre of the bataylle whiche they awayted dayly, he wold retornne in to thooost as guarysshyl and hool of his maladye; and yf it had meshappef them, anon he wold hane entred in to shippis 8 whiche were all redy for to retornne in to his country / Of this thynge all the barons of thoooste were so abashed & angry that they wepte hoote teereis for pyte, that they had of so huy and noble man that toke none hede to his gentilnesse,1 to his wytte / ne to 12 the worshippe that men dyde to hym / But departed so enyl in poynt / (25) that many men haèd no shame to withdrawe them after hym / Thus departed many / The Barons had counseyl to gydre / And dyde do crye thurgh the hooste, that noman shold be so hardy 16 to departe withoute lenè / for yf ony wente, they shold be holden for muryrere, And Iustyce shold be doon to suche men / By this ordenaunce for tescewe the payne and for to kepe theyr honour they held them in peas in thooost / And obeyed alle in pecs in the 20 hooste, And obeyed debonayrly to the barons of thoooste, 2 As Monkes or Cloysters to theyr Abbot, withoute departing ony of theyr company.2

How a Cristen man, Emyrferius, whiche was in An-
hythoche, 3acqueynted hym with Buymont /

cæ, Cx.  

a Nhythoche, this holy cyte that I haue spoken of to fore, was connected by the prechynge of seynt peter thapostle / 28 alway it helde wel this fayth, and yet holdeth certaynly, god be thanked. Whan the disloyalte and falsenes of mahomet ran thurgh thoroyent this cyte wold neuer4 receyvé his lawe,5 and whan the myghty men of the countrc wold constrayne them by force to this 32 enyl lawe, they defended them well ayenst alle suche, wherof it happened that whan the denyl had sette this false bylue thurgh alle the londe of Perse vnto the braas of seynt George / and fro Inde vnto spayne / this cyte abode alway in the fayth of the trouthe of 36 Ihesu Criste / Trouthe it is that fourten yere to fore that our peple

1 Fr. "sa gentillesse," etc., to his rank, etc.
2 2 Fr. "comme moines cloistriers a leur ale, sans partir nullement de leur compagnie."
3 Orig. neuer.
4 Fr. loi, religion, faith.
The Christians had no power in the city, but were ruled by the Turks.

There was among the Christians a noble family of Armenians, The eldest was called Emerferius.

He sent messengers to Bohemond to [6 ff. 77, bk.] reveal to him the plans of the Turks in the city.

cam theder / the grete Soudan of Perse had conquird alle the londes vnto Anthyoche / And by cause they were not myghty to hold it ony lenger, they yelded it under the puyssaunce of this grete man. Thenne after cam ourc men for tassiege it. Almost alle they of the 4 toune helde the fayth of oure lord. But withoute faylle they had no power ne noo seygnorye in the cyte, ffor they medled of nothyng sauf theyr craftes and theyr merchaundyses to wynne theyr breed / the turkes had the bataylles / and wente to armes whan it was 8 uede. 1 ther was none so hardy of the cristen men that durst arme hym / and specially synth our peple cam to fore the toune The cristen men that were therin were holden suspect that they durst not yssue ne goe oute of theyr howses / there were many of suche cristen men 12 that were of grete lygnage, to whom was don moche shame. there was a lygnage of noble men that were heremyens. They were named in theyr langage Bam and Cyrra2 / that is to saye the 3 sones of haubergers / And for certeyn of the same langage were descended 16 theyr lygnages, and yet ben ther somme that make hauberks / they had a toure whiche was named the toure of the two sustres. In this toure were / ij / brethren that were lords of this lygnage. The oldest 4 had to Name Emerferius,5 a moche sage and prudent man / 20 Acqueynted he was and pryue with the lord of the toune, in suche wyse that he had made hym his notarye within the palays / This man herde men speke moche good of Buymont fro the begynnynge of the siege. And wel understode by the comyn renommee that he 24 was a wyse man, And trewe of grete herte and enterpryse / There fore he sente to hym his Messager / And acqueynted with hym moche pryuely, and lete hym knowe alle the beyng & state of the Cyte / and the purpos of the turkes / but they were bothe two 28 wysemen, therfor coude they wel couere theyr counntenannes / There were but few peple about buymont that knewe hym.

1—1 Mistranslation owing to corrupt original. A. gives the correct reading. "Les Turcs avoient les baillis et aloient as armes quant mestier estoit," "The Turks possessed all administrative power, and went to war when necessary." Lat. "solis Turcis et infidelibus militare libeat, et majores civitatis administrare dignatas."

2 B. gives "Bam and Cyrra," followed by Caxton. A. gives Bar. zarra.

3 "sons of the cuirass makers." Lat. "Qui diecibatur Beni Ferra, quod in lingua latina interpretatur, filii loricatoris."

4 Orig. oldesce.

5 Fr. Emirferius. Lat. Emirferus.
Of somme denyses that the sayd Emyrferius sente to buymont, & in what maner he acorded to delyuer to hym the toun.

4 s Even monethes had tho endure\textsuperscript{1} the siege to fore the toun / Buymont the wyse and subtil / had\textsuperscript{2} many tymes essayed\textsuperscript{3} his frende of the toun / how the cyte myght be yolden to the cristen men. So ofte he sente to hym by his sone that sayd thus to hym 8 in this manere / "fayre swete syre, I trowe certaynly that our lord\textsuperscript{4} Ihesu Criste wold that I had\textsuperscript{5} this acqueyntaunce with you and this lone; 1\textsuperscript{6} for euer syth I haue be acqueynted with you, myn herte neuer rested to drawe and acorde every day more and more in your bonnte,\textsuperscript{1} and\textsuperscript{7} your maner plesyd me moche / I haue veray ferme & fast hope that I and the myne shal be yet in tyme comyng moche holpen and honoured by you\textsuperscript{2} of this thynge that ye haue delyuerid to me / of which I haue ben merueyllously 16 pensyf / syth I haue herd\textsuperscript{8} of it / I haue moch counterseyd\textsuperscript{9} the ways of that one side and of that other, flor I thynke wel certeynly that yf I may delyuer my countrye to the peple that ben enemies of oure lord,\textsuperscript{10} and rendre\textsuperscript{11} and delyuere it to the seygmorye of my 20 fayth, I shal haue grete guerdon of oure lord\textsuperscript{12} and grete honour in the world / But yf it so happed thus that this werke were discovered that I haue enterprised, to fore er it cam to an ende or conclusion / I shold be delyuern to alle the tormentes of the world / 24 & alle my lygynage effaced\textsuperscript{13} and destroyed, that it neuer shold be spoken of after. 4\textsuperscript{14} And\textsuperscript{15} neuerthales many thynes be put in aduenture,\textsuperscript{4} therfore I wylle discouere to you alle my herte, as to hym that I holde\textsuperscript{16} for a trewe frende / yf the barons that be in your companye wylle graunte as trewe men as they be, that this Cyte shal be youres for euermore and your heyres yf it may be conquerd / 5 I shal put me in aduenture\textsuperscript{5} so that I shal delyuer to you this tour that I holde / whiche is moche strong and wel garnysshed / And 32 this I shal doo for goddes lone and\textsuperscript{17} yours / But yf they entende that every men shal haue his part / as of thynge goten by warre /

1—1 Fr. "Car onques puis que je fus de vous accointe, ne me fiai le cuer de" 2 Orig. yon. 3 Fr. contre pensées, carefully weighed.
4—1 Fr. "et neant moins de plusieurs choses se met l'en aventure"—viz. "in several respects great risks are to be run."
5—5 Fr. "je me mettrai en aventure." "I will take the risk on myself (i.e. of delivering the city to you)."
Bohemond reveals this Offer to the other Princes. [Ch. CXII.

therupon wyl I not labour ne doo payne / ffor I wote neuer to what ende it sholde come. therfor I pray you, fayr swete syre and trew frende, that ye put you in denoyr & payne that this town be youre / not for conetyse, but for the prouffyt of the cyte Cristen / & I promyse to you that the day that I shal knowe that it shal be thus graunte to you, I shal delyuer to you the entree of the town. Allway one thynge I saye to you for certayn, that ye if it be not mayde within short tyme that ye shal neuer day of the world 8 reconere it / ffor every day come to the lord of this town lettres and messagers certeuyeng that they that come to socoure the town ben about the ryuer of eufrates whiche is not ferre / And they ben wel a ij / C / M / men of Armnes. ye if they come an you on that one syde / And they of the Cyte on that other / ye may not suffre ne withstande them / but ye shal be alle deed or taken / And theryfor take ye here vpon hasty counseyl."

How buynmont discouerid this thynge to duc godeffroy, 16 to huon the mayne, to the duc of Normandye, and to therle of filaundres / Capitulo / C / xij. Ro the day that buynmont 2 had herd this / he began tenquyre 3 moche subtylly and examy the herettes of the barons / And 20 demaundd them otherwhytle what they wold doo with this Cyte ye it were taken / Of the answer somme of them thought that it was fer of / Therfore taryed buynmont to discouer his herte and his thought till he sawe better his poynt and tyme / neuertheless he 24 drewe a part duc godeffroy, huon de mayne, the duc of normandy, and therle of filaundres. To them he sayde that he trusted so moche in our lord, that ye the cyte myght be graunte d to hym it myght be wel in short tyme conquerd. They acconed it and moche 28 presyd in theyr courage the wytte of this man that had in wylle to accomplyshe so grete a thynge / By the accord of them this thynge was discouerid to therle of thoulouse / he answered that he wold neuer ye the Cyte were taken / gyue his partie to another man / The 32 barons prayd hym moche, but he wold not consente thereto for nothyng / Therfor the thynge was in suche daunger / that almost the thynge was alle losse / ffor Buynmont put not the payne / ne his frende of the town wold not but ye the town sholde be alle his. 36 Neuertheless for alle this, Buynmont sente to hym ofte grete yeftes for

2 Orig. buynmont. 3 Orig. tenquyre.
Ch. CXIII.] Corbagat collects a great Army. 171
to kepe hym in acqueyntaunce and in the loue that was begonne bytwene them.

Of the grete socours that the Soudan of perse had 4
sent to them of anthyoche, and how Corbagat [2 if. 78, bk.] assyeged rages / capitulo / Cxiiij?

In the whyle that this thynges ran thus in Anthyoche / the messages that fro Ancean were goon to the soudan of perse 8 for to demande ayde / were returned as they that had wel don their thynges, for that grete prynce atte requeste of them of Anthyoche, And atte prayer of his men, had enterprysed to efface and destroye alle our pylgrymys that theder were comen / And ther-
fore he sente theder grete plente of Turkes and of cordyns in to this countre / And had delyenyrd all the seychnorye and gouneraunce of the hooste to one his acqueynted / for he trusted moche in his wytte / in his loyalte / and in his prowesse / This man was named 16 Corbagat, he commaunded alle men to obeye to hym. he sente lettres pendants overal his londes, and commaunded that they shold be delyenyrd ouer all. that where he shold lede them / that they shold goo / And alle that he commaunded them they shold 20 doo without contradiction / he departed fro his countre with alle his peple and his power / he passed so ferre that he cam in to the countre of rages / Ther was told to hym that one of the barons of fraunce helde the Cyte of Rages which he had conquest, and alle 24 the londe aboute it. He had therof grete despyte / and sayd to fore and er he passed the Ryuer of Eufrates / he shold take the towne and destroye alle the frensshemen that he shold fynde within / Bawdwyn was not of lityl courage, And had wel herd tydnyngs of 28 this peple / he had wel garnysshed his Cyte with armes, vytaylles, and noble men / And doubted but lytil his comynge / ne the men-
aces, ne the grete wordes of thyse peple that were reporte to hym / Corbagat commaunded that the cyte of rages shold be assiged / And 32 after dyde do crye to assault / grete peyne dyde they, wenyng to have taken the cyte and alle them that were therin / But they that kept the towne defiended them moche wel, in suche wyse that they en-

1 Orig. acqueyntaunce.
2 Fr. besongnes, duties.
3 Lat. Cudinorum.
4 Fr. "na sien avinte," one of his trusted friends.
5 Fr. lettres pendants, letters with hanging seals.
dommage no moche them that were without, And they within loste no thynge. They helde them about the town thre wekes, he haft no worship ne prouffyt there. At laste the grete and noble men of thoost cam to hym / And sayde and counseyled hym to departe 4 fro the siege / for he ought fyrst do that thynge for whiche he cam / that is to saye, for to take and slee alle them that were to fore Anthyoeche. And after in his retournyng in a morowtyde he shold haue the town of Rages. And Kawdwyn, ye he were not deed, 8 they shold take and bynde hym, And presente hym to theyr lord as a sheep or a moton. he acorded to theyr counseyl and departed fro them. But alwaye the taryng that the turkes had made sayd oure pylgryms / for the mater was not so acorded bytwene Buymont and his frende, that ye they had comen strayt to Anthyoeche / oure men had ben in ouer grete meschyf bytwene them that he brought / and the other turkes that were in the town.

How our men beyng aduertysed of the grete hooste of corbagat, sente somme of theyr knyghtes for to esteme them / And what they reported of that they had seen / ca. Cxiiiij:

He tydynges began strongly to growe of this people that cam / 20 And it was no merueyll ye they were efrayer in the hooste of the pylgryms / The barons assembled in counseyl / And ordeyned by conyn acord / that somme of theyr wysemen that understode / them in suche thynge as to esteme peple in the feld shold goo and knowe their conyne / to this were chosene Dreues de Nelle, Clarembault de venduel / Everard de cherrysy / & Renaud, therle of toul / They ledde with them other knyghtes, knowen and preuyd in Armes / they departed fro thoost so ferre, that they approached the turkes, whom they sawe and followed them fro fer / Neuertheles they wel apperceyued, that lyke as water reemeth in the see, cam fro alle partes grete rowtes and meruyllous plente of peple in this hooste of Corbagat. Thise noble men wente so ferr that they sawe and knewe alle theyr beyng and strengthe / And syth drewe them to the barons, and sayd to them the trouthe / The barons prayde and defenced them also, dere as they had the werk of oure lord / that they wold not desconere this thyng to the foote men of thoost

2 Orig. pilygrims. 3 Orig. brought. 4 Orig. aduertysed.

in no wyse / but kepe it secrete fro them / for it shold be grete peryll yf they knewe the trouth that they shold flee away by nyght / And be alle in despayr /

4 Of the counsayl that our peple toke for to ordyne theyr nedes when they knewe the comyng of this right grete hoost /

8 this werke laye, how they myght conteyne them in this greuous poynt in whiche they were / som ther were that gaf counsayl that they shold departe fro the siege / And that somme of them 2 on horsbak / and they on foote shold abyde for to kepe that 2 ff. 79, bk.]

12 they of the toun 3 shold not mowe ioyne to the other. And somme other the best horsed shold lede of them on foote a grete partye ayenst Corbagat, and fyght ayenst hym / The thyng was in grete doubte, And wyste not how to acorde. Buymont, whan he sawe them so surprised called the Duc Godeffroy, therle of fflaundres / Huon de mayne, the duc of normandy, & therle of tholouse / And syth sayd to them these wordes / “ffayr lorde, I see you in moche grete doubte, and it is no merueyl / for the comynge of this 20 puyssaunt man that cometh on vs and bryngeth with hym so grete plente of our enimyes. Ne ye be not yet acored in what maner ye shal attende, ne what shal be your countenaunce when he shal come / Ne I can not saye to you as me semeth thyng that by this 24 way may moche aunyelle / for yf we yssue alle ayenst the turkes / lyke as somme men counsaylle, somme in one partye / And that other to abyde / as other counsayl, we haue loste our payne and oure dispensc in the siege of this toun, ffor as some as we shal 28 departe fro hens, or alle, or halp / they that comen shal sende in to the toun grete plente of vytyalles, and fresshe men put in to it. yf noman abyde at the siefe this shal be good for them to doo. And yf ther abyde a parte they shal not leue for them. for whan we be 32 alle to gydre, vnanethe maye we constrayne them of the toun. thenne the feue that shal abyde / how may they han the force and myght ayenst them within / Therfor me thyneketh that we muste seche other remedye and counsayl, 4 that we may fynde maner how this 36 cyte maye be yolden to vs, And that we maye be within to fore er thysse turkes come. this shal be a more sure thyng / yf ye demannde

1 Orig. hooost. 3 Orig. tomm. 4 Orig. counsayl.
how this may be / I shal shewe you the way and manere how it shal wel be as me semeth / I haue a frende in this Cyte, a trewe man and wyse, after that I can apperecyue. we haue conenamnted,1 he and I to gydre, wherfor he ought to delyuer to me a tour moche strong and wel garnyssed of alle that nedeth, whiche he holdeth / when I shal demaunde hym / I muste gyue to hym thus doyng a grete partie of my good and hauoyr and franchyses and other alyannces muste kep to hym and hys. But this maye not be / but that eche of you gyue ouer his part to me, And quyte hym of ony part of the cyte, that it shal abyde to me & to myn heyres for euermore, ffor other wyse he entendeth not that shall delyuer hit. yf it plesse you, in this maner ye may haue the toon. And if 12 ye wil graunte this,2 I somone and warne you to fere in suche wyse, that thys conenamtes 3 be wel accomplisyed by godes grace / And yf it plesse you not / And ye maye fynde ony other maner, I am redy to quyte alle my parte to one of you / or to another of oure 16 companye / yf he wyll delyuer to vs the Cyte / And god knoweth It shal plesse me wel, And I shal be right joyous in good fayth."

How after that Buymont had declared his fayte to alle the hooste, they acorded that the toon shold be 20 his / sauf the Erle of Tholouse / Capitulio Cxvi7.

w Han the barons hent this / they had grete ioye in their hertes, and anon acorded to this that buymont requyred / every man graunted his part that he shold be quyte thereof, except only theire 24 of tholouse, whiche,4 in a reuerrye wheryn he was, sayde / that he wold not acuyte his part, ne gyue it ouer5 to noman luyynge. The other barons promysed certeuly to holde it / And gaf to hym theyr fayth that they shold not discouere it to noman / They prayd hym 28 that he wold wysely brynyge this mater aboute, And dylygently laboure accomplishe it / ffor grete peryll myght come in the taryeng of it / The counseyl departed / thus. This Buymont, which was wyse and trewe, spak to the messager6 that knewe theyr 32

1 Orig. conenamnted.
2-2 Caxton seems to have misunderstood his French text. Fr. "je le (i.e. Emir ferius) semonderai de conenances, telement que le chose seu bien accompli a l'aide Dieu," viz., I will summon him to keep his agreement, etc.
4 Fr. "qui pour une reverie on il estoit entre," i.e. who on account of a fit of obstinacy into which he had fallen.
5 Orig. ouer.
6 Lat. "Amicum solitum conuenit tranquili."
Eunyrrius arranges for the Surrernder.

Bohemond sent the messenger, summoning Emirfferius to fulfill his promise, and deliver up the town.

This same day, Emirfferius was especially wroth with one of the great eniers of the town.

He concealed his anger, but sent word to Bohemond that he should be ready that night.

Bohemond and the barons were joyous when they heard this message.

The barons, when they herd hym, were moche joyous / And \^ sayd/ that this counseyl was good and faythful, and of grete courage acorded therto /

1 Fr. "'quil avoit ja grant,'" viz. "who was now grown up."
2 B. jouoit avec sa mere. A. gisol avec sa mere. 4 Orig. semblaunt. 5 Orig. conenauntes. 6 Orig. abent. 7 Orig. Buymont. 8 Orig. And.
The people of Antioch were suspicious of Treachery. [Ch. CXVII.

How they of Anthyochè had fere of treason / And how they assembled in counseyl / And of that whiche Emýrferius deposed there at /

Capituló .C / xvij° 4

Ne thyn göp in this town / that is acustomed ofte to come in grete werkès / They that had the kepyng and charge of the town / began to have suspicion within theyr hertes, and denyned that the Cyte shold be by trayde / they knewe no reson ne how / so they apperçeyued no grete semblance / But alway that one spak to that other of the grete men / And them semed that it shold falle.

So moche aroos this murmure and wordes, that they assembled to fore Ancëan lord of the town / And told to hym that his men had such fere, & it was not without reson, for the eristen men were in the town, and were in doubte that by them dommage myght come to the Cyte / They ledde so Ancëan with wordes that they made hym to be aferè also / Anon he sente for hym that was named Emýrferus, And told to hym how this wordé ranne about / And by cause he helde hym for a wyseman / he demaunded what counseyl he wold gyue here on / he, that was sharp of entendement & apperecyuyng, knewe anon / that his lord demaunded thys 20 wordes for to knowe, yt he shold answer euery thynge, by whiche he shold be suscepte. And knewe wel that this assemblee was there made by cause they had suspicion / he thought wel to brynge them out of this wenying by his answere / and sayd: "Fyr lordes, ye be 24 hye, noble, and wysemen, ye ought to conne them good thancke / And the lord specially of this that they ymagyne and double of trayson / for in so grete a thynge as ye haue to kepe / ought to be doubted alle that may be falle / for we be in peryll of our lyues of 28 oure franchyses / of wyues, of Chylër and herytages / Thise ben thynes that ought to be well vnderstanden and kepè / But me semeth that by two wyays maye be gyuen conseyl in this thynge in suche wyse, that yt ony were vntrew & suche a traytre 32 that wold destroye his countrý he shold haue no power / This

2 Caxtoun's translation is unintelligible. Fr. "Moult vos doyveint tous ecoute de la vile savoir bon gre, et le seigneur principalement, de ce que vous ymaginez et double de trayson," etc., viz. "all the people of the town ought to be grateful to you, especially the lords, because you are on your guard against treason."

3 Fr. "ce sont choses ou l'en doit bien entendre a garder."

4 Orig. gyuen.
Ch. CXVIII.]

Good Advice given the Turks by Emirferius. 177

Thynge myght not be done spoken of but by them that haue the toures in kepyng / Therfore me thynketh ye haue suspiccion her of ye may wel remedye it, By ofte remenyng them fro theyr plases, ffor this thynge may not be deuyed but1 by moche grete leyser. And whan ye change them thus ofte / in suche wyse that they that be here this nyght / shal be sette the next nyght fer them / 2 where he shal haue no knowleche. & her by ye shal take 8 fro them alle the case for to commune or speke of ony trayson3 / when they herd this couseynl that this cristen man emyrferyus gaf to them / they acorded alle well therto / & by this fylle from them alle the suspiccion fro theyrr hertes that they had ayenst them / &

Thus as he had deuyed shold haue don ye if it had not ben so late, for it was nyght / and so grete remenyng5 myght not be made but by space of tyme / The lord commanded them to kepe alle the cyte hooly / Thus departed they fro the couseynl / Emyrferyus that sawe well that the thynge that he had enterprised6 / ye he and Buyoun® hasted not / that it shold neuer take good ende / Therfor he thought moche to brynye his purpoos to effect without that ony man shold perceyue it /

20 Of the meschyf that the turkes made euery daye to

cristen men that were in Anthyoche enhabyt-
yng with them.

Ro the begynnynge7 that the Cyte was assyeged / the turkes of

24 the toune had in grete suspiccion the Grekes, Surryens and
heremyngs, and generally alle the other Cristen men that duellyd in
Anthyoche. wherof it happeyned that the poure Cristen men that had
not in thyr howses garnysyn sufficient for longe tyme / they made

28 them to voyde the toune and alle thyr meyne, ffor they wold not [8 if. 81. bk.] that the Cyte were charged ne encombed with them / They reteyned
the rych men within by cause they had vytyayl wynowgh / they
kepyed them straye, and by fals occasions robbed them euery daye,

32 and toke fro them alle thyr thynge. They chaced them to the
labours and werkes of the toune / ye they had walles for to make
or amende / They bare the stones, the morter, and sande ; ye they
wolde adresse engyns for to caste stones / or other Instrumentes of

36 warre they muste drawe the cordes, And neuer as longe as they

1 Orig. but. 2—2 Fr. "ou ilz n'auront nulle cognaisson." 3 Orig. remenyng. 4 Orig. Buyoyn. 5 Orig. begynnynge.

GODFREY.
The Turks beat them, and drove them to labour.

They had already decided to kill all the Christians in the city.

This very night was set for the massacre.

The Crusaders, this day, ordered their army forth out of camp to return quietly at night after dark.

Emyrferius was with his brother in the tower.

The Turks beat them, and drove them to labour.

They had already decided to kill all the Christians in the city.

This very night was set for the massacre.

The Crusaders, this day, ordered their army forth out of camp to return quietly at night after dark.

Emyrferius was with his brother in the tower.

1. Orig. out.
2-3. The wrong division of the sentence, and the omission of some words, has rendered the translation obscure. Fr. "que d'etre retenus. Ce ne souffisit mie a es desloyaulz chians quiz prevoient ainsi la chastentience de la ville, ainsi s'estoient accordis VIII jours avant—qu'ilz parlissent a l'army de Baymont, qu'ilz les occupez tous; et pour il est de fait." 3. Orig. thus.

fonde cristien men they sought none other for to doo suche werkes / And when they had tramayle d longe / in stede of rewarde / they ledde them and bete them thurgh the stretes in suche wyse, that they had leuer to haue ben caste out 1 of the towne atte begynnynge 4 with the other 2 than to be Recayned with thysse fals howdes, that thus greued them of the towne that were cristien / Thus were they aconeled, viij / dayes to fore to speke to Emyrferius, fренde of Baymont / that they wolde see alle the cristien men, and had don S it 2 yf one of the admryals of the towne had not letted / and empeshed it / which was alway pryue and freundle of the cristien men, he made to delaye it / viij dayes by this reason, for he sayd to them : "Fayr sirs, I hope that the cristien men that haue assyged vs shal 12 departe fro the siege with in viij dayes for doubte of corbaght which cometh / & yf they departe, why shal we see the cristien men that ben in this towne / And yf they departe not, thenne maye ye doo as ye haue denysed." Thyse viij. dayes were now passed, in 16 suche wyse that it was commanded moche pryuele to them that had the charge, that they shold see their the same nyght. thenne the same day at none it was cryed thurgh the hooste of the pylygryms / that alle they that had horses were armed, and to 20 to drawe euery man to his bataylle, where he was constituted and ordeyned / for to doo that theyr Captayns shold commande them. The men on foote knewe nothyng what they shold doo / ne the horsmen neyther / sauf they that baymont had aduerrysed. 24 thus 3 departed they fro thoost alle in ordenauce / It semed wel that they wold goo ferre / They wente forth tyl it was nyght / when it was derke it was commanded that they shold retorne agayn secretely without ony noyse / And that they shold holde them 28 armed in theyr lodgys. This valvaunt man Emyrferius, of whom I haue spoken to fore, had a brother with hym, but he was not of suche courage as he was / the good man had sayd no thynge to hym of that he purposed to doo / for he doubted moche 4 he wold 32 not be agreable thereto / They were to gydere in the tour at the hour of none when the bataylles ysued of thoost, they behelde it by the
batayllementes. Emyrferius woulde preue and knowe the courage of his broder whiche was yonger than he / And sayd to hym / "Fayr swete broder, I haue moche grete pyte of thyse hye men that thou seest there, for they be of our creanne, moche faythefull and good cristen men. Now ryde they also surely, As yf they ought nothyng to doubte, And their deth is ful nyght them, for it may not be that they may resiste ayenst them that come / and ayenst them of the 8 toun / And yf they knewe it I trowe they wold take other coun-seyly." his broder answerd / "this is a moch folyssh pyte that thou hast / And I see the in a grete musardye. Certainly it shold plese me wel / that the turkes had nowe smeton of alle their heedes, and 12 slayn them alle that thou seest there departe / And alle the other in lyke wyse, for neuer syth they entred in to this londe / we had neuer good day ne one good nyght, but haue made vs suffre many euilles by thoscasion of their comyng / & thercfor I may not lone 16 them. But I wold that they shold haue 4 enyly endyng, and that right soone." whan emyrferius had herd thys worlde he doubted to fore what to saye to his broder of his purpoos, but fro this forth he doubted no more / and began to hate hym moche in his courage / 20 he thought wel that by hym myght be destroubled the grete avanuncement 5 of Cristendom. Thercfore he was in grete anguysshe how 6 he myght delynr hym /

Of the dilygence that buymont made in this werke / 24 And how Emyrferius slewe his brother, and deluyerd the toun to the cristen men /

Capitulo Cxix.

b Uymont slepte not this nyght, for he shold haue ben moche displesyd / yf by his necllygence this werke shold be taryed. He wente ofte to the Barons, that knewe of this thynge, for to be cousseyled / He helde in his honde a laddre of cordes, moche subtylylly made / Aboue, it shold be fasted to the creneaux 7 of the 32 walle, with good and stronge crochettes of yron, And for to fastne also in therthe. whan it cam aboute mydnyght / he toke his messager, that knewe his secrete pryuely / And sente hym to his

1 Orig. tonn. 2 Fr. "de grant musardée te voi penser." 3 Orig. bnt. 4 Orig. mane. 5 Orig. avanuncement. 6 Fr. "Comment il s'en porroit delivrer," viz. "how he might get rid of him." 7 Orig. creneaux ; Fr. creneaux, loop holes.
Emirferius kills his Brother. [Ch. CXIX.

frende to knowe / yf it were yet tymere that he sholde approache to the wallys, for hym thought that alle the Cyte was in moche peas and reste / when this messager cam / he had hym abyde there stylle, and saye no worde tyl that the mayster of the watche were departed and passyd by; for the custome was suche in the cyte, that aboue the watche that was ordeyned and aduyse / that a noble and wyse man shold serche and vysyte euery nyght the watche, And amende that as they founde anys. And he wente 8 thus thre or four tymes in the nyght, with a grete companye of peple, that bare light. It was not loner after, that he cam & sawe in the tour where Emirferius was, and sawe alle thynge wel ordeyned and in good disposicion; And it plesyd hym wel, and 12 passyd forth / This man sawe thenne that it was tymere to performe his werke, And sayde to the messager: "goo thy way dylygently, and saye to thy lord that now is tymere to doo well, and that he come to fore this tour; and see that he haue good companye with 16 hym and trewe" / The messager departed forthwith / Emirferius entred in to the tour, and founde his broder slepyng moche faste, he had ferre that he shold awake er the werke were accomplisshed, and that he myght destroye it: thersore he toke his swerd, & 20 roof hym thurgh bothe sydes, and slewe hym. The messager cam to Baymont, and told hym his erande. he cam incontinent to fore the tour, And the other barons with hym, that knewe of the werke. Eche of them had but a fewe with them, but they were 24 good & trewe. emirferius put out his heed & salwe them, & they resawe hym; and after analed a cord de mon the wall. they toke it, & bounde it faste to theende of the laddre of cordes / when it was bounden and drawen vp, fastned & attached with the 28 crochettes of yron aboue, there was none that was so hardy that wold fyrst goo vp. when Baymont sawe this / he toke thenne the laddre first, as a valyant man & ardent tacomplysshe the werke, And wente vp til he cam to the batillement. Emirferius knewe 32 anon that it was baymont; & the toke hym by the arme, and kyssed his honde. Baymont wente vpoun the walle, And kyssed hym swetly. He thankyd hym of the seruyse that he had don / Emirferius ladde hym in to the towre, And sayde to hym: 36 "Beholde, and see what I haue don for god & you. This man, that ye see here deede, is my brother Germayn / I haue slayn hym

2 Fr. "il passa outre." 3 Orig. Emirferius. 4 Orig. buymont. 5 Orig. hyyn. 6 Orig. hane.
by cause he wolde not acorde to this werke that ye and I have enterprysed." Buymont had moche grete ioye, flor fro them ne fortheyn knewe he well that his frende dyde alle in good fayth / 4 Thenne cam to the creuens,2 and put oute his heede and called his peple, and sayd that they shold come vp dylygently by the laddre. They durste not go vp / But alway supposed it had be decy nue. Buymont, that was moche valyaunt and lust, put doon his 8 foote on the laddre / And descendd down to the erthe, and sayd to them: "fayr lorde, ye tarye ouer longe / there is no doubt / flor knowe ye certaynly that this good man hath shewed to me his brother, whom he hath slayn for louve of vs" / when they herd this, 12 they all toke the laddre, he myght best haste / And mounted vp so many, that ther were men ynowgh on the walle / Therle of filaundres went vp, and Tancre, for tensive the other how they shold doo / when the fyrst towre was wel garnyshyd with men, they 16 ranne to the other by, And slewe the watche men, and helde the toures.

Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse,
And of the affraye of the turkes of the toun.

Ca 6 C.xx 6

1 T the foote of the laddre abode somme of the Barons, for to conduynte5 thoooste / when they sawe that they had vp on the walles men ynowe that myght garnysshe dynerse / towres / They 24 ran hastely to the lodgys for to make the peple arme them / And to drawe nerer / to thende that they myght al be redy for to entre in 6 when our men were on the walles / they were not ydde / but were noble and hardy / in such wise that they had anon.x / towres 28 taken alle in arenge / And had slayn alle them that they founde therin, And the eyte was not yet meuye ne awaked / flor the grete men of the toun, when they herd the noyse, had supposed certaynly that they had slayn the Cristen men / lyke as they had com-
32 manuaded, And that this affraye had be for none other thynges: And they mene d not oute of theyr beddes. In this partye, where oure

1 Orig. Buymont. 2 Orig. creuens. 
3 Orig. onde. 5 Orig. conduynte.

6-6 Caxton has made a "bourdon" by leaving out all between the two "sur les murs." Fr. "quand leur gens qui estoient sur les murs, leur en feroient signe. Nos gens qui estoient montes sur les murs n' estoient mie

7 Fr. "fontes en un rere," all in a row.
men were goon vp, was a posterne. Our men that were\(^1\) on the
walles descended\(^2\) and brake vp the lockes, and opened the yate, in
suche wyse that many entred ofoure peple. And after cam to the
grete gate, that was called the gate of the brydge; And alle the 4
watche that keppe it they selwe, And after opened the gate; A
squiryer of Baymontys ran til he cam to an hye towre, whiche was
upon the tertre by the dongsoun of the towm; there he fyxed the
Baner of Baymont his lord. when our peple that were in the 8
town apperceyued that the daye was nynge, And the dawenyng
appiered, the\(n\)ne they made to sowne theyr trompettes and busynes,
for to calle al the people of the hooste; The Baron\(s\)\(^3\) vnderstode the
signe, and smote the hors with the spores, And entred by the yates 12
whiche they founde opene with alle theyr bataylles. The foote
men of thooste awooke, that knewe nothyng of this counseyll.
They sawe the tentes empty and voyde, and apperceyued that the
town was taken. Thenne began they hastily to renne to the gayne, 16
in suche wyse that none abode other. The turkes of the towm
awoke, and herde the noyse, and sawe the men of armes thurghe the
stretes. Thenne apperceyued they in what poynct they were. They
began to flee out of theyr howses, and lade theyr wynees and 20
chyldef renne with them. When they fledde fro one rowte of our men,
they recontreed another gretter, whiche selwe them alle. The
surryens, the hernyens,\(^4\) and the other cristen men of the towm
apperceyued that the thyng wente so. they had moche grete ioye, 24
and toke the armes hastily, and wente forth with our men and
tolde to them the places where mooste peple were, And where the
tresours were: They them selwe the turkes moche gladly. They
payned them moche to rendre to them the cuerdon of betynges and 28
tormentes that they had don to them. Thoost was thenne entred
in to the towm; The barons had sette their baners on the tourres;
grete occision and slaughter had be in the towm; they spared
noman, ne woman, ne childe, they brak vp dores and chestes; ye 32
shold hane seen gold and syluer departed in the stretes; \(^5\)It semeth
well a thyng conquere\(d\) and wonne by warre. what shal I make
longe deuyse,\(s\)\(^6\) ther were slayn of them of the towm that day moo
than x. M., of whom the bodyes laye alle bare in the wayes and 36
stretes.

\(\footnote{Orig. warre.}{\footnote{Orig. hernyens.}}\)

\(\footnote{Misunderstood by Caxton. Fr. "Bien semblloit choses conquises et \footnote{conquér\(s\) par guerre, tant en faisait on larges devises."}}\)

\(\footnote{Orig. conquere\(d\).}{\footnote{Orig. conquere\(d\).}}\)
How Auncan, lord of anthyoeche,\(^1\) fledde by a posterne out of the town, And he was recountred and put to deth.

\(^4\) w Han Auncan sawe that the cyte was thus bytrayed, And that his peple that myght escape fledde an hye in to the fortesse of the dungeon. he doubted moch to goo theder, for he thought wele that the cristen men wold\(^5\) enuyroune incontinent this tour yf he entred; therfor he yssued out at a posterne out of the town, and wente alleone as he had be hade of his wytte / Ne he knewe not whether he myght goo And flee for to kepe hym, whan he wente thus by the feldes moche fere fro the Cyte, Certeyne Hermyns

\(^12\) mette hym, and knewe hym, And moche merueyled what this myght be; And after, thought that the Cyte was taken. \(^2\) And they approched hym / lyke as they wold\(^3\) have enclyned to hym, as they were woont / but\(^4\) theme they toke hym, & smote hym down to therthe / and after, with a swerde smote of his heed, and bare it in to the town / And presented it vnto the barons to fore the peple / one maner peple was comen in to anthyoeche, which were not of the town, that were come for to defende theyr lawe / and

\(^20\) other for to be souldyours / And other for provesse of armes, & to gete honour and prys. thysy knewe not wel the beyng of the tour / and were monated vpon their horses alle armed, and beganne to renne ayenst the hylle toward the dungeon / and by adventure

\(^24\) they mette a route of our men, thus as they wente socching in the tour, whiche ran on them moche hardly. Thysy maner of peple wold haue eschewed them, and smote theyr hors toward the Valeye / and fylle doun of a bancke in suche wyse that they were alle to

\(^28\) brused, men, hors, harneyes and abyllementes / ther were deed wel a / iij / C som ther were that in the tour were born / whan they apperced\(^5\) in the mornynge that our men were within. They toke their hors and rode out by the yates that our men had opened.

\(^32\) ther were of oure men that wente aftir and sued them, and brought many of them agayn, whom they put in pryson / som other escaped, some escaped to the mountains, & ran vnto the montaynes / about the hour of tierce, whan the tour was serched. Our peple assembled, and anon apperced\(^5\)

\(^36\) that in alle the tour was no vytayll; and it was not wondre / for the siege had themne endured nygh ix. monethes, and moche peple

\(^1\) Orig. anthyoeche.  
\(^2\) Fr. enclinerent, i.e. saluted him.  
\(^3\) Fr. anent, i.e. saluted him.  
\(^4\) Orig. but.  
\(^5\) Orig. anthyoeche.
The Crusaders found great spoils in Antioch. [Ch. CXXII.

had been therein during the siege / but gold, syluer, preceous Iewellis, and vessel of dyverse facions / clothes of sylke, & rych e tappets, & of other thynges they founde so moch, that eche of our men was all charged, as moch as they myght bere / It cam wel to poynt 4 to oure pore pyylgryms for to fynde suche rychesse / after the grete meseaze that they had suffred / ther were founden in the town

1 / v / C. good hors of armes / But they were right lene and very, thus was the cyte of Anthyoc taken, the yere of thyncarnacion of 8 our lord a / M. lxxxviiij / the iiij day of the moneth of Iyn.

How after that our men made grete slaughter of theyr enemieys, our men helde counseyl for to take the dongeon / the zne beyng seased of the 12 turkes /

t He pyylgryms that were theder comen fro many countrees by grete labour, were them zne ful of shedyng of the blood of their enemieys / The Barons assembled in counseyl, and adunysed 16 them that this werke was not yet parfyght, but that ther was yet trauayll and peryll tyl that the dongeon were taken and goten, whiche was right stronge / and wel garnysshed with walles of the town / they sette good warde and kepers of alle the yates, And dyde 20 do crye thurgh alle the town to assault, and commanded 16 that all shold come to the tour / that was on the montayne / when they cam theder, they knewe wel certaynyly that this was not a thynge lightly to be goten, for the fortresse myght not be goten but by 24 famyney; therfor they tranaylled but lytly, but withdrew them, and made the peple to reterne. this montayne, that is aboue the town, is deyndyd in tweyne, like as I sayd to fore, by a depe valleye / whiche is as stepe as it were plom down / The syde whiche is 28 toward thoryent is moch fayrer, vpon a playne wel brode, ful of vyngues and londe erable. That other partye, toward the weste, is moche hyer, 3 as a man shold goo vp right / And right vpon the sommet, at toppe of the tertre, stondeth the dongeon, 4 ferme of 32 ouer stronge walles and thyeke tourres / they be hye and grete toward thoryent; and toward northeste, about the valeye, it is so

1 Orig. tomm.
2 Fr. "si s'en va contremont en aïnissant," viz. "grows steeper and steeper towards the top."
3 Fr. "forme de trop fort mur," surrounded by very strong walls.
deep that it semeth a right helle / And it is an hydous thyng he to behold; It coude neuer be ymagyned how it myght be myned1 / and fro this donjon vnto the toun is a way, whiche is so strayt
4 that with grete payne one man alone maye goe or come. The
barons acorded that they wold close this litil terter and waye, to
thende that they of the donjon shold not mowe descende, ne doo
cynll ne harme to oure men in the cyte / They made a walle moche
8 stronge of lyme and sonde, In whiche they put men of Armes
ynowe, and wel in poynt. They sette on the walles2 stones and
eungyns, redy for to caste stones yf the turkes descended & cam
down. the barons wente in to the toun for to take counseyl of
12 other werkes. It was ordeyned and denysed that alle men shold
retorne & abyde there about this newe walle tyl that the donjon
were taken, sauf the Duc Godeffroye, whiche by comyn counseyl of
alle, shold abyde for to kepe the gate of the est / & the fortresse
16 that our men had made withoute the gate, that was delyned to
buymont. They herde tylynges that this grete pynce Corbagat, of
whom I have spoken to fore, shold arryue shortly / for he was
there entred in to the londe of anthycohe / It was acorded that
20 they shold seende a wyse man vnto the see, and saye to them that
were goon for to doo theyr thynges / that they shold retourne
hastely, and brynge in to the Cyte alle the vytyalles that they
myght fynde. They them self, that were in Anthycohe, 3 ran alle
24 the countrey abeut for to seche vytyalles, but they founde but litil.
The laborers of the playne countrey were moche ioyous that the
Cyte was in the handes of the pylgryms, for they were of our fayth,
all that they had hyd they brought; but it was not moch, For the
28 longe siege had destroyed the countre without, and emptyd4 the
toun within.

How whyles thooste garnysshed the toun,4 Somme of
thoost of Corbagat5 cam rennyng to fore it.

32 cap. C.xxiij. The second day after the toun was taken, whyles our peple
entended to garnyssh the Cyte, cam thre hondred men of the
1 This sentence is rendered unintelligible by omissions. After "myned" must be inserted "towards the west, the hill is lower. Between this hill and the donjon is a valley, which is not very large or very deep: in this place a path descends."
2 Fr. perrères, not pierres.
4 Orig. tonu. 5 Orig. Corbagat.
hoost, al in poynt of Corbagat, wel armed and horsed vpon lyght horses, for to see yf they myght fynde ony of oure men that rode folly by the countre. They embusshed them alle sauf xxx., the beste horsed, whiche cam to fore the town; They began to reyne 4 nyge, for to drawe oure men out of arraye. whan oure men sawe them, they had grete desdayne / And wende that it had be a grete shame yf they founde not to whom to speke to / synth they were come so fer to fore / A noble man of whom I have spoken 8 to fore / by whom the hooste had had many prouffytes by his wytte & prowess, & was named Rogier de barneuylle, And was of the companye of the duc of normandye, he toke with hym .xv. knyghtes that he had of his meyne, And cam out of the 12 town ayenst the turkes, as he that was noble, valyaunt and hardy / And acustomed to doo fayr faytes. whan he sawe them, he smote his hors with his spores toward them, And they 2 by cautele torned and fledde. Our men folowed hastely so ferre that 16 they lanneed vpon theyr watche, they sprange oute of the embusshement, And ran vpon oure men / for they were many, and wel proued in armes. Rogier 3 relyed his lytil felawship / And cam defenskyng hym toward the town. whan they were nyghe, A turke 20 garnysshed with a stronge bowe smote Rogier thurgh the body, in suche wyse that he fyl down decd to fore his hors. Anon his felaws withdrewe them in to the town. The turkes descended vpon hym, and smote of his heed. seeyng they that were on the walles / they 24 bare away the heed, and thus departed / they of the town yssued oute with grete crye and lamentacion, as they that had a grete losse. They toke the body, and buryed it honorably and with grete sorowe in the porche of the chirche of seynt peter / The barons 4 com-
pleyned moche aboue the other, this noble man, as they that beste knewe hym /

5 How the thyrde day after the getynge and pryse of Anthyoche, Corbagat with his hoost arryued to 32 to fore it.

[5 If. S.5, bk.] 5 How the thyrde day after that Anthyoche was taken / this grete pryce Corbagat cam to the cyte in the mornyng at the

1 Fr. niecement, viz. in a foolhardy way.
2 Fr. pur barat, i.e. to draw them on.
3 Fr. rallia, rallied, reassembled. 4 Fr. pleynypoint, mourned.
some rysyng with so grete plente of peple, that alle the countri
that myght be seen fro the hyest place of the toun was couered with
them / The barons sawe moche more peple / than they hered saye of,
4 For theyr hoost encreed euery day / he passed the brydge / And
lodged hym bytwene the laye / and the ryuer of helle, whiche is
wel a myle fro that one to that other / he had so grete plente of
knughtes, and so grete nombre of tentes and panyllons, that the
8 grete playne wherof I haue spoken to fore, where Anthyoch
stondeth ne yet it myght not alle receyue them / But many of them
lodged them in the territoryes1 by / when Corbagat had be thus
three dayes lodged hym thought that he was ouer far fro the cyte /
12 And by his counsely wold be more ner the dognion / whiche the
turkes helde / for to ayde and conforte them / And thought for to
put men in to the toun by the yarte that was under the dognion,
whan he was lodged on that partye, he comprysed fro the yate
16 of the eest to the west yate all the syde of the toun toward the south /
by syde the parte of the eest was a fortresse, which oure men had
made / upon a litil tertre as I haue sayed, and was delyuerd to
Buymont2 / But whan the toun was taken and the yate / he
20 delyuered this fortresse to other for to kepe / Therby lodged som
turkes of thooeste of Corbagat / They began tassaylle this tour / They
that were within dyde grete payne to defende them / But it was
ouermoche charged with grete plente of peple that were there, and
also with Archers, of whom they had many. The duc, whiche was
bye at the yate, sawe that his men had ouermoch to doo / & had
good wyll for to helpe them / and wold hane dislodged them that
were come ouer fer forth / he issuéd out with al his bataylle / And
28 smote his hors with his spores toward the fortresse / And sawe that
there were ouer grete plente of turkes to fore hym / which smote in
to his men, and began to demene them euyl / for ayenst one of
them ther were x. turkes. the duc knewe that his strengthe was
32 not like theyres, and began to withdrawe hym toward the toun /
But to fore that they myght reentre in to the gate / The turkes
assayled them so euyl that ther were / ij C / of the batayll of the
duc3 taken & deed.

1 Fr. tertres, hills.  
2 Orig. Buymont.  
3 Orig. duc.
The Turks enter the Town through the Donjon.

1 How after that the duc was within the barres of the toun / and many of his men slayn, the turkes entred in to the toun /  

c. C. xxv.

2 He Duc cam in to the toun moche angry of this dommage. 4

3 But whan the turkes knewe that this had be godeffroye of boloyne that they had thus put abak. They arrois in moche grete pryde / therfor they wente thems vnto the montayne / & entred in to the toun by the yate of the doungeon / And surprysed somme 8 of our men that toke none hede / wyth bowes & with sweredes they slewe them / but whan they were appereyued our men chassed them, But they put them in to the doungeon where they were sauf / thus dyde they oftymes harme / for they knewe another way to 12 descede than that whiche our men had garnysshed / The barons assembled for to take conseyll what they shold doo of the peryll wherin they were. By conyn acorde it was ordeyne / that Buymont and The Erle of Thooloysse shold make there a dyche moche 16 depe and brode ynowgh bytwene the toun and the pendaunt of the montayne. they made it there as it was denysed / And made there a fortesse whiche they garnysshed wel with men wel armed. The turkes that were in the doungeon, And they also that were comen in 20 by this gate descended ofte / by a way couerte vnto this fortesse, And assayled it moche fiersly, in suche wyse as they lette them have no reste, that it happed on a day / that so grete plente of turkes descended that the cry arrois in to the toun / that and yf 24 the other barons and knyghtes whiche were a brode in the toun had not come and ronne to them they had slayn or taken thys noble men / that is to wete Buymont / Euerard du puyssat / Raoul de la fontayne / Rembault crecon 4 / And somme other lordes 28 that were in theyr companye / Alle they were grete men and good knyghtes that were put in this newe fortesse for to defende it / But therle of Flamardres, the duc of normandy / And huon the mayne ranne moche hastyly theder / And mette with the turkes or 32 they myght entre in to the dreon. They slewe many, and many they recyened prysonners / The other turkes that escaped cam to fore Corbagat / And counted to hym that thys men of the toun were over feers and hardye. And it semeth whan they ben in werke 36

2 Orig. duc.  
3 Fr. "en montg. grant argueil monterent," viz., "they became very much elated."  
4 Lat. Creon.  
5 Orig. duc.  
6 Orig. recyened.
that they doubt not any thing the death, ne this, ne that. Corbagat, 
which was lodged in the montayne as I haue sayd, dyde not theron 
moche his prouffynt ne his honoure, ne he founde not there pasture 
4 for his hors, as he dyde bynethe in the valeye / when he saw this 
he commanded that he shold be dislodged, and descended in to the 
vailey with his men he passed the riuere of helle. there denied he 
8 the places to his barons about the toun. on the morn it happed 
that I can not say how many turkes approched the cyte / and 
descended fro theyr horses / for to shote at our peple that were on 
the walles for to come more ner. Tancreysued by the gate toward 
the eest, and stopped the way fro them in suche wyse that er they 
12 myght take theyr horses he slewe .vj. of them / And brought them 
in to the toun for to recomforte our peple for the deth of Rogyer de 
berneuyllle / 

How our christen men that a lytil to fore assiegde the 
toun / were now assiegde in the same / 

Capitulo Cxxvj:

1 X this tyme durynge / the peple of the christen men that had 
assiegde Anthycohe but a lytil to fore as ye haue had / They 
20 were now them self assiegde within. Thus goon the changes and 
mutacions of the world ; they had moche grete tranayll for to kepe 
and defende the Cyte. It was to them our peryllons that the 
dongeon was so strong and so wel garnysshed as it was. They 
24 made to them ofte grete assayiles by daye and by nyght, for they 
of the hoste cam in by the yate vnder the dongeon as ofte as it 
plesyd them. Our men began to be moche abasshed. They were 
many that toke no regarde to theyr oth that they had made to 
28 mayntene the companye ne to theyr honoure, But by nyght 
descended down of the walles by ropes and cordes and fledde to 
the see,(26) And many of them the turkes toke whom they slewe 
and brought in prison. They that myght escape cam vnto the 
32 porte, sayeng to the marshauns and to other pylygrymes that were 
there comen, that they shold disancé theyr shippes and fle COMMON / 
for this prynce Corbagat, whom so moche peple followed, had taken 
Anthycohe by force, and had shayn alle the barons and alle them 
36 that he founde within / And that they were escaped by our grete

1-1 Fr. "Ils douttent la mort, ne tant ne quant," i. e., they have absolutely 
no fear of death. 2 Orig. doubta.
and beged the saileys to flee from the port with them.

[3 leaf 57]

Even well born men behaved shamefully.

Some even surrendered themselves to the Turks, out of fear.

Bohemond guarded the town diligently,

especially the four fortresses, which must be kept.

peryll and fierce adventure. Therfore, sayd they to the marooners, that they shold departe and flee withoute taryenge. The turkes cam serchynge the countrie vnto the see and founde them there they shold be alle delyuered to deth. Thus they fledde alle for feere. And thym they selft that brought thise tydynes wente with them. And to thende that ye shold not suppose that thysse were but mene peple, for the trouth of this hystorye saireth noman. I shall name somme that thus departed shamefully, that is to wete, Guylhamme de Gratemenyl, a noble man born in Normandye whiche he held grete longe in puylle, And had to his wyfe the suster of Buymont. Aubery charpenter, Guy croseaule [27] / Lambert le pore / And many other had they with them. Somme 12 there were that wente for pyllage. And for the mesurese of hungre and drede for to be slayn, yolde them to the turkes. And they tolde the certaynte of the meschief that oure men suffred alle a longe to the turkes. Many abode in the town that gladly wold 16 haue goon. But buymont by the counseyl of the bishop of Puy dyde so make watche atte alle the gates and vpon the walles, And toke kepe bothe by daye and nyght that none shold goo vp ne doun / And they swore alle that they shold not departe fro the companye, ne breke the commaundementes of Buymont. He hym selft wente every nyght thurgh the town whith grete plente of men, and with grete lyght to thende that no peryll shold happene ne trayson. Fourre fortresses had he whiche he muste nedes kepe, and 24 better than the other. That one was on the lasse tertre ayenst the dongeon / And that other was lower ayenst the assayles that they made. The thyrde was withoute the est gate, the whiche was made to kepe thoose er the town was take / the fourth was at 28 thende of the brydge, by whiche the port of the brydge was kept / And therle of tholouse kept it fyrst. But whan the Cyte was taken he lefte it, and entred into the town. Therle of flaundres toke it and garnysshyd it with fyue honderd men of Armes, of knyghtes, 32 and other wel in poynt, for he thought yt the turkes toke it our men myght not after yssue by the brydge, by whiche their strengthe be moche employed /

2—2 Fr. "de tels en y avoit qui en faisoient pis," One of Caxton's hasty translations, he seems to have mistaken faisoient pis—"did worse," for "went for pillage." 3 Fr. "qui premoient garde," who kept watch.

4 Orig. doun.
5 Orig. commaundemen es.
6 Ori. Buymont.
7 Orig. thhe.
How Corbagat dyde do assaylle a fortresse which therle of Flaundres kepte withoute the gate and of that ensiewed / ca6 Cxxvij.  

40 X a daye it happed that Corbagat thought that they of the town had ouermoche lyberte to yssue oute and to entre agayn. Therfor he commaunded to a bataylle of his peple, in whiche were .ij. thousand turkes wel in poynt, that they shold so longe assaylle the fortresse of the brydge tyl they were taken, and it happped so that therle of Flaundres was themne wythin the same fortresse. Thassault beganne at sonne rysynge, moche fieres and moche gret, there were so many Archiers abouthe it that none myghte shewe his head atte crenemlxl / but that anon it was couered with arowes / [1 If. 57, 1k.] they that were within defendaed them moche well in suche wyse, that they lost nothynge of the fortresse / And thassault endued tyl the sonne went down / The turkes departed alle wery. Therel of the sonne that was forrall that therle of Flaundres3 doubteth that they shold come on the morn to thassault / sfor they myght not longe suffre them there / therfor, as sone as it was nyght, he put out alle his men prouely / and sette fyere therin, and bren the fortresse withoute faylyng. The turkes had denysed that in the mornyng erly they shold haue begonne agayn thassault and that two / M / men more shold haue comen than had ben the nyght byfore. It was not longe after that a Ronete of turkes departed fro thooste of Corbagat / I wote not how many ponne pylgryms that wente pourchashyng yf they myght fynde ony vytaylles in the countre / they toke them and brought them alle in the state that they were in to fore Corbagat / when he sawe them he / moche despyed them, for they had no Armures / And 28 but feble bowes of tree, Their swerdes rusty, their gownes and habellemens were old and roten / Thence sayd Corbagat by desdayne: "Thyse peple sene well men that shold take away fro the souden of Perse his Empyre / And conque the londe of thoryent / 32 Thyse shold be wel content and payd yf they had breed, and4 a goubet of bacon / their bowes ben not stronge ynewgh for to sée a sparowgh. Now I shal saye to you what ye shal doo / ye shal lede them bounden in this poynt as they now be in vnto my lowf the souden that hath sent vs hether / And telle hym that he dar not 1 Orig. oste. 3 Orig. flaundres. 4 Fr. "en vag loit à porceinte," in a pig-stye. Caxton evidently did not understand "lod."
The Christians suffer from Famine. [Ch. CXXVIII.

be fore afeard of thyse men that he come hether / for we hane enterprysed and begorne warre ayenst suche men as he may see / late me allowe with this werke, for there shal not abyde many of them / but I shal efface and destroye them alle in suche wyse as 4 there shal nomore be spoken of them, as they had neuer be born" / Thus ledde they thooy christen men vnto the soudan. he wezde wel to have don his honour / in this that he sente them to the soudan / but it tourned hym afterward to his shame / hym thought a light 8 thynge to vaynquyssh he the christen men whiche had not yet wel assayled them /

Of the grete famyne and messeage that oure men suffered in the cyte of Anthyoche, bynyng 12 assyeged on alle sydes by the sayde Corbagat / Capitulo C. xxviiij.

o X alle partyes was the cyte thus assyeged / They of the town ne myght not yssue out for to pournchasse vtyaylle for them. 1 They were enyl at ease of this meschyef / A famyne aros in the town moche grete and greuoius for deffaulte of vtyayll / in suche wyse that they ete camels asses and tho horses, and yet toke theywere thynge / whan they myght gete it, for who that had founden a 20 deed bound or Catte, They ete it deliciously in stede of grete delices, 2 for the hungry wontes made no daunger to seche suche as they myght fylle them with. 2 the grete, hye, and noble men that were acustomed to be moche honoured / had now no shame to 24 come there wher they ete suche mete / but wente oueral moche fowllly, and demaunded playnly such as they neede / The ladyes, gentil wymmen and maydens, had alle langour of hongre. They were alle pale and lene / Many were compelled to begge, and aske 28 with moche grete shame / There was none that myght haue 3 so harde an herte but that he shold hane had grete pyte to hane seen it / ther were many men and wymmen that aduyed them of what lyngage they were of born / that had suche courage ferme in theyr 32 hertes / that for none anguysse that they suffred of hongre wold not goo axe their breed 4 fro dore to dore / Thysy peple hydele them in theyr howses. Somme that knewe it / dyde to them yet somme

2—2 Fr. "Car les ventris familliaux ne faisaient dangier de guerre dont ils fussent remplis," i.e. "the hungry stomachs did not refuse to seek that with which they might be filled." 

1 Orig. hane. 

1 Orig. heed.
socour / But ther were many that dyed for hongre that had not for to ete / There myght men see knyghtes and other valuyant men that had be to fore stronge and noble in theyr werkes / that now were so feble and poure that they wente by the strete lenyng on. their staines / and theyr heedes enclynyng down askynge breed for goodes lone / There shold ye haue seen the lytil Childeren that soke theyr moders pappes. And the moders had nothings to ete / But 1 8 throve them down in the stretes to thende that other shold norysshe them. with grete payne shold ye haue founde one onely man emong so moche peple that had sufficiently that hym neded / for ye ony had be that had Gold or Sylyer, It auaylled hym nothyng, flor he 12 founde no mete for to bye with it / the barons and the hye prynce that were accustomed to holde the fayr courtes / and to gyue mete and drynke to many men, they hyde them now / by cause none shold fynde them etynge ne drynkyng, they had gretter anguysshe 16 in theyr hertes of this famyne / than had the poure peple / for they mette every day theyr knyghtes and theyr men of theyr countrees that deyde for hongre, And they had no mete to gyue to them / It were a long thynge to recounte alle the mesences and the 20 meschyefs that were suffred within Anthyoch whyles the tempesta endured / But so moche may wel be sayd, that selde or neuer shal ye fynde in hystorye / that so grete prynces, and one so grete an [2 if. 88, bl.] hooste suffred suche anguysshe of hongre.

24 How the turkes, felyng that our men were in suche meschyeef of hongre, enforced them for tassaylle the cyte /

Hyles that the Cyte was thus on alle partes assegied with 28 w turkes, And the famyne ran so anguysshous, They that were without / and knewe the euyl couyne of our people lefte not to assaylle the walles alle the longe daye, They of the dungeon, And the other that cam in by the yate / cam and made grete assaylles in 32 the toun. they had made them so wery / that oure men myght not wel defende them, and vmmethe kep the toun. flor when they had defended them alle the longe day / at even they had nothynge to ete / wherof it happe that a tour by that syde where our men entred was euyl kept. and on a nyght the turkes cam withoute forth / And apperceived wel that noman was within the tour.

1 Oryg. But.
The Turks mounted and entered.

The Turks burnt all the ships in the harbour.

Our men are now in great despair.

How Corbagat sent his men of Armes for to slee the maronners that were at the porte / wherof oure men had a grete losse. Capitulolo C. xxxv.

1 Han the famyne grewe thus euery day in anthyoehe, many 20 there were in the toun that had leuer be slayn, than to abyde thus the hongre. They put them in adventure / & by nyght yssued 4 oute of the toun whan they myght escape. After they wente to the porte of the see. Somme shippis there were yet of grekes, 24 and of hermyens that brought vytyall / many ther were that bought it / And cam and solde it in the toun 5 by nyght in 6 hydles. when the turkes apperecyued this / many tymes they awayted them / and sleeue many of them / Atte laste for to take away this 28 lytil socour that they had. the turkes sente two thousand horsmen to the see / whiche sleeue alle the maronners and marchamtes that they founde, And brente their shippes. Somme ther were that laye at an ancre in the see, and they fledde / Thenne had our men 32 loste alle theyr hope for vytyall, for the yles of the see as Cyprys Rhodes / And other lyenge on the see side, As Cylyce, pamphyle, and of other costes durste nomore sende theyr Shippes theder /

1 Fr. Semer. Lat. Sigmaro.  
3 ?t or w.  
4 Orig. toon.  
5 B. en muselans, A. en tapinage, i.e. secretly.
They of the town\(^1\) of Anthycohe were nowe enuyl demened\(^2\) / sorr to fore to them cam somme comforte of the marchauns. Now they had alle loste it / when the turkes retournd\(^3\) fro the see they recounted our pour pilgrums whiche wente that way / they slewe them alle, sauf somme whiche hydde them in the busshes / when they of the toun herde tydynges herof how they were slayn they were moche sorowful, sorr they had ouer grete anguyssh in theyr 8 hertes as ofte as ony mesaunter fyl to their peple. In this poynt were they with in the Cyte, and wold take none hede to theyr warde, ne wold not obeye to the barons, whiche myght themne doo to them no good. Thus were they in grete peryll /  

12 How guyllem de grateuylle and his felawys fugtyys cam in to Allexandrye the lasse / ca? Cxxxj\(^4\):

\(^{1}\) Orig. tonn. \(^{2}\) Fr. guillaume de gratemclit. \(^{3}\) Orig. to fer.
they went to him.

The Emperor received them honourably, but wondered that they had left their companions.

so nygh, he wente strayt to hym, And brought his felawes cowardes with hym. whan themperour sawe them / he made grete ioye /

And receyued therle estene honorably, for he held hym in passing thurgh his londe for a moche wyseman and a valyaunt, and was wel acqueynted with hym. he demaunded hym moche ententlyly of the remeanaunt of the barons / And sayde he had grete merueyll / how he was thus departed fro their companye.

How therle of chartres discouraged themperour of Constantinople that he shold not goo and socoure our peple in Anthyoeche. Capitulio C xxxij"

The Earl answered in this maner, and sayde to themsperour / Sire, the barons of ferrance whiche passed this yere by your empyre, whom ye receyued so curtoysly & with grete honour. whan they had taken Nycene, whiche they rendred to you, They passed unto Anthyoeche. They assiaged that cyte wel ix monethes. They haue taken it entierly, Reserved a dungeon, which stondeth 16 upon an hylle within the walles, whiche the turkes holde so strongly that it is unprenable / They supposed to have wel exployted when they had goten this Cyte / But thenne they fylle in greater peryl than to torye. For on the thirde day after that they 20 entred Cam Corbagat, a puyssaunt prynce of perse, whiche brought so moche peple that alle the countrey by was conuerd with them. Oure peple suffred grete anguyssh2 thanme, for this Corbagat, with his peple, emeyronned them on alle partes in suche wyse that oure 24 men myght not yssue, and dyde to them moche payne in assaylyyng them with out3 forth. And the dungeon made to them grete assaylyes within forth by whiche oure men suffred grete mesEase / And also thanguyssh of hongre was so grete, that they had no 28 power to defende them. On that other syde / they had other-whyle comfort of youre londe / for the yles of the see, And also fro other portes cam somtyne vytaylle / that was brought in to Anthyoeche, But now late ben komen the turkes, And haue slayn 32 alle the maronners and the maruametes that they fonde atte porte

1 Fr. "de la demerource des autres barons." A. gives "de la contenance," which is the correct version. Lat. "interropas igitur ab co Imperator diligenter de cibet et salute et statu principium, et quatenam esset causa quod ab aliis recte."  
2 Orig. anguyssh.  
3 Orig. out.
in suche wyse, that nowe ther dare nomoo arryue there / wherfore they haue loste alle theyr socours of vytyllle / And above alle this they of the towm be greuyked nyght and day by them of the dongeon, 4 ffor by the yate ynder it the turkes may entre and yssue whan it plesyth them / we sawe that this werke myght come to no good ende in this maner, wherfor we warned them, bothe my self and thysse that be in my companye, whiche be moche noble & wyse-8 men oftymes, that aycenst the wylle of god they shold not enterprise to conquere this countrey / But shold departe with the lest losse they myght, And the peple that followed them / they shold conduyte in to such a place that they shold not be delyuered to deth / Many tymes we sayed to them in this manere / And neuer wold they here vs ne bylene, But mayntene theyr reuere, ffor ther be many enomge them in whom is lytil resoun / we our self had ben deed yf we had abyden there / ne we myght doo none 16 honour to our lord ne to our prouffyte, Therfor we departed, And commanded them to god / whiche saue them and kepe, for they haue nede / Ye, syre, to whome I am bounden in good fayth / I aduyse you, that ye take counseyl of your wyse men to fore ye goo ony fther / Truthe it is that ye be the moost hye man of the world / But for al that ye haue not here now in your companye so moche peple as Corbagat hath aboute Anthyoche, And aycenst one of you he hath seuen / therfore myn oppynnion is yf the other so 24 acoarde, that to fore your men be put in so gret adventur ye retorne home agayn. For yf ye approache them / And that they have achemede theyr werke in the Cyte, ye shal synde them redy / & the more ner ye approache them / the more shame and yle shal it 28 be to retorne fro them whan ye be so ngyhe them. thysse thynge that I haue aconted to you, knowe wel thisse valyaunt men that be here with me / & also a gret parte maye ye knowe by this good man that ye delyuered to vs / that is wete tantyn your 32 sernaunt,1 whiche is so wyse and trewe, whiche departed fro vs for many defaultes, that he apperceyued with vs. whan he had sayd all this / themperour was moche amenvyd of thisse wordes, 2 with hym was a brother of Buymont named guyon, that whan he had herd 36 therle Stephen thus speke / he was alle wroth and angry / And as half arageked for despyte sayde al on hye / that he sayd not the truthe / But that they were departed as Cowardes. He had moo grete words / but gyylow de gratemeny, which was a gentilman

1 Orig. sernaunt.

{2 H. 90, bb.} The Emperor was much moved by this speech.
born of lygnage, And not of courage, And had to his wyf the suster of the same guyen, made hym to holde his pees, And blamed hym by cause he spak ayenst therle steuen. And so this guyen forbare hym.

How by the warnynges of the sayd Erle / themperour, whiche wold haue goon & socoured our men, returned shortly. ca? C xxxiiij.

v Pon thyse wordes that themperour had herd / he wolde be 8 counseylled, and called his barons. And alle they accorded that themperour shold retorne fro thens, wher he was withoute goyng any further / ffor they thought it were better to remeue his peple withoute perylle and hurt than for to fyght in so grete 12 meschyf ayenst Corbagat, And to meue ayenst hym in hate and in warre all the londe of thoyrent / He bylyened so fermely the wordes of therle Stephen / that he doubted that the turkes had slayn them of Anthyoeche / And wold themne goc in to his londe 16 for to recyue the Cyte of Nycene / And alle the londe of Bythynie, whiche oure men had delyuercd to hym / he wold garnysse it / when he departed fro thens he brente and destroyed alle the londe fro3 the cryne vnto Nycene on both sydes, 4By cause the turkes 20 shold not folowe hym, vytyallle began to faylle him, And so he muste retorne4 / Thus it happe that by the wordes of this grete man / that so fowly departed fro the other barons / themperour returned, & the Cristen peple beyng in Anthyoeche lost so grete 24 socours / by whiche myght hane comen alle theyr delyueraunce in so grete necesyte as they were thence, But consydered this that was gyue to be vnderstande to Themperour, yet he dyde not / But5 his deuoyre. Certauynly it was the werke of our lord, ffor yf this 28 Emperour that cam with his peple, and grete power of men al fresshe had reysed the siege / & discomfyted the turkes / oure lord shold not haue ben so honoureth ne thanked / And yf of the trauayll that the barons and the other pylgrymes had suffred, them 32

1 Orig. our. 2 Orig. and. 3 Caxton's French MS. is here corrupted, "Des le Coine jusques à Nyqui." A. gives the correct reading, "Des Ioine (Lat. Iconium), jusques à Nyqui." 4 Fr. "Apris que se les Turcs, les vouaissent suivre, ritaille leur faulsist, se les est couuenu retourner," viz., "in order that if the Turks should desire to follow them, food would fail them, and they would be obliged to return home." 5 Orig. But.
perour that come laste shold hae had the victroye, theyr payne shold not haue ben so wel guerdome[d] / That for our\(^1\) lord sufiured that themperour departed / And that the\(^2\) werke shold be accompli-

4 shed, as ye shal here to his glorie and honour of his peple /

How our\(^3\) peple of Anthyoe beyng aduertysed herof were all discouraged, And Corbagat enhaunced in pryde /

ca\(^6\) C / xxxiiij.

8 r Enomnee cam in to Anthyoe, that themperour that was approched by the wordes of therle Stephen, of Guyllem de gratemenyll / And of theyr felaws was torned back / They had on alle sydes anguysshes / But thysse tydynges empoysonned them alle.

12 And put them as in despayr / themne began they to curse the Erle Stephen and alle his companye that had taken them so grete ayde / Corbagat\(^4\) that had knowledge that Themperour cam, had mocch doubte of his comyng / for it was a grete thyng of the 16 puyssance of themperour. Now was he certayn that he was retorned, Wherof he had mocch grete ioye in his herte. he was risen in a mocch fiers pryde. He ran the more asprely on them of the town / Oure men in the town were so abasshed, that them semed\(^5\)

20 wel that oure lord god shold alle forgete them. They let\(e\) them fall in despayre, And wold not endure no trauaylle that apperteyned to the defence of the Cyte / Alle hydde them in theyr howses / On a day it happed that Buymont,\(^5\) whiche had alle the power of thoost, 24 had to doo with men / for thassaultes withoute forth, and for thassaylles within forth / He dyde do cye on peyn of deth that alle shold come, And there came none. He sente his men for to fetche them in theyr howses and somone them to come, And none 28 wold come oute. He was abasshed / And thought\(^6\) what he shold doo. Att laste he sette fyre in the town in dyuerse places, And thenne yssued in to the stretes grete rowtes / Buymont sawe them, and say\(e\) to hem his commaundement / And had what they shold 32 doo / they dyde it / A worde sounded in the town that many knyghtes and Barons had had counsely pruely emonge them that they wold yssue oute of the town\(^7\) by nyght, And leue the pepole within.

36 And wold\(e\) doo the best they myght, and drawe them to the

1 *Orig. our.*  
3 *Orig. our.*  
4 *Orig. Crobagat.*  
5 *Orig. Buymont.*  
6 *Orig. thought.*  
7 *Orig. town.*

\(^{\text{The Christians in Antioch were in despayr at the turning back of the Emperor, but Corbagat rejoiced greatly.}}\)

\(^{\text{Bohemond had to set fire to the city to force his soldiers out to do their duty.}}\)

\(^{\text{It was reported that many barons intended to steal away by night.}}\)
Godfrey begs the Barons to continue the Pilgrimage. [Ch. CXXXV.

Duke Godfrey begged the barons, for the love of God, to abandon this thought.  

But they complained bitterly of their privations.

How the spere was founden of whiche Ihesus was percyd on the crosse. And of the comfort that our pylgryms toke thereby. Capitulo Cxxxv.  

Harry D'Asquie, one of the best knights in the army, died of hunger.

1 Orig. feetr. 2 Orig. reynyred. 3 Orig. enyll. 4 Orig. enyll. 5 Orig. purpops. 6 Orig. countrees. 7 Orig. ponerte.
uynce named Peter, cam on a day to the bysshop of puy and to the herle of tholouse, & sayd to them in moche grete drede, that the holy apostel seynt andrew had appiered to hym thryes in the nyght 4 slepyng, & warned hym that he shold goo to the barons & saye to them that the spear with which our lord was percieed in the syde on the crosse was hyd in the chirc of seynt peter in the cyte, the place where it was he had certeynly shewed to hym / he said wel 8 that he was not come for to saye ne signeyfe them / but that seynt andrew had menaced hym at the last tyme yf he dide not his message / he shold meshappen in his body. 1 It was no merreythe yf the clerke doubted for to saye this / for he was a poure man and 12 of a lowe lygnage / And but lytil lettried. Thysse two hye men whan they herd hym they brought hym to fore the other barons. They assemblyd them, and they wolde that he shold saye to them the same wordes as he had sayd to them / whan the other Prynces 16 here this, they mysbyleuyd not the clerke / They cam in to the Chircie of seynt Peter. And sayd theyr confessions. And erryd our lord mercye in teres, wepynges, and waylynges / And repentences of theyr synnes. Thenne began to delue and dygg depe in the place that the clerke had shewed to them. They fonde the sperre lyke as he had sayd to them. Thenne had they a loye emonge them so grete, lyke as every man had as moche as he myght / They ronge the belles. And this thyng was anon spred al about the toun. They ran alle to the chircie hastely. And saw this noble relyquye whiche was doluen out of therthe. Thenne were they recomforted alle, both men and wyomen, poure and rych / as they had our lord emong them and seen hym, there were thus 28 many other good men that sayde certaynly that certeyn vysyons of Angeles and apostles were appiered to them(28) / By theyse thynges the peple forgate moche of theyr meseases. The bisshop of puy and other holy men that were in the companye sayd to the pylgrymes 32 that oure lord shewed to them tokene and signe / that shortly he wold sende to them his ayde and his counseyl, They concluded alle, noble and vnoble, men and wyomen / grete and lytil / And sware vpon the holy relyques / that yf our lord wold deluyer them 36 oute of the peryll in whiche they were, And gyue them vctorye of theyr enemies, that they shold neuer departe fro this holy companye vnto the tyme that they had conquerd Iherusalem, that noble Cyte, where our lord suffered deth for to saue his peple. 40 And shold deluyer the holy sepulcre oute of the handes of the fals
After twenty-six days of famine they decided to fight the Turks.

They sent Peter the Hermit, with Herforin, an interpreter, to Corbagat.

Arriving at his tent they found him surrounded by his men.

Peter addressed him thus:

How Peter theremyte was sente by our men vnto Corbagat; / the words what he sayde. And the answer of the sayd Corbagat: Capítulo Cxxxvi:

Hey had suffred this famyne xxvj / days in the Cyte / In so moche that the people to whome our lord God had sente good hope in theyr hertes began moch to be comforted / & they fylle alle to one wylle in such wise that they sayd emong them that it were good to bryng their mesese to an ende / Therfore was their comyn accord that they shold fight with the turkes that had assienged them, for they thought a fayrer thyng that yf our lord wold that they deyde in bataylle, that they shold doo it in deffending theyr cyte that they had conquered to the Cristiente, than to languysehe and to faylle within without essaying yf our lord wold ayde them / herof sounded a comyn word emong them that alle cryed bataylle, bataylle / the bataylle, whan they myght see ony of the Barons. Alle they sayde that they taryed alle to longe. This word was thus menyd of the mene peple. The barons thought that this enterprise myght well come 20 of our lord. And so by comon acord they assembled in counsyl. they alowd mache this that the peple made this request, and acorded that they wold sende to this proude prynce Corbagat, Peter theremyte, which was an holy man, moche wyse and wel bespokin. 24 And delynerd to hym for felaw a vallyaunt man named hellow(29), trewe and of grete wytte that coude wel speke the langage of the sarasyns. And specially the langage of perse / They charged them with the message, like as ye shal here what they sayde to Corbagat. 28 These two sad men to fore sayd dyde do demaunde tresw for to goo to the sayd Corbagat / for they wold speke with hym in the name of the pylgryms / hit was grantted with good wyll, They wente out of the Cyte and toke with him good companye, which were 32 asyngned to them / they wente so ferre that they arryved at the panyllon of this noble prynce Corbagat. They sawe hym sytte in moche grete boabunce emonge his ryche men / Peter salewed hym nothyng, ne made to hym honour ne reuerence. But spak heeryng 36 alle in this maner / This holy companye of hye & noble men / barons, noble knyghtes, and other peple of our lord God that ben 2 (2y), and.
Corbagat is very angry at his Message.

yonder / within the cyte / sende to the & commaunde that thou departe fro this siege / & that thou nomore assayle them / but late them have and kepe the towne in pees, which our lord Ihesu
crist hath deluered to them for to holde his faith & for to doo hym seruyse. flor seynt peter the pryncse of thappostles / vpon the creaunce of whom our fayth is founded, hath converted it fy rst by his preechyng / And by the merneuylous myracles that he dyde /
8 our peple hath conquerd it not long syth by the wyll and ayde of our lord vpon the turkes, that have holden it with wrong and by force a certeyn tyme. Therfor thou oughtest to suffre vs to enioye our herytage / And retorne thou in to thy countrey, and if thou
12 wilt not so doo knowe thou for certayn that within the thyrde day swerdes 1 schal fynysshe and ende this debate. And to thende that thou complayne not that we desire and wille the deth pourchasse of so much peple in comyn batayle, they shal offre to the this / that is
16 to wete / if thou wilt fyght in thy owne persone, they shal sende ayenst the, one al so hye a pryncse as thou art, to whom thou shalt fyght. And whiche of you maye vaynquysshe and 2 overcome that other, shal conquere the quarelle for euernmore withoute other debate. 20 if this thynge plese the not / take certayn nombre of thy men, vj. x. or xij / or as many as thou wylt / & our pilgryms shal sette as many ayenst them, withoute any moe of that one syde and that other. And that they that shal wynne the feeld shal alwaye
24 haue the gayne of this debate. When Corbagat herde this message he was moche wroth and angry, and had grete desdayne and despyte / Thenne he tourned hym toward Peter and sayd to hym / Peter they that hath sente the hether, ben not in such poynt as me
28 semeth that they shold offre to me for to chose of theyr denyses, But they be brought by my puyssaunce and strengthe that they maye doo nothyngge of theyr wylle / But I shall doo with them alle my playsyre / But retoure thou and saye to thys museydes, and said, "Return, and tell your masters, that they are in no condition to dictate.
32 and saye to them that hawe made the to meue fro the Cyte and come hether, that they understonde not yet the 3 malheure that they be in / And blyene certaynly / that if I had wold, I had or now broken and destroyed this towne and sette my men therin by force, 36 in suche wyse that the cresten men had be alle slayn / men and wymmen / lytl and grete. But I wyll that ye abyde in more caytyfnes and mesease, dyeng & languysshynge for hougre / lyke as other houndes. And when it shall please me / I shal entre in to

1 Fr. comyn
2 Orig. and.
3 Fr. malèurte, misery, misfortune.
When I am ready I shall enter the town, and kill or take all of them away as slaves."

the town, & alle them that I shal fynde, men and wyemen of conuenable cage, I shal put them alle bounden handes & feet in in pyetous estate, And shal lede them alle to my lorde for to serue hym. And they shal be his esclaves / Alle the other I shall slee with the swed, lyke an eyyl tree that wyll bere no fruyt /

How the sayd Peter returned in to the town, and wold openly haue sayd his message / & of the subtyl counseyl of the duc whiche wold not suffre it /

Peter retorned home,

but Godfrey would not let him tell his message to the people.

They all with one accord cried to fight Corbagat.

The next day was set for the battle.

1 Peter returns with Corbagat's reply. [Ch. CXXXVII.

1p Eter theremyte understode his pryde whiche was grete, and of grete quantite of peple that he had1 / And, also of his Rychesses whiche were oner moche / Thence he departed and cam 12 agayn in to the town. he wold hame sayd the message of Corbagat openly in the presence of them that wold here hym / for the other ran grete and smale. But the duc Godffroy that was moche wyse and knewe moche, drewe hym a part, and called only the barons, 16 and bad hym saye that he hath founden. he recounted to them alle, as he that had wel reteyned in his mynde / & coude saye and vter it in the best manere / The duc doubted thar yt the peple had hered this grete pryde and the menaces that Corbagat had sayd / 20 that they shold be oner moche abasshed and feere. Therfor he commanded to Peter that he shold saye none other thing / But that only Corbagat desyred and demanded the bataylle ayenst them, And that they shold make them redy. Peter acorded wel 24 therto, And sayd to them lyke as the duc had commanded hym / And vnumethe Peter had sayd the worde / But that alle cryed with one voy / And we wylle also the bataylle ayenst hym in godes name. They shewde wel by theyr sight and semblance that the 28 desyre of the bataylle was grete in their hertes. Alle their meseses were forgoten for Ioye to haue the vctorye. The Barons, whan they sawe that their peple made suche joye they were moche glads, And moche the more trusted in them. By comun counseyl they 32 ordeyned the day of the batayll on the morn / And that thus wolde Corbagat haue it, they byleuyd it wel. And hastily wente every man to his lodgyng. There ye shold haue seen Armourers put in poynt, hauberks and helmes fourbousshed / swerdes and custrellis 36

1 Fr. "Pierre l'ermite entonduit son oracle qui moult grant estoit, de la quantité de gens qu'il avait."
whet / This nyght slepte they not in the towne / They that kept the hors toke good heed this nyght / And made alle thynge redy. As soone as it was nyght, It was cryed vpon peyne of deth, that alle man shold be in the monryng to fore the somme ryssyng alle armed as he best nyght / And drawe hym in to the bataylle where as he was ordeyned / And that everie man shold folowe the baner of his Captayne / whan the spryngying of the day appeyrde in S the monryng the men of the chirche were redy for to syngyn masse, And songe denouly / They that shold goo to the batayll were confessyd, and alle receyved the bodeye of oure lord, which gaf to them surete of body and of soul. Alle rancour and wrath were eu- tierly perdonned / by cause they wold be in parfyght charyte, And therin do the seruyse of our lord, which sayth in the gospell, In this shal alle men knowe that ye be my disciples, yf ye have lone and charyte emonye you / whom they were thus redy / 1oure lord sente to them his grace / which gaf to them so grete hardines, that they that were the daye to fore so serful / feble and lene that they myght not susteyne them self for feblenesse, becam stronge and delyner in suche wyse / that the armes that they bare weyed 20 nothynge as they semed, and were hardy and vygorous, so that ther was none so litil but he had talente to doo grete thyng in the bataylle. The tyme cam that the bisshoppes and alle the other men of the chirche were required as for to syngyn masse. they hulde the 21 crosse / and the sainctuaryes with whiche they bessydd the peple And recommaunded them to god. They graunted pardon and remyssyon to them of alle their synnes, yf they deyde in the seruyse of our lord. To fere alle the other the bisshopp of puy 28 preched and spak to the barons. And praved them that they shold thyncke to aunge the shame of our lord Ihesu Criste, that thyse vntrewre sarasyns had don to hym so longe in withholding of his herytage. Atte laste he bessydd them with his hand, and com- 32 maunded them to god denouly.

How to fore er our men departed / they made redy theyr bataylles right wel in poynyt / & of the nombre of them / ca? C.xxxviiij:

36 N the morn erly our pylvgrmys assembled / as it was ordenedy & denysed the thyrde day to fore theatre of Iuyll, to for the

2 Fr. delieres, hardy, bold.
They go forth in Battle Array. [Ch. CXXXVIII.

yate of the brydge / to fore thysue oute of the yate / They had theyr bataylles ordelyed and deuyseyd lyke as who shold goo to fore / And who shold come after / The fyrst bataylle had huon le mayne, broder of the kyng of ffraunce, And with hym Aucean de 4 Rybemont, And the other Barons and knyghtes of theyr country / They thought wel that the men that they ledde shold not lyghtly be discomfyted. therefore wente they first / for to perse in the better to fore. The second batayll ledde Robert therle of flamandres / 8 which was called the ffryson / he had none other in his bataylle but peple of his owne countree. The thyrde batayll ledde Robert the Duc of Normandy with his neueuw, whiche was moche valyaunt, therle stoen of Aubuane / And alle them of his owen countreye / 12

doing of the bishopp of puy / whiche had don of thalyt of the chyrche, and rode upon a good steie / the helme laced. And he bare in his honde the holy spere of whicheoure sueneur, Ihesu Criste, was perced in the 2 side, and conduyted 16 vygorously the bataylle of theralle of tholouse, whiche was not there.

The Erle Reginald of toul had the / v. bataylle. with hym was penter de stedenous his broder / Therle Garneyr of greece, Henry dasque / Reynart of Anmellae / Gautier of domedart / In the .vj. bataylle 20 were Rembold, the erle of Orenge. Loys de monceous, and Lambert sone of Enenam de Montagu. The / viij / bataylle ledde the right valyaunt Godeffroy duc of Loreyne / with hym was Eustace his brother / And tham that he brought out of his countrey. The .xvij / 24 bataylle conduyted the noble, wyse, and wel preuyd Tancre, with the men that were deleyuerd to hym. The .ix. bataylle ledde theralle huon of scynt poul. Aniara his sone was with hym / Thomas de boure / bawdwyn de bough, Robert fytz gerard / Regnauld de baunaus / And Gales de chamont. The .xi. ludde theralle of Perse. 12 And had with hym Eucerdui du payssat, Drouon de money / Raoul fytz godeffroy and Conayn the breton. Of the .xi. was Capytayn Ysachar therle of dys. with hym were Remon pabes / 32 Gaste de bedyres / Girard de Roussylon, Guyllem de monpellyer, And Guyllem ameneux / The / xij / and the laste in whiche was

Hugh the first batayl
Robert of the second,
Robert of the third,
the Bishop of Pay the fourth,
Reginald of the fifth,
Rembold of the sixth,
Godfrey of the seventh,
Tancre of the eighth,
Huon the ninth, and
the Earl of Perse and others the tenth.

1 Fr. "cut" left out. 2 Fr. garin de gres. 3 Fr. Loous de Moncon. 4 Fr. Conon de Montautig. 5 Fr. Anjorran. 6 Fr. Thomas de Ferc. 7 Fr. Robert le fitz Girart, Robert the son of Girart. 8 Orig. fytz. 9 Fr. Beauvoys. 10 Fr. Calwone. 11 Fr. Perche. 12 Fr. Raoul le fitz Godeffroy, Raoul the son of Godefroy. 13 Fr. Ysacart le conte de Die. Lat. Yscedrus comes Dircnis. 14 Fr. Remon Pèlez.
Corbagat learns of their Approach.

Ch. CXXXIX.

moost peple was deilyen to buymont / And was ordeyned that he shoild goo socoure suche bataylles / as had moost ynde. Therle of tholouse, whiche was merenyllously seke, lefte they in the town. 4 for to kepe fro the turkes in the dounton / for yf ther had be no garde / they myght hane sprongen and hane slayn alle the seke men, wymmen, and children, and the feble men that abode byhunde in the town / of whom ther were grete nombre 2 in theyr herberous / 8 They had made, as I hame sayd tofore, vpon a lytil tertre a stronge walle of chalke / in whiche were ordeyned places for to dresse engyns, whiche were al reky for to caste / They had left / ij. C. men of Armes, noble and hardy for to deffend this paas fro the 12 turkes, whiche were on yhe on the dounton.

How Corbagat was aduyertyshed of thyssee of oure peple, and sente his Archiers for to deffende the brydge. And how they were disconfytyed.

Capitulo / Cxxxix.

w Han they had thus dyens theyr bataylles / in every batayll they had sette men on foote. It was acoonved enoung that they a foote shoild goo to fore. And the kyghtes that cam 20 after shoild kepe them. It was deffended and cryed 4 on payne 5 of deth that none shoild be so hardy that shoild entende to oyn gwyn As longe as oyn turke deffended hym / but whan oure lord 3 had gyuen them the vyctorye, Thenne shoild they retorne, and myght 24 tarye to take & garde the despoylles. Corbagat fro the begynning of the siege of the cyte had alwaye doubte & grete suspesion that our peple shoild sodanly come vpon his hoost, And specially syth that pether theremynte had be with hym in message. And therfor he 28 had commandeld to them that were in the dounton, that yf oure men thought to yssue they shoild sowne a busyne / And sette oute a baner where they shoild yssue / wherof it hapned that whan thysse bataylles were regend to fore the yate to fore they yussed aboute 32 the houre of pryme / They of the tour made the signe like as they were commandeld. Corbagat understande that our men cam. And anon he sente two thousand Archiers to the brydge to kepe it that they shoild not passe. whan the turkes cam theder for to mayntene 36 the passage / they descended alle afoote. The yates were opened,

1 Orig. byuymont.  2 Orig. membre.  3 Fr. les garderoires, viz., should protect them.  4 Orig. ceyed.
How oure men reioysed them of a dew or rousec descending, thenne fro heuen. And of theyr mayntyen in approchynge the turkes.

Capitulo C / xl

Our men pursued the Turks nearly to their tents.

Our men were now greatly refreshed by a sweet dew which fell.

Our men pressed the attack and put the Turks to flight.

Aunean of Ribemont gained great honours by his bravery.

Oure men yssueled after thordeynance that was denysed. Huon le mayne with alle his bataylle cam byrst vn to this paas, whiche was kept with his enemies. his archiers and men a foote taryed a lytil and myght not passe in no wyse/ when huon the noble man apper- ceyued this he smote the hors with the spores, and so smote in on bothe sydes, that it was to late for the turkes a foote to take theyr horses/ Thenne tormed they fleyng, defendynge them & shotying with their bowes. Aunean de Ribemont rode ayenst them, and bete and S helde the route so short allone that his men that cam after hym myght come and snyte in among them and deluyed many. And oftynes he plunget so depe in the presse that certaynly our men had supposed he had ben lost but when he cam agayn/ he dis- couerd hym wel and made large place about hym. Alle men behelde hym, he gate there moche grete honour and prys. Huon le mayne forgate not his swerd. And he dyde so moche that our pylgryms had by hym good luck and hope at this byrst assemblee/ Therle of fflaundres and the due of Normandye, with the valyaunt erle of henawd cam to this chaos/ The Archiers of the turkes that so fledde were so euyl mened/ that they were but a fewe whan they returned in to thooest/ Our men folowed them tyl nyght theyr lodgys. 20 many of them they bete down that neuer releuyd.

1 Orig. oure. 2 Orig. Huon. 3 Fr. "qui ainsi des ennemis garny estoit," viz., "which was thus guarded by his enemies." 4 Fr. "que tant fut à coux qui descendioient à pie qu'ilz fussent remontés," i.e., so that those who had descended from their horses were very anxious to be remounted.

5-6 Fr. "tendoit tant la route, tout seul, que ses hommes qui venoient après, n'avaient jamas a delivrer."
them / Anon 1 they were as fresh & al so light as they never had suffered mesease. This refresshement was not only in the men, but alle theyr horses were anon so stronge, so fresshe, and so reioyced / 4 As they had had alwaye al that whiche was nedeful for them. This was moche apperecyued that daye certaynly, for the horses that many dayes had nothing to ete sauf leues of trees and skorches or Ryndes, were in this bataylle more stronge and more penyble / 8 than were the horses of the turkes, whiche had alwaye as moche as they myght / The Capytayns acorded that they shold drawe them toward the montaynes, whiche was fer fro the Cyte wel .ij. myles / for yf the turkes whiche had moch grete plente wold goo thederward / they shold be bytwene oure men and 3 the toun, and shold close them in. In this maner wente one batayllye to fore another withoute this / That one touched another in ony wyse / when the turkes sawe them alle they merueyllde and were abasshed, for they had supposed / that they had not be but a fewe enclosed in the toun / Now they semed by the myracle of our Lord that they were as many of them / as were of the turkes, and yet moo. Amonge the men of armes were the men of the Chirche reuested with 20 awbes 4 and stooles, they that were preestes. And the clerkys in surlys / & eche of them bare a crosse in his hand / they that were abyden in the toun were on the walles, reuestyd also, in prayers and orysons and teeris cryeng mercy to oure lord that he wolde hane 24 pyte of his peple / And 5 saue them that day, & that he wold not suffre that his name and his fayth shold torne to reproche by the mescreauntes and hethen peple.

How Corbagat ordeyned his bataylles / And how the two hostes marched to gydre in batayllye. / C. xlj.

b Y the signes that they of the dongs made to them of thoost, and by the tydynges that the Archiers brought / Corbagat 32 5 knewe and anderstode certaynly thatoure men were yssued outhe of the Cyte, and cam toward hym for to fyghte. Thenne 6 of this that he was theinne adersteved / he had deslayne to fore and

1 Orig. Auon. 2 Fr. ecorces, bark.
3 Orig. auv. 4 Fr. aubes et estoles, albs and stoales.
5 Fr. "lors tant a certes ce qu'il aVoit cu jumques adonques cu desdain, et tenu pour mouqueric," viz., then he began to take seriously that which up to this time he had held in disdain, and considered only as mockery.

GODFREY.
The two Armies arrange their Battalions. [Ch. CXLI.]

He arranged his own battalions, and sent Solyman to intercept our men.

Solyman arranged his army, and exhorted his men not to fear the famine-weakened crusaders.

Our men now attacked them, and a fierce skirmish followed.

holden it for mocquerey. he toke counseyl of his barons / And hastily ordayed his bataylles by the counseyl of his wysemen / And specially of them that were born in Anthyoch, of whom he had manie with hym. He made a bataylle of moche grete plente of knyghtes, the best and moost hardy that he had / This bataylle deleynew he to Solyman / of whom ye hane herd in dyuerse places to fore. He commanued that they shold drawe them toward the see, to fore er our men shold haue taken / and pourprysed alle the 8 playn bytewene the montayne & the Cyte. This grete bataylle cam thence to fore, And, was staked as bytewene two townes and closed / His other bataylles he sette in poynt by leyser, And made that one to goo to fore another as he that knowe ynowgh of the 12 fraytes of warre / And, after spak to the Capytaynes, and, sayde to them, that they shold mayntene them as hye men and good knyghtes, and not to be aferde ne esmayed of thyse Caytyues / men enfamyned, euyll armed, and all to brused of the grete trauaylles that they had suffred, when our men had pourprised entierly the playn in such wise that they doubted not to be closed in / They approched so nynge the turkes that the turkes myght shote at them / They made theyr trompes and busynes to sowne lowe, 20 And, sporde their horses the thr fyrst bataylles to gydre / wel founde they that receyued them, for the turkes were grete men and well armed. Our men dyde right wel in this comyng on / The ffrensshemen, fflemynges conteyned them vygorously in breke-24 ynge the presse / But thenne cam so grete rowtes of turkes / that it behoved the other bataylles of our men to assemble hastely for to socoure the thre first bataylles. They were alle at the medde, sauf the laste bataylle, whiche baumont conduyted as ye haue herd. 28 There shold ye haue seen fiers skarmoche of swerdes, of maces & axesse. the malles were so grete and strokes / that ye shold not haue herd yf it had thondred. The due godeffroy sawe a

1 Caxton has here made a "bourdon" by omitting all between the two "cites," and then in this omission of this emission, he has mistranslated the rest of the sentence, Fr. (cicy fust il par tele entencion que quand nos gens seroient descomfiz, et ilz se voudroient tiver vers la mer ou vers la cite), cestte grosse bataille leur venist au devant, et fussent adonneys cuthachiez comme entre deux nubes, et et du tout aufer et foredos.

2 hills, not towns.

3 Ory. And.

4 Fr. "Les Flamans se contindrent vigoureusement, et les Normans demar- poient bien la presse."

5 Fr. "le marteleis estoit si grant," i.e., the hammering (of the arms) was so great.
batayle come where in were moo men than ony of the other. well thought he that yf that were discomfyted / The other shold be moche abasshed. he drewe thederward, And\(^1\) smote in them asprely and 4 vygorously. there dyde he & his felawship moche wel and so valyantly that they slewe many, and hewe of heedes and armes in suche wyse that the felde lay ful of dede men, of hurt and wounded, in so many that the turkes \(^2\) myght no lenger suffice it ne 8 lenger endure\(^3\) / But were discomfyted and were put to flyght. Solyman that had the grete bataylle, as I have say\(^4\) to fore / apperceyued fro ferre his men conteyned them but febly / And approached and sawe the bataylle of buymont / which yet had not be in the 12 medle with the other / he adressid hym thedre, And dyde do shote at hym grete plente of Arowes at the approachyng. But after they henge theyr bowes on theyr armes, and ran vpon them with axes and swordes / And\(^5\) smote so sore on them that almost they tourned 16 the heedes of theyr horses, for they myght not abide so grete estour ne so sharpe of so moche peple. The duc Godefroye knewe & sawe them fro ferre / & drewe hym diligently to that parte. Tanere toke hede also of his vncl, & cam diligently to socoure 20 hym. at the comyng of them two which brought many men with them was Solyman discomfyted, and\(^6\) muste parte fro the place. But the turkes had made redy fyre grekyssh\(^7\) / And\(^8\) threwe it in to the grasse whiche was longe and drye in the felde / Our men thenne 24 departed for the smoke whiche was blak and thyeke / whan the turkes sawe that they on horsbak were withdrawn, they ran vpon our men afoote, and slewe many of them. our men that were on horsbak were yssued out of the thyck smoke, and herde the crye of 28 them that they so slewe / And\(^9\) smote the horses with the spores, and camen agayn alle / And\(^9\) alle them that they founde of theyr enemyes they bete and slewe, and put to flyght. So ferre they chassed them, betyng\(^9\) and hewyng\(^9\) them, that they cam to the 32 grete multitude / whiche thenne were discomfyted and put to flyght /

Of the feynge of Corbagat / And of som turkes gadred to gydre. And agayn discomfyted by our men.

\(^1\) Orig. Ano.  \(^2\) Orig. theoor.  \(^3\) Orig. endure.  \(^4\) Orig. approuchyng.
Corbagat's Army is routed. [Ch. CXLII.

The Turks rallied on a little hill.

Our men followed, and dislodged them.

The rout now became general.

Corbagat fled beyond the Euphrates.

Tancred followed with 4000 men, as far as he dared, with his weary men and horses.

1 X this partye where the bataylle had bee, was in a valeye /
As where descended in to the see a lytil brook or rennyng water. unto that place had our men chassed the turkes / And there they drewe and assembled them agayn vpon a tertre right bye / And made do sowne theyr trompettes and busynes for to brynge their peple to gidre, but our men that themne had not to doi in none other place camen alle to them / Huon le mayne / Therle of filaundres. The due of Normandye / the Due godeffroy, Buymont 8 and Tancre, And they that were with them, began moche myghtely to 1assaylle theyr enemies, thurgh the water so fiersly and by so grete hardynesse and force that they passed ouer, and sodanly ran on that hylle where they were on. And made them to descende 12 doun moche peryllously. fro themne the turkes had none hope, to abyde no longer on the felde ne on the champayns, but every2 man wente and fledde here and there where he myght and thought beste. Corbagat the lord of the hoost, fro the begynnynge that the 16 bataylles assembled / had eschewed the peryll / And was withdrawn vpon an hylle a ferre of, for to see the ende. he sente ofte messagers for to knowe how his men conteyned and demened them3 / wherfore he abode there / And sawe how the turkes cam 20 alle disconyfeted without kepyng araye ne ordenaunce of bataylle. his frenes that were about hym4 sayd to hym / Syre, ye see wel at this tyme how it gooth, therfore thynke ye dylygently for your self / And departe hastely fro this place. he themne wente his 24 waye and fledde as hastely as he myght; he had so grete fere and drede in his herte that he durst abyde in no place. he passed the Ryuer and flood of Eufrates / And by the rennyng of his hors he withdrewe hym as far as he myght. when his men knewe that 28 they were without Capytayne they were moche abasshed, themne thought none of them of other, but every man dyde the best he coude or myghte to saue hymself, & fledde alle as moche as they myght / Our valyuant barons, whiche that had sore tramayled 32 theyr horses, durste not folowe them ouer ferre, lest theyr horses myght fayle them / Tancre with a companye of four thousand folowed, sleyng5 and betyng5 dom5 alle them that they myght atteyne, flor the fere and drede was so grete in the hertes of the 36 sarasyns that / x. men myght hane chassed / v / C. sarasyns. Ther was it cyndently proud and shewed, that there is no counseyl, ne none maye be gyven ayenst our lord goff / And that our lord for-

2 Orig. enery. 3 Fr. si comme il entendit illec. 4 Orig. hyin. 5 Orig. domn.
geteth not them that have stedfast hope in hym, for a smal peple, 
poure, and as alle deedl for hunger, whiche were come fro fer 
coun-
trees and londes, by the ayde of Ihesu Criste wynquysshyd alle the 
4 power of thoryent in theyr owne londe and countree, whiche were 
so grete plente of peple garnissedyd and replenesshyd of alle that 
they had nede of.

How our peple retorned fro the chaasse, and wente to 
8 the pillage, and of the grete Rychesses that they 
fonde.

t He batayle was thus fynyshyd, in suche wyse that the pil-
gryms had the vyctorye. They wente strayte to the lodgyses 
12 of the turkes, there founde they so grete Rychesses of gold, of 
syluer, of precious stones, of vayssell of dyuerse facions / tapytes 
and clothes of sylk, so moche that neuer man myght wel preysye. 
Oxen, sheep, and kyen were there grete plente, whete and mele 
16 grounden, of which they had grete neade ; ther was so moch that all 
they were encombred to bere it / They war horses in this discom-
fyture good and fatte, so many that they were abassshed of 
the grete multynde that was there / They toke and gadred the despoyles 
20 and the tentes, wherof they had so grete rychesses / that of suche 
an boost, was neuer none seen more faire ne ryche / And this cam 
to them merueylously well to poynyt / sfor alle theyr tentes & theyr 
pauyllons were holly rotten / wymmen,Childeren, and other peple 
24 whiche bare none armes they founde onc many in the lodgyses, 
whom alle they brought in to the cyte Emong the other thynges, 
the barons assembled them for to see the tentes of Corbagat whiche 
was merueylyss, sfor it was made in the forme of a Cyte / It had 
28 towres and creastes of dyuerse colours wrought with fyn sylke. sfor 
the mayster palays were aleys in to other tentes lyke to streces in a 
grete tower. Ther myght sytte in the grete halle moo than two 
 thousand men / whan our men had reecyelled thus the rychesses 
32 and despoyles / they alle made grete trusses full of ryche thynges, 
and charged them on theyr horses and backes and entred in to the 
Cyte of Anthypoche. yf they thenne were glad and joyous, It was 
no merueylyle, sfor in longe tyme to fore, fylle ne happe d such 
adventure in Cristiente / They rendred & gaf to our lord many 
thankes and graces of lawde with alle theyr very hartes humblely 
and deouently. sfor wel knewe they that alle was comen fro hym /
The turkes whiche were in the dongeon had wel seen that theyr peple were vaynyqusshyd / And had none hope themme to be rescowed ne of no secoure. Therfor anon as the barons were entread in the eyte they made them to speke and trete with them. And acorded to gydre that they alle shold take theyr wyues and children and bere with them suche goodes as they had / and rendre and gyue over the dongeon. The baners of our barons were sette aboue on it thenne. The werkes of our lord Ihesu crist ben moche lyhe 8 and merueyllous, ffor fro right grete pouerte, can our peple to ouer grete rychesse in so short a tyme / It is moche good to affyse and truste in hym that hath such power and myght. It was mer-uyyl of the disease & pouerte that our barons had suffred / The valyaunt Due godefroy was brought to this poynyt at the day of the batayl 1 that he had not wheron to ryde / But he must praye and requyre moche swetly therle of tholouse / whiche ren-uenyd not oute of the toun, that he wold leue to hym an hors / 16 but he had grete payne to gete it, he had despended alle his hauoyr and good enterly for to susteyne the pour gentilmen, in suche wyse that he had nothyng hym self. There were many knyghtes that rychely were come in to the hooste atte begynnynge, that were brought to so grete pouerte that this day they rode on asses and on pour mares. And many lyhe men as knyghtes valyaunt and hardy myght not cheuysshe for to ryde, but wente afoot emong the foote men, where they helde moche wel theyr place / ffor they mayntened 24 and taught the mene peple how they myght doo to theyr enemies grettest dommage. The power of perse was moche affebleed this day. For ther wer so many slayn and deed that alle therthe aboute was couered. The nombre of them that were slayn was 28 neuer verytably / knowen / Moche was changed the state of our men. ffor he that in the mornyng yssued oute alle poure in suche wyse that he had not for to ete / At even he entred in to the eyte ryche of good and of vitaylles / in suche wyse as he myght have 32 holden a grete court and companye. This good adventure whiche honoured alle cristiente / and specially the Royamne of fffraunce hapned the yere of thyncarnacion of oure lord .M/lxxxviiij / the .xxi / day of the moneth of Iyun /
Of the Fayre ordenaunces that ooure peple made in the chyrches of Anthyoch. And in other towne by / after this vyctorye. Capitullo Cxlitiij.°

4 s Yth that the barons were retorned fro the batayle / and the thynges of the Cyte were wel ordeyned. By the counseyl of the valyaunt bissiphe of puy, and by the prelates that were in the hoost was acorded by them alle, that the chyrches of the towne were 8 entierly made cleene, And ordeyned to doo the seruyse of oure lord God. And specially the chyef cathedalle chyrche / which is founded in thonour of seynt Peter. They establynshed therin clerkes and curates that shold serve in the chyrche. And other to 12 gourme and kepe the holy places cleene / for the false and vntrew sarasys1 had defowled them. They had sette in the chirches somme theyr kyen. Oxen and sheep. And other theyr horses and asses / The comyn wymmen and euylle knaues had made theyr 16 ordure and fylthe in them that it was pyte to see / And also they defowled thynages of Ihesu. Crist, of our lady, 2and of other sayntes with fylyth, myre and ordure / And lyke as they had ben a lyue, they had dawne them and cut of theyr noses / and pycked 20 out theyr eyen / The barons and alle the pylgryme acorded that there shold be ordeyned and establlisyd rentes to the clerkes that shold serve in the chirches. there was offerd gold & syluer ynowgh for to make crosses & chalyces. And also clothes of 24 sylk for to make agayn vestementes for men of the chyrche, and 3 aornementes4 for aulters. The patriarche of the towne whiche was a greek, named Iohan / they ordeyned and sette hym agayn in his place with moche more grete honour and solempnyte / The turkes 28 had caste and put hym oute5 with grete shame, and had don to hym many euyllis for the fayth of our sauyour Ihesu Criste that he helde in the Cytes beynge aboute Anthyoch / Oure men sette bissophpes in the cytes where as none were at that tyme, But in 32 Anthyoch / where as they fonde one / they sette none other til afterward that the good man apperecued that he lytill pronffytyd there. by cause the latyns understode no grekysshe language, And lefte his dygnyte / and wente in to constantynoble, with his good 36 wyll without any forse or constraynt / Thenne assembled the men of the chirche. And they chose and elected for to be patriarke the

1 Orig. sarasyns. 3 Orig. and. 4 Fr. aornements, ornaments, decorations. 5 Orig. oute.
Ambassadors go to the Emperor of Constantinople. [Ch. CXLV.

Bernard, Bishop of Tarse, was put in his place. Bisshopp of Tarse, whiche was named bernard, born at valence. He was comen with the good bysshop of puy / And he had made hym his chappellayn. He was made patriarche / The Seygnorye of the Cyte granteed alle the barons to buymont, lyke as they ha[d] promised and couenaunted, sauf the Erle of tholouse, whiche helde the yate of the brydge / & I wote not how many dayes he had garnysshed it. And in no wyse wold gyne it ouer / But sayde that it was his parte. And by cause that Buymont to fore was called prynce of the peple of his contre. Therfor that name abode to hym and to alle the lordes after hym of the Cyte / and ben alwaye called Prynces of Anthyoche.

How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of Constantinople for to somone hym to come and socoure them as he had promysed.

Capitullo C/xlv:

The barons sent ambassadours to the Emperor of Constantinople, to summon him to fulfyl his promise.

The barons sent ambassadours to the Emperor of Constantinople, [2 leaf 90]
to summon him to fulfil his promise.

Hugh the Great and Baldwin of Hainault were sent on this embassy.

He tydynges were thus ordeyned in the cyte as I haue denysed / to you / Thenn was the counseyl taken emong the barons that they shold sende to themperour of constantinoble for to somone hym by his fayth, that accordyng to the couenaunte that he had made to them that he shold not tarye, but come in his propre persone for to helpe them, & specially at the siege of Iherusalem to whiche they entended for to goo / & he wold not / thenne knewe they that he wold not forthon holde his couenaunte that were made with hym / ne kepe them. And for to doo this message they chaas huon le mayne, broder to kyng phelip of fraunce, and bawdwyn, therle of henawd. Thysse two departed fro thost for to goo unto Constantinoble. But in the waye certayn turkes assayled them / in which medle was lost therle bawdwyn, 28 in suche wyse that never after were tydynges herd of hym. Somme sayde that he was slayn there / And other sayde that he was taken

1—1 Fr. et ne soyn quantes tours que illequeez aroit garnis, que il ne voulut pas rendre, and I do not know how many towers he had fortified here and that he would not give up. Caxton evidently read jours (days) instead of tours (towers.)

4—4 Caxton has entirely misunderstood his French. Se il ne voulut faire, bien secr st il que ilz ne lui vouloient des lors en avant, estre tenus de mule conve- nance, viz. if he would not do it, he might understand that from this time on, they would not consider themselves bound by any agreement that had been made with him.

5 Orig. couenaunte.
and ladde in to ferre countrees. But the trouth of hym was newere known / huon le mayne escaped alle hool with out hurt, and cam unto constantinoble to themperour, but there he empeyred moche his renowne / for he that was of so hye lygnage, And alway had ben in thoost / large / wyse, noble, and a moche valyaunt knyght / hadde thenne no regarde to them that sent hym / ne wolde not retourne to them agayn, but departed fro themperour and went 8 strayte in to fraunce / hit was a gretter blame in hym than in a lasse man / whyles the pylgryms soiourned in Antychose a mor-
talyte and deth sounde and roos emong them so grete, that ther was no day but there were / xxx. or / xl / biers in the chirches / 12 It was so grete that euery man awayted presently the deth, there was none that suppose to have escaped / Thenne hapsed a grete dommage in thoost, for the valyaunt man of grete trouth and of hye couseynl deyde that tyme / Aymart the bisschop of puy. for his deth was grete sorowe thonne thurgh the toun. he was entered and honobly buryed in the chirche of seynt peter / where as the spere that openes the syde of oure lord was founden / he was moche bewayled as the fader of thoost. After deyde a right 20 valyaunt knyght, a trew wyse man and of grete courage, henry dasque, in the castel of torbesel / where he soiourned, and ther he deyde and was buryed. in the same place / reynard de mollac, a good knyght and of hye lygnage, deyde in Antychose; he was buryed in the porche of seynt peter. Alle the wymsen that were in the toun deyed by this pestylence sauf a fewe / in such wyse that of this lytil peple deyde in a lytil whyle in this toun L. M. men and wymsen. The occasion of this mortalyte was many tymes 28 demaunede of the fisiciens & wyse clerkes. The somme sayde that thayer was corromped / The other sayde that the peple had ouer longe moche anguyssh of hongre & of thurst / And whan they cam therto & plente of vytalles / they toke therof ower outrage-
ously / By whiche they ranne in a grete Infirmyte and sekenes. [xi, 20, bk.] This shewde they bydently by them that ete but lytil and by mesure / for they that so dyde cam lyghtly to conualence and helthe.

1 Orig. new. 2 Fr. empira, impaired, damaged. 3 Orig. soiourned. 4 Orig. buryed. 5 Fr. Renart de Mollac. Lat. Reinardus de Amesbach.
How the pylgrmys of thoost desired to goo vnto Jerusalem for to eschewe the mortalite, & to accomplisse their vowe / ca? Cxlvj?

He pylgrmys for teschewe the mortalyte of the town. & also for to accomplyshe their pilgremage, began to crye for to goo to Jerusalem. for therfor were they departed out of their countrees / They moche prayd the barons that they wold makethem redy. and dylygently lede and conductye them theader / The 8 barons that myght not be in reste for theyr requestes / assembled and hadde counselyl on this mater. Somme sayde. that it were good that they shold anoon go forth toward the holy Cyte / by cause the comyn peple desyred it / And also that evry man was bounden by 12 his vowe so to doo / The other sayde that it was not tyme for to goo forth, for the brennyng hete was / oner grete. and the drought shold cause that they shold lacke water. The peple shold not fynde whete / the horses shold lacke pastures. But counselyll to 16 taryc and delaye this passage tyl mychelmasse : thenne shold the tyme be more attempered and moderat. And duryng the mene whyle / men myght do reste theyr horses. and gete newe for them that had none and had neede of somme / and also men myght 20 refresshe them self whiche were wery and seke. To this laste counsely accored they alle / And1 therfor it was late or they departed. Thenne deuyse the barons that they wold remene for thynfyrynte of the place / & to goo there. as they myght have 24 vytaillles better chepe. Buymont descended in to the londe of Cylyce. There toke he tarse / Adame, Mamstre, Annaure. Thys four cytees a fore sayd he garnysshed well with his men. And helede entierly alle the countree aboute. The other wente further 28 in the countre. and ladde theader theyr horses for to soiourne. there were many knyghtes / and men a fote that passed the Ryuer of Enfrates for to goo forth at al anuenta thrugh the countrees / tyl they come to bawdwn. broder of due Godeffroye to Rages / whiche 32 receyued them gladly / And gaf them vytaillles. and made them good cheere as long as they were there / And atte departynge he gaf to them fayre and good yeftes. It was not longe after that it happe that one Rodahan. the lord of halappe. had debate and 36 warre ayenst a baron of his. whiche was Castelayn of a castel named Hasart. And2 ye shal undersande for certayn that there was

1 Fr. pour ce fut tarde le partement.
founden first the playe of dyse(31), and fro thens it cam, and it is named so. This grete man of halappe assembled his peple. And assyged this castel with alle his power / The lord( that was within 4 sawe wel that he myght not holde it ayenst his lord( And he had no turkes for to socoure hym. ne helpe hym / Therfor he spak to on his frente, a crysten man. which was pryue with hym, and sente to duc(1) godefroy many grete yeftes. And requyred and pray( hym 8 moche affectuously that he wold( socoure hym in his nede / for he had desire to be his / and wold be bounden to hym to doo hym grete playsyrs and seruyses. And sente to hym his sone in hostage for surete / The valyaunt duc, that had a softe herte and debonayr, 12 receyued( the loue and thalyauncc of the lord of hasart. he thought wel that it was not ayenst the wylle of our lord for to aferelysshe one of his enemies for(2) another. Themne sente he to his brother Bawdwyn to Rages for to sende hym peple ynowe / for his purpoos 16 & wylle was to reyse the siege to fore this castel for to socoure his frente / Rodahan had( holden viij / dayes longe siege to fore this castel. The Duc godefroy cam by grete iournyes / the messengers of the lord of the castel were with hym / for they myght not goo 20 in to the castel to their lord / for it was besieged round about, therfor they toke two douannes or culuers / which they had taken & brought with them for to doo this / that is to saye, they toke lettres and wrote theryn alle theyr entent. And bonde thoo lettres 24 to the tayles of the douannes, and lete them flee / And the douannes flewe and cam strayt to hasart, fro whens they were, & had ben there nourisshed / they that awayted( on them toke them / the lord( toke the lettres, and fonde therin how he had alyauncc of the duc / 28 his loue and grace. And how he cam for to socoure hym with grete strengthe. he had themne grete loye / and toke to hym grete hawlynesse in suche wyse that he hym self yssued out of the yates with his men largely / And assyelled them of the siege vygorously / 32 whom he had sore doubted not long byfore.

The dylygence that duc godeffroy made for to socoure a turke, to whom he had promysed / And how he reysed the siege, beyng to fore his castell.

---

1 Orij. duc. 2 Fr. par l'autre, i. e. by another.
n. Ow was the duc Godeffroy approched when his brother cam with .iii/ M horsmen, noble, valyaunt and hardy men, &
[1 If. 100, bk.] 1right wel armed. They were but on journeye fro the castel / Therle Bawdwyn acorded wel to theenterprise of the duc his broder / 4 but he sayd wel that Rodohan the lord of halappe had moche grete peple, And that he knewe wel for certayn / Therfore he counseyllèd hym that he shold sende for the other barons that were abyden in Anthyoche, and praye them as his frendes that they wold addresse 8 them tacomplisshe this that he had enterprysed / Trouth it was that he had moche prayd buymont and therle of tholouse to fore er he departed, but they had a lytil enuye, by cause the turke had more requyred the duc than ony of them. but now whan he had 12 sente for them, them thought2 that they myght not goodly abyde behynde. And ordeyne moche dilygently theyr goyng forth / And wente so ferre that they onertoke hym / when they were alle to gydre / they were wel .xxx/ M. men of armes. Rodahan had his 16 espyes, by whome he knewe certaynly that thys men cam vpon hym. he doubted them moche, & he had wel xl/ M men. but yet he durst not abide them / but departed fro the siege / And returned to halappe / The duc knewe nothyng that the siege was departed / 20 but wente strayt toward hasart. There were ynowe in Anthyoche of knyghtes, gentilmen, & other whiche knewe that the valyaunt duc had to doo with men. and departed fro thens, and3 wente toward hym for to helpe hym.

Of somme pylgryms goyng fro Anthyoche toward godefiroy, were disco[n]fyted by the turkes / & rescowed by the duc. ca. C/xlvii

Grete quantite of turkes were embusshed besyde the waye 28 where by they shold passe, for to awayte them. when our people approched, as they that toke none hede / the turkes sprang on them sodanly, whiche were many moo than our men were. Somme they slewe / and many moo toke prysonners, and bonde 32 them, and returned to theyr retrayte. The tydynges cam to the duc and to the hoost, which were out of their wytte for sorow that they had. Them returned they hastely for to sieue the male-factours. the people of the coutre told them which way they were 36 goon / & addressyd them toward thys turkes / when they had

2 Orig. thought. 3 Orig. and.
ouertaken and approched them, they ran on them with grete herte, and slewe them som of them. And somme they toke prysonners. fewe or none escaped / & delyuered them that were taken prysoners / the Cristen men whom they had taken. Rodahan was moche endommaged / for they were wel .x. M/ turkes of the best and chosen men / when oure men had don this they toke agayn the waye toward Hasart. when they approched, the lord of the town 8 issuéd out with thre hundred men on horsbak, And there as he founde the duc / he descended to therthe, and kneled to fore hym, and thanked hym moche / And after alle the other that were there with hym, for the socours that they had don to hym in this nede. 12 Themne swar he to fore them alle / that to thys barons and to the other Cristen men he shold be evermore trewe and good frende, In suche wyse that he wold to his power pourchace to them the best that he coude, and warne them of thayr harme. he lodged them moche wel and honorably, and made to them grete presente. On the morn therle bawdwyn returned vnto Rages / And that other hoost helde thayr waye vnto Anthyoche / How the Duc alway enforced hym to augmente Cristiente, And of somme fortresses by hym beten and destroyed. ca° Cxlíx? He Duc Godeffroy knewe well that the pestylyence and mortalitye endured yet in Anthyoche / and his broder had moche prayd hym that he wold come and soiourne in his londe vnto August, that the tyme shold be better attempered. he toke with hym a lytil companye of them that were moost suffrable, and cam to torbosel / and to two other castellys / That one named hatap / 28 And that other Runcemel. Of thysse lande dyde he entierly his wylle. his brother visyted and sawe hym ofte whyles he abode there / The peple of the countre, and specially men of Relygon, complayned moche of two hermyens that were brethren, that one was named Pancrace, and that other conasyles. They had a fortresse in that contre. & were grete & noble men there. But they had no trouthe in them; they receyued the Robbours and theyys that pytled and defowelled the holy places / the chirches. And dyde 36 moch harme to alle maner of peple. they were enhauenced in so moch pryde, that they toke the presente of the panyllon that

2 Orig. founde.
bawdwyn had sente to his brother to the siege of Anthyoeche, and dyde it to be presented to Byuymont in theyr name. when the Duce herde thyse complayntes / he sente .L/ of his men of Armes, and the people of his countre / And dyde doo take the fortresses of 4 thyse 1 two hermyens. And bete and destroyed them to therthe / whyles that the valyant duc soijourned in thyse partyes / Many of the peple of the hoost wente to therle bawdwyn to Rages, for he dyde them moche good, and refresshyd them wel / and largely 8 departed of his good to them. The way was thenne alle sure and good, Syth that the castel of hasart was alyed entierly with our peple, as ye haue herd.

How the knygthes of Rages wolde haue betrayed 12 Bawdwyn theyr lord, And how he was therof aduertysed.

ca. C.L

O moche peple of Cristen men cam to Rages that it despleyde to bawdwyn the Cyteceyns of the towne / And thermyens and 16 latyns discorded in many thynges, for withoute mayle our men wold haue the seygnorye. They dyde many ennoyes and vlynyes to theyr hostes within their howses. The Erle hym self, by cause he had so grete plente of men of his owne countre, he called the 20 fewer and lasse to counsylly of the noble men of the Cyte / By whos helpe he was comen to his hyenesse and noble lordship. They had therof moch grete desdayne within theyr hertes, And repented them 2 of that they had chosen hym & sett hym to be 24 their lord over them / for they doubted that therle, which was so lyberall as he that gaf to euer man / shold on a day take all that they had. Therfor they sente to the admynys of the turkes, that were theyr neiglybours, that they wold poursechasse gladly by theyr 28 helpe / how theyrle Bawdwyn shold be slayn, or atte lest put oute and chassede awaye fro the Cyte, in suche wyse that he shold neuer retorne. The turkmans acorde wel to this werk. This mater was so ferforth that they of Rages toke alle theyr goodes pynculy, And 32 sette it in the howses of theyr acqueynted neiglybours in Cytees and castellys ther about. whyles they spak and aduysed of this treyson / A frende of theyrle Bawdwyn cam to hym and recounted this fayt al a longe / he merueyld moch therof / And dyde 36 enquyre of this thyng. And founde that it was soo / He knewe wel

2 Orig. thein.
them that had ordeyned this trayson. And by whom it shold be
do. And secrely he sente his men, and toke the Capytayns of
this falsenes: he put out theyr een of theyr heedes. Other that
had not so moche trespassed, he chassed them out of the towne, And
toke alle that they had. Somme there were that he lete dwelle stytle
in the Cyte, but he toke their good as moche as he myght gete / he
had wel by thocasion of this murder that thys traytres deuysed.

8.xx/M/ besausotes, But he departed alle to the pylgryms, that had
holpen hym to take the castellys and fortresses, and somme Cytees
about Rages / He was moche dradle, and doubted moche of his
neighbours, in suche wyse that none of them durste enterprise any
12 debate ayenst hym / The grete and hye men of the contre wold
 gladly haue pourchased the moyens and maner, for to be deleyuerd
of hym, yf they had myght /

How therle Bawdwyn was in daunger of deth by the
16 treson of a turk named Balac / Capitulo C.L{.}

N this Countre was a grete and an hye man, a turk, & was
named Balac. he was acqueynted and moche pryne with
therle bawdwyn / he was somtyme lord of the Cyte of Sorarge, to
fore that our peple cam in to that contre. This turke apperecyued
that therle bawdwyn sayde [not] to hym alle his counseyl and secrete,
as he was wonte, ne shewde hym so good chere. On a daye he cam
to hym / And shewde hym by fayr langage / that he shold come to
24 a fortresse of his, whiche he wold gyue to hym and deleyuer, by
cause he had no more. and also he wold hawe nomo, as he saide,
for his lune shold suffye hym. And he wold sende his wyf & his
children in to rages for to dwell there vnder hym, by cause as he
28 sayde / that the turkis his neyghbours, & specially they of his
lygnae, hated hym moche, & pourchased alle the harme they
myght, for the grete acqueyntaunce that he had with the Cristen
men. The Erle thought nothyng but alle wel / And sayd that he
32 wold goo at his requeste to this fortresse at the day appointed
bytwene them bothe / Therle cam theder with an honder{.} horsmen /
Balac wente to fore, and as a fals traytre had hy{.} an honder{.} of
his men, well armed{.}, within the fortresse / whan they were arryued

Baldwin took
vigorous
action in the
matter, by
killing or
driving away
the ring-
leaders.

After this he
was greatly
feared by
everybody.

He invited
Baldwin to
visit him at
one of his
fortresses.

Baldwin
accepted,
and went on
the day ap-
pointed with
one hundred
horsmen.

2 Orig. dnrste.
3 Fr. "le conte Baudoin ne lui disoit mais tant de son conseil." Caxton
has either exactly reversed the sense of his Fr. original, or else there is an
accidental omission of the necessary "not."
tofore the fortresse, Balac prayd therle / that he wold come vp on hye and see the place how stronge it was, And that he shold bryngge but fewe men with hym, fflor he sayd he had certayn thynges of which he myght take harme / yf they alle entred / The good Erle wold hau deoon soo, but he had in his company a valyaunt knyght, wel adnyse and a wise man / whiche aduertysed his felawes other knyghtes how it was grete perylle and daunger so to let hym goo. And they wold not suffre hym, but reteyned hym by force / fflor they doubted moche the malynce of this man / in suche wyse that in theyr hertes they had suspicioun of treson / The Erle abode by their counseyl / & sente vp xxij. of his men wel armed in to the toure for to see yf ther were ony thynge to doubtbe / he helde hym emong his men. they that wente vp anon apperceyued wel the trayson, fflor the Turkys sprange oute of theyr places where they were hyt. And toke thise xxij. men by force, and desarmed them, and reteyned them bounden handes and feet. whan the erle knewe this, he was moche sorouful for his men that he had thus lost. Themme he drewe hym forth and spak to balac / And moche prayd hym, and coniured hym by the feaunte and oth that he had made to hym, that he wold yelde his men to hym / or atte lestete sette them at rawnson / and he wold gyue for them as moche as he wold hau. Balac answerd to hym, that he tramayled for nought / fflor he shold neuer hau none of them / But yf he wold gyue to hym the Cyte of Soreorge, whiche had ben his to fore. Therle sawe that this fortresse was not lyghtly to be goten, fflor it was owre stronge, and stode in a strange place, and rychely garnysshyd / And returned to rages moche anguysshous of the paryll that he had be in, whan he wold by thatycement of this 28 felow turk hau deoon vp in to the tour, And sorouful he was for them that were taken. he had de Lyon de the Cyte of Soreorge to kepe vnto a moche wise, valyamaunt and good knyght, named Foubert de chartres / this man kept hit with an /C men of Armes, valyamaunt 32 men / whan he herd saye that his lord hau de ben thus almost be bytrayed / and how he had lost xij. men / he was sory, and thought hon he myght helpe them aynest this fals turk, that had don this feect. It was not longe after that in a nyght he sette a 36

---

1 Fr. "qu'il c'estant peu dommageur." 2 Orig. aduerlysed. 4 Orig. hau. 5—5 Fr. "lui aidier contre cellui desloyal Turc qui ce lui avoit fait," viz. help him against this false Turk who has done this to him. Caxton has mistaken the past participle fall for the substantive fail.
busshement nygh vnto this fortresse, a part of his men, and in the
mornynge he with a fewe of his companye cam to fere this toure,
and toke the proye of beastes. They that were on hye on the
4 batayllement sawe that they were but a fewe / And® told it to balak
and to the other men that were in the fortresse / They toke their
horses hastely, and followed them / for to rescowe that whiche they
drof awaye / In suche wyse they expoyted that they cam vpon
8 thembusshement / They sprang sodanly oute and closed them in /
Foubert returned vpou them, And slewe I wote not how many, but
° vj / he toke a lyue / for whom he had incontinent vj of our men, of
them that he helde in his fortresse / It was not longe aftir that four
12 of the other escaped out of the fortresse and brake their prison,
whyles theyr kepars slepte. When balac sawe / that ther were
1nomoo but two, he dyde2 do Smyte of theyr heddes. Sir than
forth on therle bawdwyn, that had acqueyntance to dyuerse admiralys
16 aboute hym, wold neuer after acqueynte3 hym more ne truste any
turk / But eschewed theyr companyes and theyr Amytee. And
that he shewde wel sone after, for ther was an hye and grete man,
a turk, in that contre, named Balduc / of whom I haue spoken to
20 fore / whiche sold this Auncyen Cyte, named Samoloc,4 vnto
bawdwyn / And® this turk had encouenaunted and promysed® that
he shold byrge his wyf and childern within Rages / but he
sought® fals occasions for to delaye this thyngye / On a daye he cam
24 to bawdwyn, as he was acustomed to doo, And® Bawdwyn demaunede
hym why he dyde not that he had couenaunted and promysed®; he
began to excuse hym by thynges that were not trewe. The Erle
toke hym, and® Incontinent dyde do Smyte of his heed.

28 How therle of tholouse toke the eyte of Albane. And
there constituted a bisshop /.

t He Duc Godeffroy soiourned® thus as I haue sayd® in the land
of torbesel. Therle of tholouse assembled his peple / and toke
32 grete plente of pour pilgryms that were therle ylle and dyde nought /
he wente to a Cyte wel garnysshyd named albane / ij journeys fro
Anthioche; he assyeged it / And so constreyued them within that
they yielded the toune to hym, and he entred therin and helde it /
36 And by the moyen therof he had alle the countrie about. he thanked

2 Orig. dype. 3 Orig. acqueynte. 4 Lat. Samosatum.
5 Orig. songht.

GODFREY.
The Mortality was still great in Antioch. [Ch. CLIII.

oure lord humbly of thonour that he had gyuen to hym. Thennne chasse he a bisshop in the towne, a good wyseman, that was named Peter, and born in nerbonne. And he gaf to hym entierly half this Cyte. After this he cam in to Anthioche, and was there 4 sacred by the patriarche bernard. And gaf to hym his entememet\(^1\) and made hym Archibishop. In the company of therle of tholouse was a noble knyght and valyant named guyllamone. This man whan Anthioche was taken toke by adventure the wyf of Ancean, 8 lord of the towne / and two of his neynewes sones of his broder, named sansadol, and helde them yet prysoners / But this sansadol gaf to hym for them grete good and rychesse, wherfor he deuynerd them, bothe the lady and children. In this sayson cam grete plente 12 of peple out of Duchelande, And arryued atte port seynt Symeon, And soiournd within Anthioche / but the mortalyte endured \(^2\) yet in suche wyse that they deyde almost alle. ther escaped but few but that they were alle deed in short tyme, for this pestylence con-16 tinued three monethes hool vnto theenture of wynter / There were deed of knyghtes only .V.C. of the mene peple, noman knewe the nombre.

How our peple returned in to Anthioche, and toke 20 counseyl for to goo to Iherusalem, and of this that foloweth.

cæ° CLIIJ.°

The fyrrst day of Nouembre / the barons that were departe\(^3\) for the pestelence were alle returned in to Anthioche, lyke as 24 they had promysed / Theyr counseyl\(^4\) and delyberacion was that they shold goo and assiege the cyte of marran,\(^5\) which was stronge and wel garnysshyd / frō Albare that they had taken, it was not but viij. myle / Noman myght holde lenger theyr comyn peple. all 23 were desirous to goo to Iherusalem / Atte daye named\(^6\) they were alle redy. Therle of tholouse / the duc godeffroye, Enstace his broder, Therle of filaundres, The Dux of Normandye. And\(^7\) Tanere cam to the cyte of marran and assieged it / They of the towne were 32 moch rych / and ful of grete pryde / And specially by cause that the same yere at assemblee of them was a scarmoche ayenst oure men. of whome they toke somme, and somme slewe in suche wyse that they had the better. ffor that cause they preysed the lasse our 36

\(^1\) Fr.  b. interinment.  \(^2\) qui lui dona paude.  Lat. "Suscepto ab eodem pallii genio factus archiepiscopus."  \(^3\) Orig. counseyl.  \(^4\) Fr. Marran.
pilgrymes, They blamed and Injured our barons, And despyt themen and alle host / They beyng on the walles / vpon the hyc towres they sette vp crosses and spytte on them in despyt of our fayth. 

4 and made other shameful thynges for to angre with alle our peple / The barons were moche wroth / And dyde do crye do assault, & assailed the towm asprely in suche wyse that yf they had had ladders they wolde have entredd in to the Cyte by force / the / ij.

8 dayes after that they cam theder. The thyrde day cam Buymont / whiche brought men with hym largely, And lodged where as the Cyte was not assieged. Thenne had our men grete despyte of this that they dyde nothyng / And hastily dyde do make engyns and reyesd them castellys,1 belfroyes, and slynges to caste stones, and fylled the dyches for to goo and vnder myne the walles, they within defended them moche wel / And threw vp vpon them grete stones, Fyre, bren/lyne, Oyle boylyng, and shotte at them with arba-lasters and bowe turquoyes arowes passyng thyeke / but god be thanked they hurted but fewe of oure men. they within began moche to be mery / Oure men apperceyued that. And theyr volente and hardenesse grewe and encreaced, anon they dressed.

20 the ladders ayenst the walles / & wente vp dylygently / Emong alle other ther was a noble & valyannt man, & was of limosyn, named geffrey de tours; he mayntened the fyrst tyme mercycyllously well / Other folowed hym. ther were ynowe that entred in to the towres /

24 they had taken the Cyte yf the nyght had not come on and destroubled them, therfore they left of til on the morn, for that assault had endured fro the some rysyng tyl that tyme / they kept wel the gates that thay of the towm shold not yssue and made good.

28 watche in thooste. But the mene peple sawe that none shewde hym vpon the walles / And entred in to the towm, And fonde that it was all voyde of peple / they take alle that they wolde and had nede of, as they that longe had suffred famyne and grete pouerte.

32 Alle thay of the Cyte were entred in to longe causes and depe, and supposed to have sauned and kept them there. On the morn the barons sawe that the cyte was taken, And entred in, but they founde but lytil gayne, sfor the comyn peple had takyn suche as they founde / they knewe wel that the turkes of the towm were hid vnder the erthe; they sette fyre in the mowthes of alle the caues / They set fire to the mouthes of these caues.

When the pilgrims entered the town they found that the people had fled to caves.

1 Fr. beffrois, movable tower of wood.
2 Fr. se contint, conducted himself.
3 Orig. cf.
Many they swlew, and the rest were taken prisoners.

Godfrey admonished the barons to start for Jerusalem.

He himself went to Rages to visit Baldwin.

[3 Lib. 101, bk.]

Godfrey the valvaunt duec of Lorcyne sawe how the men a fote made them redy for tacomplysshe theyr vowe and goo toward Iherusalem, and moche requyreth and admonesteth the 12 grete lordses to the same / But the valvaunt duec would see and vysyte his brother to fore that he shold separate fro this countre /

And toke his pryue companye, and wente to Rages. when he had seen his broder, and doo suche thynges as it plesyth hym / he wold 16 retorne to Anthycohe to the other barons and other pylgrymes that abode there for hym. when he was approched, that he hadd but six or seuen myle to ryde / they founde in theyr waye a moche fayre place for to dyne and etc in by a fayre welle, moche delectable and 20 ful of grete herbes and grasse / Alle they acorded gladly for to dyne in this fayre place. whyles they made redy theyr dyner be ye certayn that oute of moche reed whiche was nyghe a mareys by arroos certayn Turkes wel armed. when the noble Duce and the 24 other barons sawe them come / they toke theyr Armes hastely as they myght / And toke theyr horses and ran vpon them vygorously. And there was the skarmoche grete & fiers. The due dyde moche wel and valyauntly, ther were many turkes slayn / And the 28 remenaunt feldde. Our men lost there nothyng, But cam with moche grete ioye vnto Anthycohe /

How after that the cyte of Albare was conquerd, a grete debate arose bytwene therle of tholouse 32 and bywmont.

Bohemond and the Earl of Toulouse

F this noble Cyte of Albare which was taken as I have sayd to fore, arroos a grete debate bytwene bywmont and the erle of

---

1 Orig. requyreth. 2 Orig. pryue. 4 Orig. bywene.
The People murmur at so many Delays.

229

tholouse, for therle wold hame alle albare. buymont sayde he wold^ not gyne away his part / yf he yelded not and^ gaf ouer certeyn towres that he held in Anthycohe. And herupon buymont departed,

4 And made the towres to be assayled, that the men of the erles of tholouse helde, and toke them by strength and made them to goo out that kept them in the name of therle, and fr^o then forthon he helde alle Anthycohe withoute felaw or partener. Therle sawe that

8 Buymont was departed^ fro the Cyte so conquerd / And gaf the torn^ entirely to the bissip of Albare, whyles they ordeyned and^ disposed bytwene hym and the bissip, how the cyte myght be mayntene^d and kept in suche wyse that the turkes shold not

12 recover it / The peple a foote began to murmur of this that the lyne & noble men taryed for to take this euyl Cytees, and^ made debate and noyse emong them for theyr conquest. But the pryncipal^ cause wherfor they departed fro theyr countrees lefte they, as

16 forgetynge^ and settynge not therby / And as it semed they sette nothynge by thaccomplysshynge^ of theyr vowe / Therfor the mene peple acorde^d emonge them self, that as sone as therle of tholouse shold^ be departed fro the Cyte of marran they shold confounde^ and

20 destroye it alle vnto the erthe, in suche wyse that they wold^ not tarye for hym^ fro than forthon. It happed that the barons assem-bled at Rouge, a Cyte whiche is half waye bytwene marran and

24 Tholouse. for the mene peple languysshed^ moche and hasted^ for to goo theder. There the barons coude not acorde / so that there was no conclusion taken / whyles that therle of tholouse abode at this parlement, The foote

28 men that were lefte at marran, ayenst the wyll and defence of the bissip / bete down the wallles and toures of the Cyte of Marran / for they wold not for thoccasion of this torn^ abide lenger in this countree.^ when the erle returned^; he was moche angry of this / 32 that they had^ don, but for that he coude not amende it^ / he conv^ well his courage without forth. The men a foote began alway to crye and requyre moche the barons that they wold conduyte them for taccomplysse theyr pylgremage / or yf they wold not / they

36 wold^ chese a knyght and^ make hym Capytayn over them / And^ had a quarret over the city of Albare.

Albare was finally given to the bishop of the city.

[5 leaf 165]
The people still murmur-ed against the barons

The barons assembled to take counsel as to future movements,

but no de-cision was reached.

The people grew still more uneasy.

Fr. bien couvrît son courage, par dehors, i. e. he dissimulated perfectly his real feelings.

1 Orig. torn. 2 Orig. and. 3 Orig. pryncipal. 4 Orig. confounde. 6 Orig. hyin. 7 Orig. torn. 8 Orig. countre. 9 Fr. bien couvrît son courage, par dehors, i. e. he dissimulated perfectly his real feelings.
they shold folowe hym vnto the Cyte of Iherusalem / On that other syde was grete scarsete in thooost of vytyaylles, in such wyse that the pown peple deyde for hungre / Men sayde that many of them et fleshe of men and other thynge that were not fayr ne good, clen / 4 ne honeste for to ete / herof souned a grete mortalyte / ffor they had holden siege about this Cyte of Marran with suche meschyf of famyne that they had lost moche of theyr peple, and not so many by arnes, but by mesease that they suffred. Ther deyde a 8 moch noble, valyaunt yonge man, Emorran,\(^1\) sone of luon, Erle of seynt poul of a sekenesse / of whom was grete dommage, and moch was bewaylled in thooost.

How atte request of the comyn peple the erle of 12 tholouse ordeyned day for to conduyyte them / ca. CLVI.

---

They suffered greatly from hunger at this time.

\(^1\) Fr. Enjorràn.

\(^2\) [Footnote: Othyr syde he had wel understonden that the barons acorded not to this that the comyn peple requyred. / And therfor he that was of grete courage and valyaunt man, sayde that he wolde no longre 24 suffre thus the pour peple languyysse ne deye. / And ordeyned to them a daye that he wolde departe withoute faylle for to goo strayt vnto Iherusalem / And that shold be the / xv / day folowyng, / And for talledge the mesease of famyne / he toke with hym a part 28 of his knyghtes and of foote men the strengest and most delyuer, / And lefte the remnauñt in the Cyte, and went forth and entered in to the lone of his enemyes and brake vp toones, stronge howses / & brought grete plente of beestys & other vytyaylles, & brought also 32 esclames men and wymmen, / when he cam to Marran / he departed all the gayn that he had gotten as wel to them that abode as to them that he had with hym / in suche wyse that they all were ryche of goodes and of vytyaylles / The daye began tapproche that therle 36 had named / The comyn peple cryed fast for the departyng / And sayd alle playnly that he shold have no lenger respyte of them, he]

\(^3\) [Footnote: Orig. ryhe.]

---

The Earl of Toulouse was much distressd at the condition of things, and fixed a day to depart for Jerusalem.

---

As the day approached the common people were determined to depart.
wist not what to doo / for he knewe certaynly that the peple\(^1\) had right. But he had but a lytil company on horsbak, therfore he requeryed the bishopp of Albare to goo with hym / he graunted it to him gladly. And lefte his londe in the hande of Guyllamme de cunyly, valyaunt, wyse, and trewe knyght, And deleyued to hym but xxx horsmen and / xl. men afote. But it was not longe after, that the good knyght amended soo that he had xl on horsbak and lxxx / a foote / whan the day cam that was appoynted, therle put fyre in the Cyte of marran and brente it alle to ashes. And after toke his waye, he had in his company aboute a .x.m. men, of whom there were not but / iij / C. on horsbak. whan he was de-
parted the duc of normandye & tancre departed after, & abode for to goo with hym. Eche of thysse two had but .xl / men on horsebak. But\(^2\) they had moche peple afote with them / In theyr waye they fonde plenty of vytyaylles, for they passed by Cezaire / by haman, and by chamele / Of the lordes of thysse townes had they grete yeftes gold / syluer and other rychesses, they presented to them: Oxen, Kyen, Motons and other vytyaylles / They dyde them hau resonable cheep of alle thynges / eche of them conduyted them 20 surely thorugh his countre. And where as they had power / Thoost enereced and grewe more and more fro day to day / for they founde many good passages ouerall where they wente, of horses also wherof they had grete nede fonde they grete cheep / in such wise that many bought fressh horses / And\(^3\) so moche dyde thyse to fore that the other barons cam, that dyde so moche that they had in theyr com-
panye a / M men wel horsed, they cam thus a ferre fro the see syde. But after they acorded\(^4\) that they wold drawe them to the see syde, for to here more lyghtly\(^4\) tydynges of the Barons that were abyden in Anthoche / and for to fynde the better and\(^5\) bye thyr necesseytes at the shippes that were in the hauenes and portes. How therle of tholouse auengyd hym of somme turkes robbours that robbed his hoost / \[ca. CL.vij.\]

\(^1\) Fr. \emph{avoir droit}, were in the right of it. \(^2\) \emph{Orig.} Bat. \(^3\) \emph{Orig.} lyghtly.
They received Great Gifts everywhere. [Ch. CLVII.

The Earl and the bishop of Albare retayned a fewe men wel horsed, embusshed them behynde the hoost for to see yf they wold come that thus endommaged the hoost. when they had a litil whyle taryed the turkes cam & sprang vpou somme of our men / whiche al wylynyge made sem-blanat that they myght not goo. Therle sawe them / and sprange sodenly on them out of his embussheement / & smote of alle theyr heedes / sauf somme that he ladde with hym. There wan he good 8 horses and armures many / And after he cam agayn in to thoostoe with grete ioye / ffor this daye forth they wente thurgh the londe moche surely without ony lack of vytaylles, of Cytees and of castellys on both sydes when they passed. Ther was no lord, but he sente to them grete yeftes, fier to gete theyr lune, and dyde them haue resonable cheep of vytaylles oueral / Reserued one castel, where the men that were therin trusted ouermoche in theyr fortesse. Therfor they sente to them neuer presente ne message / But descended alle Armed ayenst oure men for to defende them a passage. But our men, when they sawe them, assaylled them vorygously, in suche wyse that they were anone disconjoytet. There were but fewe but they were alle slayn or taken. whan the barons sawe that they were rebelle ayenst them / anon they wente in to the fortesse and toke it alle at the fyrst comyng, smote down the walles vnto therthe, And the bowses they brente, after they had taken out all that they fynde therin. They ledde away horses ynow whiche they founde in the pastures, emong our men were dyneres messagers of the contre that the grete lordes and men ther aboutes had sente for to see theyr comye, whiche whan they sawe that our barons dyde thus theyr wylle / And that nothynge of the grete resiste them, they wente to theyr lordes, And told them that they were ouer cruel and fiers peple / aspre and hardy. Thenne sholde ye haue beene brought, And presentte to oure men grete presente and honorable, and vytaylles as for nought fro alle partes / In so moche they doubted them / that they dyde grete cure for taqueynte them, and to brynge them in to theyr lune /

1 Orig. otthrr. 2 Orig. thurgh.
3 Fr. des cités et des chasteaulx a destre et a senestre, quant ilz passoient n’y eut oncques nul seigneur qu’il envoyast, there was not a single lord of the cities and castles, both on the right and on the left, who, as they passed, did not send them, etc. 4 Orig. ouermoche. 6 Orig. fonude. 7 Orig. thns.
8 Fr. ilz mettoient grant cure a les avointier, they took great pains to make their acquaintance.
It was not longe but they passed alle the contree til they cam to the playnes of an Anceynt cyte by the see syde, named archys, they lodged nygh by the town.

4 How therle of tholouse approuched with his host vnto archis, And of the situation of the same.

*a* CLxvii

a Rhys\(^1\) is a Cyte of the lande of Fenyce,\(^2\) and standeth at Archis is an ancient city of Phoenicia, atte foote of a montayne named Lybane, in a tereitory moche stronge / and is a four or .v / myle fro the see / & hath moche plenteuous londe aboute it, and delectable of pastures & of waters. The scriptures saye / that it was founded\(^3\) moche ancemyntly. For

12 Noe that was in the arke had .uij / sones, that one of them was named Caym (32) / he had a sone named Canaham / Of hym cam a sone that was Arracheus / he founded / this cyte. And after hym this cyte was named\(^4\) Archys. Ther were prisoners of oure men in this toun. hit was sente worde by the prysonners to therle of tholouse that he shold assiege this cyte, & also to the other barons / for they shold haue grete good therby. the cite of tript, which was moche noble & rych, was but vj myle from thes, there were also of our peple prysonners / For syth the begynnynge of the siege of Anthyche, and after that it was goten / our peple began to reume in the contree nyce & follyly for to feche somme vytaylles & other necessitees\(^5\) that they lacked / they were taken in many places in such wyse / ther was vnceth cyte ne castel in the contre, but ther were therin som of our pylgryms prysoners.\(^6\) In the cyte of triptle were moo than / ij / C. They them self had sente to oure men that yf they wolde make semblant to conquere\(^7\) the countree / The kynge of triptle wold\(^8\) gyne them grete hauoyr and good for to departe thens, and shold deleyuer to them alle theyr prysonners. It happedde them to them thus that our peple approuched the cyte of archis for to see what semblant they wold make, & also for tabyde the other barons that shortly shold come and folowe them /

---

\(^1\) Orig. Rhys. \(^2\) Fr. Fenice, Lat. Phoenicia. \(^3\) Orig. founded.

\(^4\) Orig. necessitees. \(^5\) Orig. prysoners. \(^6\) Orig. couquere.
The Capture of Tortuose.  [Ch. CLIX.

Of a toun named\(^1\) tortuose, whiche Raymont toke with a Rowte of pylgryms, And of the departyng of the other barons fro Anthyoche / Capitulio CLIX:

Her yssued out of our lodgys of oure men / an honderd men on 4 horsbak, and two honderd a foote / And made theyr Capytayne Raymont pelet, which was a wyseman and a moche valyaunt knyght. They wente to fore a cyte whiche was named tortuose,\(^2\) for to see ye they myght fynde ony aventure for to gete som gayne / They ap-8 proughed the cyte and began tassayle it vygorously and moche sharply / They within deffended them, bothe men and wymmen valvauntly,\(^3\) but our men left but litil or nought.\(^3\) the nyght cam on them, And they left thassault for to be more fresh\(^4\) on the morn / 12 And abode for more companye of thooste that shold folowe them / And to begyn on the morn thassault agayn / They of the toun had moch grete drede that our men wold assaille them agayn on the morn, and myght not\(^5\) resiste them. therfor in the nyght they wente 16 pryuly out of the toun and wente to the montaines, and caryed nothing with them but theyr wynes and childerem. Alle theyr other geer they lefte in the toun / Oure men that knewe no thynge herof aroos erly and began to make rely and encorage eche other to 20 doo wel at thassault. they approached the walles alle armed, and they herde noman / they entred in to the toun, and opened the yates in such wyse that alle entred. themme sawe they that they of the toun were yssued and goon. they founde the Cyte ful of goodes, 24 in so moche that they were alle ryche, they trussed all / and bare as moche as they myght in to thoost, & recounte\(^6\) theyr aduenture, of whiche they were alle glad and ioyous, and thanked our lord. whan the moneth of Marche was come, and that the season was more 28 attempeter, the people that was left in Anthyoche sawe that it was tyme to departe / they spak to duc godeffroye & to therle of filaudres, & prayed them moche afectuously that they wold enter-

pryse & conducte them to Hirlm for taccomplysshe their pilgre-

mage / the goyng forth of therle of tholouse, the duc of normandy / & Tancre, caused them moche to haue the wyll forth,\(^6\) for they were goon to fore, and lelde with them grete nombre of pylgryms / And they happened wel in the waye, and had therby grete prouffyte 36

---

1 Orig. named.  
2 Fr. Tortouze.  
3 Fr. "telieant que nos gens ac fortiront rien ou pou."  
4 Orig. fresh.  
5 Orig. not.
and grete honour. By thys wordes were the barons gretyly stered and meyd / They ordeyned theyr affayres dylygently, and toke alle theyr peple, as wel on horsbak as a foote, and wente so fyrth forth that

4 they cam to the lyche of suruye / They were / xxv. M / men all in poynt and armed, eueryche after that he was / The good man and valyuant knyght buymont connayed them theder with his men. But it was not theyr entente ne wyll that he shold goo ony fyrther, for the cyte of Anthonye was newlye conquered, and theyr enemies were fast by / Therfor it behooned hym not to withdraue hym ferre fro it / but therfor he toke good heed continually daye and nyght / But of his grete courage he had connayed them theder / And there
toke his lene, and wepte moche at departyng. he recomandied them to god, & retorned agayn to Anthonye / And the hoost abode there. The lyche is a moche auncient cyte and noble, & stondeth upon the ryuage of the see / That was the only cyte in suruye of which them— The Lyche is the only citie in Syria belonging to Constantinople.

16 perour of constantinoble was lord / longe to fore owe men cam theder was comen guyneyuers, of whom I spak long to fore that was born at boloyne vpon the see syde. And arryyed at tharse / whyles that bawdwyn, broder of the duc, helde it. he was comen to the lyche with his shippe, and supposed to have taken the town by force / and folysshly he conteyned hym and assayled it. They of the town yssued out lyghtly And toke hym, and yet helde hym in pryson whan owe men cam theder. The Duc knewe that he was born in the londe of his fadre / And that he had been in the companye of therle Bawdwyne his brother. Therfor he demanued hym of the grete men of the town / And prayde them enterly that they wold delynere them to hym / They durst not payne saye hym / but delyned hym and his felawship with his shippe. the Duc com-
manded hym that he shold goo to the see, and alwaye coosteyeng by the hooste. he dyde it gladly / And sayled fyrth forth.

How the duc asseeged Gybelet, and of a trayson by

32 which he lefte the siege /
cap. CLX.

3 He hoost departed fro the lyche / whan owe Barons had recayued theyr prysoners. They that were late departed / fro

Cylyce, fro Anthonye, & fro other cytys aboute, were alle comen and arryyed theder in suche wyse, that alle wente to gydre by the see syde vnto a Cyte named Gybelet, which was fro the lyche

1 Orig. ore.
A bailiff of Egypt was in power here, who tried in vain to buy off Godfrey and his men, but was more successful with the Earl of Tolouse, who took his money, and sent word to Godfrey to leave Gibelet and come to him.

Tanjred revealed the treachery of the Earl of Tolouse to the pilgrims.

about a / xij. myle / They abode there and assieged the Cyte / A bayly of the Calyphe of Egypte he led this Cyte on the see side under the power of the Calyphe of Egypte / This bayle yissued out by saut conduyt, & spak to duc godefroy, to whom he offered vj. M. 4 besauntes, and many grete yeftes aboue that for to departe, and reyse the siege fro then. The duc wold in no wyse here thysse wordes / but sayde that it were treson and vntrouth, and god forbode that I shold take suche hyre. he thempe departed when he sawe he myght not make his bargayn with the noble duc. After he sente his messagers to therle of tholouse, and offred to hyrm this grete somme of moneye / yf he myght fynde the moyen to reyse the siege fro this town. It was sayd that he recceyned the moneye / and for to make the barons to departe / he founde a lesyngue / for he dyde to be sayde to them, that he was wel aceyteyned by messagers and lettres / that the Soudan of Perse had so moche / augre and desdayne of this that Corbagat his conestable had be descon- 16 fyted, and so moche peple of his slayn, that he assembled alle his power, And cam with grete peple for to fyght, and to destroye them alle that he coude fynde of the cristen fayth. Thise tydynes sente thelre of tholouse by the lisshef of Albare to the duc 4 a fore sayde 20 and to therle of filamundres, and sente to them his lettres, by whiche he prayd them moche sweley and expresly, that they wold leue their siege and come dylygently to hyrm, in suche wyse that they myght be alle to gy-lve whan this peple cam. whan the Duc and other Barons herde this thynge, they were moche anguysshous and menyd, ffor they supposed certaynyng that alle this had trewe. Anon they departed fro gybelet. by the cyte of valerine they wente / whiche was aboue the castel of margat. syth they cam to 28 marche / whiche is the first cyte of the londe of fenye. whan they wente toward the northeast, fro thens they cam to the cyte of tortouse. There is an Isle / where somtyme was a Cyte / there abode the Shippes, theyr nanye. I wote not how many dayes after 32 they hasted and cam to fore the Cyte of Archys, Tancre yissued oute of thooost and cam ayenst them / And tolde to them alle a longe the tromperrye and the barat that thelre of tholouse had don /

1-4 "cette ville cité. C'est-à-dire la première cité de la marine sur le pouvoir d'Egypte," viz., this was the first city on the sea-coast under the power of Egypt. Caxton has made a "bourdon" here by omitting all between the two cités. 2 Orig. fynde. 3 Fr. menage.
They were moche angry / theryfore they lodged them a part fro the
them / that ha\(^2\) doo broken theyr syege. The Erle knewe that he
had \(^1\) not the lone of the barons that were newe comen, theryfor he (\(^3\) if. 168, ll.\)
4 sente to them messagers / that sayde to them in his name moche
fayre wordes / And brought to them grete yeftes / wheryfor in
short tyme it happed that they were alle repeased and amyable and
good frendes to gydre / sauf only Tancre, whiche acorde\(^4\) not with
8 hym, but accused hym of many thynges. A fore the comynge of
thise laste barons / the peple of therles of tholouse myght nothyng
auyalle and prouffyte ayenst the Cyte whiche they had assieged.
But now they ha\(^d\) grete hope / that it shold now soon be brought
to an ende / and accomplys-hyd by thayde of them that were newe
come / Neuertheles it fyll not so as they supposed, fior all the
tymes that they contryned by ony enyge for tassaylle the walles
alwyay it fyll contrarye to that they purposed / and they of the town
16 brake all theyr ouurages / in suche wyse that they loste their costes
and payne. It apperred wel that our lord had withdrawn fro them
his ayde and his good wyll. They within the town slewe many of
them without. There dyde twayne noble and valyaunt knyghtes.

20 That is to wete, Ancan of Ribemont / that alway dyde valyauntly
where sommeuer he cam / And potom de baladon, an hye man and
wel acqueynted with therle of tholouse. This siege displesyd ouer
moche to alle them of thooste. And in especial to the footemen
24 which had moche grete desyre taccomplysshe thayr vowe to Hieru-
salem, & also whan the du was comen they that had ben there to
fore / began to withdrawe them fro the werke in suche wyse that
every man dyde nought, fior it plesyd\(^4\) them wel that therle were
28 grene\(^4\) and ennoyed that he myght departe and lede them forth
with the other barons.

How thooste murmured of the sperre founden in
Anthyoche / & of the grete myracle that happed
32 in the presence of alle the hoste.

Capitulo CLXj\(^o\)

\(^t\) Here was renewed a word by whiche the comyn people / also somme of the barons whiche\(^2\) began to douhte of the
36 sperre / that was founden in Anthyoche, lyke as ye haue herde to
fore, fior somme sayde certaynly that it was the very sperre that

\(^2\) "which," interpolated by Caxton.
The man who found it came before the barons, and asked for the trial by fire.

Some believed it to be the true spear that pierced our Lord, [P leaf 160]

others were incredulous.

opened the Syde of oure Lord on the crosse / And that was with his precious blood by dewed. And by renunciation of oure lord had be founden by an holy good man for to recomforte his people whiche had grete necessitye and nede. Other 1sayde that it was 4 not but fals barat / trompereye and abuse / for therle of tholouse had fonden this & contryned / for to meue the peple to drawe and gete syluer of theyr offrynges / And this altercation was meuyd by a preest named Arnold,2 chappellayn,3 and moche acquyunted with 8 the noble due of normandye. he was wel lettred / but he was not of good lyf: he was ouer malyicious and pourchassoure of discordes / As ye shal here afterward in this book.(33) This rumour was grete in thoost, as I haue sayd. The man that had fonde the spere herde 12 the double of the peple / And cam to fore the barons moche hardly, And sayd to them in this maner / "Fayr lordes, doubt ye nothing, that this wrerce hath ben by barat ne by trompereye, For theryn hath be none / But it is comen of god / And certaynly for 16 the comfort of the cristen peple. Seynte andrew appeered to me by the wylle of our saucour thesu crist, whiche denysed to me alle the maner, how I haue fonden it / And for to shewe to yow / that this that I sayse is trouth / I praye you that ye make a grete fyre 20 and merueyllous / And I shal entree in to it / And holde the spere in my hand, and shal passe and goo thurgh hool and sauf." when they here? this they acoorde alle therto. The fyre was made and brennyd lyght, which was grete & merueyllous. And this was on 24 the blessyd good fyrday / And it plesed them that this thynge shold be thus preuyd the same day that our lord was smeton to the herte with the same spere / he that thus offred hym self thus, and enterprysed for to prerne it was named Peter bertilmewe, 4clerk / 28 and but litil lettred, after that it coude be understonde without forth,4 and was a moche symple man / Theone was alle thooste assembled aboute the fyre / Peter cam forth & knelde down for to recommande hym vnto god / whan he had made his prayer / he 32 toke the spere And entred in to the fyre / And passed thurgh it, and was nothyng on hym perysshed ne hurt in that ony man coude see or knowe. when the peple sawe this alle they ranne for to kyssse hym / And made to hym moche grete ioye. Of this double thenne 36

2 Fr. Ernoud. 3 Orig. chppelayn.

4-4 Fr. "clerc assez pou lettré, solone ce que l'en pooit connoistre par dehors," viz., an illiterate enough clerk, according to what could be judged by his outward appearance.
they wende veryly that it had be quenchid, But yet souded a
gretter errore and murmurm than to fore / flor it was not longe after,  
but that this Clerke deyde / thenne sayde somme that by than-
guysshe of the fyre he toke his deth / And that shold be thoccasion  
thereof. The other sayde that he yssued oute al hool and sauf fro  
the fyre. But it was the wyll of oure lord of the trouthe was  
knownen that he shold deye thus, or peraduenture the prees that  
cam vpon hym was so grete whan he lyssued out of the fyre / that [11 f. 109, bk.]  
he was therby hurte that he deyde / In this maner murmured yet  
the peple emong them.

Ch. CLXII.]  Ambassadors come from Egypt.

Of thambassade of Egipte comen with our men in to  
thooste of pylgryms / & of the reverence that  
was don to them / ca". / C / Ixij".  

s  Ommme messagiers that were sente in to Egypte by our barons  
atte requeste of them that cam vnto Anthyoch fro the Calyphe  
of Egypte, had he reteyned and holden there by force and barat  
wel a yere / But now they were retourned, And with them were  
comen the messagers of the Calyphe / which brought to our barons  
fro hym wordes moche dyuerse & moch chanuged fro that they had  
sente to them to fore Anthyocho, ffor them he sente to them that  
they shold conteyne them vygorously aynst the Sowdan of Perse.  
And they shold haue of hym grete ayde of gold, of syluer, and of  
vytaylles. Now had he chanuged moche his langage, ffor he sente  
them worde that he thought that he dyde moch grete thyng for  
them / yf he suffred that the pilgrims myght goo to Iherusalem  
[j. C / to gydre / or .iiij. C / alle vnarmec. And when they had  
made theyr prayers and don theyr pylgremage to retorn sauffly  
agayn. whan oure barons herd this, they had herof grete desdayne /  
And sayde to the messagers, that they shold retorn agayn to theyr  
lord / and telle hym that by his licence ne leue wold they not goo  
to Iherusalem vnarmec one after another. But they shold goo  
32 maugre hym / alle to gydre in bataylles renged / and the baners  
reysed and desployed / Now I shall say to you why the Calyphe of  
Egypte was reysen in so grete pryde / whan our men had discom-
fyted Corbagat to fore Anthyocho, The power of the Sowdan of  
36 Perse was moche affehled, in such wise that none of his neyghbours  
doubted hym / ne fered to make warre agaynst hym, ffor he had  
always the worse. By whiche occasion it happe that a comestable
of the Calyphe of Egypte named Emires\(^2\) had taken the Cyte of Iherusalem fro the men of the soudan of Persse, whiche had helden it xxxvij yere. Therfore sawe nowe the Calyphe that he was at his aboue / by the disconffury that our men had don to Corbagat. 4

And had wende that he shold not have had neste of ony ayde / Therfor he despyshed now our peple.

2 Of an ambassade fro themperour of constantynoble come to our pylgryms / & of thanswer to the 8 sayd ambassade / ca Clxii

Messengers from Constantinoble, whiche complayned moche on buymont\(^3\) / and also on the other barons, for they sayde that all the barons were 12 becomen his men, And had sworne vpnon the holy ewangelyes that alle suche Cytees and Castellys by them conquered / whiche had be vnder the power of Constanctynoble shold be rendred to hym as his owne thurgh out alle the londe / to Iherusalem. Now buymont 16 dyde contrarye this whiche helde Anthycohe / and the other Barons that had gyuen it to hym. Thus spak they of the couenauntes / But they spak not of alle / for withoute faylle trouthe it was that they had couenauntes this / but themperour had promised to them 20 that he shold folowe them with his grete hoost / And shold furbysshe to them grete plente of vytyayles by see. he was the fyrst that had broken the couenaunt and promesses, for he had not don that one ne that other / And he myght wel have don it / And therfor they were not bounden to holde his couenaunte made by oure barons, by cause he helde not that he had promised / for the lawe wyll not that a man shal holde couenaunt to hym that holdeth not his. Thus answered the barons to them. And therfor sayde 28 they that the ytefe that they made to buymont of the Cyte of Anthycohe ought to be ferme and stable, And so wold they mayntene it to hym and to his heyres for euer / when the messengers here this, they moche prayd the barons that they would tarye theyr 32 goyng to Iherusalem til that themperour were come / for they sayde that without faulte he wold come to fore thentree of Iuyll, And brynge with hym moche grete plente of peple / And yf they wold doo thus moche for hym, he shold conne them grete thank / 36 And shal gyne to eche of the barons many grete & ryche yeftes /

1 Lat. Emires. 2 Orig. buymont.
Ch. CLXIII.] A Dispute arises among the great Barons.

& also shal departe largely to the gentil men & to the footmen.

when our barons herd this they sayde that they wold counsylle them to gydre and drewe them a part. Therle of tholouse acorde

wel to this that they shold abyde so grete an ayde as was the pays-
saunce of themperour / And sayd he supposed certaynly that he shold come / as it was sayd / but the other supposed that he sayd so for to kepe the barons and other men atte siege til the cyte were

taken / for it shold be moche deshounour and fowl for hym to departe fro thems without accomplysshynge that whiche he had entered. The other barons acorde nothyng ather, but wolde that they shold goo dylygently asisse the holy cyte of

Iherusalem for to doo theyr pylgreynage & accomplyshe theyr vows / For whiche they had suffred so many tranaylles and descases, For they knewe moche wel the delaye of themperour / and his fayr worlde full of tromperyes and deceytes. Therfor it

was not theyr oppynyon for to truste any more his counte dissyl-
lacions / Thus sourde a grete debate bytwene the barons, And myght not acorde / of whiche it happeved that he that helde the cyte of trypple whiche had offred to them so moche good by couenaunt

that they shold departe fro the siege / and goo out of the londe, whan he knewe that the barons were emonge them self in discorde, he wold no more offre to them ony thyng / but entered so grete hardynes that he wold fyghte ayenst them / The barons acorde

therto / and lefte the Bishop of Albare for to kepe the lodgys. And whan they had so doo, they wente so ale in batayllles ordyned toward trypple / whan they cam there they fonde the lord of the towne and the Cytezeyns out with grete plente of

men on horsbak and afoote where they had ordyned theyr batayllles and abode our peple / whiche they doubted not moche.

For they had seen that the Erle of tholouse had holde siege to fore this Cyte, And had no thyng prenayled, wherfor they preysed our

men moche the lasse than they dyde before. But whan oure men approched so nyshe that they sawe them / anon they ranne on them moche fiersly in suche wyse that they loste anon. viij.C / of theyr men whiche oure men slewe. And of oures were slayn but

There helde they the feste of ester or pasque, the x day of

April.

The barons were in doubt whether to believe this or not.

Most of them wished to go on without waiting any longer.

A great quarrel arose about this matter.

The barons in the meane time attack Trypple, and slew seven hundred of the enemy.

2 Orig. barous. 3 Orig. tranaylles.

4-1 Lat. "ne ejus labyrinthis et ejus ambagibus iterum involuerent." 5 i. e. our men (the crusaders).

6 The Turks. 7 Orig. fiersly.

GODFREY.
How the comyn peple complayned them of this that they wente not hastely to Jerusalem.

Tho barons that had disconfyted this men Retourned in to their lodgyes with alle theyr gayne Thenne recommenced and began agayn the playnte and the clamour moche grete that the peple made by cause they wente not hastely to Jerusalem. all theycryed with hye vois that they shold departe fro the siege so long as contynued theyr crye that the valyaunt Due Godeffrey Thelre of Flanndres, The Due of Normandy and Tancr sayde that they wold do the requeste of the peple afoote. And thenne recyylde they theyr tentes and panyllons, brent theyr lodgyes, and departe. It displayd moche therle of tholouse / he prayde them moche affectuously to abyde, but it myght not be, for they them self that fyrst were comen with hym were wery, and anguysshous of the siege, And strayt helde they the way toward trypple, whan therle of tholouse sawe that he myght none other wise cheniishe ne accomplishe his empresye / he wold not abyde there alone he had right, But dislodged hym and followed the other whan they were a yle / myle fro trypple / they lodged them the baylly that helde 20 the cyte and the countre about in the name of the Calyphe sente theder to them his messagers he had moche leyd down his pryde for as I sayd to you to fore he wende to hace faughten peer to peer his messagers knewe wel that he was to feble, and that it was folye. He thenne desyred and moche required that oure men wold take of hym right largely and goo out of his power. The mater was so demened that he gaf / xv. M. besauntes, and delyned to them alle the prysonners that he had of our pilgrims. And aboue that he gaf to them grete yffes and ryche presents, as horses, mulets, Cloth of sylk, and vessel of dyuerse facions. And they promised to hym that they wold doo none harme to the Cytes that he had and helde / That is to wete, archys, trypple, and 32 Ybelyn, ne to their appertenauntes. And he hym self sente to them oxen / Kyen, sheep, and moche grete plente of other vytaylles, to thende that they shold not destoye his londe / Thenne cam in to throwt somme suryrens whiche dwellyed upon the mount of lybame, 36 whiche is nyghe vnto thysse Cytees toward the est moche hye / They were of oure fayth wyse men and trewe And were come for

1 Orig. recommenced.
to see our barons for to salewe and feste them. The good men of 
thoost called them, and desyred of them affectuously / that they 
wolef teche them the moost strait way & easiest for to goo to 
Iherusalem. They toke aduys and counseyll to gydre, and 
behelde alle thynges that in suche a caas behoued, and cam to our 
barons, and sayd to them that they counseyll to holde the waye 
by the see coste for many reasons / Fyrst, for the surete and com-
8 forte of theyr shippes / shor in the manye were not only the shippes 
of guyneueyres that cam fro filhaudres, but ther were shippes of 
gene / of venyse, of Cypres / of Rhodes, and of other yles of greece / 
charged with vytaylles and marchaundyses whiche dyde moche grete 
12 good in thoost. The surryens wente to fore to conduyte the 
hoost. the baylly of trypple deleyuerd 1 to them also men that knewe [23.111, bk.] 
wel the countrees and the londe. They passed alle the see syde 
and the cyte of ybelyn / and lodged vpon a Ryuer that renneth 
16 there in a place / whiche is named Mans / And for tabyde the feble 
peple that were not comen ne arryned. they soiourned there a day.

Of the grete dylygence that our men made for to 
approche to Iherusalem / & of thalyaunces of 
somme turkes made vnto them. Capitulno CLXV:

1 He thyrde day they cam to fore the Cyte of Baruth, And lodged them upon a Ryuer that ran to fore the tovn / The 

baylly of the tovn gaf to them grete good, And made do come 
24 plente of vitayll and good cheeph, for to spare the trees & the 
fruytes of the contre. On the morn cam they to the Cyte of 
Sayette, there they lodged them vpon a Ryuer therby. he that 
governed and kepeth the Cyte wold not doo thyngne ne bounte to 
28 them / I wote not therin he trusted, but he sente out many of his 
men for to doo hurte to thoost, and for to atteyne certayn knyghtes / 
which were lodged by for tassaylle them / but our men toke theyr 
horses and ran on them vygorously / And slewe of them I wote 
32 not how many. And the other fledde in to the cyte, And had 
nomore talente to atteyne our peple / in suche wyse that our men 
rested them in pces that nyght / On the morn for to reste and 
refresshe the mene peple / they departed not thenes / But sente oute 
36 for fourage many men a foote, and certayn men of Armes to kepe 
them in to the contre and vyllages about. They brought largely

The Christians of Syria give good Advice.

243

Ch. CLXV.

Three days after they came to Beirut.

The army followed this advice, and arrived at Yebelin.

The Governor of Sayette attacked our army, and lost many of his men in the skirmish.
The Pilgrims go on their Way towards Jerusalem. [Ch. CLXV.

1vytaullles and horses\(^1\) wyth grete quantite of beestes, grete and smale, and\(^1\) cam agayn without lesyng of ony thyng, alle to gydre sauf only a knyght\(^2\) named Gaultier de ver / he wente by his valyaunce ouer ferre / sfor he retourned neuer agayn, ne neuer was 4 knowne where\(^3\) he becam / they were all moch sory for hym in thoost / The day aftir passed they by a moche sharp & aspre way, & after descended\(^4\) by a destrayt in to a playne. and on the right syde they lefte this auzyent Cyte named Sarepte, wherin helyas 8 the prophete was in. After they pressed a water whiche is bytwene Sur and Sayette. They wente so fer that they cam to this noble\(^5\) eyte of Sur. There they lodged\(^6\) them by the noble fontayne, and pytte of water luyng lyke as scripture sayth. They lodged this 12 nyght in gardyns moche delectable. whom it was daye they sette them forth on theyr lourneye. And passed by a 6 strayt moche perillous, whiche is bytwene the montaines & the see. They descended in to the playnes of the Cyte of Acres there vpon, and by a water 16 rennyng they sette vp theyr pauyllons / he that had the charge of the town made them to haue vytaullles at resonable prys, and made acqueyntaunes good and honorable in this maner, that yf oure people myght\(^7\) take the Cyte of Jerusalem, and dwelle there after 20 xx. dayes in the Royanne, in suche wyse that they were not put oute of it by force / or yf they myght disconfyte in the feble the pyssuance of egypte / that fro thende forthon they shold yelde and gyue ouer the Cyte of Acres / without makynge of ony resistence. The pylumys wente fro thems on the lyft syde / they lefte galylee bytwene the mont\(^8\) of Carmely\(^9\) and the see / they cam in to Cezaire, which is the second Archebisshoprich of the londe of paleyste. they lodged them vpon a water that yssueth oute of the 28 palms or maryses, whiche ben by the town, there helde they thayr penthecost or wytsonyte / thre dayes after theatre of Iuyyn they abode there. on the iij. day they toke their way. On the right side they lefte Iaphe / And by a grete playn and euen waye they 32 cam in to the Cyte of Lide, where the bodye of the glorious martir seynt george lyeth. In thounoure of whom / lustynyen, that was

---

\(^1\) Fr. "victuailles et a chevaux."  \(^2\) Orig. knyght.  
\(^3\) Fr. qu'il devint, what became of him.  \(^4\) Orig. noble.  
\(^5\) Fr. "per wygs destroz moult perilleuze," viz., by a very narrow and dangerous pass.  
\(^6\) The sense is ruined by Caxton's omissions. Fr. "et fent accointances bonnes et honorables a mo: barons, et aussi fist a eulx leues conuenances que se ilz pourvoient," etc.  
\(^7\) Orig. mount.  
\(^8\) Fr. Carmel.
Emperour of Rome, made there a moche / fair chirche and ryche / But when the turkes herde tydnynges that our men cam / they bete it downe and brente the tymbre werke, whiche was moche grete / 4 For they doubted that our pilgrims shold take them for to make engyns to caste stones, and castellis to assaille with / thenne herde our barons saye that ther fast by was a moche noble Cyte named Rames. they sente the erle of Flamndres with / v. C / horsmen to 8 fore the toun for to knowe what semblant they wold make / None yssued out when they approched it. they cam ner / and founde the yates open. And entred in to the Cyte. And founde neythar man ne woman. For the nyght to fore they had herd tydnynges 12 how our pilgrims cam, & ladde to the montaynes wyne and children / and alle their howshold / when therle knewe herof he sente to the barons how the mater was, and counseylled them to come in to the toun. they were moche glad of thysse tidnynges / 16 they made deountly theyr prayers at the tombe of seynt George / And after cam in to the Cyte, whiche was al ful of wyne, of whete, of oylle, and of other vytaylles to them necessaruye / they abode there .iii. dayes / they chose ther 3 a bishope of the cyte / and was 20 a normant named Robert, whiche was born in tharchebishopryche of Roen / They gaf to hym entierly the two Cytees for euermore, that is to wete, Lyde and Rames, and the countree and vyllages about them / ffor they gaf it to honourue god and seynt George for 24 the fyrst gayne of the same holy londe.

How the Cristen men of bethlehem receyued wel Tancre and his rowte, And sette his baner on the chirche of our lady.  

Capitulo CLxv.°

28 t He turkes beyng in Iherusalem herde wel tydnynges of the comyng of our pylgryms / wel knewe they certaynly that alle theyr entencion was to come to the holy cyte, fior whiche thynghe they were pryncipally meuyde and departed fro the countrees. 32 when they herde this they were moche esmeuyd / And sayd that it was reason to defende it² / The Cristen men that were in bethle-

² Orig. aud.

³ Here a whole chapter, and part of a second has been omitted by Caxton's French text. This missing chapter gives details about the arming and fortifying of Jerusalem by the Turks, when they heard of the approach of the Crusaders; of the great cruelties inflicted upon the Christians of Jerusalem;
Bethlehem is delivered to the Pilgrims. [Ch. CLXVII.

The Christians of Bethlehem offer to deliver that town to the pilgrims.

The

They

Yth

And

Tancred and 100 men went to receive it,

and saw the holy places with great joy.

They could not sleepe this night, so anxious were [1 leaf 1/3] they to go on to Jerusalem.

The common people of the army could no longer restrain themselves,

hem sente certayn messengers to the barons, & desyred of them that they wold deluyeere the town in to their handes / if they wold sende men to receyve and kepe it. They sayd that it was reson to doo that they requyred. They toke an honderd men of Armes wel 4 horsed, noble, valyaunt, and hardy, and deluyer to them Tancre for a Capytayn. They that cam to fetche them conduyted them in such wise that erly in the morning they entred in to the town. Alle they of the Cyte clerkes and laye men receyued them honorabily and with moche grete ioye and procession brought them in to the chirche whiche standeth in the place, in whiche the gloryouse vyrgyne maruye was deluyerd and chyldedoure lord Ihesu criste, the sancour of the world. they sawe the crybbe in which was leyde in 12 to reste the swete childe that made heuen & erthe / when our peple sawe thyse holy places they were moche ioyous, and had grete tendrenes in theyr hertes / The Cyterzyens of the town for signe of ioye And for demonstraunce thatoure lord & hisd eorde 16 our lady shold gyue to them vycotyre, toke the baner of Tancre / and sette it on hye vpon the chirche of our lady / They that were left in thoost had moche grete desyre to see and vysyte the holy places that were nygh by / as it was sayd. for the lone of god, 20 & for to honoure hym were they departed fro theyr countree / and had suffred many annoyes and grete tranaylles. And they myght not slepe this nyght, suche breanynge desire had they forto see the cyte, 1 which shold be thende of their trauaylle and thacomplysshe - 24 ment of theyr vowe. Them thought longe er the day cam, and them semed that thys nyght was moche longer than the other / for 2 to a corageous desire ther is not haste ynowgh.

Of thordaunt desire that the peple had for to see 25 Iherusalem / And how thoost approched and were lodged by ordenaunce. Capitulo C/Lxvij.

Yth that it was knowne certaynly in the lodgys that the Duc 3 hadde receyued this nyght the messengers of bethlehem, And 32 that he had sente his men in to the town. The peple afoote abode nearer for lene of the barons / ne myght not suffre til the daye was and, especially, of the taxes laid upon them, which were so heavy that the Patriarch was obliged to go to Cyprus for aid in paying them. 2 Fr. "car a courage desirant, ne haste l'en mie asses," viz., for one can never hasten enough to satisfy a desiring (or eager) heart. 3 Orig. Duc.
come, but begun to calle alle the nyght for to goo vnto Iherusalem, 
whan they were goon a whyle forth / One of the noble men of 
theoste named Gaste de bedyers had moche grete pyte of this 
4 peple that they sholde be slayn in the waye. And therafere he toke 
his hors, and toke ,xxx / men of Armes with hym wel horsed, and 
ordeyned in arraye, And thoughte that he wolde goo nygh to Iheru-
salem for to see if they myght fynde out of the town beestes and 
8 other gayne for to take and lede away with hym. Alle thus as he 
thoughte1 / it fylle thus in partye, ffor whan he cam nygh2 the 
town he fonde Oxen / & kyen largely in the pastures / and but fewe 
that kept them. they fledde away when they sawe our3 men come 
12 Gaste and his men began to gadre to gydre and drofte 
them hastely toward thoost / but the hardmen and kepars of them 
made a grete crye / In the town were turkes hardy, and desyryng4 to doo armes / They armed them dilygently, & ronne hastily after 
16 for to rescove the proye / gaste & his men sawe them come, & 
knewe well that they were not strong ynowe for the turkes / ther-
for they lefte this that they brought, & mounted vpon an hye mon-
tayne, therby moche angry of this mesauenture, whan they had 
20 abyden a whyle vpon this montayne, They behelde in to the valeye / 
And sawe Tanere come fro bethlehem retornyng5 to thoost with 
an / C. men on horsbak. whan Gaste sawe them he smote his hors 
with his spores & cam to hym / and told hym of his mesauenture 
24 and moche anguysshous, and sayd that the turkes were not ferre / 
they ran alle to gydre after them and ouertooke them er they myght 
come in to the cyte. In theryr conyng they discomfyted the turkes 
5 that they that myght fylle in to the Cyte / The remenaunt they 
28 slewe, Andoure men recoveredy6 theyr proye, And brought it in to 
this montayne / Alle they that were in the lodgys assembled 
about them. And7 demauended8 of them ententyfly fro whens this 
proye cam. They answered7 that they had8 take it to fore the yates 
32 of Iherusalem / whan they herde named the holy Cyte of Iheru-
salem, and knewe certaynly that it was so nygh / thenne began they 
tendrely to wepe / And fylle down on theyr knees, and rendered 
thankynes to ourlord9 with moche grete syghes, of this that he 
36 had so moche loued them, and conduyted that they myght see 
shortly the ende of theyr pylgremge / that is to wete, the holy Cyte 
of Iherusalem, whiche oure lord so moche louyd, that he wold10 dye

1 Orig. thoughte. 2 Orig. nygh. 3 Orig. our. 4 Fr. "desiraus de faire armes," eager to fight.
Situation of Jerusalem. [Ch. CLXVIII.

Some went far enough to see the walls of Jerusalem,

All were now reconciled to their labours and trials.

The holy city stands between two mountains.

Near by is the castle of Emmaus.

The text reads:

therin for to saue the world. Grete pyte was it to see and here the teres & the cryes of this good peple. They departed in this same maner. And wente so forth that they sawe the towres and the walles of the town / Thenne lyft they vp theyr handes toward heaven and dyd of theyr hosen and shoes, men and wymmen / and kyssed therthe / who that had seen this / though he had had an herde herte he shold haue ben menyed to pyte, sprpo therens forthon the waye greued them nothynge, but they wente moch lyghtly til they 8 cam to fore the town / There they lodged them all affir thordenauce and denysse of the barons / whiche deleynd to them the places. Thenne seened verytably that the worde of the holy prophete was entierly accompliessyd, whiche sayd longe to fore. "Leua Iherusalem / &c." Aryse vp Iherusalem / and lyft vp thyn eyen, And beholde the puissaunce of the kyng thy sainiour / which cometh to onthlynde the and put the oute of the bonde wherin thou art. O lord, how the hye barons, the knyghtes, the gentylmen of our hoost, and alle the other generally, men and wymmen, were recomforted and reconcyled of the grete travaylles and mescaeses that they had longe endured / whan they founde them to fore the holy Cyte of Iherusalem, And how ech of them had good wylle to conteyne 20 hym self in this nede and werke.

Of the situacion of Iherusalem and descriptio / and also of many other cytees, townes, & countrees/ ther aboute. ca. CLxviii. 24

1 Orig. and.
2—3 Fr. "deslier et mettre hors de bien ou ton es," i. e. to loose thee, and free thee from the bonds in which thou now art.
3 This Latin quotation was inserted by the French translator; it is not in the original text.
to his squyres the loues of breed to eie that were offire upon the table of our lord, wherfor saul dyde do slee hym / and the other admynystratours of the chirche and men of the towne / There is lyde where seynt Peter heeled a lame man named Eneaus,\(^1\) and had leyen / viij. yere paralittyk / There is also Iaph, as I haue sayd, where seynt Peter reysed a dede woman named thabyte\(^2\) / There was seint peter herberowed in a tanners bowes, that tamed leders when he receyued the message fro Cornelle, whom he baptysed, as is sayd in thactes of the apostles. toward the east is the flome Jordan / And the deserte is by yonde where the holy prophetes were woont to repayre / There is the vale saunge,\(^3\) whiche is named the dede see / whiche was a moche fayr and delectable countrre, lyke a paradys, to fore that oure lord made do synke v. Cytees / Sodome and the other / as is sayd in Genesys / On this syde Jordan is the cyte of Iherycho, that losue wan more by prayer than by bataylle. Theder wente oure lord\(^4\) Ihesu Criste / and made a blynde man to see / There is galgala, where helyzeus the prophehte dwellyd. Toward the south is the cyte of Bethlehem, where our lord was born, and leyde in the crybbe emonge the beestes. There 20 by is tecua, the cyte where Amos and Abaucte the prophetes were born / Toward northeast is Gabao,\(^5\) where atte prayer of losue the somne rested, til he had vaynquysshed / the batayll / There is Seceis,\(^6\) where as oure lord spak to the woman of Samarye. There 16 is bethel, where as the peple of Israelah worshipped the calf of god ayenst the wylle of oure lord / There is Sebaste, whiche is named seynt Iohan de sebaste. There is the sepulcre of seynt Iohan baptist / helizeus and\(^7\) Abyas the prophetes were there buryed / It was sommetyme named Samarye.\(^8\) The Cyte of naples is there / which somme tyme was named Sychem. And it was there where Symeon and leuy, sondes of Jacob, for to venge theyr suster, whiche had ben enforced, sweve them of the towne / and\(^9\) brente alle 32 the cyte.

\(^1\) Fr. Acneas.

\(^2\) Caxton has here omitted a line or two after "Thabite." Fr. "et estoit pleine d'aliomes et de bonnes oeuvres, et la rendit aux veufes femmes et aux pourres gens a qui elle faisait molt grant bien,"—Lat. "Tabitham plenam operibus bonis et almosynis, defuntem suscitavit, et sanctis ac viduis resignavit vivam."

\(^3\) Fr. li vaus saunage, Lat. vallem sylvestrem.

\(^4\) Lat. Gabaoon.

\(^5\) Fr. Sicphors.

\(^6\) Caxton has omitted "pour le mont de Somer qui est illeques encore nomme L'en toute cette terre," viz., from Mount Somer which is situated here, all this country is still named.

\(^7\) Orig. aud.
How Iherusalem had many names after dyuere lordes therin 1 rennyng, and yet of the situacion wel at a longe / ca. Clxix.  

1 Iherusalem is the chyef cyte of Iudee / It is withoute medowes 4 and 8 withoute Ryners, ne no brooke ne welle. It was first called kings Salem / & after Zebus 2 / After in the tyme what tyme were caste out the Iherumhesees, 3 when dauid 9 regned 8 / vii. yere in Ebron / he grewe 4 and amened moche this cyte / An 8 wold that 8 it shold be the chyef and hede place of alle the Royamme / Thenne was it named Iherusalem. To forse that dauid assayled 7 the towne / he toke the towre of Syon / whiche was named 8 the cyte of Danyel. Thenne made danyd the cyte to be made about the place whiche 12 was named Mellon. loab made the remaunte of the towne / After whan Salamon regned 8 in Iherusalem / It was named 8 Iherosolima, That is to saye, Iherusalem of Salamon. As they seye that made thystorys / Affir the deth of Ihesu criste, Titus the sone of va.sian was a moche grete prynce of Rome, And assiged this cyte with a grete hoost / & toke it by force / and destroyed it, and threwe it down to therthe / Affir cam Elyus Adrian the fourth Emperour after hym / and called it after his name elye / for he 20 reedefyed it moch wel / 5 first it stode in an hangynge of an hyle., 6 6 in suche wyse as toward theest and south it was sette in the roundnesse of the terre of the mount of Syon, 6 And of another mount named 8 Moria. The temple only and 12 the toure named 24 Anthone 7 was on the topp 8 of the terre. But the same Elyus made alle 8 the Cyte to be born 8 and reedefyed 8 right on the topppe or sommet of the terre, in suche wyse that the place where oure lord 9 was crucifyed 8 and the holy sepulchre, where his blessid body was 28 leyed 8 in, whiche to fore were without the Cyte, were then enclosed within the walles. The Cyte was not ouer grete, ne ouer lytle. It was more long than brood / hit is on the four quarters enuyromed with depe valeyes, toward the est is the valeye of Iophat 9 / There 32 stondeth a moche fayr chirehe made in thonour of the glorious  

2 Fr. Jebus. 3 Fr. Gebusées, Lat. Jebuso. 4 Fr. creut, i. e. increased. 5—5 Fr. "premierement elle estoit assise en un pendant," at first it was situated on the brow of a hill. 6—6 Fr. "si que versus soleil levant et vers midi estoit assise el roiste del monte de Syon," so that towards the est and south, it was situated on the sEEP side of mount Sion. 7 Fr. Antoinc, Lat. Antonia. 8 Fr. fist part, caused the city to be moved. 9 Fr. Josaphat.
Wondrous Buildings in Jerusalem.

Capitolo

vyrgyne Marye, where it is sayd that she was buryed. & ther is shewed yet the sepulcre. Ther vnder is the remnyng water of which seynt Iohn euangelyste sayth / that Ihesu Criste passed / 4 Toward the southe is a valey named Emmon, there is the feble that was bought 1 with the pens that Iudas sold our Lord fore, which is made in sepulture of pilgrims / & named adequatehach. toward the weste is a parte of the valey where as the piscyne 2 is, whiche was a grete thynge whan the kynges of Iude were there: and it stretcheth vnto the Cystere, which is called the lake of the Patriarke. By the olde Cymeteyr whiche is in the caye, named the Lyon, toward the north-east, may men goo vp playn to the Cyte. There is shewed the place where seynt Stephen the prothomarter was stonek of the Iuyys, whan he prayde vpon his knees for them, that so bytte hym to deth / And so dyed a very marter.

Here thystorye deuyseth of many merueyllus edyffices conteyned in the same Cyte of Iherusalem. And who made them.

Ch. CLXX.] 251

Here is the sepulcre of the Virgin Mary.

Here is the place where Stephen the martyr was stoned by the Jews.

The true cross was found on Calvary, where our Lord was crucified.

1 Orig. bought.

2 Here several lines are omitted by Caxton, which were probably unintelligible in the text which he translated. Lat. of the missing lines: "In cadem quoque sed in decreo quod ad orientem resperit, sita est sanctae Resurrectionis ecclesia, forma quidem rotunda, quae quoniam in declivo praedicti montis sita est, ita ut ollus videm immimus et contiguous ecclesiæ tectum habet, erectis in sublimne trabibus et mira artificio in medium coronae contextis aperitum et perpetuo patens, unde lumen ecclesiæ infunditur necessarium. Sub quo hiato patulo Salvatoris positum est monumentum."
Further Description of Jerusalem. [Ch. CLXX.

They walled it all in newly.

On the slope of Mt. Moriah standeth the temple.

On the west of the temple are two gates. [2 If. 115, bk.]

Towards the east is the Golden gate.

Within this enclosure dare no man dwell.

In every corner were oratories where the Saracens used to pray.

lytil where so grete and noble thynges were. Therfore they made it al newe walled about with good strong werke and hye, which conteynyed and enclosed within it the fyrst chireche, and the holy names that I have named Toward the parte of the oryent is the other mount named mona. On the hangyng thereof as who beholdeth toward the south standeth the temple, whiche the lye peple calle it Tempel domini. There as Dauud bought the place for to sette in the Arke of oure lord. And Salamon his sone made there the temple by the commaundement of God. At the beginnyng of this book we sayde to you, that Omar the sone of Captap dyde make the forme in this manere / There is a place square longe as mocche as an Archer may shote at twyes, And as brooch / closed with good walles / stronge and hye / And there toward the weste ben two gates by whiche men entre, That one is named Speciosa / as seynyt peter heeckedom the hym that was lame fro his birth, and satte to fore the gate for to demaunde Almesse. That other gate had no name toward the north east. Toward the thoryent is another gate named the Golden gate / Toward the south is the hows Ryall / which is the temple of Salamon. vpon ech of thyse yates, By whiche men entre in to the toun, And on the corne ben hye towres / vpon whiche the prouostes were woonte to goo vp at certayn howres for to warne and somone the peple to praye and saye theyr orysons / and to honoure our lord after theyr custommes / Somme endure yet, & the other ben falle. in the cloysture of this place, ther dar noman dwelle / ne noman is suffred to entre but bare foot and clene washen / flore there ben porters sette at alle the yates that take hede therof / In the mylde of this place, whiche is thus closed, is another place, more hye and square, toward the weste men goo vp therto in two places, by degrees or stappes / and in lyke wyse toward the southe. But toward the south goth noman vp, but by one place / In eueriche of the angles or corners were woonte to be oratoryes, where the sarasyns made theyr orysons and prayers / Somme endure yet / And many ben beten down / In the mylde of this hye place standeth the temple, whiche is made square / And with out ben the walles couerd with tables of marble

1 Owing to his misunderstanding of the passage above omitted, Caxton has also failed to understand this line. Fr. "qui enloit et contient dedans soy la premiere eglise et les saints lieux que je vous ai nommes," which enclosed and containd the first church and the holy places which I have mentioned to you.

2 Lat. Moria. 3 Orig. bought. 4 Orig. and.

6 Fr. angles, corners. 7 Fr. preroires, priests, Lat. sacerdotes.
wrought with fyn gold moche rychely / The coverture aboue was
of leed, alle round right wel made / eche of thys places aboue and
bysteth is pauned with moche fayre whyte stone / in suche wyse
whan it rayneth, alle the waters of the temple, of whiche ther
falleth grete plente, falleth don cleene and cler in the cysternes
whiche ben within the cloystre. There bytwene the temple and
the place which is emonge the pylers, There stondeth an hye Roche
and lowe bynethe a dyche or a fosse. It is sayd that the Angele
stondeth there on, whan he slewe the peple for the synye that
dauydf nomberd his peple, vnto the tyme that our lord com-
manded that he shold put the swerde in to the shethe. ther made
12 Davydf after an Alue. To fore that our men entred in to the
toun, it had been a certayn tyme all discoueryd / But after they
that holde it, they couerid it with a fayr whyte marble, & made an
aluel aboue where ther clerkes dyde the seruyse of our lord.

16 How the turkes of Iherusalem, whan they knewe the
comyng of our hooste, stopped the pyttes and
fontaynes of the tooun. ca. Clxxi.

He londe in whiche Iherusalem stondith is named Iurye, by
cause that whan the x / lygnages / or trybus departed fro the
heyer of Salamon / And heled them to Ieroboam / The tweyne
abode in Iherusalem with Roboam that were the trybe of Iuda /And
the trybe of beniamyn / And of the name of Iuda it is named
24 Iurye / It is named also paleystyne for the phyllystees. This Cyte
standeth as it were in the nauyll of the londe of Byheste or of
promyssion / after the termes that were named by Josue / whiche
endure fro deserte of the mount of Lybane, and fro the grete flood
28 of Eufrates vnto the see. The place in which the cyte standeth
in is moche ayere & drye / Ther be no waters in the tooun but only
of the rayn; sfor in wynter tyme whan it is acustommed to rayne
moche in the londe, it is receyued in to the Cisternes / of whom be
32 many in the tooun / and they occupye this water in all thynge that
they have ned of / Neuertheles somme scriptures saye that they
were woonte to have fontaynes, which were without the tooun, and

1 Fr. s'assist la, sat there.
2 Fr. l'Oir, the heir.
3 Fr. Orig. Juda.
4 Fr. Judic, Lat. Judaia.
5 Fr. "du desert et du mont de Liban", from the desert and from Mt.
Libanus.
6 Fr. usent, employ, use.
7 Fr. used.
The Turks stop up the Fountains. [Ch. CLXXII.

which were stopped up during the wars.

A mile from the town is the renowned fountain of Siloam.

The Turks stopped up all the fountains for five or six miles around.

[* If. 116, bk.*]

Within the city they had great plenty of water, while the pilgrims without suffered greatly.

run in to hit / But they were stopped by the warre / The lest of all the fontaynes was gyon, whiche Ezcheyas the kyng stopped, lyke as the scripture sayth. Gyon is now a place in the town toward the south, within the vallye that is named Ermon. There is a 4 chirche founded in the worship of seynt pretop marter. There in that same place was Salamon enynted, as is red in the thirde book of kings. without the town a two myle or thre ben founden somme fontaynes, but they be but fewe / and they rendre but lytil water. 8 In the partye toward the south, where as the two vallyes assemble / is a fontayne moch renommend, whiche is named Syloë / or our lord commandes to the blynde man that never had seen that he shold goo wasshe hym in the water there of this fontayne, and he sawe 12 clerely & incontinent was made hool / this fontayne is but a lytil myle fro the town. It semeth that it boyleth a lytil / som tyme it spryngeth not, somme saye that alwaye the .ij / daye the water cometh agayn atte ferthest. when the turkes of the town knewe that 16 oure men cam / they stopped the mouthes of thys fontaynes & of the Cysternes a fyue or .vi myle aboute / for they thought that the pylgrymes for lacke of watres shokde not mayntene theyr syce to fore the town / And without fawte that they had grete lack and 20 meseage therby, as ye shal here folowyng: they that were within the cyte had grete plente of water in Cisternes / and fro the fontaynes without cam grete haboundancee by condnyxes, whiche descended in to .ij / pyseynes right grete by the temple, that one 24 endureth yet in to this day / and is named probatica piscina / where as they were wonte to wasshe the fleshe of the sacrefyses / of whiche the gospel speketh, and sayth that it had .v. porches where the angele descended and menid the water / And he that 28 fyrst entred after the menyng of the water was made hool of what dysease that ene he had. In that place oure sanyour Ihesu Crist heele a lame man that had leyn there many yeres.

Of the nombre of them of thoost / of them of Iheru- 32 salem, and how oure men lodged them in the siege to fore Iherusalem. Capitullo Clxxij°.

1—1 Fr. "mais elles furent estoupees par la guerre," but they were stopped up by war. 2 Fr. "la moindre, de toutes les fontaines." 3 Orig. commandes.
X the yere of thyncarnasion of our savour Ihesu Criste / Mlxxxix in the moneth of Iuyn, the vij daye of the sayd moneth, was lodged the host of cristiente to froe the holy Cyte of Iherusalem / The nombre of them that were there, as wel men and wymmen, were / xl / M. There were not men defensable of the foote men aboue / xx. M. On horsback were not passyng a / xv.C. Alle the other were feble men, as seke men and wymmen, and also 8 old peple. within the toun were men able to bere Armes xl. thousand, which were comen in fro eytees and castellys ther aboute. And they were the best men of Armes, and chosen for the valyauntest that they coude fynde / After that oure men were arryued to froe the 12 toun: They hadde a grete counsayl emonge them, A{	extdeg}d called the Cristen men of the Countre for to demaunde of them in what syde they myght beste assiege the Toun / They sawe wel that toward thorystent, Ne toward the Southe they myght nought doo for the 16 deepe valeys that ben there. Therfore they accorded to sette the siege to froe the northeste / Wherfore it was so that fro the yate named the yate of Seynt Steuen, whiche stondeth in the Northeste vnto the other yate that stondeth toward the weste / And is named 20 the yate of Danyd, were lodged alle the Barons and the other pyl- gryms. The valyaunnt Duc of loreyn had the fyrst place / In the second was therle 1 of flaundres, In the thyrde was the duc of Normandy / The fourthe place held Tancre besyde a tour of a 24 Corner, whiche yet is named the tour of Tancre / And other grete men were lodged there with hym. fffro this toure vnto the yate of Occident compryse{	extdeg} therle of tholouse the place, and the people that were with hym / But after Tancre sawe that by cause the tour 28 defended the yate so wel / and also for the valeye that was so nygh he myght but lytil prouyfte there, therefore by the counsayl of the wyse men that knewe wel the beyn of the toun he remenyld fro thens / and 2 wente on the tertre on whiche the cyte is sette on 32 bytnewe the toun and the chirche of seynt Symeon / which is withoute the Cyte as far as an Archer maye shote at ones / There he lodged hym to thende that he myght beste greue the toun there. And for to defende the turkes this sayd chirche, which is holy, 36 fflor there sowped our lord with his discyplys / and weeshe humbly

2 Orig. aud.
3 Fr. "entre la ville et l'église qui a non Syon," i. e. between the city and the church whose name is Sion, not "Simeon." Lat. "inter urben et ecclesiam quae dicitur Syon."
theyr feet. There descended the holy ghost in fyry tonges on witsondaye. In the same place passed out of this world the glorious vyrgyne Marye / whiche bare in her precious body the saueour of the world. ther is shewde the sepulture of seynt steuen. 4

Howoure men began tassaylle Iherusalem / And of the grete dilygence that they dyde to make engyns for to take it / ca. Clxxiij.

Han the barons were thus lodged fro the yate toward north-este, as I haue sayd, vnto the tour on the corner which is vpon the vale of Isaphat / And fro thens vnto that other corner of the cyte whiche is on the pendaunt of the same vale toward the south. thence was it thyngs enuydente that the one half of the tour was wyth payne or vuncethe assiected. ffor fro thens that I haue sayd vnto the yate named mount Syon, the Cyte was no thyngs assiected. The fyft daye after that thoost was lodged to fore the Cyte / it was acorded comynly, and cryed thurgh alle the lodgys, that alle 16 men shold be armed the best wyse they myght and come to thassault. They cam alle, and began moche strongly thassaylle aboute the tour. They hadde the hertes moche hardly, and brennyng desyres and wylye to doo the werke of oure lord / In theyr 20 comyng on they toke the barbycanes that were right ayenst them. 1And the turkes embatilled them within the grete wallys 1 / They of the tour were so effrayed of the grete hardynesse 2and provesse that they sawe withoure peple and had ouer grete fere, in suche wyse that they loste alle theyr hope for to deffende the tour, and was wel knowen afterward / that yf the talent of our men had endured, and that they had had skalyng ladders & castelys by whiche they myght haue approuched the walles of the tour, 3 They had taken it certaynly, but when thassault had endured fro erly mornynge that same daye vnto one of the clok of the same daye at after none / They apperceyued wel that withoute engynes they myght not doo grete hurte ne dommage to the tour / therfor they withdrewe them abak, & purposed to come agayn to thassault, whan theyr engyns shold be better ordeyned. The barons toke counseyl emong them for taduyse / how they myght fynde manere to make engyns for tassaylle the tour. ffor them somed that in alle 36

1-1 Fr. "et les Turcs embatirent dedans les graus murs."
2 Orig. turn.
the countree shold not be founde trees ne wode ynowe for to make suche thynge as they sholde neede. But a valyaunt\(^1\) man of the countrer cam forth and told to them of a valeye \(v\) or \(v\). myle 4 thens, whiche was ful of trees and grete ynowge for to make engyns / They sente theder grete nombre of Carpenters, And somme of the barons to conduyte them / Eche of them hewe down the tres, and dyde do bryngem them in charyottes / Thenne made they 8 come alle them of thooost that coude medle with suche thynge, and dyde do make engyns, perierers / Magonneauls, castellys, chattes / and\(v\) wayes couerd\(^2\), moche grete plente / The pylgryms that coude werke toke none hyre ne wages yf they had as moch as they myghtt 12 entretiene and kepe them self / The other that were pour receyued\(^3\) theyr wages of the comyns / for of all the barons of thooost / ther was none that myghty paye the costes of this werke sauf therle of tholouse, for he hym self alleone susteined of his propre good all the 16 werkemen without thaida of ony other. & also to many knyghtes that had\(^4\) despyded theyr good dyde he gyne many grete yefftes, whyles that the barons were thus bsey, that everychy dyde do make his engyns for hym self / The other knyghtes & the mene peple ran 20 vnto busses and hedges / for to fetche stockes and roddes with grete dilygence for to make pynnes.\(^5\) None was ydle, but alle men heelp to this werke. Ther was noman had shame ne despyte to doo thynge that myghty auaylle ; for they sayde well that alle theyr 24 trauaylle and despences that they had\(^6\) don & made in alle theyr waye were nothing worth yf this enterpysse for to take this town were not wel accompliysshed\(^7\).

\(\text{3 How our peple were in grete meschye}f \text{at the sayd siege, \& how the turkes deserted them by cause they myghty entre and yssue in and out of the town.}\)\(^8\) They found trees for their engyns in a valley near by. All worked diligentily—the rich gave their time, and the poor were paid.

No man was ashamed to do anything that might help.

\(\text{3 leaf 118}\)

\(^{1}\) Orig. valyaunt. \(^{2}\) Fr. cloyes, i. e. hurdles, wattles, not "pyannes." \(^{3}\) Fr. "Lors de la ville pres. Les ciesternes mesmes on il avoit cause de pluie." Caxton divided his sentence here wrongly, and spoile the sense. 

\(^{4}\) Godfrey.
They suffer from Thirst. [Ch. CLXXIV.

and stopped them, to thende that the pylgrymes shold haue none case of water / But the cytezeyns of bethlehem, and they of a lytil cyte called teena, that knewe the countre al aboute / told and ens-cyeugned to them somme fontaynes / broke, pyttes, and Cisternes. 4 ther was grete prees and grete mesace / suche tyme there was, that when the pour peple myght brynde theyr barellis & vessellys ful of troubled water and thycke, They sold it rychely in thooste / The fontayne of sylve, of whiche I haue spoken to fore, myght no 8 susifye them, for it sypyngeth not alway, and yet that was not right good. Thanguysshe of thurst grewe moche of the heete that was in lyun / And of the tramaylle that they suffrede, and for the duste that entred in theyr mouthes / when two or thre had founden 12 ony water rennyng or welle / alle ran theeder / in suche wyse that it faylled anon / The men a foote were not in so grete desease as they that had horses / fior they ledde them somtyme thre or foure myle ferre for to waite them, & yet vnnethe femade they ynowgh. there 16 were many that lefte theyr horses / and habandoned to goo where they wold, and other beestys for defaulte of water. ye shold haue seen mules, Asses / Oxen, Kyen, and horses goon withoute garde or kepär in the feldes / Atte laste, whan the beestys had long languyys- 20 sheëf / they deyde / wherof cam grete stench in thooste, wherof the ayer was corrutte our peryllously / The peple was not in lasse anguysshe there for thurst, than they had ben to fore at Anthychoe for hongre / Oure men were acustomed for to seche pasture for theyr 24 horse moche ferre fro the tow in vyllages ther about. The turkes of the ton⁴ marked it, and yssuëd where as the siege lay not / and cam ayenst them and slewe many, and toke away theyr horse / And brought them in to the Cyte. Many escaped that fleddle unto 28 thooste. Every daye lassef the 2 nombre of the pylgrymes by many suche aduentures / and by grete Inffyrmyte and sckenesses that were in thooste / and by many other causes, wherof many deyed / And in the place of them cam none other / But they in the tow 32 encreeced and grewe every day, fior to them cam newe aye & grete refresshementes of men and vytayllle that myght entre and ysse by the yates beyng oute⁵ of the siege.

How the turkes enforced them to make merueylyous 36 engyms ayenst⁶ the owres, And of the meschye⁷

¹ Orig. tonn. ² Orig. oute. ³ Fr. "contre les nostres," against our men.
that they dyde to the cristen men that dwellyd in the toun.

Oche were our barons in grete payne for to make & adresse the engynes. The mene peple payned them ententyly to seche and pourchasse suche ayde and helpe as they myght / They that were in the toun payned nothyng, but made grete cure and grete entente to make other engynes avenst oures. they toke good heed to 8 the Instrumentes that oure men made for tassaylle them. And they adressyd as good or better to defende them / for they had gretter plente of tymbre within the toun than they hadde that were without. the toun was moche wel garnysshed of alle thynges that 12 they neded to fore that our peple cam. they had grete plente of Cordes, stones wel fetcyed, and other thynges more than they neded. the cristen men of the toun were more tranyllled and charged with thyse werkes than ony other men. And also they 16 were beten cruelly. And somme they slewe. And with alle thyse mesauterues they bare them on honde that they were traytours, and descouned theyr counseyl to theyr enemyes / there was none of the cristen men that durst goo vpon the walles / But yt he were 20 charged or laden with stones or tymbre, and yt they had ony vytaillles in their howses it was take from them, in suche wyse that they suffred many mesases / whan one had nede of ony tree / anon they bete doun the hows of a cristen man / for to hauue a lytil 24 pyee of tymbre. yt they taryd a lytil to come at the hour assygned, anon they were beten and hurt ouer sorowfully. they were brought to so much sorow / that there were but fewe / but they had leuer to hauue been deed than a lyne. they durst in no wyse yssue out of 28 their howses without commaundemement.

In this tyme arryued a shippe of Genewys atte porte of halappe / and how theyr messagers cam in thoost, and how to the barons they made theyr requeste.

1 Fr. "Mettoient grant cure," took great pains.
2 Fr. "pierres toutes fétices," i. e. stones cut the proper size.
3 Orig. mesauterues.
4 Fr. "les mettoient sus qu’ilz estoient traîtres," they accused them of being traitors.
5 Fr. fust, timber. 7 Fr. Generois, Genoese.
Skirmish between the Turks and Christians. [Ch. CLXXVI.

a The Siege of Jerusalem the pilgrims conteyned them as I

have sayd / Thenne cam a messager that brought tydynges /

that somme shippes of the Geneuws¹ were arryued atte porte of

halappe, And moche requyred the barons of thoost, they that were 4

come in the shippes, that they wold sende to them somme knygghtes

for to conduyte them vnto thoostee. The Barons prayde therle of

tholouse, whiche was most rychest of them / that he wold sende

theder somme of his men / he dyde that they requyred, And² sente 8

a knyght of his named wyldemart Carpynele, and deluynerd to hym

.xxx. horsmen / and .L / men a foote / After that they were

departed / the barons sayde to therle that he had sente ouer fewe

men, and prayd hym that he wold sende yet moo ; he agreed wel, 12

And² sente Remon pelet and Guyllamme de Arsbran with .L /

horsemen. But er they had ouertaken this wyldemart / whiche

wente alway forth til he was come bytwene Lyde & rames in the

playnes that ben there / ther mette hym .vj. C turkes on horsbak 16

which ran vpon hym rudeily. At this fyrst recontyme they swele

four of oure horsmen, & moo of them a foote / yet our men were

not disconfyted / but helleth them to gydre, And warneeth eche other
to doo well. In this tyme, whyles they fought to gydre / Thysse 20

two knyghtes that cam after, and theyr companye sawe this scarmucl, and so moche hasted that they cam and ioyned with our

other men. Thenne began they to doo wel, in such wise that they

disconfyted the turkes and put them to flyght, and swele .ij. C. 24

turkes of them / Of our men were slayn two valyaunt knyghtes, for

whom alle the other were sory, that one was named Glylbert² de

treue, And that other Achart³ de mountuille. when our men had

thus disconfyted the turkes, they cam to laphe, where they were 28

recyued with moch grete ioye. the maromers of Gene receyued⁴

them moche honorably / whyles as they soiourned there, and dis-

chargeth theyr shippes for to aduyse and ordeyne how they myght

come in the hooste. Sodanly or ony man toke hede of hit, the 32

nanye of them of egypte, whiche was more redy in the porte of

Sklauonye⁵, sawe theyr tyme for to hurte our peple, cam to fore

laphe. when oure men and the genewes apperceyued this / hastily

they descended to the see / fyrst they ⁵essayed for to defende 36

them / but they, when they sawe that there cam so moche peple

that they myght not resiste them, they disgarnyssed theyr shyppe

¹ Fr. Genovais, Genoese. ² Orig. de treue, but Fr. "de Tèree."
³ Fr. Achart de Montmelle. ⁴ Fr. Esculoine.
as faste as they mygh, and bare away cordes, cables and saylles. The Genoese dismantled their ships, shippes of the genewes, whiche was goon for somme gayne vpon the

4 see / cam alle laden with grete gayne / and wolt\footnote{Fr. vouloir arriver, wished to land.} arryuen at the porte of Iaphe / but they of the shippke knewe wel fro ferre that the nanye of the turkes helde the porte. Therfor they caste about and torned theyr saylle, and wento to the Lyche / The cyte of Iaphe

8 was thenne alle deserte and voyde of peple, for the cytezeyns of the town trusted not wel in they rfortresse / Therfor they were goon a hitil before that our men cam, of which it happed\footnote{Fr.mourir, to die.} that oure men keppe nomore than the tour / And\footnote{Fr. aller, to go.} when they sawe they r tyme, they

12 made them redy, and sette they r thynges all in ordenaunce, and wento they r waye and cam in to thooost, where they were receyued with grete ioye / for the maroonners of gene were moche good Carpenters, \& coude wel make engynes \& other Instrumentes of

16 warre, in suche wyse that syth they were comen / the barons began more deleyuerly, and the better they r enterpryses to brynge to an ende.

How alle the pylgryms, cueryche after his estate

20 payned them to make thengyns for thassault.

ca. \footnote{Ch. CLXXVII.} Clxxvij.\footnote{Fr. Comme, so.}  

Hey that abode in thooost dyde they r power for tadresse their engynes / for the duc godefroy, the duc of normandye, \& therie of  

24 fillauandres had a valyant man which was mocch wise \& inste named Gace\footnote{Fr. Gace de Bour, Lat. Beart.} de veer / he had the charge for to take hede to the werkmen / This man dyde do make they r werkes lustly \& wel / The barons conduyted\footnote{Fr. conduire, to conduct.} the men a foote for to gadre to gydre the Roddes

28 and bowes of trees for to make withthes and pymnes for to concere the engynes, And\footnote{Fr. et, and.} also to hewe the grete tymbre \& brynge it to the hoost to the werkmen / they toke the hydes of the beestes that deyde and stratched\footnote{Fr. couper, to cut.} them vpon thengynes for to kepe \& defende

32 them fro fyre / In this partye toward the northest the barons entremedled vygorously, as I haue said, for to assaylle fro the tour of the angle or corner vnto the west gate / Tancre tranaylled\footnote{Fr. tranayer, to strangle.} also moche, and the other knyghtes that were ther by lodge for tanysse

36 how the cyte myght be wel assayllled on they r syde. On the syde toward the 3 south / therie was therie of tholouse \& his peple. he
They set the Day for the Assault. [Ch. CLXXVIII.

was moost ryche of them / and therfor he had the moost peple that wrought. They of Genes were drawn alle to hym / whiche had a Capytayn, a moche excellent werkman named Guilliam Ebryae. he made them to haste moche the werke, and to amende it / Thus was alle thost occupied in this werke four monethes all hoo / They had so moche expolyted that evryche of the barons had doo made right that whiche he had begonne and entreprysed. Therfor they counsayled emonge them, & ordeyned at a day sett to goo to thassault / But for as moch as therle of tholouse and tancere had be grete Rancour and wrath / and somme of the other Barons and knyghtes that loued not wel to gyder for dyverse reasons / The barons, by the admonestation of the bishops, wolde that of alle debate shold be good pease / and that eche shold pardone other all euyll wyll and talente / by cause that our lord shold helpe them the better in doynge and accomplayneys his werke. And if it happed them to dye, the surer myght they attende the deth. 16

Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made to thende that god shold gyue them vyctorye / and how they pardonned eche other theyr mal talentes and euyll wylles / ca? .Clxxvij 20

He daye was ordeyned and taken by comyn acorde of alle, that procession shold be made, & the reluyqyes shold be borne suche as were ha? in thost. They shold alle goo vnto the mount of Olyuet, And they shold mayntene them this day in fastynge, In repentaunce of theyr symmes / and in orysons and prayer vnto our lord to thende that he wold haue pyte of his peple / and receyue in gree theyr seruyse, in suche wyse that by them his herytages myght be recovered fro the handes of his enemies which helde it in their possession / Peter theremyte on that one part, and arnold, the chappellayn of the Dnc of Normandy / whiche was a grete clerk and wyse, of that other parte, made the sermon to the peple. They exhorsted them by swete wordes to enterpryse vygorously the werke of oure lord / wherin it were better to deye than to luye. The mount of Olyuete is ayenst Iherusalem in the este partye, about a myle fer fro the toun / ffor the vaal of Iosaphat is bytwene bothe.

They go in a procession bearing all the reliques of the army.

They exhorsted them by swete wordes to enterpryse vygorously the werke of oure lord / wherin it were better to deye than to luye. The mount of Olyuete is ayenst Iherusalem in the este partye, about a myle fer fro the toun / ffor the vaal of Iosaphat is bytwene bothe.

[F. 129, b.] there assembled our lord, his discyples, and styed and ascended vp to fore them alle in to heuen the day of thassension / and wente vp

1 Orig. Guylliam. 2 Fr. "recüist eu gre leur service."
in a clowde which toke hym / whan alle the peple had ben there in
grete wepynges and prayers / and alle the debates appeased that
were emong them / they descended fro the hylle in to the chirche
4 of mount syon, which is by the Cyte, as I haue sayd, in the side
toward the southe on the toppe of a tertre / The sarasyns of the
town that were in the touches and vpon the walles of the town,
mercuyllled moche. what this myght be that oure men made there /
8 and where they myght see the presse nygh to them within shotte.
They cesse not to shote arowes, and quarellys in suche wyse that
they hurted somme. Thenne addressyd they crosses vpon the
walles / and in despyte of our sauyour, and in reproche of our
12 fayth, spytte on them, and made other shameys and 1 fowle thynges
which be not for to be sayd. The people2 of our lord, which
were in holy wylle for to serue hym / sawe wel thysse thynges that
the turkes made / theyr desire grewe and encraved moche in theyr
16 hertes for tauenge the shame of our lord Ihesu Criste / whan they
had made theyr orysons and prayers in the chirche of mount Syon /
The day was to them ordeyned and named for to make thassault by
comyn acorde / Thenne they returned to theyr lodgys, yf ther was
20 ony thyng to be made on theyr engylns, anong it was accomplysshyd / 
for every man toke good hede aboute hym that no thyngse saylled
that shold be necessarye to make thassault ayenst theyr enemys.

How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght
24 theyr engylns vnto the other part of the town for
tassaylle on that side. Capituló / Clxxix
w Han the day approched that they had named for tassayle the
Cyte / the nyght to fore, the valyaunt due godeffroy, the erle
28 of flaunders / and the duc of normandy saue that this partye
of the Cyte that they had assedge was moche wel garnysshed of
alle maner of engylns, and 4 the most defensable men 4 of the Cyte
they had sette there. Therfore they doubted more this part, than
32 ony other / The noble men had herupon counselyll / They knewe
wel that they myght not endommage the town there. And
entered a thyngse of a right grete aflayre and of moche grete tranayle / 
for alle thengynes that they had by them, And the castel to fore

1 Orig. and.
2 Orig. peole.
3 Orig. our.
4 Fr. "les hommes les plus defensables," their most capable men. Lat.
virì fortìbus.
the sydes were Ioyned\(^1\) to gydre, they bare \(^1\) them alle. On that other syde whiche is bytwene the gate of seyn\(t\) stephen & the tour of thangle / that is toward the northeest / ffor them semed & it was trouthe, that by cause that the cyte had not be assieged on that 4 syde that ther sholde\(^2\) be the lasse defence / wherof it happe\(d\) that they wok\(e\) al the nyght as wel they as theyr peple, in suche wyse that theyr engyns were alle Ioyned and reysed vp byfore day or er the sonne aroos, in the places where they ought to be. The castel 8 was so approached the walle / and was moche hyer, in so moche that they that were therin were almoost as hye as one of the toures / and knewe ye for certayn / that this was noo lytil tunaylle, ffor fro this place where they were fyrst lodged\(^3\) vnto the place where they sett\(e\) 12 theyr engyns was nygh half a myle. And the thynges were so wel and so hooly ordeyned, that to fore the sonne ry\(s\)y\(n\)g all thyng was redy at them. on the mornying the turkes byhelde on the walles and\(^4\) toures, And merueyld what this myght be that our men so 16 t\(r\)auaylle\(d\) all the nyght / they sawe that the lodgys of the Duc and\(^5\) of the other barons aboute hym were remenyld. They sought them about that other side of the towne, And foun\(d\)e\(^2\) them there, where as they had sette no garde. whan they sawe thengyns and the castel 20 dressyd / they merueyld ouer moche, how they myght doo this werke in so lytil tyme. ffor this cause they doubted moche the more them that had\(^6\) thus enterpryse\(d\) and\(^7\) accompli\(s\)hed\(^8\) so sode\(n\)ly in the nyght about that syde of the towne / the barons that were lodged\(^9\) 24 as ye haue here\(^8\) to fore / were not ydde, but reys\(e\)\(d\) theyr engyns eu\(r\)yc\(h\)e in his parte / And therle of tholouse had made tapproche the walles a castel that he had made with moche grete tunayll bytwene the chirche of mount Syon and\(^9\) the Cyte / the other 28 that were ny\(g\)he the corner, which is called the tour of tanere, redressyd\(^9\) a castel of tree moche hye. Thye thre castellys that were about the towne were ny\(h\)e alle of one facion, ffor they were alle square / the sydes that were toward\(^3\) the towne were double / in 32 suche wyse that one of the pannes\(^3\) that was without / myght be auale\(d\) vpon the walles, and thenne it sholde\(^4\) be lyke a brydge. But for alle that the side was not unclosed ne discouer\(e\)\(d\), But it was hool for to defiende them that were in the castel.

\(^{12}\) Orig. foun\(d\)e. \(^{3}\) Lat. latus.
How the day folowyng our peple made a merueyllous assault, And how the turkes defended them subtyly and wel. Capitulo Clxxx.

4 2 He daye beganne strongly to wexe clere /Themne, as it was enterprysed and deuysed, our men were alle armed for tapproche the walles. They alle were and had one purpoos. That is to wate, or they wolde take the torn vpon thenemyes of our lord, & And delyuer the ordures of the mescreauntes fro the holy places, or ellys in this sernyse they wolde rendre theyr sowles to hym that made them. Ther were none that had wylle to drawe aback fro this werke / the old men forgate theyr age / the seke men theyr 12 maladyes, the wyues and childrens enterprysed in theyr hertes to dow grete thynges. Alle generally payned them to drawe forth the castelles, to ioyne them to the walles in suche wyse that they myght approche them that defended it; they of the torn cessyd not to drawe and shote Incessantly grete plenty of arowes and quarellys, with theyr engys caste grete stones / the moyen peple with theyr handis threw fro the walles and towres / their entente was therwith to make our men to withdrawn fro the 20 walles / The good cristen men that doubted nothyng to deye coward them with targes & shedles / thise & other habyllemens they sette to fore them, for to kepe them fro the stones & shotte. they that were within the castellis of tree lefte not to shote & caste stones vpon the turkes Incessantly. And other had grete leners and plente of ropes and Cordes with whiche they laboured and payned them to drawe forth the castellys / they that were put for to throwe the stones and to occupye thengyns were not ylle, but had theyr 28 thynges wel adressyd, and throwe to them that defended the tongrete stones moche asprely, and tramayld moche for to do thynge that myght grene their enemyes / But they that wold have put forth the castellys myght not doo that they wold: for ther was a 32 dych moche depe to fore the barbycane, for whiche they myght not make theyr engys ioyne to the walles. the strokes of the stones that were thrown on the walles dyde not moche harme to the walles of the cyte, for the turkes had sackes ful of heye & of coton, And

1 Orig. merueyllous. 3 Orig. wete. 4 Orig. lertes. 5-5 Fr. "les grosses pierres jettoient a leurs engins, les menues et maniables aux mains," viz., they threw the large stones with their engines, the smaller and more easily handled stones, with their hands. 6 Orig. stones of.
The Turks protected themselves well.

[2 leaf 122]
The assault lasted from morning to evening time.

Those within threw fire and burning oil on our men, who quench ed the fires with water and vinegar.

grete peeces of tymbre bounden with cables of shippes, whiche henge a longe by the walles and towres / in suche wyse that when the stones of thengyns smote thysse sofie thynges / the strokes were lost and made no hurte to the walles. On that other syde the turkes within the toun had moo engyns adressyd than we had without / & more quantite of other artyllerye, of Arbalestres withoute\(^1\) comparison that we hadde / by whiche they slewe many of the pilgrims, & it myght not be but that our peple were\(^2\) sore aferd. 8

Thus was thassault moche grete & peryllous fro the mornynge vnto euensong tyme / and duryng thassault it cessed neuer of Arowes and stones fleyng more thychek, than was in a / M. yere to fore / There were so many that ofte the stones mette & hytte eche other 12 in thayer / in suche wyse that they brak & floe in pyeces. Thassault was in thre places. And the barons payned them sore to greue the turkes / men myght not wel knowe whiche partye had the better / Oure pylgryms were put to grete payne to bere erthe 16 for to fyll the dyche, to thende that the castellys myght ioyne to the walles / They within threwe fyre moche thycke in to the castellys / men myght see many arowes brennyng,\(^3\) brondes, pottes ful of sulphre / of oyle / and other thynge, nourysshynge to fyre. 20

The stones to brak that the pyeces floewe thrugh out the sydes /\(^4\) And it myght not be but that many were hurte that were aboue for tassaylYe / hyt seemd many tymes that alle shold fallie to the ground. but our men quenchyd the fyre with water and vynegre / 24 and had redy pynees for to stoppe the holes / and\(^5\) also for to holde to gydre theyr castellys moche lustely, in suche wyse that theyr contenances were in alle thynge good and hardly.

The nyght departed the sayd assault, Our peple with- 28 drewe them / and how they watched wel theyr engyns / and the turkes the toun / Capitulo Clxxx\(^i\).

\(^1\) Orig. withoute.
\(^2\) Orig. brennyng.
\(^3\) \(t\) His grete assault & peryllous, that so long endured the dark nyght departed. Our men returned to theyr lodgys for to ete 32 and reste, they lefte grete watche aboute theyr engyns / by cause the turkes shold not brenne them, and they of the toun made grete watche to kepe theyr walles, for they / doubted moche that ooure peple, whom they had seen so vygorousely assaylle / and defende 36

\(^4\) Fr. "leurs perrieres y frappoient si grands coups quelles s'envoien par my les costes oultre."
them, myght by nyght come vp on the waules by ladders and entre in to the towne. Therfor they payned them to make good watche alle this nyght / and to goo round about the waules and serche the
towres / The stretes also made watche within the towne with grete nombre of people, by cause of fere of trayson. They sette heron
grete entente, for it was for the sauacion of theyr lyues / theyr wyues, theyr children, & alle theyr goodes hoolly. Our peple that
were in the tentes and in the lodgys had not theyr hertes in reste,
but they rememberede of thassault that had be / Every man 2remem-
bryd hym what he had don, And hym semede that he had left many thinges vndon that he ought to haue don. And moche
desired they alle to come to the poynt for to doo provessse. the
daye taryd long er it cam as they thought / them semede that they
had no gref ne ennoye of the trauaylle that they had suffred that
day. They had grete hope in theyr hertes / that assone as they
shold come agayn to gydre for tassaylle, that they by the helpe of
our lord they shold haue the better. And they were in grete
anguysshe / by cause them semede to be in more mesease in the
cur legys than in thassault.

20 How our peple returned agayn on the morn to thassault / And of the sorceryes 3 that they wold haue charmed one of our engysns. Capitulclo CLXXXI:.t
He spryngue of the daye appiered, the peple Incontinent were
awaked. Eche wente to the place where he had ben the daye to fore / Themne sholde ye haue seen somme remne to thengynes
and other goo vpon the castellys for to shote with bowes and
arabalestres. And many abode vnder for to drawe the sayd cas-
tellys forth. Nowe were they of the towne anon redy for to defende
vygorously ayenst the assayllers. There dexe 4 ynowgh on bothe
sydes as wel of stones as of quarellys / but not for that, the other
lefte not / but gretely they dyde theyr deuyer / ne neuer was
founded lasse cowardyse in so perillous affayre & werke. One
thynge happed that ought not to be forgotten / that is, that our men
had an Instrument called Caable, so strong and 4 so wel made that
it throwe thre grete stones attones. 5 And theye moche hurte in

1 Orig. beron. 2 Fr. sorcières, Sorcerers, witches: not "sorcrées." 3 Fr. 4 Orig. and.
4 Fr. "elle getoit trop grosses pierres," it throw very large stones instead of three large stones.
the toun where it atteyned. the turkes sawe wel that they coude not breke it / for it thrawe fro so ferre that their engins myght not come ther to / therfor they dyde do come vpon the walles .ij. olk! wythes or enchantureresses, whiche shold charme this engyne / and they had with them iij maydens, for to helpe to make theyr charme / Alle they of oure hooste behelde them moche ententyfly / for they made their enchantement vpon the walles / they abode so longe there that theyengyne threwe the stones / & atteyned the two old S wythes and the thre maydens in such wise that they were smeton ale to pyces, and fyld doun deed fro the walles, of whom the sowles wente forth to helle. Thenne our peple made an hu and a crye so grete / And2 so grete ioye therof / that every man of them was 12 refresshyd of this good strook / They of the toun were ouer sorowfull and moche abasshed, in suche wyse that they semed3 that they had loste alle theyr good ewr and fortune for the losse of theyse two wythes that thus were slayn.

Of the despayr of our peple at the sayd assault. And how they were recomforted by a knyght vn-knownen, and cuydent myracles.

Capitulo / Clxxxiij° 20

1 N this poynt endured thassault vnto after myddaye / that men knewe not whiche of them had the better / Our men began to wexe vvery / 4 And thassault tourned them to annoye and grief / for they had longe don alle theyr power / And the werke was not 24 moche amended, but were fallie in a despeurance / in suche wyse that they had talente to lene the castell of tree, whiche was nygh al to broken of the stones and shotte / and wolde drawe abak the other engyns that smoked of the fyere that the turkes had caste 28 therin, therfore5 wolde they prolonge thassaut til on the morn / And herof to doo thus they had good wylle. 6 Theyr enemies appereyyed this / that they lefte thassaut6 thus, & were reysed in

1 current, had, omitted. 3 Orig. seed.
4 Fr. "et leur borg l'assayre à ennui," and the affair began to annoy them.—This is a good sample of Caxton's "literal" translations.
5 Orig. herof.
6—6 Fr. "leurs enemis s'estoient aperceus qu'il se lassoient mout chièremen," i. e. their enemies perceived that they were becoming seriously tried. Caxton has mistaken se lassoient (were becoming fatigued), for lassoient (were leaving).
to grete pryde. They mocked our peple, & sayd to them many fowle and shamefull wordes, and more asprely defended them self and hurted thengyns. In moche fede poynt was the conduyt of 4 oure pylgryms. And yf ne had be the debonaytre of oure lord /whiche by myracle comforted them, like as ye shal here. ffro the mount of olyuet appiered a knyht whiche was not knowne neuer myght be founden. This knyht began to shake and meue 8 his sheldre, whiche was moche cleer and shynnyng. And made signe to our peple that they shold now retorne, and come agayne to thassault /The Duc godeffroy was in his estage of the castel, And enustace his broder with hym, for to denyse and ordeyne there 12 that ought be done, & to kepe that holde whiche moch was good. as sone as he sawe this signe that this knyht made, he began to call all that peple agayn with a moch hye voys, & cryed & affermed that yf they wold retorne the toun shold be taken / herof it happed that 16 by the debonaytre of oure lord, whiche put in the hertes hardynesse / In suche wyse that they cam agayn with so grete ioye, as that every man had be in certayne of the vyctorye. So grete hardynes was come in to their hertes / that they were entierly 20 refresshyd / as they that in al that day had suffred no trauaylle / and one thyng happed which was grete meruaylle / ffor they that were hurte perylously / and laye in theyr beddes / sprange vp anon and reprysed theyr harmoys and armes in suche wyse that 24 more dylygently and of greter herte than the other / [they] began to assaylle. The Barons of thost that were Capytayns of the people for to gyue ensample to other men / put them self alway to fore / where the grettest damuigers were / were founden the moost hye 28 men of thost / by whiche the mene peple were the more handly / The wymmen that myght bere no armes ran with theyr pottes ful of water thurgh thost / and gaf to all them that were wery of assayll-lyng to drynke / And moche admonisted them by fayr wordes for 32 to doo wel / And to serue our lord vygorously. Oure pylgryms had so grete ioye in theyr hertes that they labourede and toke the arose so hertely, that within the space of half an hour they ffilled the dyehe. And a barbycan, whiche was moche stronge / in suche wyse that they brought the castel vnto the walle. The turkes of the toun had hanged, as I haue sayd, with cordes long pyeces of tymbre

1 Orig. mount.  2 Orig. retorne.  3 Orig. a5.  4 Orig. and.  5 Fr. "L'espace d'une heure," within the space of an hour.  6 Fr. "Et avoient pris;" omitted by Caxton in translating.
They continue vigorously. [Ch. CLXXXIV.

Two great pieces of timber were cut down from the walls, which our men used to strengthen their castle.

a long the wall for to receyue the strokes of the stones / Emong all other there were two grete pyeces of tymbre moche longe, of whiche our men that were in the castel cutte the cordes in suche wyse that they fylle to the ground. They that were vnder toke them with 4 grete perylle / and drewe them ner the castel for to helpe to staye and sette vnder the brydge of the castel whan it shold be aualed / for the side of the castel that shold be lette falle vpon the walles / was of feble tymbre / in suche wyse / that if thyse two pyeces of 8 tymbre had not be / the men of Armes mocht not have passed on it.

How therel of tholouse assaylled vygorously toward the south & of thardaunt desire that eche man 12 had to doo wel.

Hyles as they conteyned them thus vygorously in the partye toward the northeast / the erle of tholouse and the other that were with hym on the side toward the south assaylled there 16 with grete strength : they had fylled a dyche, in whiche they had laboured, I wote not how many dayes, in suche wyse that by force they1 had drawen theyr castel, so ferre forth that it was nygh the walles / In suche wyse that they that were abone2 in the last stage,3 moogh Smyte the turkes with their glaunes that defended the tour. A man coude not thyneke thardaunt desyre, ne so grete anguysshe as eueryche4 of the cristen men had in his herte for to do wel in this assault / one thinge there was that gaf to them moche grete courage / And merueyllousely grete hardynesse / for a man that was an heremyte on the mount of olyuete had promysed5 to them moche certaynly / that that same daye shold be taken the holy cyte of Iherusalem. Ne they had not forgotten the demonstrance that the 28 knyght made to them / whan he shoke his sheld, ne neuer after was seen, they had moch hope of the vcytorye by thise signelynues that were shewed to them. It semed that thassaulites were bothe in one poynt in eyther syde that I haue namel. They dyde 32 bothe right wel / And certaynly it appeered wel that oure lord wold6 helpe his souldyours, and brynge theyr pylumage to an ende, whiche so longe had suffred so many maners of mescase for to doo to hym seruyse.

1 Orig. that they. 2 Fr. "au dernier estage," on the top story. 4 Orig. eueriche.
Of the pryse and takynge of Iherusalem / And how the Duc godeffroy entred fy rst vpon the walles.
And who followed after. Capitul o Clxxxv.  

4 t He people of the duc godeffroy and the other barons which were with hym, as I hau e say d, fought moche asprely ayenst theyr enemyes on theyr syde / & delyned to them a moch mar-
yllous assault. They had don so moche that theyr enemyes waxed wery / and weryly and slowly defended them. Oure men were drawn forth, and the dyches fy lled, the barbycans taken, and in suche wyse they cam playn to the walles / for they within entremeted not moche, but launched and shotte vpon the walles.  

The Turks began to wax weary, and to defend themselves slowly.

12 The duc commaund ed to his peple that were vpon the castel, that they sette fire in the pokys of cot on & in the sackes of hey e that henge on the walles / They dy e his commaundement / thanne aroos a smoke so blace and so thycke that they myght no thinge se. The wynde was northeeste, and blewe vpon the Turk es that were at defence vpon the wall es, in suche wyse that they myght not op ene theyr eyen ne theyr nowthes, But by force they must avoyde the place that was delynerd to them to defende.  The Duke commanded fire to be set to the bales of cotton on the walls.

16 The Turks then had to withdraw.

20 valy ant Duc Godefroye, whiche soynously entended to the werke, apperceyned first that they were departed / thanne he commaund ed that they shold drawe diligently the ij/ pyeces of tymbr e that were fallen fro the wall / as ye haue herd to fore / this was don anon, in the two en des of the two trees were leyd vpon the castel, And the two other en des vpon the wall / Than ne com-
mand ed that the syde of the castel that myght be late down / shold be late down vpon the two pyeces of tymbre.  Godfrey now let down the bridge of the castle, and passed over on the walls, followed by Eustace his brother.

24 suche wyse that the two en des of the two trees were leyd vpon the shed be late down vpon the two pyeces of tymbre.  And thus was the brydge made good and strong vpon the tymbre of theyr enemyes / The fy rst that ent red and passed by the bryd ge vpon the wall es was the Duc Godefroy of bolyne / and Eustace his brother with hym.  After thys twyne cam two other knyghtes / that were also bretheren, whiche also were fyers, noble & hardy. That one was named lutol, and that other gyl bert. They were borne in tornay / Anon ther siewed them grete nombre of knyghtes

The Turks then had to withdraw.

28 the brydge made good and strong vpon the tymbre of theyr enemyes / The fy rst that ent red and passed by the bryd ge vpon the wall es was the Duc Godefroy of bolyne / and Eustace his brother with hym.  After thys twyne cam two other knyghtes / that were also bretheren, whiche also were fyers, noble & hardy. That one was named lutol, and that other gyl bert. They were borne in tornay / Anon ther siewed them grete nombre of knyghtes

1-1 Fr. "Il nostre s estoient tirez avant, les fossoye avaient ompliz, les barbe-
canes pris es, si que de plein venoient aux murs; car oende defans ne s'entre-
montoient mais quaires de trouer, ne de lancer par dessus les murs, ne par les
archieres." The last part of this sentence, Caxton has thoroughly misunderstood, and has completely inverted the sense.

2 Fr. soignement.
and of peple a foote, whiche ranne moche thycke, as moche as they myght susteyne / Anon the turkes apperceyued that our men were entred in to the towne, and sawe the baner of the duc upon the wallys. And were disconfyted and gaf ouer the toures, and descended 4 in to the towne, and put them in to the strayt and narowe stretes for to defende them / Oure peple sawe that the duc and grete partye of the knyghtes were now entred / and that they had taken I wote not how many towres / they abode no commaundement, but adressyd 8 ladders to the walles and wente vp. It was commaundedy a good whyle to fore that every ij knyghtes shold have a laddre, Therfore were grete nombre in theoost whiche anon were adressyd vp. The duc ranne moche dylygently upon the walles / and sette the 12 peple as they cam in the towres. he moche hasted for to take the fortresse. Anon, after that the duc was entred, entred in the duc of Normandye, Therle of fillaundres / Tancre the valyant, Therle of seynt poul / Bawdyn deltors, Gace de barce / Gaste de bedyers, Thomas de fere / Gyralt de Roussylon / Lowys de Monco / Conam lybres / Therle Remboul of Orenge, Conain de Montagu, Lambert his sone, and many other knyghtes whiche I can not name / when the valyant Duc knewe certaynly that they were in the towne / he 20 called them, and commaundad that they shold goo hastily to the yate, named the yate of seynt Stephen / And that they shold opene it / when it was open / Alle the people cam in with moche grete prees, In suche wyse that there abode but fewe withoute / But alle 24 were comen within the towne / This was upon a frydaye, aboute None / It is a thynge for to be beleuyd, that our lord dyde this by grete sygnefyance, flor on this daye and about that hour sufert he deth on the cross right cruel in the same place, for the Redemp- cion of man. Therfore woldt the swete lordt that the peple of his trewe pylgryms shold 5 gete this towne, and delyuer it oute of the sernage and thrakdom of the hethen men, and make it free vnto Cristen men, that his sernyse myght be had therin and enereed. 32

Of the mayntenyng of our peple entred in to the towne toward the northeest / And therle of tholouse, herof alle ygnorant, assayled alle way /

1 Fr. dreeës, i.e. set up. 2 Fr. Baudoin de Uitorc. 3 Fr. Gastes de trearz. 4 Orig. and. 5 Fr. "a ce jour," on this day, omitted. 6 Orig. tonn.
The Slaughter is terrible.

He valyaunt duc godeffroy of buyllon / the knyghtes, and the other men of armes that were with hym, descended fro the walles all armed in to the toun / They wente to gydre thurgh the 4 stretes with their swerdes in their haundes, & glaynes, alle them that they mette they slewe & smote right doun, men, wymmen and childeren, sparyng none. There myght no prayers ne cryeng of mercy auayle. They slewe so many in the stretes / that there were 8 heeps of dede bodyes, and myght not goo ne passe but vpon them that so laye deede. The foote men wente in the other partyes of the toun by grete rowtes, holdynge in theyr handes grete polaxes, swerdes, malles and other wepons, sleynge alle the turkes / that they coude fynde / ifor thei were the men of the world whom our men had grettest hate vnto, and gladlyest wold to deth / They were thenne come vnto the mylde of the Cyte. Therle of tholouse ne his men knewe nothynge yet that the toun was taken, but assayled moche fyersly the toun ayenst syon / The turkes that defended them ayenst hym apperceyued not that our peple were in the toun. But whan the crye and the noyse of them that men slowe began to growe / The turkes behelde and sawe fro the walles / And knewe wel the baners and Armes of the ersten men, And were moche abasshed. They lefte alle theyr deffences, & fledde there where they supposed best to be saued, And by cause that the dungeon of the toun whiche was by, and was the grettest strength the 16 of the cyte, Alle they that myght entre entred therin / And sleete faste the doore on them / The erle of tholouse made the frydge of his castel auale vpon the walles / and entred there in the toun, he hym self / and the Erle of dye, yso[e]ar, renom pelet, guyllem de sabram / the bissop of albare / & the other barons moche hastely, & wende that they on that part of the toun had be the first that had entred. themne they wente doun of the walles / And alle the Turkes that they founde in the 3 stretes and in the howses they brought to deth and slewe doun right / ffo than forthon myght none escape, ffor whan they that fledde to fore Duc godeffroye and his rowte, mette with other rowtes of oure peple, whiche smote them doun and slewe them without mercy / I may not rechere ne can not to you the faites of every man by hym self. But there was so moche blood shedde that the canellys and ruissheauls runne alle of blood / and alle the stretes of the toun were covered with blood.

1 Fr. "de ceux qu'on occisit," of those that were being killed.
2 Orig. founde.
3 superfluous.
4 Fr. ruissheauls.

GODFREY.
It had been a great pity, had they not been the enemies of our Lord.

dede men, In suche wyse that it was grete pyte for to see, yf it had not be of thenenyes of our lord Ihesu Creste.

How .x/ M. turkes were slayn in the temple / And of the grete tresour that Tancre founde in the sayd 1 temple / 1:9 Clxxxvij. 1

Many fled to the inner Temple.

Tancred followed, and found therein great spoils.

N to thynnner part of the temple were fledge moche grete peple of the toun / 1 by cause it was the moost seynorously and rial place of the toun. 1 And the sayd place was fast shette and closed 8 with good walles / of towres and yates / But this ayayled them but lytll, ffor incontinent Tancre, which hadde a grete partye of thoost with hym / ranne theder and toke it by strengthe, and slawe many therin / And it was sayd that Tancre founde therin grete 12 hauoiry / and gold / syluer, precious stones and cloth of sylk. He made ale to be born a way. But after, whan alle was sette in reste / he renryed all / And made it al to be brought in to the comyn. The other barons, that had enschered the toun / and slayn 16 alle the turkes that they encountered, herd saye / that within the cloysture of the temple were fled alle the remenaunt of thyr enemies / They alle cam to gydre theder / And founde that it was trewe. Thenne commaundeth they to thyr men that thay shold 20 entre in to the place, and put them alle to deth. And so they dyde / It was wel conenable thynge that the hethen men and fals mysbylenyd, whiche had fowled and shamefully had maculated with thyr mahometry and fowle lawe of machomet, shold abye 24 there thyr fels rytes / And thot that thyr bloody shold also be sheld, where as they had spred the ordue of mescreance. It was an hydeous thynge to see the multitude of peple which were slayn in this place. They them self that thay shayn hem were sore envoiyd 28 so for to beholde them, ffor fro the plante of the foot onto the heed was none other thynge but bloody / Ther was founde that within the closyng of the temple we re slayn .x/M/ turkes, withoute them that leyde in the stretes and other places of the cyte. Thenne the 32 men peple of the pylgryms ran serching the lanes and narow stretes. when they fonde ony of the turkes that had hyyd them, were it man or woman, anon he was put to deth / the barons had penyed to fore that the toun was taken, that every man shold have 36 the hows in the toun that he toke and fyrst seased / and it shold

[2 leaf 120]

10,000 Turks were slayned in the enclosure of the temple.

1—1 Lat. "co quod locum in parte urbis esse videtur secretum."
be his with alle appertainantes; Wherfore it was so that the Barons sette vp upon the howses that they had conquerd theyr baners. The lasse knyghtes and men of Armes theyr sheildes; the men a foote 4 sette vp theyr hattes and theyr swerdes, for to shewe the tokens, that the howses were theyme taken and seased, to thende that none other shold come in to it.

Of the fayr ordenaunces that the Cristen men made to fore they wente for to vnarme them, after the town was taken / Capitulo CLXXXVIII.

Han the holy Cyte was thus taken, and alle the sarasyns that w coude be founden were slayn, the barons assembled them to gydre to fore they vnarmed them / and commanded them to sette men in the towres for to make good watche, and kepe the town. And sette porters for to kepe the yates, that noman from without shold come in to the town without leue vnto the tyme that they had ordeyned and chosen a lord, by comyn acorde, that shold holde the town, and gouerne 1 it at his wyle. It was not merueylle if they doubted 2 yet, for alle the countre was ful of sarasyns, And myght peraduenture assemble and sodenly come and smyte in to the town 20 yf ther were not good watche and hede taken. thenne departed the barons, and disarmed them and toke of theyr harnoys in theyr hostellys / and wasshe theyr handes and feete moche wel / and chaunged theyr clothes / Theme began they goo bare foot, and in 24 wepynges and teeres, vnto the holy places of the Cyte / whereoure sauyour Ihesu Criste had ben bodily, they kyssed the place moche sweetly where as his feet had touched / the Crysten peple and the clergye of the town, to whom the turkes had many tymes don grete shames for the name of Ihesu Criste, cam with procession / & bare suche relvyques as they had ayenst the barons: and brought them, yedlyng thanks to Almyghty God, vnto the Sepulcre / and there it was a pytous thing to se how the peple wepte for ioye and fell down weeping before the sepulchre.

32 and pyte / And how they fylle doun a crosse to fore the sepulcre / 3 It semed to eueryche of them that ech eawe theyr bodye of our lord there deed. there were so many teeres and wepynges that euery man thought certaynly oure lord 4 was there / when they cam 36 in one of the holy places, they coude not departe, but yf it were for thandaunt desire that they had for to goo in another. They had so

1 Orig. gouerne. 2 Orig. doubted. 3 Orig. our. 4 Orig. oure.
They gave great gifts to the churches, and thanked our Lord devoutly for his goodness.

Many of the pilgrims who had died on the way appeared to their comrades.

They had great joy that our Lord had suffered them to see this day.

moche ioye and gladnesse of this honour, that our lord had gyuen them the grace to see the day that the holy Cyte was delyverd fro thineyemys of Ihesu Criste by theyr tranaylles / in such wyse that they rought not ne sette not by the remenaunt of theyr lyues. 4 They offerd and gaf largely to the chirches, and to men of the chirche / and made vows to yene yeftes in their countrees, whiche thenne sette lytil by temporal thynges / for them thought that they were atte yates and entree of paradys, for never in this world myght gretter ioye entre in to the herte of a man / than was in them in sechyng and goyng to the holy places where our sanyour Ihesu Criste had ben. One shold haue had a moch harde herte, and lytil pytous, that had seen this syght / and myght haue holde 12 hym fro wepyng / when thysy barons and alle the other peple had made thus glad chiere of this that they had accomplysshyd theyr pylgreame, The Bysshoppes, and generally alle the peple of the chirche, myght not departe fro the chirche of the sepulcre, ne fro the other holy places. They prayd our lord moche deuotly and ententfully for the peple, and rendred grete graces and thankynge vnto Ihesu Criste of this that he had suffred them to see thysy holy places, where the fayth of Cristendom was fyrst gyuen. In this 20 daye happed certayn thynges that was seen of many men in the Cyte of Iherusalem, that was, the valyant man Aymart, the besshop of paye, whiche was dede in Anthyoch / lyke as ye haue herd to fore / many noble men whom men ought to bylence, affermed 24 certaynly that they sawe hym first monte and goo vpon the walles of the toun, & that he called other to come aftir hym / Of many other pilgryms also, that were to fore by the waye deed / It was certayne that they appiried to many / men the daye whan they vsyted the chirches of the Cyte. By thysy thynges may wel be knowen that our lord loueth this holy cyte abone alle other, And that this is the hyest pylgreame that may be, whan deed men ben reysed by the wyll of our e lord for tacomplysshe theyr pylgreame / whan our e lord Ihesu Criste aroos fro deth to lyf, the gospel sayth that the same daye aroos many bodyes of them that had ben deed, and appiered to many in the cyte / This myracle was renewed this day by Ihesu Criste, by this cyte whiche had 36 ben longe holden in the seygnorye of the paynens / whan it was under them that serued the lawe of machomet. So grete noysse was thurgh the toun of the ioye that was made, that they remembre not the grete tranaylle that they had suffred by alle theyr
of Jerusalem. Then was accomplished the saying of the prophet.

4 How the Cristen men, that had charged their message for their delyueraunce to Peter theremyte, knewe hym / a

8 had seen Peter theremyte four or fyue yere to fore / when they delyuere to hym lettres for to bere to our holy fader the pope, and to the barons of fraunce / to thende that they myght sette remedye for theyr affayres, they knewe hym emonge the other.

12 theynne they cam to hym, and fyl dow to his feet and wepte for ioye / And moche gretely thanked hym of this that he had so wel performed his message, ne they cessed not to yene preysyng and lawde to our lord that had gyuen suche counseyl to the barons and

16 to the peple, by which they had performed such an bye werke, which was aboue the hope of alle men, sauf by thayde of our lord / Alle the gree and thanke they gaf to Peter theremyte, whiche so vygorously had enterprysed for to delyuere them by thelpe of our

20 lord fro the caytyfnes and seruage dolorous, in whiche they had ben so long holden by the crueltie of the sarasyns, lyke as ye haue herl
to fore. The Patriarke of Jerusalem was goon in to Cypres / for to demannede Almesse and ayde of the cristen men there, for to

24 helpe and socoure the cristen men of Jerusalem to paye the cruel taillages that the turkes had sette vpon them, for he doubted ye they faylled of their payment / that they wold bete and throwe downd theyrr churches or put to deth the beste of theyrr peple, lyke as

28 they had don many tymes / to fore. This good man, the Patriarke, knewe nothyng of this good aventurte that our lord had don of the delyueraunce of the toun / But supposed to haue come and to haue founden it in suche seruage as it was when he departed.

32 How they clenched the toun of the dede bodyes / Of many other ordenaunces. And how the turkes

---


2 Orig. sette.

3 Orig. donn.

4 Orig. founden.
They cleanse Jerusalem.

They cleansed Jerusalem.

Capitulo Clxxxx°:

w Han the barons and the other pilgrims had made their prayers and vysyted the holy churches through the Cyte of Jerusalem. The by men of the host assembled, and sayd that it was a peryllous thynge if the town were not voyded of the deode bodyes, and purged of the blood and ordure. For in short tyme the ayer shold be corrupt / by whiche sekenesse and Infyrnyes myght ensiawe and folowe / There were somme turkes yet that were not slayn, but were keppe in yrons. to them was commaundde this werke for to bere the bodyes out of the town / but by cause they were but fewe of them / and myght not suffysse to doo it shortly. 12 they toke the poure men of thooost / and gaf to them good hyre for to helpe tacomplysshe this werke / whan the barons had this denysed thyse thynge, they wente in to theyr howses and made moche grete ioye / they gaf largeli to ete & drynke / For the town 16 was replenished of alle goodes, in suche wise that they were to fore poure fonde in the howses alle thynge that was needefull to them, wherof they had endured to fore grete anguysshe and penurye, For they fonde the cysternes alle ful in alle the howses. On the thynge 20 day was ordyned that market shold be holden in the town / And that they shold bye and selle suche thynge as they had conquerd in the Cyte. They were moche refresshyd and rested, for they abode now no trasuyll. They forgat not our lord, whiche had 24 brought them in so grete honour as for tacomplysshe his werke by them / And by comyn acon of the prelates, of the barons, and of alle the people was ordyned, that this daye, in whiche Jerusalem was goten and conquerd, shold enemore after be holden feste and 28 holy day / in remembranunce of the cristend men to thanke and preyse our lord / and also praye to our lord for the sowcles of them that thysse thynge had accomplysshed. A grete partye of the turkes that were in the dungeon of the town named the tour daind / sawe 32 wel that alle the cyte was taken / And that they had [no] more hope of rescows ne socour aynst our men. Therfor they requyred by messagers therle of tholouse whiche was next to them / And dyeo do be sayd to hym, yf they myght departe with theyr wyues, children, 36 and suche goodes as they had in the tour / they wold go theyr waye /

1 Fr. "car ils n'atendoient mais neul travail," for they did not expect any more trouble and work.  
2 Orig. daind.
Ch. CXCI.] The Barons assemble to choose a King.
and deelynere\(^1\) over the tour / he agreed and accorded it to them. And so they departed\(^2\) / And he dyde them to be conduyted sauly unto Escalonne. Thus was the tour yolden / They that had the charge for to purge and voyde the dede bodyes oute of the tour dyde it entently and dylygently / in suche wyse that in shorte tyme this thynge was alle don. For they bereyd them in depe pyttes withoute the tour the moost parte / The remenaunt they brente in to ashes, that the cendrich with the wynde was blowen away. Thenne were our men in good sewrte and ease within the tour to goo and walke thurgh the stretes and other places, and dyde dayly goo in pylgreames, that vnnethe myght they departe them, They abode so gladly there. In this manere, as ye haue herd, was taken the holye cyte of Itherusalem. In the yere of thyrnascion ofoure sauyour Ihesu criste / M.lxxxxix. the .xv / daye of the moneth of Iuyll on a fryday at the hour of none / The / iiij. yere after that the pylgryms had enterpyrseyd this viage. Tho was pope of Rome Urban, And Henry Emperour of the Romayns. Alexis emperour of Constantynople, And pylpyng kyng of ffrance.

Howe the hye barons of thooost assembled for to chese a kyng of Itherusalem, And thoppynyon of the clerye vpon the same. Capitulo. Clxxxxix?

1. Yke as ye haue herd, the pylgryms whiche ha\(d\) grete nede of reste soiourned in the tour. The barons demysed the affaires of the cyte. In moche grete joye were they there vij dayes / On the viij daye assembled alle the barons for to chese one of them, to whome the garde, gouernaunce / and kepyng of the tour shold be deleyu\(e\)l, and the seygnorye of the holye cyte, and the charge of the Royanne entierly / as it was reason and right. They made the\(y\)r prayers and orysons, And with alle the\(y\)r herte calle\(d\) the holy ghooste, that he wold counselde them that daye, and to yeue to them grace to chese suche a man as were worthy and couenable to susteyne the faytes\(^3\) of the Royanne / whyles as they were in this affayre, and moche entended with good fayth ther about, An hope of clerkes assembled, whiche had not good entencion, but thought on malyce by pryde and couetysse / They cam where as the barons were assembled, And sente to them for to spoke to them a short word or two / They suffered them to come in. whan they were given a safe conduct of the city.

In a short time the city was well cleaned.

In this manner was taken Jerusalen on Friday, the 15th of July, 1099.

The barons arranged the affaires of the town. On the eighth day they assembled to choose a king.

There was a meeting of the clerks at the same time, with a bad intent.

1. Origin. deleyne. 2 Fr. fuis, i. e. the responsibility, burden.
comen in / One of them spak in this manere / "Fayr lordes, we
haue vnderstanden / that ye be assembled here for to chese a kyng
that shal gonerne this londe, whiche thynge pleth vs moche. And
we holde it for right wel don / yf ye doo it in the manere that ye ought
to doo it, fflor without doubtte the sprytyual thynges be more
digne and worthy than the temporall / Therfore we saye to you,
that the most lyf thynges ought to goo to fore / And thus wolde
we that ye shold doo / And thordenaunce shold not go forth other 8
wyse than it ought to be. Now thence we praye you and requyre
you in the name of our lord, that ye entremete not you to make a
kyng / til that we have chosen a patriarke in this toun that can
gonerne the cristiante. yf it plese you that this be don fyrst, it shal 12
be good and weel for you. And we shal themme holde hym for
kyng that ye shal gyue to us. but if ye wylle do otherwyse / we
shall not holde it for good, ne wel don / But we shal discorde / And
after that ye doo shal not be ferme" / This worde seemed outward to 16
haue somme apparence of weel / But it cam of eyll purpoos. Ther
was therin but deceit and trecherye / Of this complot / and barate /
was mayster & capytayne, a bishooph of Calabre, born of a Cyte /
whiche was named lamane. This bishooph acorded moche to one 20
Arnold,(33) of whome I haue spoken to fore, whiche was ful of des-
loyalte. he was not yet subdeken, and was a preestes sone, and of
so eyll and fowl lyf / that the boyes and garsons had made songes
of hym thurgh thoost. and yit not with stondynghe alle this the 24
bishoopp of Calabre, avenst god and reson, wolde haue made hym
patriark, fflor they knewe ouermoche eyll, therfor were they both
acorded to gyder.4 They had made a bargain bytweene them that as
some as this Arnold shold be patriarke the sayd bishooph shold haue 28
tharchbissopych of bethlehem. But our lord ordeyned this thyng
in another maner as ye shal here / Ther were in thoost many clerkes
of eyll contenaunce, that lytle entened to the sernyse of our lord,
they hitil presyd religyon and honnest / fflor syth the tyme that 32
the valyant bysshopp of puy was dede, which was legat of our holy
fader the pope, the bishooph william of Orenge was in his place,
whiche was a relygyous man, and moch doubted our lord / but

2 Fr. apparence de bien.
3 Caxton's text gives Labeurne; the correct reading is Maturane. Lat. Mortuorumconsis. See p. 281, l. 2.
4 Orig. gydrw.
5 Orig. our.
6 Orig. religyons.
7 Orig. doubted.
he abode not longe after / but was deed in suche wyse lyke as ye hade herdt / Thenn was the clerbye without pastour and garde / And lette them fall in enyl lyf / The Bisshop of Albare conteined hym holyly in this pilgremage, And somme other that were noble. But the comyn of the clerkes made it alle ylle.

2 How the duc Godeffroy was chosen kyng of Iherusalem, and how he was presented to our lord in his chirche of the holy sepulcre.

He wordes that the Clerkes had brought to the barons in theyr electyon was not moche preyed, but arretted it to grete folye / ne therfore letted not to doo that they had bygonnen. To thende thenne that they myght knowe the better the couynes of alle the barons, they ordened wyse men that shold enserche the lyf of everyeche of them and the maners. They dyde do come to fore them suche men as were moost pryue of the barons / and toke eche of them a parte by the lene of theyr lordes. And toke of them theyrothes to saye the trouthe of that they shold be examyned that was of the lyf and manere of theyr lordes withoute lesyng and fayllynge of the trouthe. Thus it was acorded emonge them. It was a grete thynge when the lordes abadonned them self tenserche theyr lynes / But the wyse men that made this enquest were trewe men, and helde alle thynge scerete that as ought not to be known / Many thynges were sayd to them of whiche they toke but lytil hede. Emongealle other thyngesthey that were moost pryue of the duc Godeffroye / when they were demaunded of his maners an his tetches, they answersthat he had one manere right grousoun and 28 ennoyous, for whan he herd masse and the serunse of oure lorde, he coude not departhe out of the chirche, but sente after payntours & glasyers (34) vnto the clerkes & goernours of the chirches / he herd gladly the ryngynge of the belles, and entendeth moche yf 32 they discorded / so long that it / displesyd moche to his felowship.

1-1 Caxton has here omitted several words, owing to his obscure French text, which was unintelligible. A. gives the correct version, "ainz fu morz; Enterres fu en l'eglise de Marran, si comme vos oistes," but he died. He was buried, as you have heard, in the church of Marran.

2 Fr. tetches, qualities, characteristics.

3 Orig. leysyge.

4 Orig. goernours.

5 Fr. "et trop y entendoit telement que mainte foys de plaisir," and spent so much time in this way, that often he displeased, etc.
and seruauntes. And oftymes his mete appayed by cause of his long\(^1\) taryeng in the monasteryes and holy places / when the wyse-
men herd this, and that this was the grettest vyce that coude be
founden in the duc. they ha\(d\) moche grette ioye / fi\(f\)or they thought 4
wel that he dyde this for the loue of oure fayth and for thonour of
our sauyour / when they had herd alle that they wold enquerye of
the Barons / they spak to gydre / And grette partye of them were
acorded upon therle of tholouse, if it had not be for one thynge / 8
fi\(f\)or alle they of his countre, that were moost pryue with hym,
thought that yf he were chosen kyng that he shold abyde there
and retayne the peple of his countrey. And yf he were not chosen
he shold some retourne in to his countrey fro whens he cam / and 12
[22 Ch. 129, bk.] 2that desyre\(d\) they moche. Therfore men wene that they were
forswned wyllingly, And sayde vpon hym somme eyyl taches of
whiche he had no blame / Neuertheles he had nover Intencion to
retourne to his londe, as it appered after / fi\(f\)or ener after he abode 16
in the scruyse of our lord, whiche he had enterprysed / when the
barons heede all the tetches after many wordes they acorded al vpon
Godeffroy of boloyne / And named hym to be kyng / and was lad
with alle the peple with grette ioye vnto the chirche of the holy 20
sepleure / And presented to oure lorde. Every man was glad gret 
and smal / fi\(f\)or he was the man that had the hertes of alle the
comyne peple.

How the duc godeffiroy, after his election, requyred 24
therle of tholouse that he shold delyuer to hym
the tour danyd. ca\(e\) Clxxxiiiij.

\(i\) N this maner was the duc godeffiroy chosen to be kyng, and
lord of the holy Cyte of Jerusalem. Therle of tholouse helde 28
the grettest\(^3\) fortresse of the town, which was called the tour danyd /
The turkes had delyuerd\(^4\) it to hym lyke as ye haue her\(d\) to fere /
It is sette in the hyest parte of the Cyte toward the weste, strongly
walled with square stones, and ther on men may see ouer al the 32
Cyte entierly. when the Duc sawe this tour was not in his power,
It semed to hym that he had not the seyngnyrue / when the grettest
fortresse of alle the countrie was not in his possession. Therfor he
demaundered therle of tholouse, in the presence of the barons, & 36
prayd hym debonayrly that he wold delyuer it to hym. Therle

\(^1\) Orig. long. \(^2\) Orig. grettest. \(^3\) Orig. delyuerd.
answerd that he had conquer'd it, and thenenyes of our lord had yolden it to hym / And therfor he helde it / But he had concluded to goo in to his countre at ester / And thenne he wold delyuer it 4 with a good wylle. But in the mene whyle he / wold kepe it / This requyred he for to be more honoure\textsuperscript{d}, and in the gretter surete. The duc amsuerd playnly, that yf he had not the toure / he wold lene all, for how myght he be lord of the countre whan another 8 had gretter power and gretter strengthe in his londe than he. Thus\textsuperscript{2} were they in debate. The Duc of Normandy and therle of filamndres\textsuperscript{3} helde with the duc godefroy / Of the other barons ther were \textsuperscript{4}that counseylled, that he shold doo his wil with therle of tholouse.\textsuperscript{4} They of therles countre\textsuperscript{5} attysed and counseylled hym that he shold not leve the toure, by cause\textsuperscript{6} they wolde gyne hym occasion by this discorde to retorne in to his countre / Atte laste they acorted\textsuperscript{7} that the fortresse shold be put in the hande of the 16 bysshop of Albare vnto the tyme that they were acorted what sholde be doo therin. when he had it / within a short tyme after he delyuerd it to the duc. It was demaunded\textsuperscript{8} hym why he had so delyuerd it / Thenne he answerd\textsuperscript{9} that it was taken from hym by force. It was not knownen for trouthe whether it was taken from hym by constraynt / or yf he delyuerd it with his gree and wyll, when therle of tholouse sawe this / he was moche angry. \textsuperscript{8}And\textsuperscript{9} hym sawed\textsuperscript{10} that the barons were not wel content with hym lyke as they ought to be,\textsuperscript{8} consyderying that by the way he had don to them many grete bountees and good scruynyses, whiche they remembryd not, as it was sayd / for desdayne herof, And by atysemement that his knyghtes made to hym, he enterprysed\textsuperscript{11} to retorne in to his countre,\textsuperscript{9} And descended\textsuperscript{12} vnto the home Jordan / And there bayned\textsuperscript{13} hym / After he ordeynes his affayre for to departe out of the londe.

Of a Patriark chosen and elect in Iherusalem / And how ther was founden a part of the very crosse.

\textsuperscript{1} Orig. conquerd. \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{2} Orig. Thns. \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{3} Orig. filamndres.
\textsuperscript{4–5} Fr. "Qui conseilloient que l'en feist la vouloient au conte de Toulouse."
\textsuperscript{5} Orig. countre. \hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{6} Orig. cause.
\textsuperscript{8–9} "Lut fut avis que les barons ne s'estoieint pas contenuz vers lui, comme ilz devoieint," viz., it was his opinion that the barons had not behaved towards him as they should.
\textsuperscript{9} Orig. countre.
A Part of the True Cross is found. [Ch. CXCV.

The Bishop of Maturane stirred up discord between the barons and the people.

Arnold was chosen Patriarch of Jerusalem.

A part of the true cross is found.

Then was there great rejoicing.

How the duc godesfroy payned hym to amende the 28 Royanne of his good constituions and estatuates.

g Rete joye was it thurgh the londe of this, that the valyant duc godesfroy was chosen kyng. Alle they obeyed hym with 32 good herte. he amended dylygently alle the discordes thurgh the londe, And alle the other thynges that had neede of amendement, in suche wyse that his power grewe fro day to day moche appertely. Of hym shal I saye in shorte wordes the very trouthe; he regned 36 not but one yere / and that was moche grete dommage / for he had

1 [L. 129, bk.] toun to fore it was taken, in so grete meschyef as ye haue here, doubted that the turkes wold haue taken it fro them. Therfore had they hyd it moche surely, and fewe knewe of it. But a good man, a suryen, whiche that knewe it / discovered it to the barons. 2 And whan they had douen and dygged a good whyle / they fonde it in a cheste of syluer, lyke as he had to them sayd and deuyded. Thenne was the ioye moche grete / and they bare it a procession in syngyng vnto the temple. all the peple wente after, which wepte 24 for pyte, As moch as if they had seen our sauyour Ihesu christe yet hangeyne on the crosse / They alle helde them for moche recomforted of this grete tresour that our lord had thus disoueryd.

2 Fr. "chasse d'argent," i.e. reliquary of silver. 3 Orig. tresour.
the wylle, wytte, and pwrer to doo grete good in the Royamne for
tenfeble themenyes of oure lord Iesu Crist, and for tenhaunce and
exalte the Cristen fayth / But our lord called hym fro this world to
4 hym, to thene that the malyee of it shold not chaunge his herte in
thouner wherin he was / he was born in the Royamme of France
at boloyne vpon the see / whiche was somtyme a Cyte / And nowe
it is but lytil more than a castel. he cam of hye and noble folke
8 and good crystyn peple. his fader was named eustace, noble &
puyssant erle in that countre, whiche had doen many hye werkes
& bounctees vnto our lord & noble werkes vnto the world / his
moder was a noble lady of gentilesse / more noble of herte than of
12 hyenes of lyngne. She was named yde, & was suster to the duc
of Loreyne, whiche was named godeffroye bource. he deyde without
heyer. Therfor he lefte alle the duchy and the Countreye to his
nueewe whiche bare his name, And adopted hym in to sone and
16 heyr / Therfore he was duc of Loreyne whan 1his vnkle was deed /
he had thre brethren, whiche were moche wise men and good
knyghtes / and also moch faithful and trewe / That one was Bawd-
wyn, therle of Rages / whiche after hym was kyng of Iherusalem
20 The second was named Eustace, whiche bare the name of his fader, Eustache,
And was Erle of boloyne / The kynge Stephen of England toke his
doughter to wyf, whiche was namde Maulde. The barons of
Surye sente for this Eustace for to make hym kyng after the deth
24 of his broder bawdwyne, whiche deyde withoute heyer. But he
would not goo / for he doubted the barats & discordes of the londe
whiche he knewe wel. The fourth broder was william, a good
knyght and a trewe. 3ne he discorded not in the bouncte of his
28 bretheren / Bawdwyne and Eustace folowed theyr lord and broder
in the pylgrimage to Iherusalem. the fourth broder guyliaim abode
in his countre for to kepe the londe. Alle the four bretheren were
of moche grete valeur. But the duc Godeffroye lyke he was the
32 oldes, so bare he awaye the prys and anuantage of the other / as he
that was ful of vertues, of bountes, and was moche noble and right-
ful withoute couetyse / he dreedde and lonyede oure lord abowe alle
thynge / he honoured relgyous men and good, he was moche ferme
36 and constant of his worde / he despysed merueyllously bobaunces,
pompes / and dishonestees, and hated them / he was in almesse

2 Fr. Mahaut, Lat. Mahaldon.
3 Fr. "ne se discordait mie à la bonte des ses frères," i.e. he was just as
good as his brothers.
large and plentynous,† gladly he her’d the seruyse of our lord, and moche wel vnderstande it. And in his prayers and orysons prayeng our lord / he was right longe / And fylle ofte in wepyng haboundantly teeres. And vnto alle men he was pytous and anyable. By 4 this it seemd wel that oure lord lony’d hym, wherof he was worthy to have the grace of the world. And so he had certaynly / he was grete of body, not of the grettest / But of mene gretnesse, more stronge than an other man / his armes grete and wel quartred, the 8 breste moche brode and large, and vysage wel made and coloured, heeris abourne / And in his harming and armes wel enducte and acustomed, that it seemd that hit greued ne coste hym nothyng to to bere them.

Of the sayeng of the countesse of boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she sayde of her thre oldest sones was verified. 

Capituloo Clixxxvij.

Ne thyng is sayd for trouth. And it happen’d in the tyme of 16 the yongthe of thyse four bretheren, whiche ought not to be lefte vnremembrybly ne forgotten / The Moder of thyse four brethren of whom I have spoken, was an holy woman / and entendable to good werkes. It was nothyng merueylle though oure lord spak 20 by her mouth a propheeye, for it happen’d on a daye that her thre oldest sones, whiche were yong and smale, playde eche with other / And as they chaced eche other in theyr playe / alle thre fledd ynto theyr moder / where she satte / and hydde them vnder her mantel / Theyr fader Eustace cam there where the lady was, And he sawe her mantel mene, where the childeren playde vnder it / he demaunded the lady what it was. She answer’d that she had thre grete pynces / The fyrst of them shold be a duc, The second 28 shold be a kyng, And the thyrde an Earle. sfor Godeffroye was / duc of Loreyne after his vncl, And had also after the Royanne of Jerusalem. But he was neuer crowned, ne wold not be callyed kyng. The second was bawdwyn, whiche had after hym the sayd 32 Royanne, and was crowned / The thyrde was Eustache, which after the deth of his fader was erle of boloyne. now late vs retorne for

† Orig. plentynous.
2 Fr. "mais de moyenne grandeur."
3 Fr. "bres avant gros et quarréz." Quartrez signifies literally square, i.e. stout, not well quartered.
4 Fr. blons, blond.
5 Orig. duc.
6 Orig. ef.
to speke of the valyaunt Duc Godeffroy, for moche honour may be sayd of hym / And also of the valyaunces don by hym.

Of the wagyng of a bataylle that was bytwene the duc godefroy and an hye baron of Almayne.

Of Godfrey's Feats of Arms.

to speke of the valyaunt Duc Godeffroy, for moche honour may be sayd of hym / And also of the valyaunces don by hym.

Of the wagyng of a bataylle that was bytwene the duc godefroy and an hye baron of Almayne.

They decided to settle it by single combat.

Much honour may be said of Duke Godfrey.

Of the wagyng of a bataylle that was bytwene the duc godefroy and an hye baron of Almayne.

They decided to settle it by single combat.

Much honour may be said of Duke Godfrey.
Of a Fair Feat of Arms.  [Ch. CXCVIII.

ey they prayd hym swetly that he wold suffre that 1 they myght comene of the peas bytwene them 1 / he graunted it gladly / The frendes spek to gydre and acorded into a peas, whiche was ynowgh resolvable.  But they lefte somewhat of the dukes right / whan they 4 brought this acorde and pees to them / The Duc in no wyse wolde here herof, But 2 began the batayle more cruel and fier than it was to fore / That other that had his swerd hool, doubted ne fered not moche the strokes of the duc, whiche had but a trombon 3 / but 8 rame vpon the duc and oppressid hym that he had no leyzer to reste hym, til the duc began to thynke and to take herte / Thenne he dressyd hym on his steroppes / And smote his aduersarye with the pomnelle of his swerde that he helde vpon the lyfte temple 12 suche a strook thurgh the helme that he fyl doun astonyed, that it semed that he was deed / sior he remenyed no foote ne hande / Thenne the noble duc a lyght doun and descendid fro his hors / and threwe a way his trombon of his swerde; And toke the swerde fro 16 hym that he had beten doun, and mounted vpon his hors agayn / Thenne called he the barons that had made and brought to hym to fore the pees / and sayd to them: "ye, lordes, suche maner of peas as ye offred to me right now / is now to me agreable, and am 20 ready nowe to take and abide / sior though I haue the dominmage and losse, Atte leste I haue no shame ne dishonour / And it plesyth me wel to gyue & departhe of my right, to thende that I scee not this whiche is my cosyn."  when the barons herd this, alle they b gan 24 to wepe.  The peas was made suche as he sayde / he haef more honoure and loos 4 / for the pees to whiche he adressyd hym so swetly, than of alle the prowesses that he had in this bataylle, In whiche he dyde many.

5 Of a fayr feat of Armes that the duc dyde in a bataylle that the Emperour of Almayne had ayenst them of Saxone.  Capitulo Clxxxviiiij.

Another great prowesse I will relate.

3 Fr. 132, br.] 5 Of a fayr feat of Armes that the duc dyde in a bataylle that the Emperour of Almayne had ayenst them of Saxone.  Capitulo Clxxxviiiij.

1-4 Fr. "qu'on perlust de paie entre cuv," that peace might be arranged between them.  2 Orig. But.  3 Orig. trombon.  4 Fr. los, praise, Lat. laudis.
wold haue a lord vpon them self, whiche shold obeye to none other. And made an hye noble man of the countre, which was emonge them, an Erle named Raoul, for to be kyng vpon them, by this he was moche wroth / and desired moche to be auenged of so grete oultrege. Therfor sente he for alle the barons of thempyre, and assembled moche grete court / and made to be sayd and shewde

8 in the presence of them alle the pryde and rebellyon of them of Saxone, wherof he demaunded debonayrly counsel and thayr helpe. They acorded alle that this thyng was for to be auenged asprely. They habaundonne bodye and power to thempyre for 12 thamendynyge of this trespas. They departed, and eche wente in to his countre. Thempyre somoned his hooste as strongly as he myght at a castel on the marche of Saxone. when they were entred in to the londe, thayr enemyes sayde that they wolde fyghte 16 ayenst them, for they were proud and fiers, in suche wyse that they sette but lytyl by the power of thempyre / when they knewe that they must fyght / they ordeyned theyr bataylles / for they had moche peple / And1 had ynowe / Those demaunded them-

20 perour / of whom they were acorded that shold bere thaygle / which is the fawcon of thempyre / They choos to for alle other for to do that, the valyaunt due of Loreyne, worthy and moost sufficiant to do it. They reputed it for a moche grete worship that he was thus chosen by comyn acord of them alle / Neuertheles he with sayde it, and refused as moche as he myght. But he muste nedes take it on hym / This daye cam / and that one partye approached that other in suche wyse that they assembled fiersly / ther were 24 many men put to deth, for they were murmoullously wroth eche ayenst other. whyles thus as the bataylle was grete and fyers in many places, the due Godfreye, that conduyted the bataylle of Thempyre, espied a grete Rowte of men, wherin was this Raoul, 32 whiche was lorde of saxone / ayenst them the duc dyde do assemble the peple of thempyre. The duc knewe this Raoul, and smote the hors with his spores ayenst hym. And with the gonfanon that he bare / Iusted ayenst hym in suche wyse that he bare hym thurg the bodye and slewe hym, that he fylle down deed in the place. And Incontinent he redressyd and reysed on

The Emperor of Germany assembled his men at a certain castle. Godfrey of Lorraine was chosen to bear the eagle.

They met the Saxons in battle, and Raoul was slain by Godfrey.

1 Fr. "si en firent assuz," viz. "so they made plenty of them (i.e. of battalions)."
2 Corruption or mistranslation for Gonfanon. Fr. gonfanun.
3 Orig. hyin. 4 Orig. caun. 5 Orig. thon.
6 "telsonent qu'il lui envoya permy de corps oultre." G predators.
Godfrey establishes Canons of the Church. [Ch. CXCIX.

Heyghte his baner alle blody / his peple sawe that they had loste theyr lord, and anon were disconfyted / Somme fledde, & somme fylle down vnto the feet of themperour, and put them in his mercy / Alle the gentlemen and other gaf good hostages for tobeeye ever 4 after to hym, and be at his commandament / Many other provesses made the valyaunt due godeffroye / but it behouneth not to put them alle in this historye, for my purpose now is for to recounte of the holy londe by yonde the see, and not of them on this syde, 8 but of them of whom ye may understande that he was in his countrie noble and a valyaunt knyght. Of his largesse ayenst our lord I shal saye to you one thynge, by whiche ye maye understande the other. In the duchye of Loreyne was a castel, whiche was 12 moost renommé & chyf of thonour of buyllon / And bare that name / whan he shold menue to goo in his pylgremage by yonde the see, he gaf this castel as the mooste noble and hyest of his herytage vnto our lord in Almesse, in to the chirche of lyge, for to abyde 16 there for euernore.

How the valyaunt due godeffroy augmented the holy chirche, And how he wold neuer1 bere crowne.

ca2. Clxxxxix. 20

8 Yth that he had thus by election the Royame / like as a denouete and a relygyous man as he was, he lound moch holy chirch & the servise of our lord, by conseyl of the bissophs & of other wise clerkes that were in thooest / he ordéyned fyrst in the 24 chirche of the sepulcre of our lord, and in the temple, clerkes for to servse, & establysshed chanozones, & gaf to them grete rentes & large herytages, 2of which they shold take theyr prebendes.2 & he wold that the chirches in thoo partyes there shold be ordéyned 28 after the establimentis / vses, and custommes of the grete chirches of fraunce3 / He began moche hyly / & wel had accomplyshed, yt our lord had gyuen to hym lenger lyf / He had brought with hym oute of his countrie relygyous Monkes, whiche sayde and songe 32 theyr 4howres and serayse al a lounge the waye as he cam. he gaf to them an Abbaye in the vale of Iosaphat, and establysshed them there, And2 endoweth them there moche Rychely with good rentes.

1 Orig. neuer.
2-2 Fr. "ou ils devaient prendre leurs provendes," from which they should draw their revenues.
3 Orig. fraunce.
and revenues. And gaf to them grete pryneleges. he was a very relygyous and demoute man, And had his herte moche large vnto holy chirche, And gaf thereto many grete thynges. whan he was chosen to be kyng / alle the barons reqyred hym that he wold do hym be crowned, and receyve thonour of the Royamm as hyly as the other kynges in Cristendom doo / he answerde / that in this holy cyte, where our sanyour Ihesu Criste suffred deth, and had borne a crowne of thornes vpon his heed for hym and for the synners / he wold neuer bere, ye it playset god, crowne of gold ne of precious stones, but hym semedy that it was ynowe of that coronacion that he had the daye of his passion for to honoure alle the kynges Cristen that shold be after hym in Iherusalem / for this cause he refused the crowne. Ther ben somme men that wyll not accomplte hym emong the kynges of Iherusalem / but me thynketh that therfore he ought not to be lassed ne dymynueth of his honoure, but the more and hyer exalted and enhauenséd; for he dyde not this for despysynge of the sacrament of holy chirche, but he dyde it for teschewe the bobauence and pryde of the world, and for the grete mekenes & humylyte that he had in his herte / wher-fore themme I saye not only that he was not kyng, but he was gretter than ony kyng that holdeth ony Royamm synth that the holy londe of Iherusalem was conquerd.2

How the turkes of Arabe and of Egypte made theyr somaunce for to come in to Surye tassaylle our cristen men / 24

n

28 The Caliph of Egypte had summoned a great army to invade Palestine. The com-

mander of the army was named Elafdales, 2 Orig. conquerd. 3 Orig. countrrey. 1 Orig. revenues.
that he shold take all this peple with hym & goo in to Surye / And reyne vygorously vpon this peple, that were so folyssh and outrageous, that had torned his peas\(^1\) and made warre to his peple. Therfor he commannded\(^2\) hym that he shold efface and destroye them alle / In suche wyse that neuer worde be spoken of them\(^3\) / This Elafdales was of Ermenye born, And was called\(^4\) Cimireemx\(^5\) by another name. Of the Cristen men he was comen / But for the Rychesse that was gyuen hym, and for the lecherye that he fonde emonge the mescreamtes / he renayed our lord\(^6\) and Cristen fayth for to become sarasyn. This same man had conquerd the Cyte of Iherusalem vpon the turkes, and sette it in the payssaunce of his lord\(^7\) the same yere that the cristen men had besyde\(^8\) it, And had 12 not yet holden it .xj/ moneths whan thoost of the pulygryms toke it vpon them, and rened\(^9\) it to Cristiante / hit was a thynge that it moche displaysyd his conestable that his lord\(^10\) had hold\(^11\) it so short a whyle / And enjoyed nomore his conqueste: ffor this cause he 16 enterprysed\(^12\) in hym this werke / and\(^13\) for to renne vpon oure peple, And\(^14\) hym thought it but a lytil thynge and a light for to doo, consyderyng the grete plente of peple that he had for to disconfyte them that had taken the Cyte. He cam in to Surye, & brought 20 with hym alle the power of Egypte. he had grete pryde in his herte by cause of the grete people that he had\(^15\) / And\(^16\) was moche angry toward\(^17\) our men / But our lord, that can sette wel counseyl in alle the purpoos of men / ordyned this werke all in another maner 24 than he deuyed / he cam with alle his men to fore the Cyte of Escanone. There they lodged them, and pourprised grete space of ground. with them were ioyned\(^18\) alle the dukes of damaske, and they of arabe that were in thoo partyes / moche grete peple / 28 Trouthe it is that to fore er oure peple entred\(^19\) in to the londe / They of Egypte and the turkes of arabe lonyd\(^20\) not to gydde / 25but doubted\(^21\) mocch thenercrayng of the one and other\(^22\) / But after, they accompanyed\(^23\) them togydde to come vpon oure men, more for 32

\(^{1}\) The MS, which Caxton followed reads "trouée sa paix," which makes no sense, and was rendered turned his peace by him. The correct reading is "qu'il avoit brisé sa pes," that it had broken the peace.

\(^{2}\) Orig. commannded.

\(^{3}-^{4}\) Lat. "et populum praeconsuntuosum deletat de superficie terrae, ita ut non memoretur nomen illius ultra."

\(^{5}\) B. Cimireunte. A. Emirivex. Lat. Emirivus.

\(^{6}-^{7}\) Fr. "ainsi doivent mourir le croissance les vins des autres," but each feared greatly the growth and increase of the other. "Orig. doubted.
hate of oure peple, than for lone that they had emonge them self.
They were alle to gydre to fore Escalone, And they there concluded
to come after to fore Iherusalem for tassiege the toun\(^1\) for they
supposed veryly, that oure barons durst in no wyse yssue out ayenst
them in batayle.

²How our Cristen men, whan they knewe thyse tydynges, cryed to
god for mercy / and for to haue
the vycetorye.
ca² CGj²:

w Han thyse tydynges were spradd thurgh the cyte of Iherusa-
lem, Alle the peple were gretyly affrayed, grete and smale / By comyn acord of the bishoppes they cam \(^3\) wullen and barfote \(^3\)
in the chirche of our lord. There were alle the peple, and cryed
mercy to oure lord with syghes and teiris, And besought Ihesu
Criste moche sweetly that his peple, whiche he had kept and
defended vnto that day / he wold delyuer fro this peryll, ne suffre
that the cyte and holy places that they late had rendred and yuen
to his name and to his sernyse, and that he wold not that they
shold be remysed agayn and habandouned in ordue and fythe,
and in the desloyalte of the heten men. And theyn they wente a
procession,\(^5\) syngynge with moche grete pytse, vnto\(^6\) the temple of
oure lord. There dyde the bishoppes and the clerkes the sernyse / And
the laye peple pryade with moche good herte and pytus / when this was don, the bishoppes gaf to them the benediction / And
after they departed, The duc ordleyned barons and knyghtes that
shold kepe the cyte. After this he yssued out, and therle of
flammures / And cam in to the playnes of Rames. The other
Barons abode in Iherusalem / The cytezeyns of nappes had sente
28 to fetche enstate, broder of the duc, and Tancre for to come theder
to them, & they wold yele to them the cyte. They were goon by
the commandemente of the duc, and garnysshed moche wel the
town with peple and vytyayle, of which the countre was moche
fertile / therfor they abode there, and knewe nothyng of thyse
tydynges / But the duc sente for them, And they cam hastely / and
were with the other barons. When the duc and the erle of
flammures\(^7\) arryued atte Cyte of Rames, they knewe wel the trouthe

³⁻⁴ Fr. \"en lunge et nuz pias.\" The Lat. gives only \"audis pedibus.\"
⁴ Orig. oure. ⁵ Fr. \"en procession.\" ⁶ Orig. vuto. ⁷ Orig. flammures.

¹ Orig. toun.
certaynly that this admiral was lodged to fore Escalon with so grete peple that the contre was couerd. Thenne sente they hastely messagers in to Iherusalem vnto the other barons, which abode and awayted the certayne of this thynge / And he bad them hastely to come alle, sauf suche as shold kepe the eyte / And shold brynge alle the peple moche hastily, as for to fyghte ayenst grete plente of theyr enemyes.

How our men assembled and ordeyned theyr bat-ayllles for to fyghte ayenst the turkes. And how the turkes were disconfyte.

Capitulu / CCII.

Our men now saw an immense body of animals approaching, which they captured.

He also sent back to Iherusalem for the other barons,

who cam speedily to the place where he was.

Our Men capture a large Body of Animals. [Ch. CCII.

2 Orig. duc.
3 Orig. began.
4 Fr. "il leur estoit aires que s'il n'en eust plus en toute cette terre, si deissens ilz soupire." Caxton has omitted the si, viz., if there were no more in all this country, etc.
They arrange their Battalions for Battle.

ther were that were taken, whiche tolde the trouthe of the turkes,
In suche wyse that it was wel known, that this grete hooste of
sarayns were lodged but viij / myle from them. And that theyr
4 purpos was to come on them and to slee them alle. Our barons
were thesame certayn of the bataylle / And denysed themge / ix.
bataylles / And commanded thare shold goo to foare on that
one syde. For the playnes were greet. And thare shold go in the
8 mydle / and thare shold come behynde / Of the sarayns myght
noman knowe the nombre / for ther was so grete plente that ever
daye they encreased and grewe of the contre about / whiche ranne
to them in suche wyse that it was not for to be esteemed / whan our
12 men had goten this grete gayne that I spak of, that is to saye of
alle the beestes / they had grete ioye and ioyously restyd them
that nyght; but they that had the charge made good watche upon
1thooste. On the morn whan the sonne was rysen, the due dyde do
16 crye that every man shold arme hym and goo to his bataylle, and
after wente forth a soft pas right theder where they thought to
fynde theyr enemies they had stedfast hope in our lord / to
whom is a lyght thynge to make that the lasse in nombre vayn-
20 quysshe the more & greter / they of egype, & the other mescre-
antes that were with them, cam in moche grete desraye unto the
place that they sweeoure peple alle in the playne,3 whan they
sawe and knewe that our men had noo talente to withdrawe them
24 ne eschewe them, but cam for to seche them / they began moche to
doubte. whan they sawe that our men had taken and pourprised
so grete a place on the playns, wel supposed they that they had ben
muchemore people and in greter nombre. But the trouthe was
28 suche as I haue sayd / Our men were but fewe on horsbak and a
foote. the grete company of beestes, as I haue sayd, were with
4 them / whan they drewe forth on / the beestes wente with them / the
turkes weade that they had ben alle men Armed and had ouer
32 grete fere and drede / the grettest men and they that men supposed
shold best haue born the fayte5 of the bataylle, they began to with-
drawe them lytil and lytil and lefte theyr bataylles the one after
the other & fledde all pruelye, whan the lasse knyghtes of the
36 turkmans appereyued this /6 they never toke hope on them,6 but

---

2 Fr. tout le pas, briskly. 3 Fr. tout à plain, plainly.
4 Fr. quant euolt se tiroient, when these advanced.
5 Fr. fais, burden, responsibility.
6-6 Fr. "ne priyraent oenques ant despit sur cule."
torned their horses & smote with their spores, & fledde every man where he supposed best to sawe hym / On this daye was he lost / that had sette al his herte for to sowe & pourchasse discordes ouer al where he was bylenyd. Noman wote whe he becam / this was the 4 bishopp of maturane. Somme men sayde that the duc had sente hym for to fetche the barons that were lefte in the cyte / and whan he retorne Saraisins shold hauve take hym & slayn hym, or brought hym in pryson. what sommener cam of hym it was no grete harme, 8 so that he were effaced out of this holy company / whan oure Barons sawe that our lord had fochtyn for them, And that he had put in the herties of the turkes so grete fere & drede / that they were fled without smytynge of stroke, they had grete ioye and 12 rendred graces and thankynge to oure lorde denoultly; they had counsely that they shold not folowe them withoute araye thurgh the feldes / ffor they were ouer grete nombre of peple vnto the regarde of them. And yf they happen to relye1 and gadre to gydre 16 agayn, they myght permauntence put oure men to the worse. Oure men rode alle in ordenaunce vnto the tentes of the hethen men, ffor they that fledde 2lokes neuer behynnde them / There founde oure men so grete plente of Gold, of Sylvuer, of Robes, of Jewellys, 20 and of vessell, that the leest of them had ynowgh / Thus gadred they alle that they fonde there / & retorne and wente agayn to Iherusalem euer man laden and charged with despoyles, thankyng and preysing oure lord, by whom was comen to them this yve-24 torye / honour, and gayne. Thenne made they within the cyte moche ioye & grete / As doon the vaynquers and conquerours3 when they departe theyr gayne.

How somme of our4 barons wolde retorne home after 28 they had don theyr pylgremage / cae CCiiij:

1 Fr. "se radiassent," if they should rally. 2 Orig. conquerours. 3 Orig. conquerours. 4 Orig. our.
fayr chiere, & gaf to them moche fayre yestes at theyr departyng / After they cam in to theyr contrey hool & ioyous / That one of them, that was the duc of Normandye / founde the thynge alle

4 changed otherwyse in his contrey than he lefte it / for whyles he was in mayntenynge this holy pylegrame, lyke as ye hane herd, his oldest broder deyde without heyer of his body, wylliam Rous, whiche was kyng of englond by right / And after the customs of

8 the contrey the Royamme was fallen to this duc of normandye; but his broder whiche was yonger, named Henry, cam to the barons of the contreye and made them to vnderstande1 / that the duc his broder was kyng of Iherusalem / And had no talente / ne

12 purpose[ed] neuer to retorne on this syde the montaynes. By this lesynge they made hym kyng of England, and they becam his men. when his broder retorned fro the holy londe, he demaunded of hym his herytage entierly / And he wold not deluyer it to hym.

16 The duc made redy a grete nauye / and gadyrd as moche peple as he myght in normandye and other places, and passed the see / he arryued2 by force. His broder that was kyng cam ayenst hym with alle the power of the londe / The bateylls were al redy for

20 tassemble. But the noble and wysemen sawe that it shold be ouer grete3 hurt & damage yf thys two bretheren shold fyght thus. [II. 137, bk.] Therfor they spak of pees, and made it in this manere / that the sayd henry shold holde the Royamme / but he shold gyue every euer yere to his brother a greet somme of good / of whiche he made hym sure / And thus retorned the duc agayn, and cam in to his londe. after it happed that the kyng whiche had somme castellys in normandye to fore that he had the Royamme4 of England / them

28 wolde he kepe as his herytage / The duc demaunded them. And he wold not deluyere them / thenme the duc assieged them, and toke them by force. when the kyng herd this / he was moche angry, he assembled grete peple and passed ouer in to Normandye / and

32 his brother cam ayenst hym / And they fought to gydre at tyneh." Bray5 / ther was the duc disconfyted and taken, his broder put hym in pryson, wherin he deyde / Thenne had this henry alle to gydre the Royamme of England, and the duchye of Normandye / Therle

1 Orig. vunderstande.
2 Orig. il arriva en Angleterre à force," he arrived in England with an army.
3 Orig. Royamue.
4 The Latin does not specify the name of this place, which is added by the French translator. Fr. Tanchebray.
of thoulouse cam vnto the lyche in surye / there lefte he his wyf, the Countesse, and wente vnto Constantynople, And shold hastely retornde / Thenperour made to hym grete ioye and receyued hym moche wel / and gaf to hym grete yeftes / And after cam agayn to 4 his wyf hoole & sauf / to his felawship in Surye, but it was two yere after, as ye shal here / The due godeffroy was in Iherusalem / wel gouerned he the Royanne whiche oure lord had gyuen to hym, he reteyned with hym the Erle Garnyer1 of grece / And 8 other Barons, suche as he myght have. Tancre the valyautn abode with hym, to whom the Due gaf for to holde in herytage the cyte of tabarye, whiche stondeth on the laye of Gene.2 And with that alle the pryncipalyte of Galylee with the Cyte, whiche was wonden 12 to be named porphire, And nowe named Cayphas, and alle thap- perteneances of thys thynge / Tancre helde thysse londes so wel and so wysely, that he was alowed of god / & honoured of the world / he founded chyrches of this countrey3 moche rychely / he 16 gaf to them grete rentes / and endowe4d them with Aournementes fayr and of grete valure. Specially the chyrche of Nazareth, of tabarye, and that of mount Tabor, he lefte them in hye estate and in moche rychy poynt. But the barons that after hym hane be 20 lorde of the countrey have taken from them ynowgh of their ten- ours / This Tancre was wyse and trewe / And delyted hym to doo wel to the chyrches / as it appereth after whan he was prynce of Anthyoeche. ffor he enhaunced the chyrche of seynt peter, and the 24 pryncipalyte and seyngronye of anthyoeche made he moch tenerece & enlarged, as ye shal here.

4How buymont and bawdwyn beyng certayn of the pryse and conqueste of Iherusalem wolde accom-28 plysshe theyr pylgremage / Capitulo / CC.iiiij w Hyles that the Royanne of Iherusalem was in such estate / Buymont5 the prynce of Anthyoeche, And Bawdwyn Erle of Rages, broder of the due godeffroy, had herd certayn tydynges that 32 the other barons that helde them to gydre as bretheren for the accompanye of theyr pylgremage, had by thayde6 and helpe of our

1 Fr. Garnier de Gres. 2 Fr. B. Gene : A. Genesar.
3 Orig. countrey. 4 Orig. Buymont.
5 Orig. Buymont.
6 Fr. "que les autres barons quiz tenoient a frcres, pour la compaignie du pelerinage, avoient, par l'aide," viz., that the other barons whom they considered as brothers in this pilgrimage had, by the aid, etc.
lord Ihesu Criste conquerd vpon the turkes and reconuerd tooure fayth the holy Cyte of Iherusalem / by whiche they had accomplisyshyd theyr vows and theyr pylgrenages. Therfor they assembled on a day named for to goe to the holy sepulcre, to thende 1 that they were assayled of theyr vows. 2 And desired moche for to see the Duc and the other Barons, to whom they wold gyue ayde yf they had nede / that is to wete of their bodyes / of theyr goodes and decide to accomplish their own vows. 

Those two hye men were not at the takyinge of the holy Cyte of Iherusalem, for by the wylle of the pylgrym that one of them abode in Anthyoche / And that other at Rages, for to kepe soynously / and defende the 12 turkes fro theyse 2 two Cytees which were fer fro Cristiente. 3 Eche man had to doo ynowgh in his country. But they lefte alle for to come to the other / Buymont cam fyrst fro his cyte with a moche fayr company, grete nombre of men of Armes on horsbak and a 16 foote. he cam vnto a Cyte vpon the see, named valerne, on the castel of margat / there he lodged hym maungr theye of the cyte. Bawdwn cam fro his countrey sone after and so moch iourned after, that he overtoke the prynce buymont to fore this Cyte / And 20 there they assembled / In that same tyme were arrynd pylgryms of ytalye at the lyche in surye. Emong them was a good man wyse and wel lettired, Relygyous and of grete honnest, named daybart, Archebissop of Pyse / Another was in his company, 24 Archebissop of psyllie, of a Cyte named Aeiane. 3 Thyse men with theyr meyne cam in the companye of theyse two barons for to passe more surely vnto the Cyte of Iherusalem. Of them was moche encreed thost of theyse two prynces / in suche wyse that they were 28 wel xxv / M. on horsbak and a foote. Thus thenne helde they theyr waye by suche manere / that they fonde no Cyte but of theyr enemies / wherfore they passed with moch greteayne / They suffred moche in theyr way for lack of vytyallles, ffor they fonde 1[M.f. 138,1k.] none for to bye. And suche as they brought fro theyr countrey was faylled? They had grete colt / & so grete rayne that nothing myght endure; it was so merueylous. It was in the moneth of Iuyll, 5 which is moche raynye customably in that countrey / ffor

1 Fr. “afin quiz fussent absouz de leurs veuz,” that they might be absorbed from their vows—assayled is probably a misreading for assayled.

2 Fr. “deux cîtes qui tiennent grand lieu a la xpente,” viz., two cities which occupy a great place in Christendom.


Caxton follows his corrupt French text here. That it is a mistake can
The Reception by the Christians of Jerusalem. [Ch. CCV.

this cause many dyed of mesease in that companye, for in alle this longe way, they myght fynde none that wold selle to them any vtyaylle, sauf they of Tryple, and they of cesaire. They had grete scarcepe of vtyaylles for theyr horses. At the laste by the mercy of our lord they cam to Iherusalem. There were they receyued with moch grete ioye, of god, of the barons, of the clergye, and of alle the peple. They vysyted the holy places of the cyte in teeres and grete sorowes of herte / they fylle down flat and stretched in the chirches / they kyssed and etc. therethe that our lord had bought. After they cam in to theyr hostelys / where alle they of the toun made to them grete ioye / whan the hyc feste of the natuye of our lord Ihesu Criste approcheth, Alle the prelacies and barons yssued out of Iherusalem & wente to Bethlechem. There helde they theyr Cristemas. There behelde they gladly and moche ententyfly the holy crybbe, wherein the sauyour of the world laye bytweene the beestes, dewently made they theyr prayers & orysons in the place / whiche is as a lytil 16 dyche where the swete lady that was moder and vyrgyne after that she had chylled / wrapped her sone with lytil and smale clothys, & gaf hym souke of the Mylke of her pappes.

How our Cristen men chosen a very Patriarke in 20 Iherusalem and assigned to hym rentes /

v N to this tyme had the See of Iherusalem ben without. pastour and patriark that duely and truly had entred. It was wel theymne v monethes that the cyte was conquerd. Themne assembled the Barons for to conseylle to have suche a man that were worthy of honour & myght to bere the faytes. Ther were wordes ynowgh. The somme wolde have one and other wold have an other. Atte laste by the conseyl and good wyll of alle they choos this Daybarto, Archibisshop of psy, whiche was but newly come. They constituted and sette hym in the siege of Patriark / forhe that had be made by this baratour arnold, of whom I have spoken 32 to fore, lyke as he was made aynest right and reson. In lyke wyse he returned agayn to nought / whan this good, wise man was easily be seen by the context. The "July" should of course read "December."

1 Orig. sarcepe.

2 Fr. "La terre que nostre Seigneur avoit marche." Caxton confounds marcher (to walk) with marchier (to buy), to bargain. It should be, the earth where our Saviour had walked.
sette in his dignyte / The duc godeffroy and the prynce buymont
cam to fore hym / whiche had gyuen to hym this honour as for to
be the vycayre of Ihesu Criste in that londe, and thanked and
preyed alle to gydreoure lorde / when this was don they assygned
rentes to the newe Patriarke, suche as his predecessour, whiche
was a grecke, haf holiden. And other gretter aboue that, in suche
wyse that he myght honorably mayntene a good and honest com-
pany of peple / Thenne bawdwyn and buymont toke leue of the
duc and of the other barons, and descended vnto from Iordan,
and there bayned them / sifo thens they wente by the Ryuer syde
til they cam to tabarye. Thenne passed by the londe named
Fenyce / And lefte cesayre on the right syde. After they cam to
the Cyte named manbec.1 After helde they the see syde and so
moche expoyted that they cam al hool and sound to Anthyoehe.

How by thatysement of somme men a grete debate
soured bytwene the duc and the patriarke of
Iherusalem /  

He cu-stomme of somme men is suche / that they may not
t suffre the peas emong the peple, where they may sette dis-
corde / By thatysement of suche maner folke sourced a debate
bytwene the duc and the patriarke / 2ffor the patriarke demanded
of hym the chyef tour of the toun, whiche is named the toure
dauyd, and the fourth part of Iherusalem2 / aboue that he wold
hane the cyte of Iaphe and alle thappertenantes, fior he sayde
that they were the droytes and rightes of his chirche of the sepulcre
/ when this debate had a whyle endured hytwene them. the duc
whiche was humble and mesurable & moche doubted our lorde / on
28 candlemas day, in the presence of alle the cleruge & all the pepe,
he gaf the iiij part of Iaphe moche debonayrly to the patriarke and
to his chirche to holde for euermore. After this whan it cam to
the day of Eester, to fore all them that were assembled at this
32 feste / he gaf in to the honde of the patriarke, the fourth part of
Iherusalem & the tour dauyd with alle the appertenantes / Alway

1 Fr. Malbec.
2-2 Fr. Car le patriarche lui demandoit la sainte cite de Iherusalem, et la
maitresse forteresse de la ville, qu'on nomme la tour David, outre plus." The
patriarch demanded the whole of the city of Jerusalem, not "a fourth" as
Caxton translates. Lat. "domino patriarcha reposita ab hoc civitatem sanctam
Deo ascriptam, et ejusdem civitatis praecipuum," etc.
Reasons for the Quarrel.

[Ch. CCVII.

as soon as he should have conquered two other cities from the Turks.

[2 ff. 139, bb.]

Every one marvelled that the patriarch should make this demand.

forseen by courteous that the du¢1 shold holde thysce cytees and the londes aboute vnto the tyne that by the ayde of oure lord he had conquerd vpon the turkes two other Cytees / By whiche the Royanne myght be enlarged. And yf it happe1 that he dyde in 4 the 2-me ne the wyll with out heyer, Alle thysce thynges without con- tradiction shold come in to the honde of the patriarche / and to the chirche. The trouthe was suche as I haue sayd¢, But it is over grete meu-ylle, for what resone this holy man that was so wyse, 8 demanded thus thysce cytees of this noble man, the du¢, as I haue sayd¢. They that knewe the state of the londe / helde and repute¢ them self for lasse, when they understode this werk e and conteyse in the chirche, and meueyly¢d therof· / for the barons that had 12 conquerd the cyte gaf it to the du¢ so frely / that they wolde not / that ony man lynung shold haue no right aboue hym, but that he shold holde it hym self enterlier without making to ony other ony obeyssance.

Hier recounteth thystorye how the fourth parte of Iherusalem cam vnto the patriarche of the same / ca. CCvij?

From this time on, the patriarch had a fourth part of the city.

Jerusalem was never a peaceful city, but was always being besieged.

a Lway it is certayn, that fro the tyne that the latins entred in 20 to the Cyte, And yet of more Auncyente / the patriarche of Iherusalem had the fourth part of the cyte of Iherusalem / And held it as his owen / how this happe¢, and by what resone / I shal saye to you shortly / for the trouthe therof hath ben serched. It 24 is founden by thauncyent historyes, that whythes this Cyte was in the hondes of the hethen peple / It myght neuer haue peas that longe endured, But was ofte assieged¢ of hethen prynces that were about it, flor eche of them wold conquere¢ it and put it in his seyg- 28 norye / Therfore they toke ofte the proyes, and mesdyde and tres- paced to the Cytezeyns of the toun / They brake the towres & walles moche outragously by theyr engyns, And for the oldenes of the walles / the Cyte was disclosed and open in many places / 32 In this tyne the Royanne of Egypte was more ryche and more

1 Orig. du¢.
2 Orig. conquere.
4-4 Fr. "Egypt estoit plus riche et plus puissant et d'aroir et de sens."

Caxton has here made a common paleographic error by reading "sens" instead of "sen", and then making one word of it with the "de". Lat. "Cum ignitor et tempestate, Aegyptorum regnum viribus et dieitis, sed et prudentia Sacculari veteris quae in Oriente, vel in Austro crant regnis cессet praecentibus."
The Caliph of Egypt had possession of it at one time.

The poor Christians were ordered to rebuild a fourth of them.

So they finally sent to the Emperor of Constantinople to beg for help.

Ch. CCVII.] Conduct of the Mohammedan Bailiff. 303

puyssaut of hauour and good and defence than any other of the Royammes of Turkye / for the Calyphe hede themne Iherusalem and the londe therabout, and with his grete hoost that he sente 4 theder he conquerd alle surye vnto the Lyche, whiche is by anthyochse. Thus had he encreed his empyre. he establysshed his baylyyes in the cytees that stonde on the see syde, And in them also on the londe / Thenne commanded he that alle shoelde paye 8 hym trybute, & ordeyned & denysed what he wold have of euery cyte. after this he wold that the cytezeyns shold make agayn the wallis of euery 1Cyte / And mayntene in good poynct the towres / and redresse alle aboute suche as newed / by the adyys of his men. 12 And after theyr establysshement / The bayly of Iherusalem commanded to them of the towne to repayre theyr walles and sette them entierly in poynct lyke as they to fore had ben. Thenne ordeyned he and denysed how many euery strete of the towne shold 16 make. By grete cruelte and malyce he commanded that the captysfs cristiens that were in the cyte shold make the fourth part of the walles / They were so poure and so greued of tayllages and excises, that vnethe they had among them alle wherof to repayre 20 two towrettys / They sawe wel that he sought occasion for to destroye them alle / Therfor they assembled and cam moche humbly to fore the bayly / and fyel at his feet, And moch requyred in weping / that he wold comande them to doo thynge that they 24 myght doo, for this that he had commanded them to doo was ouermoche ouer theyr power / That Ihumanayn baylyly, whiche was ful of cruelte and of pryde, louyd not the Cristen men, and menaced them moche fiersly / And sware that ye they accomplisshyd not the 28 commaundement of this lord the Calyphe, he wold do smyte of theyr heedes as traytours / when they herd this / they were moche aferd / and on that othersyde they sawe wel that they myght not bere the charge that he leyde on them / therfor they dyde so moche 32 atte laste by the prayer of somme turkes / whiche had pyte on them, that the Baylyly gaf them respyte, til that they had sent to themperour of Constantynople, and to requyre hym for the loue of god that he wold sende his almesse to performe this horrible werke, for 36 to deleyuer them fro the peryll of deth in whiche they were con- demned, yt it were not by them made.
Of the same mater / cae. CCviij:

He messengers cam fro them to themempour in to constantynople / they seyd to hym the trouth of their message, how they were in subjection, and what messeases, what fylthes the turkes made them to suffre. And fyually they muste alle deye yf he socoured them not / all they that herde them began to wepe for compassion / thener was emperour a valiant man, wyse, & of grete courage named constantyn, and surname monamaques. he governed moche vygorously thempyre. when he herk the requeste of the poure cristenn men he was meuyd with grete pyte in his herte / and sayd that he wold helpe them gladly, and shold gyne to them so largely of his good that the iiiij part of the wallis which was commanded them to make shold be accomplisshyd, but he promised them wel that he shold doo nothyng but by couenaunt. That is to wete that yf they myght pouarche of the lord of the londe, that within the partye of the cyte that shold be closed with his money, none shold dwelle but cristenn men / on this condicion wold he doo it / and other wyse not. In this fourme he deleuered to them his lettres patentes, And sente to his bayly of Cypre / that yf the cristenn men of Iherusalem myght pouarche of the Calyphe of Egypte this that ye haue herd, that of the rente that he ought to haue in that londe, he shold lete make the fourth part of the wallys of this holy Cyte. The messengers that had thus don their message Retornef unto the Patriarke and to them that had sente them / And recounted to them truly how they had don and sped / They answered that it shold be harke to be had, not withstanding they muste esaye, for he myght passe in none other maner. they sente good messengers and trewe to this grete lord the Calyphe of Egyte / Our lord helpe hym in such wyse that thei fonte in hym this that they sought ; & shortly to say / he deleuered to them a good chartre sealid with his seal, & confermed with his propre hand, that so closyng the / iiiij / part / he graunted to them the fourth part of Iherusalem. The messengers returned. They that had sente them made to them grete joye when they knewe how they had achyened their message. The baiytes of Cypre passef in to Surye / And they made the fourth part of the wallis with the goodes of them-

1 Orig. ceisten.  2 Orig. fourne.  3 Orig. fourth.
4 5 Fr. "que par ce faiusent leur octroya la quarte parte de Jerusalem," viz., that by so doing he delivered to them the fourth part of Jerusalem.
perour, lyke as he had commannded. And this werke was made in
the yere of thyncarnation\(^1\) of oure lord M.lxiiij. thenne was calyphe
& kynge of egyptye b tween 05 sasser / And this was / xxxvij. yere to fore
4 the cyte was conquerd. vnto this tyme the cristien men were lodged
in the towne emonge the turkes comynyng one by another, but fro
thenz forth that the Calyphe had commannded, the fourth part of
the towne was delyned\(^2\) to them / Thenne were the cristien men
8 moche eased, sflor whan they dwellyd emonge the turkes, they that
were theyr neighbours / dyde to them grete enmyes and shames /
But whan they were by them self / they dyde them not so moche /
yf they had ony debate emonge them self it was brought to fore
12 the patriark. sflor fro them ez forth was in that part of the towne none
other justice but he / thus governed he it as his\(^3\) oune. his iiij part
is bounded as I shall saye to you. sflor the yate that the soume goth
down, whiche is named the yate dauid by the tour of the angle,
16 otherwyse named the tour tanere. The walles that they made
within is bounded fro\(^4\) the chyef way that goth fro that gate vnto
the\(^5\) channe, And fro thens agayn vnto the west yate / In this
space stondeth the mount of Caluarye where oure sauyour Ihesu
20 Criste was crucified / & the holy sepulcre / where he laye deed in,
and out wherof he aroos fro deth to lyf / The hows of the hospytal,
Two abbayes, one of monkes & another of nonnes / The hows of
the patriarke / And the Cloystare of the chanonnes of the sepulcre.

24 How the duc Godffroy for to augmente the Cristi-
ente / assieged one of the townes of the turkes / cae. CCix":
1 X this tyme after that alle the Barons that were come in pyl-
gremanage were departed fro the londe, and returned in to
theyr countrees, The valyuant duc, to whom the Royanne was
delyned / & tanere whiche was abiden with hym, they were
almost alone in the partes. they were moche pour of good and of
32 men. vnnethe myght they make, whan they dyde all theyr power,
ther honde men on horsbk, and two thousand a foote / The
Cytees that the pylgryms had conquerd were ferre a sondre / And
none myght come to other without grete peryll of theyr enmyes /

\(^1\) Orig. thyncarnation. \(^2\) Fr. comme sienne, as his own.
\(^3\) Fr. est bornée de, i.e. is bounded by, not from.
\(^4\) Lat. "ad mensus nummulariorum."

GODFREY.
The vyllages that were about the cyttees whiche were called casians\(^1\) therin dwellyd the turkes that were theyr subgettis, and obeyed\(^2\) to the lordes of the cyttees / but thise turkes hated nomen more than they dyde the cristen men, and purchaced incessantly alle the гарme & eyyl that they myght, when they fonde ony of our men alone oute of the way / gladly they murdred them. And somtyme they ledde to the Cyttees of the sarayyns for to selle them / yet thought they of gretter meschye and folye / for they wold\(^3\) not ere 8 ne laboure theyr lordes to thende that the lordes and men of the cyttees shold not take theyr rentes / and desired\(^4\) them self lyner to suffer mesease / rather than our\(^5\) peple shold haue ony good or anaylle. The Cristen men were not well assured within the Cyttees / for they had but fewe people / And\(^6\) there cam theynyss by myght that Robbed theyr houses, and slewe them in theyr beddes / And\(^7\) bare awaye allee theyr thynges. By this occasion many there were of the Cristen men / that lefte theyr fayr tenementes\(^8\) and houses in 16 the Cyttees, and returned\(^9\) prynely in to theyr countreyes / for they hadde grete drede / that the Turkes, whiche that dwellyd aboute them / sholde assemble somme daye, and take the townes by strength & desestre, and destroye them for euer in such wyse that 20 neuer sholde be memory of them. for hate of them \(\text{that thus wente was establysshyd}\)\(^10\) fyrst in that londe, that who that helde a yere longe in peas his tenement and his londe / he shold neuer after aswaere therof to ony other, by cause ther were many that for fere 24 and for cowardise lefte alle theyr thynges and fled away. After than the countrey was better assured\(^1\) / they cam agayn, and wold hame reconuer them / but by this lawe that was thus establysshyd they were neuer herd. whythes that the Royanne was thus in grete 28 pouerte / the valyaunt due godeffroy, which had moche grete courage and good hope in our lord, enlarged\(^1\) his Royanne. he assembled as moche peple as he myght / And wente for tassiege a Cyte nygh to Iaphe on the see Syde, named Arsir. But he fonde it wel gamys-\(^32\) shed of vytyalles, of men of Armes, and other engyns. And ther were therin turkes many, hardly and defensable. The hoost of the Cristen men that were without / were but fewe and suffretous by cause they had no shippes by whiche they myght defende the waye 36 of the see, where they myght entre & yssue when it plesyd them / for thise thynges the due was constrayned to leue the siege, and

\[^{1}\text{Fr. Casians, not in the Latin original.}\]

\[^{2}\text{Orig. our.}\]

\[^{3}\text{Fr. tenures, tenures, holdings.}\]
departed thynkyng to come agayn to the same place / whan the
tyme shold he more covenable / 1 And that he were better jour-
neyed of men / wherof he had neede for to take the town.1 And so
4 had he don yt our lord had gyuen hym long lyf in this world.

How the turkes brought presentes to the duc gode-
ffroy at the sayd siege and of theyr deuyses to
gydre / 2

8 i T happe†, in this siege of whiche I haue spoken, a thynge that
ought not to be forgotten. firo the montaynes of the londe of
Samarye, in whiche is the loude of Napples, cam summe turkes
whiche were lordes of Casians theraboute, and brought vnto the
12 valyaunt due godeffroy 2 presentes of brede, of wyn, of dates, and
of other fruyte.2 It myght wel be that they cam more for tespye
the beyng and contenauence of our men than for other thynge.
they prayde so moch the men of the due that they were brought to
16 fore hym / Thenne they presented to hym suche as they had
brought / The noble due, as he that was humble and without bob-
anne, sat in his panyllon on the ground, & lened vnto a sak full of
stuff / There abode he a part of his peple that he had sente in
20 foyrage. when they that had made thysse presentes / sawe the due
sytte 3 so lowe, they merueyled them ouermoche, and begun to de-
mande of the peple that vnderstode theyr langage, where fore it
was so, that so hye a prync of the weste, whiche had troubled alle
24 thoryent, and had slayn so many men, and taken and conquerd so
puyssaunt a Royanne, conteyned hym so pourely, ne had not vnder
hym tappytys ne clothes of sylk, ne habyte of a kyngge on hym. ne
had not aboute hym serjeantes or knyghtes holdingyn naked swordes
28 or haches or axis danos, by whiche alle they that sawe hym shold
doubte and fere hym / but satte so lowe 4 as he were a man of lytly
affayre. the valiaunt due demaunded of them that knewe & vnder-
stode theyr langage what they sayde / It was told 5 & answerd of this
32 which they merueyled. Thenne 5 he sayd that it was no shame to
a man mortel to sytte vpon therthe / ffor theder muste he retourne

1—1 "et que les hommes fussent mieux pourvoe de ce que mestier fust à
prendre la ville," viz., and when his men were better supplied with what was
necessary to take the city.
2—2 Lat. "deferentes secum excoy panis et vini curicatum quoque, et urae
passae." 4 The original is here damaged. 5 Orig. Thenne.
after his death, and lodge there in his body and become ethere, when they herd this answer, they that were comen for espie and essaye what he was began moche for to allowe and preyse his wytte and his humilite. They departed fro thens / sayeng that he was shapen 4 and lyke for to be lord of alle that londe, and to governe the peple / that was so withoute pryde / And knewe powerte and the fragilitye of his nature so wel. This word was spradd over by them that had herd hym. He was so moche dradde and doubted of his enemys / 8 that enqyred of his affayres / whiche founde not in hym but vygour, Rayson and mesure, without any pryde or outtrage.

How buymont was taken in goyng to Meletene /
whiche cyte the lord of the same wold yelde to 12 hym. ca. CCx\(^2\).

i  X the Royanne of Iherusalem they conteyned them thus as ye have herd. Thenn it happened that a ryche man of ermenye named Gabryel was lord of the cyte of meletene, which 16 stondeth by yonde the Ryner of Eufrates in the londe of mesopotayne. This gabriel doubted moche that the turkes of Perse shold come on hym / for the men that they helde / ran ofte on hym / in suche wyse that he myght not wel suffre it / Therfore he toke counseyl. And sente messagers to buymont, prynce of Antychoe / that they shold saye to hym in his name, that he shold haste hym in to his londe / for he wold gyne ouer to hym his Cyte by certayn couenauntes resonable ynough whiche he sente to hym. he bony\(^2\)

1) buymont / And sayde that he had lene that buymont had his cyte by his agrement, than the turkes sholdde take it from\(^2\) hym ayent his wyll / whan Buymont herde thyse tydylnges, as he that was hardly hasted hym moche for to make hym redy, And toke with 28 hym a good company, and went forth on his way / he passed the Ryner of Eufrates and entred in to mesopotayne / And was nyghte the Cyte of meletene / for whiche he sente for to receyve / whan a puyssant amyal of the turkes named domsmyan\(^3\) / that had 32 certaynly the very knowleche of his comyng, And laye in a wayte for hym / and ranne vpon hym sodenly, and his men beyng: alle out of arraye and dispourcuyed / They that abode were alle slayn / for ther were ouer grete plente of turkes / The other fledde, Buymont was taken and reteyned, and they hadde hym the handes

2 Orig. from.
3 Fr. Danismen.
bounden with cordes / And his feet chayned with yron / Of this aventure mouted the turke in grete pryde / And trusted moche in his hoost that he ledde / that he cam to fore the cyte of meletene, 4 and assiged it, by cause he supposed that they wold have deluyed it without taryeng / But somme of them that escaped fro thens where the pyrnce was taken came flyeng in to the cyte of Rages. They tolde to therle Bawdwen this grete mesaventure that was fallen 8 to them / when the valyaunt Erle herde this / he was moche angrye, And had grete pyte of the prynce / whom he helde for broder for the companye of the plynegrame. And by cause they had their countrees so myght to gydre 1 It shold hane displesyd hym 1 of the 12 turkes shold conquer this cyte that buymont shold hane hae. Therfor he somoned hastily alle his men that he myght hane on horsbak and a fotc, and toke with hym that was necessarie for suche a vyage and wente toward thoo partyes. wel a thre daye 16 iournyeye was Rages fro meletene. he haid sone passed this wyse in suchewyse that he was nygh the cyte. But the sayde donysmayn knewe wel the comyng of therle and durst not abyde ne fyght with hym, But lefte the siege and departed and ledde forth with 20 hym buymont faste bounden and straytly. whan Bawdwen herde that he durst not abyde hym / but fledde to fore hym / he ran after with his men and chaeed hym thre dayes longe / whan he sawe that he myght not overtake hym / he retourned in to the cyte of 24 Meletene. Gabryel the lord of the toun recceyued hym with moche grete ioye with alle his men, and made to them good cheere, And after gaf oner the cyte to hym by the same conenauntes that he had offere to buymont. 2 when he had don this he returned home 3 5 leaf 143; 32 g Odeffroy the valyaunt Duc and his men that were lefte with hym for to kepe the Royamme began to hame moche grete mesease / and suffe suche pouerte that vnnethe it may be decysed. Thenne it happe that good espyes and trewe brouht to hym

1-1 Fr. "moult leur est displeu se ilz conquissent les cités," viz., it would have displeased them much, etc. 2 Orig. buymont. 4 Orig. reborned. 5 Orig. duc. 6 Orig. assembled.
tidynges that in the partyes of arabye on that other syde of flem
Jordan were moche ryche peple whiche doubted nothyng. And
therefore they dwelld out of fortresses, yf they were surprised
there shold be moch grete gayne wonne / The valyaunt Duc that so
moche had suffred toke with hym peple a foote and on horsbak as
many as he might, sauf the garde of the Cyte. Thenne entred he
sodeynly in to the londe of his enemies. There gatred he many
grete prayes, that is to wete, horses / beufes, Kyen and sheep, And 8
ryche prysonners brought he grete plente. Thenne retorned he
toward Hierusalem / Somme turkes ther were hye and payssaunt of
them of Arabye whiche were moche hardy, and noble in Armes,
And had grete pryis. Emonge all other ther was one that had longe
12
desired for to see the duc Godfreye of bolyyne / & wolde sayn
knowe yf it were trewe that was said of his force & strengthe / &
acqueyte hym with his peple of Iraunne, of whom he had herd so
moche / that were come fro the occident vnto thoryent / And had 16
conquered so many londes / And sette them in theyr subiection.
Aboue alle other he desired to see duc godfroy and knowe yf it
were troth that was sayd of his prowesse & his strengthe / he dide
so moch to such men as he spak, that he had good surete & triews 20
to come vnto the duc, he salved hym moche lowe enclynyng lyke
as is theyr custome. And after he prayd and desired of the duc
moche humbly / that it wolde please hym to smyte with his swerd a
Camel that he had brought moche grete. fior as he sayde it shold 24
be grete honour to hym in his countrie / yf he myght recounte ony
of his strokes that he had seen hym self. The duc knewe wel that
he was come fro fer to see hym / And dye that he requyred hym.
he drewe his swerd / and smote the camel on the neck where it was 28
grettest, And smote it of as lyghtly as it had been a sheep, whan
the turke sawe this / he merueylled ouer moche. In 3 such wyse
that he was all abasshed / whan he had a lytil bethought hym / he
sayd in his langage, I see wel, sayd he, that the duc hath a good 32
swerd & wel trenchant & cuttynge / But I wote neuer yf he coude
smyte so grete a strook with another swerd. The valyaunt duc
demanded what he sayde. And whan he knewe, he began to
smyle a lytil / And after sayd, that he shold deluyer to hym his 36
owen swerd. The turke dyde so. the duc thone smote therwith
another Camel, In suche wys that he made the heale to ffe of moche
lyghtlyer than of the other / thonne merueylled ouermoche the turk,
And sayde that it was more by the strengthe of the Arme than by 10
the bounte of the swer^k. he had wel preuyd that it was trewe that was sayd of the Duc in his Countreye. Thenne he gat to the 

duc many fayr Jewellys of gold and of ryche stones, and moche of 

4 accquynted with hym. And after returned home in to his countre. 

The valyaunt duc cam vnto Iherusalem with alle his proye & the 

trusses & fawdelys of his gwyn, which wer so grete that all the men 

of his companye were ryche. In that moneth of Iuyll the valyaunt 

8 duc godefroy whiche was gouernour of the Royanne of Iherusalem 

had a maladye and sekenes moch grete / Alle the physicians of the 

contre were sente for. They dyde alle that in them was possible / 

But alle anaylled not, for the payne encresyd alway more. After 

12 this he sente for men of relygyon, as prelates / curates & other good 

& demoute men, for to hauue counseyll of them for the helthe of his 

sowe / he was moche wel confessyd & very repentaunt with 

grete wepynges / And in his right mynde with grete denocion 1 

16 departed out of this world / Certaynye we ought to thynke that the 

sowe was brought vp with angelis to fore the face of Ihesu crist. 

he dyde the xij day of Iuyll the yeve of thyncarnacion 2 of oure 

lord .M / i / C / he was entiered & buryed in the chirche of the 

20 holy sepulcre under the place of the mount of Caluarye / where our 

lord was put on the crosse / That place is kept moche honestly for 

to entere and burye the kynges vnto this day. 

Thus endeth this book Intitled the laste siege and conquest of 

24 Iherusalem, with many other historyes therin comprysed / Fyrst of 

Eracles / and of the meseases of the cristen men in the holy londe / 

And of their releef & conquest of Iherusalem / and how Godeffroy 

of boylene was first kyang of the latyns in that roymame & of his 

28 deth, translated & reduced out of ffreusshe 3 in to englysshe 4 by me 

simple persone Wylliam Caxton to thende that every cristen man 

may be the better encouraged tenterprise warre for the defense of 

Cristendom, and to recover the sayd Cyte of Iherusalem in whiche 

32 oure blessyd saunour Ihesu Criste suffered deth for al mankynde, 

and roose fro deth to lyf / And fro the same holy londe ascended in 

to heuen. And also that Cristen peple one vuyed in a veray peas / 

myght empryse to goo theder in pylgrenmage with strong honde for 

36 to expelle the sarasyns and turkes out of the same that our lord 

myght be ther scruayd & worshipped of his chosen cristen peple in 

that holy & blessyd londe in which he was Incarnate, and blissyd 

1 Orig. denocion. 2 Orig. thyncarnacion. 3 Orig. ffreusshe.
it with the presence of his blessyd body whyles he was here in erthe emonge\(^1\) vs / by whiche conquest we myght deserue after this present short and transitorye lyf, the celestial lyf to dwelle in heuen eternally in ioye without ende, Amen / Which book I presente vnto 4 the mooste Cristen kynge, kynge Edward the fourth, humbly besechyng his hyenes to take no displeysyr at me so presumyng, whiche book\(^2\) I began in marche, the xij daye, and fynysshyd the vij day of Iuyn / the yere of our lord .M.CCCC.lxxxj, & the xxj 8 yere of the regne of our sayd sauerayn lord kyng Edward the fourth, & in this maner sette in forme & enprynted the xx day of nouembre the yere a forsayd in thabbay of westmester, by the sayd wyliam Caxton.

\(^1\) *Orig.* emonge. \(^2\) *Orig.* boook.
NOTES.

Note 1, p. 4. This Edward was Edward IV., who died April 9th, 1483.

Note 2, p. 5. "My lord Prynce and my lord Hychar, duc of yorke and norfolke," mentioned here by Caxton, are the two young princes who were so cruelly murdered in the Tower by Richard III. in 1483.

Note 3, p. 19. William here gives the story of the capture of the Cross as believed in his time, and still received by the Catholic Church; Chosroes' trophy, however, was not the whole of the Cross, as only part of it was left in Jerusalem by the Empress Helena, at the time of its discovery. The rest was sent to Constantinople, when it was again divided, one half being inserted by Constantine in the head of a statue of himself, while the other half was sent to Rome and deposited in the church Santa Croce, in Gerusalemme, which received its name from the sacred relic. In 614, Chosroes carried off the piece that had been left in Jerusalem to his capital, Ctesiphon; fourteen years afterwards, in 628, Heraclius brought it back. The feast of the Elevation of the Cross still commemorates the day of its restoration.

Note 4, p. 19. The Cosdroe of William of Tyre is Chosroes, or Khosru II., called Parriz the Conqueror, who ascended the throne in 590, in the midst of a civil war, and was assisted in maintaining his position by Mauritius, Emperor of Rome. When Phocas killed Mauritius in 602, and seized the imperial power, Chosroes decided to avenge his ally, and attacked Phocas, taking Jerusalem in 614. Heraclius, who succeeded Phocas as emperor, invaded Persia in return, and conquered Chosroes, who was killed soon after, on the 29th of Feb., 628, but by the hand of his own son. William's authority for his version of the whole story was the Arabian Said Ibn Baktrik.

Note 5, p. 20. William refers here without doubt to Zacharias, patriarch of Constantinople, who was at this time taken prisoner, and carried into Persia by Chosroes. Theophanes of Byzantium tells us in his Chronographia, that this Zacharias was a contemporary of St. John of Alexandria, called Eleemosynarius,—the St. John Elymont from which the church in Jerusalem was named. According to Theophanes, Zacharias himself brought back the Cross from his captivity, and died soon after. According to others, Modestus, the successor of Zacharias, was patriarch when the Cross was reinstated. The Catalogue of Nicephorus states that Zacharias was bishop (or patriarch) from 609 to 631, which would give him three years after his return from captivity in 628.

Note 6, p. 22. This is the great and famous hero of the Arabian Nights of our childhood, Haroun al Raschid, or Ressit. His name is more properly Harun er Rashid, Aaron the Orthodor. He was the fifth of the Abasside Caliphs of Bagdad, was born at Ray, Feb. 15th, 766, and died in 808. He was the most accomplished, eloquent, and generous of all Mohammedan princes. Ascending the throne at the age of twenty-two, he soon ruled the greater part of the Eastern world. The
account of his relations with Charlemagne has, however, no trustworthy historical basis.

Note 7, p. 24. Hyart, the Idraut of Tasso's *Jerusalem Delivered*, a prince of Damascus, and uncle of Armida, whom Tasso sends to the camp of the Christians to seduce their chiefs.

Note 8, p. 36. According to Paulin Paris, the first church of St. Mary de la Latyne was constructed between 1014 and 1023, by some Amalfians, permission having been granted them by the Sultan of Egypt. It was built near the church of the Holy Sepulchre, in the street of the Pammiers, and was called *Latyne*, because the Latin instead of the Greek rites were used: a monastery was added to it to receive the pilgrims, and a hospital for the sick. Godfrey of Bouillon and others gave it large donations. This was the origin of the Knights Hospitallers of the order of St. John of Jerusalem, called later Knights of Rhodes and Malta.

Note 10, p. 37. For this conversation between Peter and Simeon there is no historical authority. It is not found in any of the known sources, and seems to have been introduced by William for rhetorical effect.

Note 11, p. 40. This Gilbert (who is known in history as the Anti-Pope) held the See from 1080 to 1101, under the title of Clement III., but has never been numbered among the legitimate popes.

Note 12, p. 47. This *Guaultier without knowlche* is called in English Walter the Penniless, his French title being not *Guaultier sans Seroir*, which Caxton translates *Guaultier without knowlche*, but *Guaultier sans Avoir*. F. Paris says that, far from being a term of reproach, the title *Sans Avoir* was often applied to sons of noblemen to distinguish them from their older and wealthier brothers: Albert of Aix calls him *Waltners cognomento Zanarcher*; Tudebodas, *Guilterius sine habere*; Foucher of Chartres, *Guilterius sine prenuncia*; Foulques d'Anjou, *Guilterius sine Acoro*; and William of Tyre, *Waltniers sine Habere*. The *Dictionnaire des Croisades*, Migne, tome 18, says that his true name was Gautier de Perejo, that he was a nephew of Gautier de Perejo, who died en route for the Holy Land in Bulgaria. Gautier sans Avoir succeeded his uncle in command of 15,000 men, who with eight knights formed the advance guard of Peter the Hermit. Gautier was killed in 1097, during the siege of Nicea.

Note 13, p. 54. These speeches of the Grecian ambassador to Peter are quoted almost verbatim by William from Albert of Aix.

Note 14, p. 56. Soliman, son of Kuntul Misch, and a direct descendant of Seljuk, passed into Asia Minor in 1074, at the head of an army of Turks, carrying his conquests as far as Nicea. His eldest son, Kilidge Arslan, called also *Soliman the Younger*, and *David*, is the *Solymun* here mentioned. William of Tyre makes him a nephew of the Soudan of Persia, and confounds the father and son.

Note 15, p. 62. There was at this time a universal uprising against the Jews, especially in Germany, due, without doubt, to the general state of exaltation. At Spiers, Worms, and Treves, as well as at Cologne and Mayence, there were terrible massacres, at least a thousand being slain in Mayence alone. In England the feeling was also very bitter against them, and notwithstanding Richard's efforts to protect them, large numbers were slain in Lincoln, Stamford, and Lynn, and also in York after Richard's departure.

Note 16, p. 79. Caxton's *Entyses* is a corruption for Eutyches, founder of the sect of the Eutychians, presbyter and archimandrite at Constantinople. He affirmed that after the union of the two natures, human and Divine, Christ had only one nature, that of the Incarnate Word, and that therefore His human body was essentially different from other human bodies. At the Council of Chalcedon, in 451, this theory was declared heretical, and it was affirmed that two natures were united in Christ, but without any alteration, absorption, or confusion. Eutyches died in exile.

Note 17, p. 79. Discretus is a corruption or mistranslation for Dioscurns,
bishop of Alexandria, from 444 to 454. He also was condemned for heresy at the Chalcedon Council.

Note 18, p. 155. Bethpheth is known in Oriental history as Alp Arslan, Sultan of Persia, born in 1050. He was celebrated for his justice, his courage, and his generosity. His features were noble and fine, and his character gentle and good. His glory and power were so great that he is said to have had at one time 1,200 subject princes around his throne.

Note 19, p. 115. Without doubt Caius Julius Solinus, a Latin historian and grammarian of the third or fourth century, author of a book called Collectanea Rerum Memorabilliorum, a collection of the memorable things to be found in different countries. His work is divided into seventy chapters. The best ancient edition is that of Salmatius, the best modern, that of Mommsen, Berlin, 1864. He lived after the time of Pliny, and copied him so closely that he is often called Pliny's ape.

Note 20, p. 122. Guinevers is a corruption of Guinemers, as can be seen from the Latin form of the word, Guinemerus.

Note 21, p. 124. William has made a mistake in his statement in respect to Rages. This is not the Rages where Tobias went for the money of Gabael, as that city is in Persia, five miles south-east of Teheran.

Note 22, p. 125. The name of this Greek prince, who ruled Edessa, was Theodore. It is given thus in the history of Matthew of Edessa.

Note 23, p. 148. Latyns, a corruption for Tatius or Estatin, called Tatius the Noseless. He was a prefect of the palace of the emperor of Constantinople; Anna Comnenus calls him Tatikios, and says that he was a Saracen by birth. He is called Tatice d'Espasé in the Chanson d'Antioche.

Note 24, p. 152. When the Crusaders arrived in Asia Minor, the situation of the Mohammedans was exceedingly favourable for the accomplishment of their purpose; all was confusion, and civil conflicts prevailed everywhere; the power of the Seljuks was greatly broken, several pretenders were quarrelling for the Sultan's throne, and the emirs or governors of provinces, having made themselves independent, were waging war with each other. Several subject Christian princes—Armenians—had risen in arms in Taurus, and on the banks of the Euphrates in Mesopotamia. On the south, the Caliph of Egypt had just commenced a general war against the Seljuks, and was advancing towards Palestine. The Emir of Nicea was fighting against the Prince of Mitiene; the Emir of Aleppo was besieging his neighbours of Damascus and Emessa; and the Emirs of Sebasta and Mosul were engaged in war with the Armenian leaders, who were awaiting the arrival of the Crusaders with great impatience. For a further account of the situation, see von Sybel's Geschichte des Ersten Kreuzzuges.

Note 25, p. 167. Steven paid dearly for this desert on of the Holy Cause; and although he arrived safely in France, was so reproached and condemned by both his subjects and his wife, that he was forced in order to satisfy public opinion, and to retrieve his character, to return to the Holy Land and fulfil his vows. He shared the misfortunes and perils of the Lombard, German, and French pilgrims, who were led by the Archbishop of Milan, the Duke of Bavaria, and the Duke of Bourgogne. Arriving safely in Antioch, he was received by Tancred, and went on to Palestine, where he was killed in 1102 at the battle of Ramba. William, in recounting his death, observes that God had permitted him by a glorious death to atone for his previous sin and cowardice.

Note 26, p. 189. Some of the most influential men departed in this way, by night; among those that are not given by name were Lambert le Panvre, son of Conon of Montague, and Godfrey's own nephew, Guillaume de Grantesnil, Aubrey his brother, Guillaume Chantepier, and Guy Trosselle. They were called hereafter the rope-runners, or funambuli, in derision, and were regarded as most ignominious cowards and sinners: William refused to name them, because they were blotted out of the Lamb's Book of Life for ever.
Note 27. p. 190. Guy Crozauix, a corruption of Guy Trosseaulx, or Guy Trosselle.

Note 28, p. 201. William follows Raymond of Agiles in his story of the finding of the lance, who tells of infinite signs and wonders from heaven. As usual, William omits the greater part of these, and speaks very cautiously of the whole matter: he evidently is not a great believer in miracles. All of the different historians mention this miracle. Paulin Paris, in a note to his edition of William of Tyre, speaks of an early tradition that the lance with which St. Mercury pierced Julian the Apostate was preserved in the crypt of this church of St. Peter.

Note 29, p. 202. This man, who accompanied Peter the Hermit to Kerbogha, is called in French Herluin. He can speak Turkish, and Tadebodus calls him Drogonandus. Albert of Aix does not mention him, because he wishes Peter to have all the honour of the embassy.

Note 30. p. 211. This is not supposed to have been the real Greek fire, as used in ancient times in the Levant. William says, "Et ignem, solito excutientes artificio, subjiciunt in stipulam," they simply set fire to the bundles of hay, and made a dense smoke.

Note 31. p. 219. Monsieur Littré, in his dictionary, accepts this origin of the word hasard. It did not come, however, from William of Tyre, but is an interpolation of some French translator, who put in "Sachiez que là fut trouvé et de là vint le jeu des dez qui einsiit a non."

Note 32. p. 223. This Cham, or Cupim, as other French editions give it, is our Ham; Chanaan is naturally his son Cunaan, and Aracheus is the son of Canaan, who is called in our English Bible the Arkite. The Latin version of William of Tyre states that he was the seventh son, septimus filiorum Chanaan.

Note 33. pp. 238, 280. There seems to have been a difference of opinion as to this Arnold of Rhohes or Roches. William of Tyre dislikes him, and loses no opportunity of speaking slightingly of him, in this agreeing with Raymond d'Agiles and l'Abbé Guibert; for a rehabilitation of his character, see Description des Tombeaux de Godefroid de Bouillon, etc., by the Baron de Hody, Bruxelles. 1855.

Note 34. p. 281. Mistranslation by Caxton, which is very curious. The French reads, "Ainsi demandais des peintures et des verrières, aux clers et aux provoirs, Mont veuls voluntiers les estoires, et les vis de saiz et trop entendoit." This last sentence is not in the original Latin, but was interpolated by some French translator. As can be easily seen, it was the paintings and the stained windows, not the painters and glaciers, that he desired, and he sat a long time listening to the stories and lives of the saints. Paulin Paris remarks that this passage proves the early use of stained glass.
### VOCABULARY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abandoned (himself), v. pret., p. 102, 109, exposed himself</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abassheh, p. 129; <em>abasshyd</em>, p. 55; O.F. <em>ébat[th]isser</em>, extended from stem of Fr. <em>ébatir</em>, confused, disconcerted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abet, adv., p. 185; A.S. <em>abutan</em>, round about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abode. See Abide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aboune, adj., p. 286; O.F. <em>aunborne</em>, <em>alborne</em>, whitish yellow, auburn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abyden, v. int., p. 195, remained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abye, v. t. pret., p. 274, <em>aboughte</em>; A.S. <em>âbyegan</em>, to pay the penalty of, to atone for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abyliments, p. 183. See Habylliments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abyte, n., p. 27; O.F. <em>habit</em>, external dress, the costume appropriated for a particular use or vocation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accompte, v., p. 291; O.F. <em>acontier</em>, to reckon as, to hold to be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accorded to, v., p. 120; O.F. <em>accorder</em>, to be reconciled to or with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Achyeuyd, v., p. 2, achinged, p. 197; O.F. <em>achecer</em>, to accomplish, to achieve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acounted, v., p. 197; O.F. <em>acontier</em>, to relate, to narrate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acowarded, v., p. 64; O.F. <em>couardier</em>, <em>coardier</em>, to make afraid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acqueynted hymn with, v., p. 123, O.F. <em>s'acquitier de</em>, to make oneself acquainted with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adcertayned, pp., p. 140; O.F. <em>acertain</em> from <em>â</em> + certain, to make certain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addressemnt, n., p. 44; O.F. <em>advenue</em>ment, according to Cotgrave, a directing or guiding in the nearest course</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admonished, p. 43, admonished</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admyral, n., p. 152; O.F. <em>amiral</em>, <em>amiral</em>, originally from the Ar. <em>Emir</em>, an Emir or prince under the Sultan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adommaged, v., p. 40; O.F. <em>à domayer</em>, <em>domayer</em>, damaged, injured</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addressyd, p. 123, 259; O.F. <em>adrecier</em>, set up, directed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adnowe, v., p. 105; O.F. <em>avonner</em>, acknowledge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aefliblyshe, p. 219; O.F. <em>afeblir</em>, to enfeeble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affectuously, adv., p. 219; F. <em>affectueux</em>, affectionately</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affraye, n., p. 44, 57, disturbance, broil, fear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affrayed, v. t., p. 293; O.F. <em>afraier</em>, <em>afraier</em>, <em>esfraier</em>, etc., frightened, terrified</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affiance, p. 131, trust, confidence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affye, p. 214; O.F. <em>afier</em>, to trust, to confide in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afiirst, adj., p. 51, superlative of after, the last, the hindmost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aître, p. 25; O.F. <em>aître</em>, churchyard porch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alalonge, adv., p. 3, exactly, truly, at length</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alledge, v. tr., p. 147, 230, etc.; O.F. <em>alleyer</em>, <em>alegier</em>, to lighten, mitigate, allay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almesse, n., p. 35, 252; A.S. <em>aebmesse</em>, <em>aebmyse</em>, alms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alowed, v., p. 55; F. <em>alouer</em>, praised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alyed, p. 222; O.F. <em>alier</em>, united, allied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ameuyd, v., p. 197, moved, influenced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amitye, n., p. 225; F. <em>amitié</em>, friendship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anguysshously, adv., p. 58; O.F. <em>angoisseux</em>, <em>angoisses</em>, fiercely, strenuously</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annoyes, n., p. 113; O.F. <em>anoi</em>, ennui, discomfort, vexation, trouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trouned, p. 122; O.F. <em>adorner</em>, adorned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Apparaylement, n., p. 46; F. apparaîlement, equipments
Appayered, v. pret., p. 282; O.F. empirier, injured, spoilt
Appert, adj., p. 82; O.F. appart, capable
Apperte, adj., p. 90; open, present
Appertenances, n., p. 275; O.F. appartenance, appurtenances
Appert-yned, v. pret., p. 40; Fr. appartenance, appertained
Appertyly, adv., p. 284, plainly, openly
Appesse, v. tr., p. 61; O.F. apaisier, to appease
Approchement, n., p. 155, from v. approach; O.F. approcher, approach
Araged, p. 112; O.F. rageur, rager, mad
Arrayed, pp., p. 281; O.F. arayer, ascribed, ascribed
Armures, n., p. 46; O.F. armure, armor
Arrayed, v., p. 46; O.F. arayer, arayer, to array, arrange, or dispose in order
Arreche, v., p. 75; A.S. aréçan. Cf. Mod. Ger. erreichen = to attain, get at, to strike
Arrived, pp., p. 261; arriver, landed (the word has here its primitive meaning)
Asendre, adv., p. 30; A.S. on sundran, asunder
Aspre, adj.; O.F. aspre, severe, cruel
Assaylles, n., p. 141; O.F. assailler, assaults
Assiégé, v. pret., p. 19; O.F. asségier, besieged
Astonied, pp., p. 288, either from A.S. astun, or from O.F. estoner, estoner, estonnér, probably of A.S. origin, stunned
Aswage, v., p. 54; O.F. asmoyer, aswager, assuage
Attemporat, adj., p. 116, moderate
Atteyne, v., p. 243; O.F. attaindre, attain, reach, strike
Attyesed, v. pret., p. 117; O.F. atisier, urged on, instigated
Atysement, n., p. 121, instigation, enticement
Aueded, v. trans. pret., p. 119, 180; O.F. averer, lowered
Autors, n., p. 135; O.F. autor
Anne, adj., p. 305, own
Anlter, p. 253, antlres, p. 25; O.F. alterer, alterer, altar
Aynised, p. 102; O.F. ariser, to notice, observe

Anowe, n., p. 149, vow
Avowed, p. 126. See Aduowe
Avoyle, v., p. 271, to quit. For derivation see Voyelle
Awbes, n., p. 209, abs, a white linen vestment, and also a close-fitting vestment worn by officiants at mass, of black or other colour.—Cot. See the Lay Folks' Mass Book, p. 167
Ayerye, p. 253, airy

Bandon, n., p. 165; to have bandon = to have full and free permission
Barat, n., p. 236; Fr. barat, origin uncertain; trickery, deceit
Barayn, adj., p. 116; O.F. barain, bra, bain, breaowing, sterile
Barbicane, n., p. 156; Barbycam, n., p. 251; O.F. barbicane, supposed to be of Arabian or Persian origin, introduced into Europe by the Crusaders; cf. Barbecue, a casement or hole in a parapet or wall to shoot out from; some think it also a sentry scout-house or hole. See Cotgrave, Ar. Pers. babkanah
Barrells, n., p. 119; O.F. baril, barrels
Bataylles, n., p. 56, 138, etc.; O.F. bataille, from battre, batture, bataillons
Bayliage, n., p. 125, a bailiwick
Bayly, n., p. 24, 125, etc.; O.F. baili, earlier bailif, a derivative of bail, a bailiff
Beestes, n., p. 48; beestys, p. 48; O.F. beste, beste, beasts
Befyrlie, v., p. 20; A.S. befreallan, befel
Behouned, p. 110, pret. of behoore; A.S. behoefen, behooved
Behouf, adj., p. 44, needful, fit
Berde, n., p. 36; A.S. berd, beard
Besant, n., p. 35, 165; O.F. besant, M.L. Bezantins, from Byzantium, a gold coin issued by the Emperors of Constantinople, in the Middle Ages
Besy, adj., p. 153; A.S. bysig busy
Besynges, n., p. 162, busy and ness, business
Bette, v., p. 47; A.S. bétan, beat
Beulles, pl. of beef, p. 35; O.F. boeuf, beef, beet, beeves
Bibalne, p. 80, behalf
Bobanne, n., p. 27; O.F. bobanne; cf. M.L. bombiens, from L. bombus, boasting, pride
Bote, v., pret., p. 113; A.S. bitan = Goth. bitan, to bite
Bowe turquoys, n., p. 102, a Turkish bow
Brede, n., p. 135; A.S. bread, breadth
Breude, v. pret., p. 51; A.S. baerman; pret. baernde, burnt
Brent, v., p. 20. See Brent
Brokes, n., p. 258; A.S. broc, brooks
Bruyt, n., p. 138; O.F. bruit, report, rumor, noise
Busishment, n., p. 131, abbreviation for ambushment; O.F. embuschestment, ambush
Busynes, n., p. 53, 108, etc.; O.F. busine, business, trumpets
Bycan, v. pret., p. 124; A.S. becumnen = Goth. bikwiman, became
Bye, v., p. 61; A.S. bygjan, pret. bohte = Goth. bygjan, awoke for
Bygone, v. pret., p. 53; A.S. beginnen; pret. begun, begin
Byheded, pp., p. 52; A.S. behajfian, behed
Bylve, p. 38; A.S. be + liegian, believe
Byse, n., p. 124; F. bise, North-east or North
Bytvone, prep., p. 121; A.S. beteccon, between
Byyoude, p. 46; A.S. begeundan, beyond
Caable, n., p. 267; F. chauble, L.L. cadabula, quadabliam, Gk. καδαμωλη, a machine of war for throwing stones and demolishing walls
Caityfnes, n., p. 37; O.F. caityf, chafet + nes; wretchedness, misery
Canellys, n., p. 273; F. canal, canals
Carriage, p. 51, earrayge, p. 52, n.; O.F. carriage, carriage, the act of carrying, also that which is carried, the burden
Castelles, n., p. 2, castellys, p. 99; O.F. chasdel, a rolling gallery, flanked with towers for attacking a fortified place, called sometimes a chat, castel
Cautele, n., p. 186; O.F. cautelle, caution, subtlety, cunning, fraud
Cendres, n., p. 279; O.F. cendre, cinders, ashes
Chass, v. pret., p. 2; A.S. ccosan, pret. ecis = Goth. ecusan, to choose
Chass, n., p. 64; A.S. chace, cace, v. sub. chase
Chalyces, n., p. 36; O.F. chalice, calice, calix, chalice
Champayns, n., p. 212; O.F. champagne, plain, field
Chamones, n., p. 290; O.F. canone, chanoine, chanoine, canons or prebendaries
Charged, v. pret., p. 213; O.F. cartier, carried, loaded
Charyotte, n., p. 33; O.F. chariot, dim. of char, a two-wheeled waggon
Chattes, n., p. 257; O.F. chat, a frame of heavy timber, with projecting pins or teeth, hoisted upon battlements to be dropped on assailants
Chees, p. 45, pret. of choose
Chere, n., p. 218; O.F. chev, chiere, cheer
Chenysshe, v., p. 151; O.F. chevir, to accomplish, get, provide
Chiere, n., p. 276. See Chere
Childed, v., p. 111; A.S. cildian, gave birth to
Children, n., p. 46; A.S. cild, children
Choos, v., p. 131, pret. of choose
Chyleded, v., p. 246. See Chiled
Cirurgens, n., p. 114; O.F. cirurgien, serurgien, surgeons
Claymeth, v., p. 134; O.F. claimer, cleimer, claimer, call or name
Closure, n., p. 135; O.F. closure, afterwards extended under influence of Lat. clausura to closure, L. clausura, enclosure
Cloysture, p. 252. See above.
Cole, vb., p. 88, to cool
Comene, v., p. 288, to talk of a weighty matter in counsel (Palsgrave), to discuss, treat of
Commysel, v., p. 21; O.F. commis, pp. of commettre, committed, perpetrated
Compleyned, vb., p. 186; O.F. complaidre, to lament, to bewail
Conduyte, v., p. 34, 181, etc.; O.F. conduit, pp. of conduire, to conduct
Conduynes, n., p. 254; O.F. conduit, conduits, tubes, canals
Conestable, n., p. 132, 236; O.F. connestable, general-in-chief of an army
Conne, v., p. 162; A.S. cann, can, pl. cannon, to be able
Contene, v., p. 31; O.F. contenir, to conduct one's self
Conteyned them, p. 37. See above
Contre, n., p. 48, contruye, p. 63, countree, p. 48; O.F. comtrière, contrée, country
Convalence, n., p. 219, convalescence
Coosteyeng, pres. part., p. 235; O.F. cosleior, to sail along the coast, to go along by the side of
Corne, n., p. 252; Fr. corne, a corner or projecting point
Corromped, pp., p. 217; O.F. corrompre, L. corrompere, corrupted
Corrouers, n., p. 154; O.F. coureor, coureur, runners, messengers
Costeyeng, p. 139. See above.
Coneniable, adj., p. 274; O.F. convenable; earlier, convenable, suitable, proper
Couine, n., p. 19, 151: O.F. corine, courine, from coevenir, manner, condition, appearance
Counterpesed, vb., p. 69; O.F. contreposer = to weigh in the balance, to consider
Courage, n., p. 178; O.F. corage, courage, heart, mind, thought, desire
Courreurs, n., p. 158. See Corrours
Crenancers, n., p. 44, creditors
Creance, n., p. 24, 152; O.F. creance, faith, confidence
Crenel, n., p. 181; O.F. crenelle, dim. of crene, an embrasure, a battlement, one of the open spaces of a battle-
mented parapet which alternate with the merlons or cops
Crenache, n., p. 102; O.F. crenace, a crack, fissure, clift
Crochette, n., p. 103; F. crochette, dim. of croc, a hook
Crose, n., p. 40; O.F. croce, crozier, a bishop's staff
Croysyng, v. sub., p. 3, the putting on of the cross
Crybice, n., p. 246; A.S. crib, cryb, a crib, a manger
Culpe, n., p. 120; O.F. culpe, contents, strife
Culuer, n., p. 219; A.S. culvere, culver, probably a corruption of Lat, columba, a dove, a pigeon; used by Spenser
Currouyr, n., p. 111; O.F. corsier, coursier, a war-horse, a runner
Custrelis, n., p. 204; O.F. costelle, a sabre with two edges
Cymetyer, n., p. 251; O.F. cemetiere, a cemetery
Damned, p. 79, damned
Danger, n., p. 192; O.F. danger, danger, difficulty, hesitation, power

Debate, n., p. 49; O.F. desbat, debat, contention, strife
Debomair, adj., p. 50; O.F. de bon air, courteous, affable
Debonairlyy, adv., p. 22, courteously
Decevalle, n., p. 81; O.F. decevalle, deception, treachery
Deuedyt, n., p. 118; O.F. deduit, diversion, sport, pastime
DefaulTe, n., p. 52; O.F. defaute, a fault, a failure
Defendled, pp., p. 24; O.F. defendre, forbidden
Defected, pp., p. 21; O.F. defeter, defeated
Defowled, pp., p. 36; O.F. defoler, trumped underfoot
Degrees, n., p. 252; O.F. degréé, steps
Deline, v., p. 201; A.S. delian, pret. dealf, pl. dalfeu, pp. delfeun, to dig, excavate
Delytable, adj., p. 118, 130; O.F. délibité, delightful, delectable
Delyuer, adj., p. 205; O.F. deliere, free, prompt, nimble
Delyueryd, pp., p. 124; O.F. deliverer, freed, delivered
Delyueryly, adv., p. 133, promptly, actively
Demayne, n., p. 106; O.F. demaine, demain, var. of domain, power, dominion
Demened, v., p. 28, 31, 37; O.F. demener, conducted, managed, treated
Demonstranccr, n., p. 246; O.F. demon-

strance, demonstration, proof
Departed, v., p. 251; O.F. departir, divided, separated
Deporte, v., p. 26; O.F. deporter, to protect, take care of
Desherited, pp., p. 43; O.F. desheriter, disinherited
Dispenses, n., p. 162; O.F. despences, expenses, expenditures
Desperpled, p. 64; O.F. desparpailler, etc. = to scatter, to disperse
Desployed, pp., p. 239; F. de + player, unfolded
Desraye, n., p. 295; O.F. deserrei, disarroi, discray, disarray, confusion
Destournerd, p. 75, probably a corruption of destourned; O.F. destourner, to hinder, avoid, turn from
Destrayt, n., p. 244; F. destreit, destroil, a narrow passage
Destrobled, v., p. 30; O.F. destourbler, var. of destourbier, troubled
Denoyr, n., p. 65; Fr. devoir, duty, or service
Deyche, n., p. 270; A.S. dic, a ditch
Dyde, p. 43, pret. of Deye
Dey, v., p. 32; M.E. dien, dyen, dyen = Goth. dian, dian, to die
Disanere, v., p. 189, dis + anchor; A.S. ancor, to weigh anchor
Discarged, v., p. 147; O.F. descharger, deschierger, discarricare, discharged, fired
Disconueniencies, n., p. 52; O.F. desconueniencies, inconveniences, discomforts
Discoveryd, pp., p. 253; O.F. descouvrir, uncovered
Displayd, v., p. 60; O.F. desplaisier, displeased
Disponviyed, adj., p. 308; O.F. depony, needly, deprived of
Dispoayles, n., p. 135; O.F. despoilles, spoils
Distoubylyng, n., p. 48. See Distrobyld
Dolorous, adj., p. 277; O.F. doloreux, mournful, dismal
Dommage, n., p. 26; O.F. damage, dommage, damage, harm
Domyned, v., p. 2; O.F. dominer, ruled, controlled
Dongen, n., p. 251; O.F. donjon, the inner tower, keep, or stronghold of a castle
Doubted, v., p. 108; O.F. donter, feared
Doughtres, n., p. 25; A.S. dohtor, daughters
Drad, adj., p. 5, 124; A.S. draedan (only in comp.), dreaded
Dressed, v., p. 227; O.F. deyser, dreyer, set up, arranged, prepared for action
Droef, v., p. 48, pret. of drive; A.S. drifan = Goth. driean, drove
Droecardys, n., p. 150; drunk + ard, drunkards
Droghtes, n., p. 301; O.F. droit, rights
Duchemen, n., p. 51; Dutchmen, i.e. Germans
Duellid, v., p. 21, pp. of dwell (A.S. dwellan, dwelt)
Dychte, v., p. 114; A.S. dihtan, pret. to dixte, to dress, to clean
Dylure, v., p. 39. See Dylure
Dynnyned, v., p. 291; O.F. diminuer, to diminish
Eerving, v., p. 29. See Ere
Effrayed, v., p. 113, 140; O.F. effraye, frightened

Egally, adj., p. 144; F. égal, equally
Eight, adj., p. 47, eighth
Elis, n., p. 93, eels?
Ellys, adv., p. 109; A.S. elles = Goth. altis = L. alius, else
Embusshed, v., p. 125; O.F. embuscher, embuscher, embusier, to place in ambush
Embusshement, n., p. 125, an ambushment
Empessshement, n., p. 89; O.F. empechement = hindrance
Empyred, v., p. 42; O.F. empirier, to injure, damage
Empyrese, v., p. 1, 21; F. empris, pp. of emprendre, to undertake
Enclassed, v., p. 121; O.F. enclacier, enclasser, exacquier, chased
Endenoyre, v., p. 1, 4; O.F. en + deycr, devoir, to endeavor
Enducte, adj., p. 286; probably a synonym for accustomed. ? trained
Endure, v.; O.F. endurer, to persist
Enforced, v., p. 249; O.F. enforcer, enforcer, violated, ravished
Enforced, v., p. 134; same origin as above; strengthened
Enforced them, v. ref., p. 25, 98; same origin as above; to encourage one's self, to put forth one's greatest exertion
Enhabited with, adj., p. 130; O.F. inhabiter, inhabited by
Enhaundered, v., p. 22; O.F. enhaunder, enhaunder, enhaunder
Ennoyed, v., p. 125, anoy + ed, O.F. anoi, enoi, enoi, troubled, vexed
Empayred, v., p. 158. See Empeyred
Empeyshe, v., p. 107; O.F. empecher, to hinder
Entente, n., pp. 19, 93; O.F. entente, attention, heed, intention
Entended, v., p. 52, etc.; O.F. entendre, to be busy, attend to, occupy one's self with
Entenfily, adv., p. 21, 137, diligently
Entermend of, v., p. 53; O.F. entremettre, to concern one's self with, to have to do with
Enticed, v., p. 20; O.F. entiere, entier, en + teche, persuaded, enticed
Entierly, adv., p. 105, entier + ly; O.F. entier, entire, whole
Entreated, v., p. 22; O.F. entraiter, entraier, to treat, to behave towards
Vocabulary.

Erretvement, loc. adv., p. 83; O.F. entre-
deu, of two minds, undecided
Entreprysed, v., p. 44; from entrepris,
pp. of F. entreprendre, undertook
Entretiened, v., p. 22; Fr. entretienir,
supported, taken care of
Emmyronned, v., p. 47: O.F. environer,
environer, en + riron, surrounded
Entysed, v., p. 62. See Enticed
Eraible, adj., p. 135; O.F. arable, L.
arabitis, prob. confused with the M.E.
to ear, arable
Ere, v., p. 306; A.S. erian = Goth. ar-
jan = L. arare, to plow, to till
Escheve, v., p. 128; O.F. escher, es-
chier, to avoid
Eschans, n., p. 204; O.F. selave, slaves
Escencours, n., p. 120; pirates O.F.; see
Escumerie = piracy, of German origin
Esheve, v., p. 43. See Escheve
Escayed, v. int., p. 210; O.F. esmaitier,
Goth. magan, daunted, filled with
fear
Esperancee, n., p. 160; O.F. esperance,
hope
Estandart, n., p. 150; O.F. étendard,
standard-bearer
Ester, n., p. 241; A.S. cæstra, Easter
(given by Beda)
Estorements, n., p. 138; O.F. esto-
ments, soldiers' equipment, arms
Estour, n., p. 211; O.F. eslor, O.H.D.
stour, vb. shrunn, attack, contest
Entrons, adj., p. 4; O.F. heureux, curieux,
happy, lucky
Evr, n., p. 208; O.F. heur, luck
Excusacion, n., p. 66; O.F. excusation,
excuse, apology
Exploytéd, v., p. 196; O.F. exploiter,
expletier, achieved, accomplished
Exploytés, n., p. 126; O.F. exploit, ex-
pletier, achievements, performances
Eyen, n., p. 134. pl. of eye, eyes

Facions, n., p. 23; O.F. façon, fazon,
etc., fashions, manners, ways
Fait, n., p. 173; O.F. fáir, burden,
charge, weight
Faits, n., p. 273; O.F. fait, deeds
Farölliss, n.; O.F. furdel, fardian, L.
furdellus, said to be of Arabic origin,
bundles, packs
Fawcon, n., p. 289; O.F. faucon, banner
= guifamion. Falco = vexillum in
Med. Lat.

Fayned, v., p. 259; O.F. feindre, to
make a false appearance, pretend
Fayte, n., p. 62. See Faite
Feauté, n., p. 30; O.F. feauté, feante,
etc., fealty, faithfulness
Feildes, n., p. 61; A.S. field, fields
Feerd, adj., p. 204, abb. of afered; A.S.
aficran, à + ficran, frightened, afraid
Feers, adj., p. 188; fiers, 124; O.F. fers,
old nom. form of fier, fierce, bold, savage
Fel, adj., p. 40; A.S. fel, feto. Cf. O.F.
feld, O.D. fel, fierce, ruthless
Félaw, n., p. 128; lce. jélâgi, a com-
ppanion, comrade
Fealship, n., p. 44, fellowship
Felly, adv. used adjectively, p. 107;
same origin as Fel, and same meanings
Felonous, adj., p. 113; O.F. felon +
ons, wicked, malignant
Feotemen, n., p. 123, footmen
Fer, adv.; A.S. fer = Goth. færra, far
Ferde, v. pret., p. 122; A.S. faran, to
fare
Ferdfulness, n., p. 31; A.S. fær, fear
Ferre, adv., p. 33. See Fer
Feste, n., p. 278; O.F. feste, feast
Fetysed, adj., p. 259; O.F. faitis, faitice,
well made, neat, properly cut
Feunerer, n., p. 156; O.F. Ferrier,
February
Fevyter, p. 125: a misprint or corrup-
tion for fruytes = fruits
Flawe, n., p. 33; literally a flake, but
probably a corruption for fleu =
 scourge, of which it is a translation
Flowred, v., p. 3; O.F. florir, to flourish
Folyly, adv., p. 143; O.F. folie + ly,
foolishly
Fondament, n., p. 21; O.F. fondement,
fondement, foundation
Forgate, v. pret.; A.S. forgitan, pret.
forgyat, forget
Forleton, n. adj., abandoned
Fosse, n., p. 253: F. fosse, a ditch
Fourage, n., p. 55; O.F. fourage, forage
Fourashed, v., p. 204; O.F. fourbiss,
fuir, M.L. forare = A.S. forvian,
for fornian, furbion, to furnish, scour,
polish
Fourriers, n., p. 131; O.F. foriers, for-
gers, forage-merchants
Fowle, adv., p. 33; A.S. ful = Goth.
fuls, foully
Fowly, adv., p. 192. foully
Vocabulary.

Fowragyng, n., p. 48, foraging
Franchyles, n., p. 33; O.F. franchise, liberties
Fyers, adj., p. 19; O.F. fiers, fierce
Fynably, adj.; fine + able + ly; finally
Fysshe, n., p. 135; A.S. fise, pl. fisces = fish
Fyxed, v., p. 44; O.F. fixer, ficher, fichier, fixed

Gadryd, pp., p. 297; A.S. gaderian, gathered
Garuyson, n., p. 177; O.F. garnison, garrison
Garuysshed, v., p. 124; O.F. garniss, garnir, Germ. stem: fortified, garnished
Garson, n., p. 280; O.F. garson, a boy, a servant
Gaynable, adj., p. 85, tillable
Gaynsay, v., p. 62; by abbreviation, from A.S. geatn seten, to speak against
Geer, n., p. 234; A.S. geare, gear, property
Ghostes, n., p. 119; A.S. gest, gest, etc. = Goth. gasts, guests
Glaves, n., p. 57, 273; O.F. glave, glawe, glaves, a weapon made of a cutting blade at the end of a stick or staff
Gobet, n., p. 191; O.F. gobet, gobet, dim. of gob, a morsel, lump
Gonfanon, n., p. 289; O.F. gonfanon, L. gonfano(n) = A.S. guthfana, goulfalon or banner
Gossib, n., p. 20; A.S. godsib, sponsor
Gree, n., p. 277; O.F. gre, gryi, etc., to accept in gree, means to accept kindly, or with favour
Greues, n., p. 29; O.F. grief, gref, gwen, etc., afflictions, grievances
Guarysthyd, v., p. 167; O.F. quarris, guarir, cured, healed
Guerdon, n., p. 182; O.F. guerdon, M.L. reiderdomum, Gm. weder lorum, a reward
Gybet, n., p. 25; O.F. gibet, a gibbet, a gallows
Habylled, adj., p. 19; O.F. habilter, clad, dressed
Habyllemens, n., p. 104; O.F. habillement, clothes, habiliments
Haches, n., p. 307; O.F. hache, axes
Happed, v. pret., p. 141, 198; Ice. happ, happened

Harberowed, v., p. 249, same origin as Herberons = O.F. herbergier, to give shelter to, to harbor
Hardynges, n., p. 63; hardy + ness; O.F. hardi, O.H.G. harti, herti, hardiness
Harnevs, n., p. 137, 138; O.F. harmas, hermes; of Celtic origin; harness, armour
Hanbergyers, n., p. 168; makers of hanberks
Hanberks, n., p. 204; O.F. hambere, halbere, Gm. haldbere, halsberge, hanberk
Hanene, n., p. 231; A.S. haefen, a haven, harbour
Havoyr, n.; Fr. acoir, property, riches
Heelpe, v. pret.; A.S. helpan, pret. healpe, pl. holpon, to help
Heer, n., p. 36; A.S. har, hair
Heeryng, pres. part., p. 4; A.S. hiéran, heran, hyran = Goth. hausjan, bearing
Henge, v. pret., p. 211; A.S. hongian, hung
Herberons, n., p. 207, O.F. G. or Scand. origin: H.G. heri + O.H.G. bergan, a camp, lodging
Heremyte, n., p. 3; L.L. eremita, hermit
Hethenes, n., p. 23; A.S. harthen = Goth. haithenis, pagans, heathen
Hether, adv., p. 60; A.S. hider, sometimes; hidres = Goth. hidere, hither
Hewing, pres. part., p. 147; A.S. heedaran, pret. heor = Goth. heargrian, to cut, to inflict cutting blows
Heyer, n., p. 302; O.F. heir, eir, eir, an heir
Heygtche, n., p. 289; A.S. heothu = Goth. hauhthu, height
Heyr, n., p. 126. See Heyer
Holpen, pp., p. 106. See Heelpe
Hool, adj., p. 125, whole
Hourdeys, n., p. 140; O.F. hordels, from the Gm.; cf. Goth. hordals, M.H.G. horden, hort, palisades of wood placed on the tops of towers
Hu, n., p. 268; O.F. hu, hui, a cry or shout
Hylles (in), p. 194; A.S. hýdels. See Wiclif, Deut. xxvii., secretly

Inconvenienc, p. 231; O.F. inconvenienc, a disagreeable situation, misfortune
Indigne, adj., p. 5; O.F. indigne, unworthy
Vocabulary.

Intituled, pp., p. 18; O.F. intituler, entitled

Iourneye, n., p. 34; O.F. journée, a day's journey

Insted, v., p. 289; O.F. jonster, to joust

Instised, v. pret., p. 289; O.F. justicier, judged

Insticer, n., p. 29; O.F. justicier, a judge

Knowleche, n., p. 64: know + leche, assimilated form of leke; lecet. leíkr, leíkt = A.S. læc, knowledge

Knowleched, v., p. 123, abbreviation for acknowledged. acknowledged

Kyen, n., p. 33, pl. of cow, kine

Kynred, n., p. 29; A.S. égan + ræden, kindred

Labourable, adj., p. 112; O.F. labor + able, that can be tilled

Laadre, n., p. 272, ladder

Largesse, n., p. 22; O.F. largesse, generosity, bounty

Lasse, adj., p. 44; A.S. losse, less

Lassed, adj., p. 164; O.F. lasser, lesser, wearied, fatigued

Late, v., p. 48; A.S. læchen = Goth. lætan, to let

Launched (on), sb., p. 82; O.F. lancier, to attack

Lawe, n., p. 22; A.S. laune, religion, law

Laye, adj., p. 42; O.F. lai, lay

Laye, n., p. 141, 154; A.S. laun, lake

Laytee, n., p. 43; lay + ty; O.F. lai, laity

Layser, n., p. 37; O.F. leisir, loisir, etc., leisure

Lechereye, n., p. 32; O.F. lecherie, lecherie, M.H.G. lechen, lechery

Led, n., p. 253; A.S. leald, lead

Leep, v., p. 113; A.S. leapan = Goth. luapan, to leap

Leve, n., p. 114, partly from A.S. losian, but chiefly a var. of lesen; A.S. leisan, to lose

Lesyng, v., p. 244. See Lese, losing

Lesyynge, n., p. 236, 281; A.S. lesynging = lecel. lesanong, falsehood, lying

Letted, v., p. 116, 281; A.S. lethian = Goth. lethian, to strip, retard, hinder

Lener, adv.; A.S. léof = Goth. luhs, used in the expression "to have liefer," to prefer

Leyser, n., p. 160. See Layser

Leyzer, n., p. 5. See Layser

Lodgys, n., p. 110; O.F. logis. M.L. laulia, of Gm. origin, camp

Longed, adj., p. 53, contraction for belonged

Loos, n., p. 288; O.F. laus, los, praise, fame

Lyngage, lynage, n., p. 26, 29; O.F. lineage, family, race, stock

Lyttier, n., p. 113; O.F. litière, a litter

Lyues, n., p. 58, pl. of life; A.S. lif = Goth. leif, lives

Maculated, pp., p. 274, stained, spotted

Mahometry, n., p. 274; Mahomet + ry, Mahommedanism

Mahommyere, n., p. 157, 162; O.F. Mahomérie, a mosque

Maistres, n., p. 23; O.F. maistre, masters

Males, n., p. 51; O.F. male, malle, bags or sacks

Malle, n., p. 273; O.F. male, mail, a mall, or heavy hammer

Malles, n., p. 210, same origin as word above = blows

Malherte, n., p. 203; O.F. malheur, misfortune

Mangonmeanl, n., p. 257, O.F. mangonel, a mangonel, or engine for throwing stones

Marchante, v., p. 115; O.F. marchander, to buy and sell, to trade

Marchamtes, n., p. 39, merchants

Marche, n., p. 289; partly A.S. merc, partly from O.F. marche, frontier, border

Marched (on), v., p. 136; A.S. mearcian, to border on

Mareys, n., p. 139, 228; O.F. marais, marais, marais, a marsh

Marryd, v.; O.F. marrie, Gm. marran, to injure

Marneylles, n., p. 55; O.F. merveille, marvels, wonders

Manigre, prep., p. 55, 117; O.F. mangre, malgre, in spite of

Maymed, v., p. 194: O.F. meching, ma-hain, to disable, main

Maytence, n., p. 61, conduct, behaviour

Medle, n., p. 53, 97; from verb medle, a hand-to-hand fight, a mêlée

Medled (with), v., p. 115; O.F. medler, mesler, to concern one's self with, to deal with

Medlyng, n., p. 49, 155; medle + ing, contention in battle, fighting
Vocabulary.

Meubles, n., p. 32; O.F. meuble, furniture, movable property
Meeable, adj., p. 5; movable
Meschief, n., p. 161; O.F. meschief, misfortune, calamity
Mescreant, n., p. 3; O.F. mescreant, infidel, unbelievers
Messease, n., p. 25, 153; O.F. mesaise, mesaise, mes + aise, discomfort, trouble
Mesfaces, n., p. 29; O.F. mesfaire, bad actions, misdeeds
Meshapped, v., p. 167; mis + happen, minus + Ice, happy, to happen ill, to go wrong
Message, n., p. 18, 163; O.F. message, messenger
Messager, n., p. 239; See Message
Mesurable, adj., p. 301; O.F. mesurable, moderate, temperate
Meyne, n., p. 136, 177; O.F. meignie, meigne, suite, members of a household
Monethe, n., p. 41, 183; A.S. moneth, monoth = Goth. monoth, month
Moo, adj., p. 52; more
Mounte, n., p. 141; O.F. monture, a mount, a saddle-horse
Mowe, vb., p. 185, to be able
Moyen, adj., p. 59; same derivation as below; literally, medium, but used here in the sense of common
Moyens, n., p. 119; O.F. moisien, meien, means
Mulettis, n., p. 122; O.F. mulet, mules
Murailles, n., p. 21; O.F. muraille, walls
Murdred, v., p. 35; A.S. myrthrian = Goth, mauthrian, killed, murdered
Murdrier, n., p. 32; same origin as above, murderer
Musardes, n., p. 203; O.F. musarde, vagabond
Musardye, n., p. 179, vagabondage
Mylenes, n., p. 51; A.S. mylen, myln = O.F. moulin, mills
Mynnysshid, v., p. 145; O.F. monsieur, monisier, to diminish
Mysauntures, n., p. 54; O.F. mesaurement, ill luck, mischance
Mysbelerne, n., p. 152; A.S. mis + belief, fa'se opinion, heresy
Myschiefes, n., p. 25; See Meschief
Mescreant, n., p. 23; See Mescreant
Natyuyte, n., p. 3; O.F. nativite, nativity

Nanyll, n., p. 253; A.S. nafle = Goth. nabulo, the navel, the middle
Ner, adv., p. 108, near
Neraught, v., pret., p. 149, neg. combined with reckon; A.S. recan, pret. rohte, not to heed, or pay attention to, or care
Nette, adj., p. 25; O.F. nel, neat
Neneus, n., p. 136; O.F. neve, nephews
Noye, v., p. 104; by aphaeresis from annoy, to damage, injure
Noyous, adj., p. 140, injurious, troublesome
Noyse, n., p. 23, 138; O.F. noise, L. nausen, disturbance, noise
Nyce, v., adv., pp. 187, 233; nice + ly; O.F. nice, L. nescius, foolishly
Nyle, n., p. 85. See note, p. 85

Obeyssant, adj., p. 2; O.F. obeissant, obedient
Occisyon, n., p. 62; O.F. occision, slaughter, the act of killing
Occinent, n., p. 55; O.F. occident, the Occident, the West
Oost, n., p. 55; O.F. host, ost, the army
Orgnyel, n., p. 20; O.F. orgoil, orguel, etc., of Tent, origin; cf. O.H.G. urgil, ur + gel, pride
Orgnylous, adj., p. 19; O.F. orgueilleur; cf. A.S. orgel, same origin as orguel, proud, haughty, ostentations
Orisons, n., p. 26; O.F. oraison, orisons, prayers
Oroysons, n., p. 269; See Orison
Ostages, n., p. 50, 127, etc.; O.F. ostage, hostages
Ottrove, v., p. 5; octroyer, to grant, to give
Ouerste, adj., p. 161, sup positive of over; A.S. ofer, the highest
Ought, v., p. 124, pret. of to owe; A.S. ëhte
Oultrages, n., p. 49, 120; O.F. outrage, outrages
Outhyme, v., p. 248, un + bynde, to loosen
Ourrages, n., p. 237; O.F. ourrage, works
Oynementis, n., p. 251; O.F. oignement, oigner, oindre, ointment, unguent
Paas, n., p. 133; O.F. pas, pace
Palfruye, n., p. 46; O.F. palefroi, a saddle-horse
Palus, n., p. 244; Lat. palus, marsh
Vocabulary.

Vocabulary.

Vocabulary.

Seke, adv., p. 193, seldom
Sensours, n., p. 32, censers
Serviage, p. 58, 277; O.F. servage, servitude
Sewed, v., p. 58; O.F. seuir, seuir, seuir, suuir, followed, chased
Sevr, adj., p. 48; O.F. seuir, sure
Sewre, n., p. 58; O.F. seurte, security
Seymously, adj., p. 274; O.F. seignourence + ly, magnificent
Shadle, v., p. 33. See Shedde
Shamely, adv., p. 120; A.S. scânemelie, shamefully
Shedde, v., p. 270; A.S. scâdan = Goth. shaved, to shed
Sewed, v., p. 201. See Shewyd, showed
Shewyd, v., p. 4, showed
Shippis, n., p. 54, 63; pl. of ship; A.S. spec = Goth. spec, ships
Sholder, n., p. 45, shoulder
Sholdre, n., p. 45. See Sholder
Shytte, v., p. 48; A.S. scytton, shut
Siewed, p. 62, 195. See Sewed, followed
Signefyamce, n., p. 270; O.F. signification, sign
Skaling ladders, n., p. 256, scaling ladders
Skorchis, n.; O.F. scorcer, bark, skin
Slec, v., p. 54; A.S. slean = Goth. shakan, to slay
Sloce, vb., p. 73, pret. of slec, slew
Smieten, v., p. 19; A.S. smiten, pret. smat, pp. smitten = Goth. sweitan, to smite
Socours, n., p. 35; O.F. suenss, secours, aid
Sodenly, adv., p. 58; O.F. soutain + ly, suddenly
Sommyers, n., p. 46, 51; O.F. sommiere, beast of burden
Sommoned, n., p. 50; O.F. sommenc, semondre, summoned
Sonde, n., p. 185; A.S. sand, sand
Sorrowful, adj., p. 42; A.S. sannel, sorrowful
Souldie, n., p. 126; O.F. souldie, pay, salary
Souldyour, n., p. 126; O.F. soldier, one who receives pay
Sooldan, n., p. 136; O.F. souldan, soulan, M.L. solutus or solutus, a Mohammedian ruler
Sowles, n., p. 200; A.S. sæwel, sæwel, etc., soul
Sowne, v., p. 53, 104; O.F. soner, suener, sound
Sowped, v., p. 255; O.F. souper, M.D. soppe, sop, supped
Soymonly, adv., p. 271; O.F. sobignourence + ly, M.L. sonia, surnin + osus; of Gr. origin, carefully
Spede, v., p. 63; A.S. spedan, to be successful
Spores, n., p. 154; A.S. spora, spur
Sprad, v., p. 18, to spread
Stage, n., p. 270; O.F. clage, a story
Stalled, v., p. 2; A.S. steallian, installed, placed, set
Stëdes, n., p. 46; A.S. stëda, steeds
Stered, v., p. 235, stirred
Steroppes, n., p. 288; A.S. stirap, stiger-up = stirrups
Stooles, n., p. 209; O.F. estole, stools, robes
Strayt, adj., p. 47, 135; O.F. estreit, estrait, narrow
Stryl, n., p. 51; O.F. estray; of Gr. origin, strife
Styd, vb., p. 262, pret. A.S. stigan, to mount, to ascend
Subget, adj., p. 20; O.F. sujet
Sued, v., p. 183. See Sewed
Suffrable, adj., p. 221; O.F. souffrable, souffrir, capable of endurance
Suffre, v., p. 29, 115; O.F. souffrir, souffrir, to suffer
Suffrete, n., p. 144; O.F. souffreté, want
Sulfyse, v., p. 30; O.F. suifis, stem from souffire, L. suffire, to succour
Suplys, n., p. 209; O.F. surplis, surplis, a surplise
Suspicion, n., p. 207, a var. of suspicion, from suspicion
Sustre, n., p. 46, sister
Swote, n., p. 111; A.S. swait, sweat
Syghes, n., p. 36, var. of sike, sik; cf. Sw. suet = Dan. sob, sigh
Syres, n., p. 60; O.F. sire, sirs
Synth, adv., p. 51, since
Taillage, n., p. 277; O.F. taillage, toll, tax, tribute
Takle, n., p. 261; M.D. L.G. taker = Sw. taker = Dan. tackel, tackle
Tappet, n., p. 184; A.S. tappe = L. tapetum, F. tapis, carpet, tapestry
Tape, n., p. 36; A.S. tapor, taper
Vocabulary.

Tapyte, n., p. 313; See Tappet
Targe, n., p. 63; O.F. targe, a shield
Taryd, v., p. 54; taryen, developed through influence of tarygen, to wait for, to delay
Tatche, n., p. 282; O.F. tache, tache; (origin uncertain), defect, vice
Tayliage, n., p. 24; See Tuillage
Tere, n., p. 127; A.S. theur, laë = Goth. tagr = O.L. lacrima, lacrima, tear
Tereitorye, n., p. 233; O.F. territoire, used by Caxton in the sense of terti
Tertre, n., p. 182; O.F. tertre, a little hill
Tetch, n., p. 281; See Tatche
Theuys, n., p. 231; A.S. theof = Goth. theubs, thief
Throte, n., p. 151, throat
Thye, n., p. 113, thigh
Tierce, adj., p. 183; O.F. tiers, hour halfway between sunrise and noon
Tofore, adv., p. 42, before
Torette, n., p. 129; O.F. torette, dim., toret, a little tower
Torett, n., p. 99; See Torette
Towres, n., p. 50; A.S. tur = O.F. tour, towers
Trauailed, v., p. 22; O.F. travailler, to work, to labour
Trauaylle, n., p. 24, labour, pain
Trayson, n., p. 61; O.F. trahison, traison, treason
Trecherye, n., p. 280; O.F. tricherie, tricher, treachery
Trewe, adj., p. 19, true
Trewes, n., p. 43, pl. of trew; same origin as above, true
Trompery, n., p. 236; O.F. tromperie, deception
Trusses, n., p. 213; O.F. trousse, a bundle, a pack
Trybs, n., p. 253; O.F. trib, tribes
Trycherie, n., p. 60. See Trecherye
Trychour, n., p. 127; O.F. trichor, traitor, cheat
Twyes, adj., p. 252, twice
Unprenable, adj., p. 196; F. un + prenable, impregnable
Utterist, adj., p. 30, superlative of A.S. ut, doublet of outerest, outermost, extremest
Valvanuee, n., p. 287; O.F. vaillance, a deed of valour
Vaward, n., p. 157, reduction of vantage, short for avant + ward, advance-guard
Veray, adj., p. 2, 169; O.F. verai, vrai, etc., true, real
Veri, adj., p. 25. See Veray
Very, adj., pp. 3, 19; See Veray
Viaige, n., p. 44; O.F. voyage, viage, etc., voyage
Vnethe, adv., p. 33; A.S. uneóthe, not easily, hardly, scarcely
Voyde, adj., p. 21; O.F. voide, vide, empty
Voyded, v., p. 20; O.F. voider, vuider, to empty
Vyeayre, n., p. 301; O.F. vicaire, vicar, substitute
Vylee, n., p. 40; O.F. vilié, insults
Vysyng, pres. part., p. 4; O.F. vissent, to examine, inspect, visit
Vytaille, n., p. 47; O.F. citaille, victualle, victual, food
Waast, n., p. 144; O.F. wast, gast, L. vaestus, confused with M.E. vaeste;
A.S. westen = M.H.G. wueste, waste
Warantise, n., p. 45; O.F. warantise, guarantise, warrant
Weder, n., p. 36, weather
Weshe, v., p. 255, to wash
Wellys, n., p. 257, wells or springs
Wende, v., p. 97. See Wene
Wene, v., p. 39; A.S. wenan, pret. wende = Goth. weniajan, to be of the opinion of, to think
Wete, v., p. 108; A.S. witan, pret. wiste = Goth. witan, to know, to become aware of
Wexe, v., p. 55, to grow, to wax
Weyed, v., p. 205; A.S. wegan = Goth. gewigan, to weigh
Whilis, adv., p. 133; abbreviation of A.S. thihwile, the while that, while
Wode, p. 36, 257; A.S. woden, supposed to be of Celtic origin, wood
Wood, adj., p. 112; A.S. wod = Goth. wods, mad, raging
Woonte, adj., p. 39, contracted from woned = Gn. gewohnt, accustomed, wont
Worship, n., p. 116, respect, worship
Wote, p. 206, pres. ind., of witen, 1st pers. rot; 2nd west; 3rd wot, know
Wretor, pp., written
Wullen, adj., p. 293; A.S. wullen, wul + en, woollen
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wysedomme, n., p. 4, wisdom</th>
<th>Ynowgh, adv., p. 34, same as Ynowe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wyst, v. pret., p. 57. See Wete</td>
<td>Ynowhe, adv., p. 19, same as Ynowe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yate, n., p. 47, gate</td>
<td>Yolden, pp. See Yeldyng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeftie, n., p. 55, gift</td>
<td>Yonen, pp., given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeldyng, pres. part., p. 275, yielding</td>
<td>Yow, pron., p. 25; A.S. čôw, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeris, n., p. 2; A.S. gedr, gêr = Goth. jêr, years</td>
<td>Yssued, v., p. 33; issue, pp. of O.F. issir, eissir, to issue, to come out, to descend from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ynowe, adv., p. 54; A.S. genôh, adv. neut. acc. of adj., enongh</td>
<td>Yu, pron.; A.S. gê, ge, ye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX OF NAMES.

Aaron Ressil, p. 22, 23, the Caliph
Haroun al Raschid, fifth Abasside
Caliph, b. 766, d. 808
Abacuc, p. 249, Hubakkuk the prophet
Abyas, p. 249, corruption for Abdiias;
Lat. Abdiaces, Fr. Abdies; the prophet
Obadiah
Abymedech, p. 248, Alimelech
Acharye, p. 20, Zacharias, patriarch of
Jerusalem, 609—631. See ‘Pat.
Gracce,’ tom. 86
Aldryan, p. 94, Adrian I., Pope from
772—795, son of Theodore, a Roman
gentleman
Alexandre, p. 94, patriarch of Constantine
ople
Alexes Conius, p. 71; Alexys, p. 236.
Alexius Comnenus = Alexius Connenus
I., Emperor of Constantinople, 1081—
1118, successor of Romanus Diogenes
Alysaundre, p. 2, Alexander the Great,
King of Macedon
Amaunc (Guillem), p. 46; Guillem de
Amameus, p. 84; Gyllem Ameneux,
p. 206; Guillaume Amanjeu d’Albret,
Gascon nobleman
Amos, p. 28, 249, Amos the prophet
Anceau, p. 136, 226, etc., Accien, prince
of Antioch, called Garsiam in the ‘Chans-
son d’Antioche.’ Tudebodus and Robert
the Monk call him Cassianus, Foncher
de Chartres, Gratianus, William of
Tyre. Alexianus; Abulfeda calls him
Baghistan, while he is known in other
Oriental historians as Akby Syran.
His title among English historians is
Baghadian
Arnold, p. 238, 300, etc., Arnoul or
Ernoul de Rohes, family tutor of
Robert of Normandy, having educated
Cecilia, Robert’s sister; a man of
great influence, but called Arnolph
Mala Corona, on account of his dis-
solute and unclerical habits. See
‘Palgrave,’ IV. p. 554.
Arracheus, p. 233, seventh son of
Canaan, the founder of the City of
Archis
Arrynus, p. 94, Arrius the heretic, sup-
posed to have been a native of
Cyrenaica, in Africa. He was ex-
communicated by the first Nicene
Council, and banished to Illyria
Arsbran (Guillaume de), p. 260
Arthur, p. 2, King of the Britons
Asche, Aske, Henri d’, p. 74, 100, etc., a
German knight; Bougars calls him
Henricus de Asca. He was buried in
Turbsell, where he died of an epi-
demic. William of Tyre says that he
was a knight celebrated by birth as
well as by bravery
Assoung, p. 137, paleographic error
for Assongar, the Sultan of Aleppo,
father of Saquin, and great-grand-
father of Noureddin. His real name
was Aesnearc Cacim Eddaullah
Aubmaile (Steven d’), p. 92, Aubmale,
p. 206. Etienne d’Aubemare, in En-
lish, “Steven of Albenarde and Holdern-
esse”; “le fils au Comte Odon,” the
‘Chanson d’Antioche’ calls him. He
was the grandson of Etienne, Count
of Champagne, and son of Odo, the
Champenois, whom his usurping uncle
Thibaut of Blois had disinherited. His
mother was Aalis of Normandy, sister
of William the Conqueror. He died
in 1126
Aumellae (Reynart d’), p. 206
Ayrene, p. 94, Irenaeus, father of the
Emperor Constantine
Aymard, p. 45, 276, etc., Adhemar de Montril, Bishop of Puy, Papal Legate among the Crusaders

Balac, or Balak, p. 129, 223, etc., Emir of Serroge, prince of the family of Ortoe, who possessed many places on the Euphrates, and reigned in Mesopotamia and Aleppo

Baladon (Potam de), p. 237, Fr. Pons de Baladon, a great friend and companion of the Count of Toulouse

Balduc, p. 225, Blanduc, p. 127, Bauduc, p. 129, a Turkish Emir, lord of Samosata

Barce (Gace de), p. 272. See Centon de Leart

Barneville (Rogyer de), p. 92, Rogier de Barneville, p. 97, etc.; according to Bongars, a gentleman of Normandy; Barneville sur Mer is a very ancient chateau in the department of La Manche. Roger de Barneville is called by Raymond d'Agiles, Miles clarissimus et rarissimus omnibus. He was killed by an arrow near Antioch

Barthelomew (Peter), p. 201, 238, etc., Pierre Barceleny, a priest of the diocese of Marseilles, finder of the Sacred lance. He was attached to the suite of Raymond St. Gilles

Basilie, p. 70, Basil II., Emperor of Greece from 976—1025

Baugnet (Raoul de), p. 46, Raoul de Baugnac. He accompanied Hugh the Great to the Holy Land, whose daughter Mahaut he married for his second wife

Bawdrey, p. 45, 77, etc., Baldwin, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, second king of Jerusalem, third son of Eustache de Boulogne and Ida. He had been destined for holy orders, and had held many prebends in the churches of Rheims, Cambrai, and Liege, but marrying Godechilda or Gaudefilda, daughter of Ralph de Soucy and Isabelle de Montfort, he cast off the sacerdotal habit. See 'Palgrave,' IV, p. 547.

Béart (Centon de), p. 46, 81. Gace de Barce p. 272. Gaston, fourth Vicomte of Béarn, called Gastus de Berdeiz by Albert d'Aix; killed in 1130 by the Moors of Spain. His blood flows in the veins of the Bourbons

Beauvais (Regnauld de), p. 111, Baunais, p. 206

Bedryers (Gaste de), p. 84, 111, 247, 272, etc.

Belphet, p. 33, 36, Alp Arslan, or Abul-fath, Sultan of Persia from 1059—1072

Beniamin, p. 253, youngest son of Jacob

Bernard, of Valence, p. 216, 226, Bishop of Tarsus, made patriarch of Antioch in 1099

Blois, Steven, Earl of Chartres and Blois, p. 91 etc. See Chartres

Boce (Godefroy), p. 285, Godefroi le Bossu, Duke of Lorraine, so called because he was hump-backed, uncle of Godfrey of Bouillon

Bolage (Godefroy of), p. 3, 64, etc., Godfrey of Bouillon, second son of Eustache of Boulogne and Ida, b. 1061, d. 1100. He was of the lineage of Charlemagne, through Mahaut de Lorraine, his grandmother

Bolage (Eustache of), p. 121, etc., Eustache de Boulogne, father of Godfrey of Bouillon

Bolage (Eustace of), p. 206, etc., brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, eldest son of the Eustache above mentioned; married after the First Crusade, Mary of Scotland, daughter of Margaret and Malcolm

Bonnemaison, p. 305. El Mustansir, Caliph of Egypt, from 1035—1095

Borg (Bawdlyn de), p. 111, 112, 206, etc., also called Bourg, Bort, Borgh, Bors, Bourgh, by Caxton; cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon, and son of Hugh, Count of Réthel, one of the seven peers of Champagne, ancestor of the house of Burgundy

Boure (Thomas de), p. 206, misreading or corruption for Thomas de Fere. Lat. Thomas de Faria. See Thomas de Fere

Broyes (Regnauld of), p. 58. Michaud conjectures that he is perhaps Renauld de Briis, one of the knights in Peter the Hermit's army. He was slain before Nicce

Burreau (Godefroy), p. 57, Godefroy Bureel d'Etampes, one of the knights in the army of Peter the Hermit
Index of Names.

Burgoin (Gilphes of), p. 117

Buynont, Prince of Tarente, p. 46, 76, 77, etc., Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum in Italy, son of Robert Guiscard, originally from Hauteville in Normandy

Candaham, p. 273, Canaan, son of Ham

Canderon (Bawdyn), p. 99, originally from Bassigny in Champagne; William of Tyre calls him nobilis et magnificus vir in armis streneus. He was killed at the siege of Nicaea

Canane (Aubery of), p. 80

Captap, p. 252, Lat. Catab, father of Omar

Caraintes (Johan), p. 27, a Greek, living in Jerusalem at the time of the First Crusade

Carpinelle or Campinelle (Wyblemart), p. 260, Gademar Carpinelle, from Languedoc, although in the suite of Godefrey

Caryn (Herman of), p. 80. According to Bongars he was a Norman nobleman, who accompanied Bohemond to the Holy Land. Palgrave (IV. 551) calls him Herman de Cogny

Caym, p. 233, Ham, second son of Noah

Chamont (Gale de), p. 111, or Giles de Chamont. This family is mentioned in 'Camden' as from Cornwall

Charlemagne, p. 3, Charlemagne the Great

Charpentier (Guyllame), p. 72, etc., William, viscounte of Milun, called the Hammerer or the Carpenter. Guibert de Nogent says of him that he pillaged his villages and burghs to get the money with which to start for the Holy Land. Robert le Moine tells us that he was of royal lineage, and related to Hugh the Great. He was called the Carpenter from his vigorous style of fighting — "Eusy comme Carpentier aloit carpentant." — 'G. de Bouillon,' l. 18,042

Charts (Ogan of), p. 80

Charts (Fonbért de), p. 224, 225

Charts, Steven, Earl of Chartres and Blois, p. 91, etc., son of Thibaud III., Count of Blois and Champagne. He was a brother-in-law of Robert of Normandy, whose sister he had married. He was a man of wisdom and prudence, and was made president of the council of war, which directed the military operations of the Crusade

Cherisy (Gerard), p. 46, Geart de Cherysy, p. 111, a knight of Picardy, who accompanied Godfrey of Bouillon to the Holy Land. History calls him Querisé, Kersi, or Querizi. "Rogier ('Noblesse Francaise aux Croisades') says that he belonged to an ancient and knightly family near Soissons

Cunivier, p. 292, misreading for Emirius. See Elaflades

Colomont, p. 47. Coloman, King of Hungary, had just mounted the throne as the armies of the First Crusade crossed his country. He was called Bibliophilius from his love of books. Thurocz, in his 'Chronicle of Hungary,' gives this portrait of him: "Coloman was hideous and ignoble in appearance, but artful and crafty in mind. He was hairy, humpbacked, blind in one eye, lame, and a stutterer."

Cownylykes, p. 221, corruption for Covasiles, an Armenian, whose real name was Kogh Basl, according to von Sybel: Paulin Paris calls him Covasiles; Albert d'Aix gives his name as Corrovasilus; William of Tyre calls him Covasilio

Conaym of Brytayne, p. 92, Conayn the Breton, p. 206, an illustrious knight of Brittany, son of Alain Fergant

Constantyn, Monnauques, p. 304, Emperor of Constantinople from 1042—1053

Corbagat, p. 194, 196, etc. Kerbogha, Sultan of Aleppo at the time of the First Crusade. He besieged Antioch. He is called Corbaran by the French poets on the Crusades

Cornelle, p. 249, the Centurion, Cornelius, mentioned in Acts x.

Cotbrove, p. 19, 20, etc., Chosroes, or Khosru II., son of Hormizd IV., King of Persia; called "Parvez," the Conqueror. He was killed in 628 by the treachery of his own son, after a glorious reign of thirty-eight years

Creçon (Rembant), p. 188. The Creçon a corruption for Creton. The person here designated was Rembant Creton d'Estournel. Estournel is a village
about a league from Cambrai. Grail
dor de Donai gives us a portrait of
this Rainiband Creton. Ordericus
Vitalis says that he mounted the
ladder fourth at the assault of Anti-
och. He returned safely from the
Holy Land, and was killed at the
siege of Montmorency in 1101. The
family is called indifferently, Estour-
mel or Creton, but since 1600 Estour-
mel has prevailed.

Crossanux (Guy de), p. 190, a paleo-
graphic error for Trosselle—Guy de
Trosselle

Cunyly (Guyllame de), p. 231, corrup-
tion for Cumilly. The Latin gives
Cumilico; another variant is Cinillili

Daier, p. 27, Daier, surnamed Ledimil-
lah, son of Hakeim Biamrillah, Sultan
of Egypt from 1021—1036

Danecelle (Doene), p. 72, corruption for
Drene de Neele

D'Asse (Robert), p. 112, 121, Robert de
Hanse, according to Palgrave, a Nor-
man from Caen, who accompanied
Bohenmond to the Crusades

Dansique (Henry), p. 46; Dasque,
Henry, p. 65, etc. See Assehe

Darres, p. 2, a Trojan priest, said to have
lived at the time of the Trojan war,
to whom was attributed an account of
that war. A work in Latin, purport-
ing to be a translation of this account,
and entitled, 'Daretis Phrygii de Ex-
cidio Trojae Historia,' was much read
in the Middle Ages, and ascribed to
Cornelius Nepos; but the language
belongs to a much later period than
the time of Nepos. Dederick, who
has given an excellent edition, is in-
clined to ascribe the work to a Roman
of the sixth or seventh century.

Dasque, Godefroy, p. 65, 67. See Assehe

Dareil, p. 2, David, King of Israel

Daybart, p. 299, 300, corruption for
Danibart, Archbishop of Pisa; made
patriarch of Jerusalem by the Cru-
saders

Doelors (Ravdyin), p. 272. Caxton makes
the best of the text of his faulty origi-
nal here, which gives Baudoin de
Ultre. The Latin text shows this to
be a corruption for Baudoin de Bugh;
Lat. Balduinus de Burgo

Discrectus, p. 79, paleographic error for

Dioscurus, the heretic patriarch of
Alexandria in 451

Domedart (Gautier de), p. 206

Dongysmây, p. 309, Danismain, a Tur-
coman Emir

Ducar, p. 136, Durcas, Sultan of
Damascus

Duchelond (Herman of), p. 100

Dutar, p. 136, corruption of Ducar,
same as above

Dytès, p. 2, Dictys Cretensis, a Grecian
historian, who wrote probably about
the time of Nero, although tradition
assigns him to a much earlier period.
The main interest of his work consists
in the fact, that it was the source from
which the Homeric legends were in-
roduced into the Middle Ages

Dye or Dys (Ysachar, Erle of), p. 206,
273, Isachar, or Isard Count of Die, a
Provençal nobleman

Elriac (Guylliam de), p. 262

Edward, p. 4, Edward IV., King of
France and England

Elafidues, p. 292, Emirieur, or the Emir
Al Diaoyousch, called also El Afdel,
took Jerusalem from the Turks in 1098

Eliopolitans, p. 27, Emperor of Con-
stantinople. See Romayn

Elýus (Adrian), p. 250, Aelius Hadrianus,
Emperor of Rome after Titus

Emmon, p. 62, 64, Emicio, leader of one
of the bands of Crusaders. Rösch,
'Zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge,' calls
him Graf Enichlo von Ließingenui
from Nahgau, and says that he was dis-
liked on account of the persecution of
the Jews in the middle Rhenish
cities, which was vigorously carried
on by him

Emyferyus, p. 168, 175, etc., Phirrus
or Phirrus, the renegade Christian who
delivered Antioch to Bohemond. Ac-
cording to Michael (1. 157), he em-
braced Christianity and followed the
Crusaders to Jerusalem. His ambition
not being satisfied, he returned to
Mohammedanism, and died abhorred
by both Christians and Moslems. He
is called Mufero in 'La Gran Con-
quista,' which also says that he was
an Armenian. Some historians give
him the name Adrian; Abul Faraghe
calls him Kuzebach, and says that he
was of Persian descent. Anna Comnena assigns to him an Armenian origin. William of Tyre, as we see, calls him Emir Ferrus, while Saconti gives his name as Hermiroferus. In the ‘Chanson d'Antioche’ he figures as Dacien, while von Sybel gives his true name, probably, as Feruz az Ferrad

Emyses, p. 240, corruption for Enires. The Latin gives Emirius, the Egyptian Emir who captured Jerusalem from the Persians

Eneas, p. 249, Eneas, the man mentioned in Acts ix. 34, who was healed by Peter

Entyses, p. 79, Eutyches, Archimandrite of Constantinople, condemned for heresy in 451, at the Council of Chalcedon

Erocles, p. 18, etc.

Ensebe of Cesarea, p. 124. Ensebiius of Cesarea—a, 276, d. 340—known as the father of ecclesiastical history

Exchyas, p. 254, Hezekiah, King of the Jews, from 717 B.C. to 688 B.C.

Fedre (Thomas de), p. 111, Thomas de Fère, p. 46, 272, etc., Thomas de la Fère, Sire de Marle. He belonged to the house of Coucy; he was a most famous fighter, who filled the Orient with the renown of his valour. He married Ida of Hainault. M. Michaud calls him Thomas de Fée. He was the son of Enguerrand de Coucy, whose motto Palgrave gives in IV. 559, Roine Duc ne Prince je suis; Je suis le Sire de Coucy

Ferquart (Alain), p. 92, Alain Ferquent the sixth Duke of Brittany, father of Conin

flaundres (Robert of), p. 84, 206, etc., Robert of Flanders was the leader of the Frisons and the Flemings. He was the eldest son of Robert the Frison, a brave and dashing nobleman, called the “Lance and Sword of the Christians” by the Christians, and the “son of St. George” by the Saracens

flora Cezar, p. 20, Nicephorus Phocas, Emperor of the East from 602–610. He was a Cappadocian of humble origin. A revolution caused Mauritius to abdicate, and Phocas became emperor. He was an ignorant, brutal, and deformed man, and was deposed by his successful rival, Herachius, in 610

Forestes (Guillem erle of), p. 84, 99, etc. According to Van Hasselt, he was a Belgian nobleman

Fytz Christen (Robert), p. 80

Fytz Gerard (Robert), p. 206

Fytz Godfrey (Raoul), p. 206

Fytz Raoul (Humfrey), p. 80

Gable, p. 124, Gabael of the Bible, cousin of Tobias

Gabryel, p. 308, a wealthy Armenian. Albert of Aix calls him Gaverus

Gautier, Sans Avoir, p. 48, 49, etc. Walter the Pennylless, one of the leaders of the First Crusade. (See note on this subject.)

Gauat (Bawdwyn of), p. 99, etc. Bauduin de Gant or de Gand, called Bauduin le Grand, Baudoin second lord of Alost. He perished at the siege of Nicea

Gawain, p. 2, Gawain or Gauvaine, a knight of the Round Table, nephew of King Arthur

George (St.), the Martyr, p. 244, born in Cappadocia of noble parents. He fell a martyr under Diocletian at Lidda, or, according to some, at Nicomedia. He is the patron saint of England, and of Genoa and Venice. His popularity in England dates from the time of Richard Cœur de Lion, who successfully invoked his aid. His greatest achievement in life was the conquest of a dragon by which he delivered a king’s daughter from death

Ghaledot, p. 2, Sir Galahad, one of the knights of the Round Table, son of Sir Lancelot and Elaine

Gilbert, p. 40, Archbishop of Ravenna, the anti-Pope who deposited Pope Gregory VII. He was known as Clement III., and occupied the Holy See from 1080—1101. He is not numbered among the legitimate popes

Godelot, p. 59, 61, etc., Gottschalk, a German priest of the Palatinate, who preached the Crusade in Germany, and started after Peter the Hermit with 20,000 men. According to Köh-
richt, he was called in derision, "Der Falsche Schalk Gottes".

Gratienple (Guylleme de), p. 195: Gratmenyl, p. 197, 199, etc.; William of Grandmenil or Gratemesnil, the second son of Robert, founder of the Abbaye St. Evreult. He was attached to the house of Robert Guiscard, whom he had followed into Apulia, and whose daughter Mabille he married, thus becoming a brother-in-law of Bohemond. He quarrelled with Bohemond, and left his service for that of Godfrey, under whom he served in the First Crusade. He ran away during the siege of Antioch with his two younger brothers, Yves and Alberic, and returned to Apulia, where he died soon after.

Greece (Garney de), p. 206, 298, etc., Garnier de Grés or de Gray, from Franche Comté, one of the nobles who accompanied Godfrey of Bouillon to the Holy Land. In the Historical Gallery of Versailles he is called de Gray. In a MS. of the Arsenal he has the title, Garnier de Gresse. Wilken (I. p. 102) writes it Werner von Grés. He died a few days after Godfrey of Bouillon, and was buried in the Basilica of St. Mary, in the Valley of Jehosaphat.

Gregory, p. 40. Gregory, the seventh pope of Rome, died May 25, 1085. He greatly extended the power of Rome; through his pretensions he involved himself in violent disputes with the Emperor of Germany.

Guenoe of Denmark, p. 147. Sweno, son of the King of Denmark, was attacked while bringing succour to Godfrey of Bouillon, by Solymar. He was killed on the field of battle. This hero figures in Tasso's "Jerusalem Delivered".


Guder, p. 115. Grandeschilde, or Godechilde, daughter of Ralph de Soeny and Isabel de Montfort, and wife of Baldwin, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon. She accompanied her husband on the First Crusade. She died, and was buried in Meransch in Asia. Fröbese calls her Godchild von Conches.


Guylamme, p. 226. Paulin Paris conjectures that this is the same William who distinguished himself at the siege of Marrah. The "Chanson d'Antioche" states that he was from Montpellier.

Guymer, p. 121, Guy Neveur, p. 122, etc., Guinevers of Boulogne, a celebrated pirate captain. He was taken prisoner by the Emperor of Constantinople, and kept in prison in Laodicea. Godfrey of Bouillon restored him to liberty.

Guyon, p. 197, Guyen, p. 198, Guy the Seneschal, brother of Bohemond, and attached by a brilliant marriage to the fortunes of Alexis, Emperor of Constantinople, according to Anna Commena.


Hanse (Robert the), p. 80. Lat. Robertus de Anxa. See D'Anse.

Harry, p. 40, 42, 279, Henry IV., Emperor of Germany.


Hector of Troy, p. 2, eldest son of Priam.

Hellow, p. 202; Fr. Herluin, the interpreter who accompanied Peter the Hermit on his embassy to Kerboga.

Helyas, p. 244. Elijah the Prophet.

Helyas, p. 249. Elisha the Prophet.


Herman, p. 62, 290. See Ducheloud.

Hetam, p. 27, a corruption for Heem.

Homer, p. 19, 20. See Omar.

Homer, p. 2, the poet Homer.

Huo le Mayne, p. 71, 206, 208, etc., Huwch de Vendama's, younger brother of King Philip of France. He was the second son of Henry I. and Anne.
daughter of Jaroslav, Duke of Russia. He became Count of Vermandois by his marriage with Adelaide, daughter of Count Herbert. He was called Hugh the Great (Huon le Mayne), either because he was the brother of the king or from his great size

Hyart, p. 24, Lord of Rames, bailiff of Hakim; the Hidraot of Tasso’s ‘Jerusalem Delivered’

Iaphet, p. 115, son of Noah

Ieroboum, p. 253, Jeroboam

Lucita, p. 49, Duke of Bulgaria

Iohan, p. 78, John, son of Alexis Comnenus

Iohan, p. 215, John, patriarch of Antioch, reinstated after the conquest of Antioch

Iohan Eleymont (St.), p. 36, patriarch of Constantinople

Ionen, p. 115, Javan, fourth son of Japheth

Issue, p. 1, 249, 253, Joshua

Iude, p. 124, St. Jude, author of one of the books of the New Testament

Iustynyen, p. 244, Justinianus, surnamed the Great, Emperor of Constantinople, 527—565. He was born in Illyria, and married the celebrated and beautiful actress Theodora. He is especially famous as a legislator

Latmns, p. 148, corruption for Tatyns, which is in turn a corruption of Tatynus.

Launcelot de Lake, p. 2, Launcelot du Lac, chief knight of the Round Table

Levy, p. 249, Levi, one of the twelve sons of Jacob

Lucan, p. 2, Marcus Annenus Lucanus, grandson of Seneca, born Nov. 3rd, 39 A.D. Most eminent Roman poet of the Silver Age

Lutol, p. 271. See Tornay

Lybres (Gonam), p. 272, corruption for Conain le Breton

Lylle (Galles de), p. 99, Galon de Lille, killed with Baldwin of Gaud at the siege of Nicea. An arrow hit him low as he was mounting to the assault. The two received burials worthy of great and noble men

Lyon (Pope), p. 79, Leo I., called Leo the Great, Pope from 440 to 461

Lyonel, p. 2, Sir Lionel, brother of Sir Launcelot, son of Ban, King of Benwick, a hero of the Arthurian legends

Macabæus (Judas), p. 2, Judas, called Maccabæus or the Hammerer, title given to Judas Asmoneus, the first great hero of the Jewish revolt against Antiochus Epiphanes. He was killed in 110 B.C.

Machomet, p. 18, Mahomet

Maryen, p. 79, Marcianus, Emperor of the East from 450 to 457. He was a native of Thrace, and became emperor by marrying Pulcheria, widow of Theodosius

Marie, p. 20, daughter of the Emperor Mauritius of Rome, and wife of Khosru II., Sultan of Persia

Maturane (Bishop of), p. 280, 284, 296, etc.

Maudle, p. 285, Mande, daughter of Eastache of Boulogne, wife of King Stephen of England

Mauruce, p. 20, Mauricius Flavins Tiberius, Emperor of the East from 582 to 602. He abdicated in favour of Phocas

Maryne, p. 21, Maximus, patriarch of Jerusalem in the time of Constantine

Moste de, p. 19, Modestus, colleague of Zacharias, and his successor as patriarch of Jerusalem in 514. It is not certain how matters were arranged, whether Zacharias was brought back from Persia and became a colleague of Modestus or not. Three honories of Modestus are still preserved. He was especially severe against the use of ungents by women

Mellac (Reynard de), p. 217, corruption for Anuellac. See Anuellac

Montagu (Conon de), p. 74 (Aconon de), p. 131, etc., one of Godfrey de Bouillon’s companions in the First Crusade. He was a Belgian by birth, son of Gozelon, Count of Boulogne, and Ermentrude of Haranzey. Conon’s wife was Ida, said to be sister of Godfrey of Bouillon. He died at the siege of Dolheim, April 30th, 1101

Montague (Euenam), p. 206, corruption for Conon

Montagu (Lambert de), p. 206, 272, son of Conon

GODFREY.
Index of Names.

Montagu (Gossolyn de), p. 131, 132, Goscelin, son of Conon de Montagne
Montagu (Guemes), p. 140, corruption for Conon
Montpelier (Guyllebert de), p. 112
Montpellier (Guyllem de), p. 84, 206, etc., William of Montpellier, accompanied Raymond of Toulouse and Adhemar to the Holy Land
Montjuïç, (Umfrey de), p. 80. The Latin gives \textit{Humfredus de Monte Scabioso}
Monceau (Loys de), p. 206, Louis de Moncon or Monson, called by Albert d'Aix, \textit{Mirabilis in opere militure}, was one of those who entered Jerusalem first. According to Dansey ('Eng. Crusaders') a family of this name settled in England soon after the Conquest. From this family the present Lord Monson is said to descend

Naḥardonosor, p. 134, Nebuchadnezzar, King of Assyria, 604—647 B.C.
Nelle (Dreux de), p. 172, Drogo de Nee. He was among the prisoners released by Alexius on condition that Godfrey of Bouillon should discontinue pilaging his country. He was lord of Nesles, or Nelles, and Faloy. Lat. Drogo de Nahalla. He followed Hugh the Great, shared his captivity, and distinguished himself at the siege of Nicaea. According to Albert d'Aix, Drogon was the son of Yves de Nesles. The Castellany of Bruges belongs to this family. See 'Croi\textsc{e}s Belges,' p. 142
Noe, p. 115, Noah
Noradyn, p. 137, Noureddin Mahmoud, Malek al Adel, the seconger of the Christian settlements in Syria and Palestine, b. 1116, d. 1174. He is one of the great heroes of Moslem history
Normandy (Robert Duke of), p. 45, 91, etc., Robert Duke of Normandy, son of William the Conqueror, surnamed in French history \textit{Courte hense}. He mounted the walls among the first at the assault of Jerusalem. He died a prisoner in England in 1130 or '31. He mortgaged his Duchy of Normandy to King William, his brother, for 10,000 pounds in order to obtain the funds for the First Crusade
Nyceforos, p. 28, corruption for Nyceforos, Niceforus, patriarch of Jerusalem
Nychofios (Bothoniat), p. 71, Nicephorus, Emperor of the East, 802—811. He succeeded Ireneus, and was the first Grecian emperor
Nycone, p. 165, etc., an Armenian

Olyrer, p. 3, Oliver, one of the paladins of Charlemagne, the devoted friend and companion-at-arms of Roland, Charlemagne's nephew
Omar, p. 19, 20, 252, etc., Omar, son of Captaph, the second successor of Mahomet. He was for ten years the head of the Moslem Empire, and died in 644
Orange (Raybout, erle of), p. 84, etc., Rembount, Earl of Orange, one of the great Provencal noblemen in the First Crusade
Orange (Bishop of), p. 84, etc., William, Bishop of Orange. He died at the siege of Marran, p. 228
Orestes, p. 24, Orestes, patriarch of Jerusalem in the time of Hakim, whose uncle he was
Orleans (foucheur d'), p. 58, one of the few knights in Peter's army. Slain before Nicea
Oryde, p. 2, Ovid, the Latin poet
Panaceus, p. 165, 221, etc., Pancratius, an Armenian prince, in his youth King of Northern Iberia. He joined the Crusaders in the hope of retrieving his fortunes. See \textit{Michael}, 1, 120
Paris (Robert of), p. 109, Robert of Paris
Pelet (Reonon), p. 234, 260, etc., Pabes, p. 206, Peles, p. 84. Raymond Pelet, a Provencal nobleman, called "The Crusader Vicomte of Narbonne." He was also Count of Miquel and Alais, thus belonging to one of the most distinguished families of Languedoc. He is the first ancestor known of the Pelets of Narbonne, of whom there are still several branches
Perceval, p. 2, Knight of the Round Table
Perche (Rontroint, erle of), p. 45; Erle of Perse, p. 206; Rotheron of Perse,
Index of Names. 339

p. 92; Routrou, second Earl of Perche, who accompanied the Duke of Normandy. He commanded a corps of troops at the siege of Antioch, according to 'Chroniques Belges,' V. 101. He lost his life in 1144, while besieging the tower of Rouen with the Count of Anjou

Perseus, p. 115, a hero of Grecian mythology, son of Danae and Zeus. He is said to have founded Tarsus in Cilicia, and appears on the coins of that city, as well as on coins of Pontus and Cappadocia

Peter the Hermit, p. 36, 37, 38, etc., born in Acheris, near Amiens, in the diocese of Laon. He returned from the Holy Land in 1102 with the Count of Montaigut. After his return he built the Abbey of Neufmoutier at Huy, on the right bank of the Meuse, in honour of the Holy Sepulchre. Anna Commena says that he was called Petrus Cucullatus, because he wore a cowl

Peter (of Narbonne), p. 226, made Bishop of Albare

Peter, p. 201. See Barthemewe.

Phyllip, p. 279, Philip, p. 216, Philipe, p. 42, etc., Philipe I., King of France

Possesse (Guy de), p. 46; Guy du Puysett, p. 97, Guy de Possesse; Lat. Guido de Possesso, a French nobleman from Champagne. Possesse is near Vitry

Pretopt (Saint), p. 254, corruption for Saint Procope; Lat. Sancius Procopius

Pryncipat (Rychard the), p. 80, 112, etc., a Norman nobleman, Lord of Principata, son of William Fier-à-bras, Robert Guiscard's brother

Payssat (Euerard du), p. 46, 206, according to Bongars, a nobleman from the neighbourhood of Chartres.

Pyrurus, p. 70, Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, 318—272 B.C.

Quyen, See Guyon

Quytlchain, p. 285. See William

Riouil, p. 289, Rudolph of Swabia, killed in 1080 at the battle of Merseburg.

Raymond, p. 80, Raymond, brother of Richard the Principat, son of William Fier-à-bras

Retel (Count Huon de), p. 45, father of Baldwin, cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon

Richard, son of Erle Ranyol, p. 80, Richard, son of Earl Ramol, or Ranulf of Roussignol

Richard, Duke of York, p. 5, son of Edward IV., one of the unhappy princes killed in the tower by the orders of Richard, Duke of Gloucester

Robert (Bishop of Rames), p. 245, a native of Rouen in Normandy

Roboam, p. 253, Rehoboam, son of Solomon

Rodahan, p. 218, 220, Lord of Halappe

Romanus Diogenes, p. 33, 95, Emperor of Constantinople 1065—1071, a member of a powerful Cappadocian family, who had risen to distinction in the army. The queen-mother became enamoured of him as he was brought into her presence, condemned to death for treason, and released and married him. He was disastrously defeated by Alp Arslan on the banks of the Araxes, returned home dishonoured, and retired to the isle of Crete, where he died in misery

Romayn, p. 27, Romanus Eliopolitanis, Emperor of Constantinople from 1028 to 1034, called Eliopolitanus because he was born in Eliopolis. He usually has the surname of Argire

Rosoye (Robert of), p. 130, Robert, or Roger de Rozoi

Roussillon, p. 84, 206, etc. (Girault de or Gyrard de), Gerard de Roussillon, of the distinguished Provençal family of that name

Rousignol (the erle of), p. 80, the Earl of Roussignol; Lat. Resinolo

Rubemond (Anceau de), p. 206, 208, etc., Count de Valenciennes in Picardy, husband of Agnes de Roney, daughter of Eblis de Roney, great-grandson of the famous Bernier, who killed Raoul de Cambrai. Anceau (Anselme) is mentioned with praise by Albert d'Aix, Guibert de Nogent, and Raoul de Caen. He was killed at the siege of Arles. Michaud calls him the Count de Bouchain. He went to the Crusade with Bohemond

Sabram (Guylem de), p. 273

Salamon, p. 253, Solomon, son of David
Sangum, p. 137, Emad Eddin Zengli, Emir of Mussul and Haleppe, founder of the dynasty of the Atabeks of Syria, known generally as Zengli. This name was corrupted by the Crusaders into Sanquin.

Sunsadoł, p. 226, Sensadole or Sensadone, son of Soliman. Bongars (1, 239) calls him Sensadonia filius Darsiani.

Sara, p. 124, daughter of Ragniel, who lived in Ecbatana. See Book of Tobit.

Scarwan (Peter de), p. 112, corruption for Peter of Stadenois.


Selduc, p. 30, Seljuk, grandfather of Togrul Bey, the first ruler of the Turks.

Selduces, p. 30, the family or tribe of Seljuc, Seljuks, a Perso-Turkish dynasty which produced eleven kings and lasted 138 years.

Somar, p. 194; Fr. Soemer, Lat. Sigemaro, p. 194; cousin of Henry d'Asche.

Sevant Pol (Huge, the Erle of), p. 65; etc., Hugh, second Earl of Saint Paul, Count of Champ d'Avene, died in 1130 or 31.

Sevant Pol (Everard of), p. 65; Seynt Poul (Eniorgan of), p. 230; Aniaran de St. Poul, p. 206; Eugerran, or Engelran de St. Paul, son of Hugh. He died at the siege of Marrah, near Aleppo.

Solins, p. 115, C. Julius Solinnus, author of a geographical compendium about A.D. 238.

Soklyman, p. 56, 57, 58, etc., Kilidge Arslan, also called David, or the Sword of the Spirit, and Solymon the younger. He was the son of Solymon. He was Sultan of Nice at the time of its conquest by the Crusaders. William of Tyre makes him a nephew of the Sultan of Persia, and mistakes him for his father.

Sophony, p. 21, Sophronius, a monk of Damascus, who became patriarch of Jerusalem in 634. He opposed the endeavours of Cyrus, patriarch of Alexandria, to secure general acceptance of monothelite views. The Emperor Heraclius issued an edict in 638 to put an end to the discussion.
Index of Names.

341

Thybaud the old, p. 45, Thibaut, second son of Stephen, Count of Chartres and Blois; he died Jan. 1152

Tornay (Engelbert and Lethold of), p. 271, two brothers who mounted after Godfrey of Bouillon at the taking of Jerusalem

Toul (Bernard, earl of), p. 65, Bernard, a corruption for Reynard; Reynart, earl of, p. 112; Reinald of Toul, p. 206; Pieter, p. 65, brother of Reynard of Toul

Tours (Geffrey de), p. 227, Guelph or Goulfier de las Tours

Treu (Gylbert de), p. 250

Urban, p. 40, 41, etc., Pope Urban the 11., Eudes or Odo, pope from 1088 to 1099. He died fourteen days after the fall of Jerusalem, but before the news had reached Italy

Vespasian, p. 250, Vespasian the tenth of the twelve Caesars, Roman emperor from 70 to 79

Veer (Gace de), p. 261, corruption for Gaston de Beart; Lat. Gastone de Beart

Vendnel (Clarembauld de), p. 72, 172

Ver (Gaultier de), p. 244

Viator, p. 41, corruption for Victor. This Victor was the third pope of the name. He was chosen in 1085, after Gregory’s death. He did not consent to be consecrated until two years after, in May 1087. He died Sept. 16th, 1087

William, p. 285, fictitious brother of Godfrey of Bouillon


INDEX OF PLACES.

Abydon, p. 73, Abydos, town on the Hellespont at the narrows of the Dardanelles
Achelodemach, p. 251, the Aceldama of the Bible
Aeiane, p. 299, corruption for Ariane
Acre, p. 244, St. John, d'Acre, modern Ptolemais, or Acca, a harbour of Syria at the foot of Mt. Carmel
Adane, p. 117, 218, to-day Adana, town of Cilicia in Asia Minor
Adre, or Adria, p. 69, town in Northern Italy, on the river Po
Adryan, p. 69, 79, 85, the Adriatic Sea
Albana, p. 225. See Albare
Albare, p. 226, 228, called Lanbare in the Chanson of Antioch, the El Barie of the Arabian chroniclers, to be found in Burckhardt's map of Syria under the name of El Bara; William of Tyre says that Albara formed part of the province of Apania, and was a two days' journey from Antioch. The modern El Bara is between Apania and Antioch, and about thirty-seven miles from the latter
Alexandrye the Lasse, p. 122; Alexandrye the Lytyl, p. 195; Alexandria the Less, or Alexandrette, on the coast of Palestine north of Antioch
Allemagyn, p. 65.
Allemagyn, p. 40, etc., Germany
Allemayne, p. 288.
Alsaundre, p. 79; Alexandrye, p. 23; the city of Alexandria
Amene, p. 134, corruption for Aniene; Lat. Aeniensis
Amiens, p. 36, the city of Amiens in France
Anamystre, see Mamistyre, p. 118, Mamistra, the modern Missis, formerly called Mopsuestis
Anauasie, p. 115, city of Cilicia, directly north of Antioch, the modern Antiabar, formerly the metropolitan city; Migne, Enzy. Ec., is in doubt about it, and cites different authorities on the subject
Ancone, p. 69, Sea of Ancona, part of the Gulf of Venice
Andrenoble, p. 76, or Adrianople, northwest of Constantinople; on the Maritza, the capital of Roumania
Antihone, p. 250, Antonia, one of the towers of Jerusalem, on the north side of the Temple
Antibare, p. 85, Antivari, modern name Antibaris, city of Dalmatia
Antyoche, p. 23, 34, etc., Antioch
Antyoche the Lasse, p. 112, chief city of Pisidia, also called Antiochetta
Aperon, p. 68, paleographic error for Cipron
Aquileia, p. 85, Aquileia, ancient capital of the Carni, to-day Aglar or Aquileya, just at the head of the Adriatic Sea, north-west of Trieste
Arabye, p. 18, 19, etc., Arabia
Arcada, p. 70, Arcadia
Arclys, p. 233, 236, ancient Archis, to-day Arca, between Tripoli and the sea
Ariane, p. 299, town of Ariano in the Apennines
Arsur, p. 306, to-day Arsaf, a town north of Joppa, in the pashalik of Damascus, said to have been built originally by Solomon; it still possesses a fortress and a mosque
Artaissee, p. 130, Arlayse, Arlaysis, p.
Index of Places.

131, 132, etc., to-day Ertesi, about seventeen miles north-east of Aleppo
Astanepol, p. 70, Asinope
Asia, p. 55, 73, etc., Asia
Africqu, p. 23, Africa
Ammaures, p. 218, corruption for Amaurige
Anfergane, p. 43, Auvergne in France

Baghulars (Mt.), p. 70, the Balkan mountains
Bandras, p. 134, 157, etc., corruption for Bandas, the city of Bagdad
Bar, p. 84, Bari in Apulia, Italy
Barthou, p. 80, the ancient Achedorus, flows into the Gulf of Salonica, in Macedonia
Baruth, p. 243, modern Beirut, Palestine
Bauerae, p. 62
Bauerye, p. 49, 140
Belganciere, p. 69, etc., mod. Belgrade, capital of Servia, on the right bank of the Danube, at the confluence of the Save
Bethlehem, p. 28
Bethlehem, p. 245, 246
Blace, p. 69, 70, the Wallachians
Blaserne, p. 74, a palace in Constantinople
Bologne, p. 235, etc., Boulogne in France
Bonres, p. 70, Bulgarians
Bourcye, p. 49
Bouye, p. 50, 69, etc., Bulgaria
Bethia, p. 78
Bithynia, p. 34
Bithynie, p. 55, 91, etc., Bithynia
Bithynie, p. 198
Breus of St. George, p. 34, 35, etc., the Dardanelles, called the Braas of St. George on account of a monastery of St. George built outside of the walls of the city. It generally means only the narrow straits which separate Asia from Europe, but sometimes taken for the whole Propontis enclosed between the two straits: St. George was a Cappadocian warrior
Calaire, p. 92, Calabria
Colmone, p. 79; Colmone, p. 83, Chalcedon, city in Bithynia, near Constantinople; seat of the Council of 451
Calvare, Calvary
Cappadoce, p. 34, Cappadocia, eastern—most province of Asia Minor, very early Christianized, and belonged to the diocese of Pontus, erected by Constantine the Great
Carmedy, p. 244, Mt. Carmel
Carline, p. 23, Carthage
Castore, p. 80, Castoria, city in Macedonia
Celessor, p. 34, province of which Damascus is the chief city
Cesaire, p. 300, Caesarea, to-day
Cezaire, p. 234, 244, Calcedoine, also called Sidjar
Chemide, p. 231, also called Emessa
Cinintot, corruption for Citot, p. 55, town of Bithynia, on the Gulf of Mandania, called, to-day, Gialo or Genilik
Ciperon, p. 68, now called Schoprony, in Hungarian and Oedenburg in German, a town or small fortified place on the frontiers of Hungary
Cleremont, p. 42, Clermont in Auvergne, France; the third Council of Pope Urban was held here, in Nov. 1095, attended by four archbishops and 225 bishops, besides an immense number of lower clergy and laity
Clony, p. 42, Abbey of Cluny in Burgundy, France, composed of Benedictine Monks, founded in 909
Cobar, p. 30, 31, to-day the river Khabur, on the frontier of Persia
Colyne, p. 62, Cologne
Comans, p. 69.
Connthot, p. 105, corruption for Civitot
Crony, p. 198; See Lychonie
Cylyae, p. 95; Saltier, p. 123; Cilicia, one of the most important provinces of Asia Minor, corresponding partly to the modern Adana

Dalmae, p. 85, Dalmatia, between Hungary and the Adriatic Sea, on the eastern side of the sea
Danemasko, p. 19, Damascus
Danemarches, p. 70, Panemarche the Mayene is Dacia Mediterranea, or Lower Moesia: the Latin gives Dacia, which was evidently mistaken for Dania, and translated accordingly by the French translator, whom Caxton follows
Dorylee, Dorylaemum, to-day called Eski Scheko, valley south-east of Nice, in ancient Phrygia
Duchelanda, p. 226, etc., Germany
Dunoe, p. 62, 68, etc., the Danube
Duras, p. 70, 86, etc.; ancient Dyrrhachium, to-day called Durazzo, a Turkish port on the Adriatic

Ebron, p. 250, Hebron
Elioppa, p. 133; this word is a corruption of Ephyrpe, the ancient Heliopolis or Baalbec. See Mallic or Malbee
Elue, p. 250, Elia, name given to Jerusalem by Aeolus Adriamus

Emmaus, p. 248; there were two villages of this name, one, twenty-two Roman miles from Jerusalem, also called Nicopolis; and the Emmaus of the Bible, seven and a half miles from Jerusalem; according to McClintoch and Strong, Dict., the Crusaders called Emmaus, Meopolis, but confused it with a small fortress farther south on the Jerusalem road, now called Latron
Ennon, p. 51, 254, Ennon

Espire, p. 86, Epirus

Escalone, p. 115, etc., to-day called Heraclia; called also Eregli, city of Lycaonia, between Iconium and Tarsus

Ermenye, p. 292, 308, etc., Armenia; Caxton also spells it Ermomye

Ermon, p. 254, Hermon

Escadone, p. 279; Escalone, p. 292, 293, etc.; city of Ascalon, on the coast south-west of Jerusalem

Espire, p. 70, Epirus

Eystrates, p. 125, 165, etc., Euphrates

Famosetle, p. 127, etc.

Fynes, p. 233, 236, etc., Phenicia

Flanordres, p. 120, 243, etc., Flanders

France, p. 3, 42, etc., France

Friselant, p. 120, Friesland

Frances, p. 49, 62, Franconia, made a duchy in the 10th century; its capital city Nurenberg. It belongs to Bavaria to-day

Fynomye, p. 148, 195, Von Sybel calls it Philomelium,—a place near Antioch in Asia Minor; also called by Spruner Finium. Its modern name is Askhehr

Gabba, p. 249, Gibeon

Galacce, p. 34, Galatia

Galgal, p. 249, small town south-east of Jericho, on the Dead Sea

Galilee, p. 298, Galilee

Gene, p. 298, a corruption of Genesar, the lake of Gennesaret

Gene, p. 248, 360, etc., Genoa

Genoece, p. 260, etc., Genoese

Grec, p. 64, Greece

Gybolet, p. 235, etc., the ancient Gabala, to-day known as Jebeil, a town on the coast of Syria between Beirut and Tripoli

Halappe, p. 218, 219, etc., Aleppo

Haman, p. 231, the ancient Epiphania, to-day called Hamal

Hasart, p. 218, etc., town a little north of Aleppo, and called by Arabian historians Azaz, which name it still bears

Halap, p. 221, the modern Aintab

Helle, p. 164, the river Orontes, called El Fer; Caxton by a mistake read it L'Enfer, and translated it by Helle

Hermayme, p. 165. See Ermemye

Holande, p. 120, Holland

Hongrye, p. 47, 49, etc., Hungary

Jadre, p. 19, a city of Palestine

Jadre, p. 85, etc., Zara, a city of Dalmatia, with a port on the Adriatic

Iaphe, p. 248, 301, etc., Jolfa or Joppa, only sea-port of Judaea on the Mediterranean

Ismerhesees, p. 250, the Jebusees

Ierusalem, p. 20, etc., Jerusalem

Ierycho, p. 249, Jericho

Iophat, p. 250, Jehoshaphat

Iosaphat, p. 256, I

Ister, p. 85, Istria

Iude, p. 250, Judaea

Iurye, p. 253, Judaca

Lamane, p. 280. See Maturane

Lasse Asye, Asia Minor

Lide, p. 244, Lydda

Lindans, p. 62; Lintans, p. 65; the river Leytha, a tributary of the Danube

Lombardye, p. 42, 69, etc.

Lorraine, p. 49, Lorraine

Lybans, p. 233, 212, Mt. Lebanon

Lycaone, p. 34, Lycaonia

Lyce, p. 34, Lychia

Lyche of Surye, p. 235; Lystes of Surye, p. 34; The Lyche, p. 261; Lau-
Index of Places.

dicea; in one of the French manuscripts of William of Tyre, no. 8404, it is called Le Chef de Surie. This city still exists under the name of Lakiktieh, according to Michand

Lyconia, p. 113; Likoine, p. 114; another form is the Cryne, all mistranslations of the French L’Icoine, the city of Iconium, to-day called Konich in Lycaonia

Macedonie, p. 92, Macedonia
Macedone, p. 87,
Macedone, p. 70,
Macabonos, p. 248, the Maccabees
Magone, p. 62, Mainz or Mayence, on the Rhine
Mafie, p. 36, modern Amalfi, a city of Apulia in Italy
Maller, p. 133, Malbec or Baalbec, the same city as Eliopee, or Heliopolis
Malleville, p. 48, 50, etc., said to be the modern Semlin; as the Crusaders did not know what to call it, it has been conjectured that they dubbed it Malleville on account of the sufferings which they endured

Mamstr, p. 218. See Anamystre

Marbec, p. 301, same as Mallec

Maras, p. 115, Marash, formerly
Marize, p. 122, etc., called Germanica
Marce, p. 47, a corruption of the word
Maroc, a river of Hungary

Marclle, p. 236, to-day called Merkale, the first city of Phocinia, situated on the sea-side between the castle of Margat and Tortuose

Marce, p. 130, mod. Marash, in Cilicia, not far from Aleppo

Margat, p. 236, 299, to-day Markab on the coast between Giblet and Tortuose

Marran, p. 226; Mazran, p. 226; Marran, p. 229; modern name Maarrah en Naaman

Mase, p. 194, the river Meuse

Mathale, p. 194, town of Mechelen, near Maestricht in Holland; in French called Machale or Machele

Maturane, p. 280, town of Martorano in Calabria, Italy

Mans, p. 243, the ancient Adonis; to-day called Nahir Ibrahim: Tulkobodus calls it Braym

Mayene, p. 70. See Danemarches

Meerschors, p. 62, town at the junction

of the Leytha and the Danube, in Lower Hungary

Meteene, p. 308; 309, called also Matabia, between the Euphrates and Mesopotamia
Mese, p. 70, Moesia

Mesopotamie, p. 308, Mesopotamia
Mone, p. 252, correction for Moriah

Moria, p. 250, Mt. Moriah in Jerusalem

Naples, p. 249; Napples, p. 293, etc.; Napoli, or Nauplia, or Nabulus, mod. Nablous, supposed to be the same as Shechem or Sichem: it is about thirty miles from Jerusalem. A Council was called here in 1120, by King Baldwin of Jerusalem; the object, to reform the Church

Nerbonne, p. 226, Narbonne in France

Nivene, p. 46, etc., Nice, or Nicaea, the ancient capital of Bithynia, on the eastern shore of lake Ascanius: modern name, Isnik

Nyghomede, p. 93; Nycomede, p. 91; Nicomedie, ancient capital of Bithynia, situated on the north-eastern angle of the Gulf of Astacus, in the Propontis, now called Bay of Ismid. This city was built a.p. 264 by Nicomedes I.; Dioecletian and Constantine the Great lived there. It is now the small town of Ismid

Nyz, p. 40; Nyze, p. 50, mod. Nissa, a fortified city of Servia, on the Nissava, south-east of Belgrade

Ohryet (Mt.), p. 262, Mt. Olivet
Oromte (Mt.), p. 135, mountain in Antioch

Oroste, river, p. 135, see next

Orontes, p. 133, ancient name of the river

Fer, to-day called El Aasay, “the rebellious”

Ostervich, p. 49, Austria

Palestine, p. 263, etc., Palestine

Pamphylie, p. 194, Pamphylia

Pelaigne, p. 80, Province in Greece

Pelandonne, p. 86, Province in Greece

Pernascus, p. 135, Mt. Parnassus

Persie, p. 13, etc., Persia

Philistines, p. 253, etc., Philistines

Pisside, p. 111, Pisside, p. 112, Pisidia

Playsance, p. 42, Lat. Placentia, city of
Index of Places.

Piacenza in Italy. The first Council of Urban in 1095 was held here
Porphyre, p. 298
Pughy, p. 70, etc., Apulia, province of Italy
Puy Notre Dame, p. 42, city of Puy Notre Dame in Auvergne, France

Rages, p. 218, etc., the city of Edessa, called Rona and Arta by the Arabian, and Roh or Rhodes by the French of the Middle Ages. Pococke says it is supposed to be the Ur of the Chaldees.
Raguse, p. 85, the ancient Rhangia, Ragusium, or Ragusa, a fortified city of Dalmatia on the Adriatic
Rames, p. 245, etc., ancient Arimathea, to-day called Ramleh, or Ramla, sixteen miles north of Jerusalem, famous for the tomb of Samuel
Ravendel, p. 221; there are no traces of this castle to-day; M. P. Paris suggests that it may be the modern Ramana, between Turbesel and Rages
Ravenna, p. 40, Ravenna
Rodost, p. 87, to-day called Rodasto, between Gallipolis and Constantinople
Rhodes, p. 4, 194, 243, etc., the island of Rhodes
Rome, p. 2, etc., Rome
Rome, p. 147, Romania
Rouge, p. 229, Lat. Rugiam, to-day called Riha

Saronje, p. 129, | Town near Edessa,
Saronje, p. 223, | to-day called Sarug
Saronje, p. 224, | town near Edessa,
Sklaconge, p. 260, etc., Scylavonia
Sodome, p. 249, Sodom
Spalate, p. 85, to-day, Spalatro, a fortified city of Dalmatia
Spanje, p. 167, Spain
Stalye, p. 48, 69; this town has not yet been definitely recognized, although Albert d'Aix calls it Sternitz, which is a city of Sordica, to-day called Sofia
Sur, p. 244, Tyre
Surrye, p. 19, | Syria
Surrye, p. 33, etc., |
Syloce, p. 254, Siloam
Sympole, p. 76,
Syon, p. 250, etc., Sion

Tabarye, p. 298, 301, Tabariel on the Lake of Gennesar; Lat. Tiberiadense
Tabor (Mt.), p. 298, Mt. Tabor
Tarce, p. 95,
Tarce, p. 115, | Tarsus in Cilicia
Thaures, p. 92,
Tarente, Tarentum
Taylendbore, p. 65, Tollenburch, town near the junction of the Maretsch and the Danube
Tecua, p. 249, 258, city where Amos the prophet was born, about six Roman miles from Jerusalem—name is still Tekua
Terme, p. 148, town in Pisidia
Thequeble, p. 134, former name of Antioch
Theessaye, p. 70, 135, Thessaly
Tinchebray, p. 297, village in Normandy, near Domfront
Torbosel, p. 217, etc., the Tel-Bacher of the Arabian historians, to-day a little village called Tel Bacher or Tel Bechir, on the right bank of the Sadjur
Tortoise, p. 234, 236, etc., formerly called Antaradus, a large and beautiful city on the sea-side, between Arcas and Antioch
Trace, p. 70: Thaures, p. 92, Thrace
Trappel, p. 233, etc., Tripoli
Valerne, p. 299, etc., Valencia, formerly called Balanea, between Giblet and Margat
Venyse, p. 243, etc., Venice
Index of Places.

| Ybelyn, p. 242, etc., the ancient Biblim, also called Gibelet, on the coast below Tripoli | Ynde, p. 22, India |
| Ybronc, p. 4, called Hydruntum by Livy and Pliny, an ancient Roman colony: to-day Otranto, in Italy | Yrond, p. 4, Ireland |
| | Zebus, p. 250, mistranslation or corruption for Jebus |
Early English Text Society
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH